



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

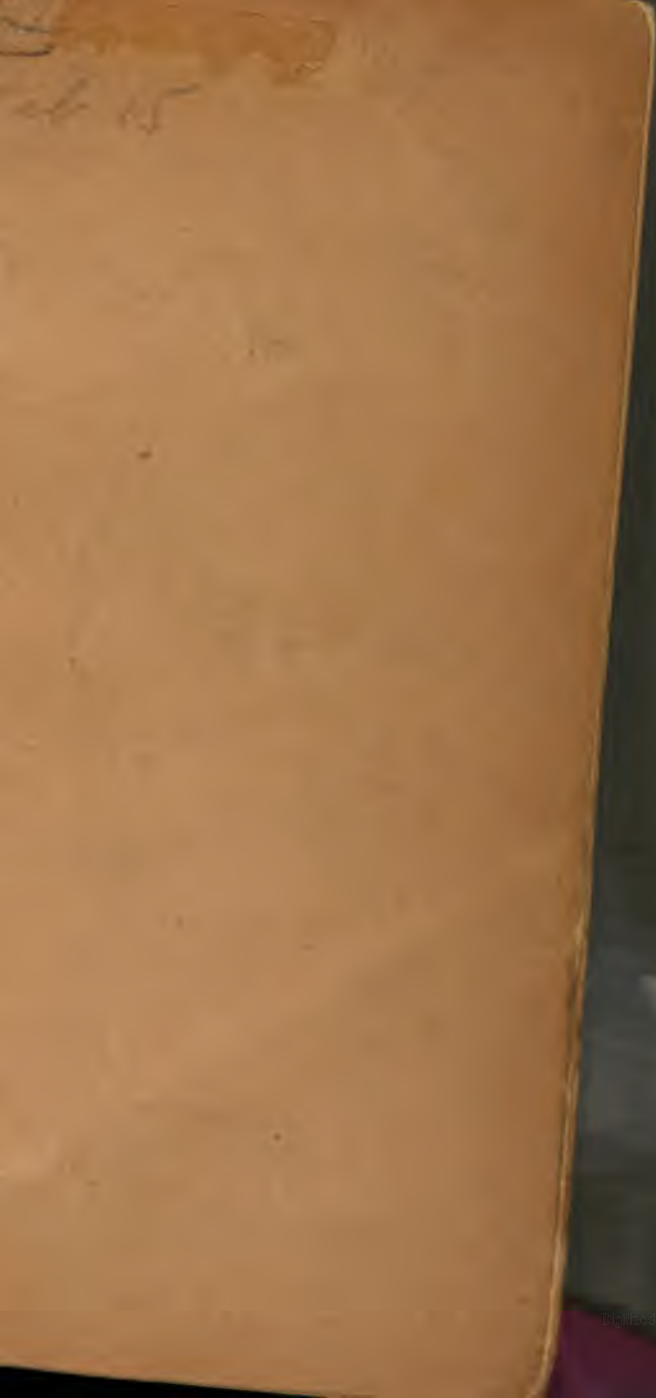
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

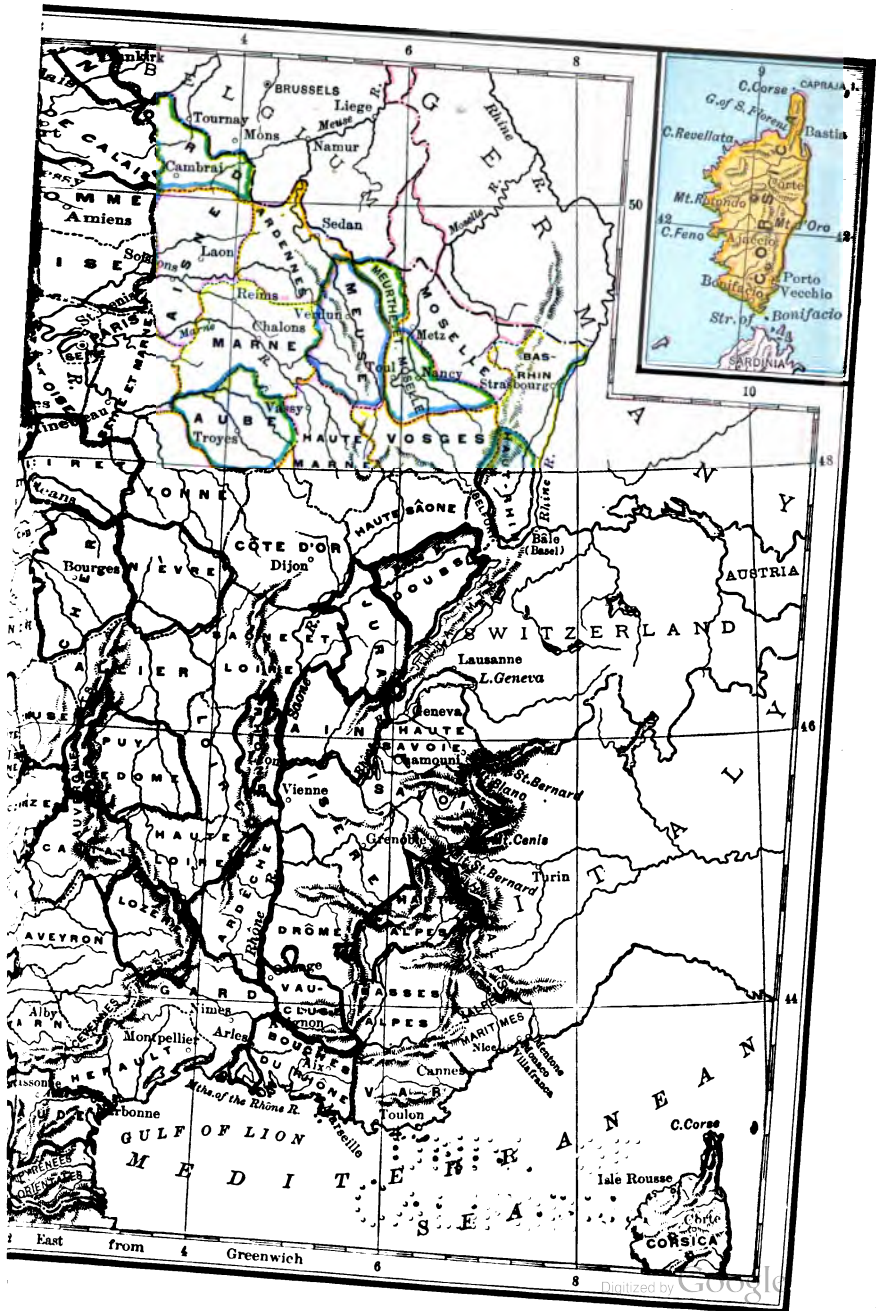


EX LIBRIS

803
H724
li



UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA



LIVING FRENCH

A NEW COURSE IN
READING, WRITING, AND SPEAKING
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

BY

RICHARD T. HOLBROOK

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

410 12
(Main Lib. copy)

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY
RICHARD T. HOLBROOK

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

321.4

The Athenaeum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PRO-
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

TO
DR. J. HOWARD CLOUD
OF ARDMORE, PENNSYLVANIA

583967

PREFACE

The names of scholars among my friends and acquaintances who helped me ungrudgingly during the years in which this book was being written would in themselves fill a preface, but two men, Lucien Foulet and Louis Cons, though never directly quoted, advised me so often that they might almost be called collaborators.

My chief printed sources are recorded in their place, but again I must mention, and here must emphasize, my indebtedness to my friend E. C. Armstrong of Princeton University.

The sources of my examples are given only when there might be room for doubt.

For generous help when help was most needed I have to thank Mrs. E. C. Forman of Haverford, Pennsylvania; and through all the stages of proof-correction Mr. Steven T. Byington of the Athenæum Press rendered an invaluable service by convincing me often that his views were sounder, or his English clearer, than mine.

If, after all my endeavors to avoid them, this book still contains misprints, or errors about which no jury of competent Frenchmen could disagree, correction will be made gratefully.

The method of presentation is based upon several assumptions. It is not in France that our students are learning French. However eager they may be to learn French, however fortunate their background, however competent their teachers, only a few hours a week at most can be devoted by them to their study of French. Finally, they cannot learn the unknown through the still less known, *ignotum per ignotius*.

This book deals almost exclusively with phenomena that are to be met on nearly every page of the simplest texts, and with facts of pronunciation which must be mastered because they are encountered at every turn. Let us dispose of the fallacious view that causes an

elementary book to be regarded as an 'advanced' work because it attempts to apply an unusual thoroughness to the study of elementary facts.

To be able to translate French correctly is a valuable attainment ; to be able to read it aloud correctly, with a full appreciation of its meaning, implies additional skill ; to endeavor to learn to *speak* it is to recognize without reserve that it is a living language, and that is the ideal which this book, though only a printed guide, upholds on its title page. With what ease or difficulty this ideal may be attained — the advantage of having such an ideal I take for granted — was competently stated long ago by Philip Gilbert Hamerton in essays on *The Intellectual Life* and in other writings devoted particularly to interpretations of France.¹

R. T. H.

¹ For another important phase of our studies see 'Remarks on the Editing of French Texts for Schools and Colleges' in the *Modern Language Journal* for October, 1916.

CONTENTS

PART I

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY SURVEY; THE PRONUNCIATION OF FRENCH . . .	3
LESSON	
I. THE ARTICLES. THE PLURAL OF NOUNS. SIX FORMS OF avoir . THE UNSTRESSED NOMINATIVE FORMS OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN	35
II. UNSTRESSED PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Continued). NOMINATIVES. ACCUSATIVES. DATIVES. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF être , OF trouver , OF priver , OF parler	39
III. THE ARTICLES WITH de AND à	43
IV. THE DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES (Continued). FORMS OF INTERROGATION. THE TYPE libre	47
V. THE ARTICLES (Continued). POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	51
VI. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. INTERROGATION (Continued)	55
VII. FORMS FOR THE IMPERFECT OR PAST DESCRIPTIVE TENSE	59
VIII. THE PAST ABSOLUTE TENSE (GROUP C). THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES	63
IX. THE TYPES j'ai parlé , j'avais parlé , je suis arrivé , j'étais arrivé . FORMS OF PAST PARTICIPLES AND PURE ADJECTIVES. THE NEUTER PRONOUN ce	67
X. Ce , ceci , cela (ça) (Continued). Celui , celle , etc.	71
XI. THE FUTURE TENSE: GROUP D	75
XII. GROUP D (Continued). SOME NEGATIVES	79
XIII. THE CONDITIONAL: GROUP E. TENSE AND MOOD	83
XIV. THE CONDITIONAL (Continued)	87

LESSON	PAGE
XV. THE PLUPERFECT TENSES (THREE GROUPS)	91
XVI. ALL THE INDICATIVE TENSE-GROUPS OF parler , avoir , AND être	95
XVII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS	99
XVIII. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (Continued). C'est moi . . .	103
XIX. REGULAR VERBS IN -ir . TYPE finir . INDICATIVE GROUPS. RELATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued). SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS	107
XX. RELATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued)	111
XXI. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	115
XXII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (Concluded). INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS	119
XXIII. PECULIARITIES OF THE VERBS IN -er	123
XXIV. FURTHER PECULIARITIES OF VERBS IN -er . THE TYPES mener '(TO) LEAD,' céder '(TO) YIELD,' rêver '(TO) DREAM,' jeter '(TO) THROW'	127
XXV. GROUPS <i>A-E</i> OF aller , envoyer , pouvoir , vouloir . . .	131
XXVI. GROUPS <i>A-E</i> OF mourir , mouvoir , pleuvoir . Aucun-e etc.	135
XXVII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (Continued) . .	139
XXVIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (Continued) . .	143
XXIX. Tel , tout , un , nul , personne , rien	147
XXX. THE TYPE devoir (GROUPS <i>A-E</i>). WORK IN REVIEW . . .	151
XXXI. VERBS IN -andre (as répandre), -endre (as rendre), -ondre (as fondre); also mordre and perdre . GROUPS <i>A-E</i>	155
XXXII. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD	159
XXXIII. THE IMPERATIVE (Concluded)	163
XXXIV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE (MOOD)	167
XXXV. THE FUNCTIONS (SYNTAX) OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE	171
XXXVI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES (Continued). Craindre	175

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XXXVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES (Continued). Partir	179
XXXVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)	183
XXXIX. INDEFINITE RELATIVES: Qui que ce soit etc. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	187
XL. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES (Continued). CLAUSES OF PUR- POSE AND RESULT, OF TIME AND MANNER	191
XLI. THE PAST SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONS. TENSE- VALUES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE	195
XLII. THE INFINITIVE	199
XLIII. VOICE OF THE INFINITIVE	203
XLIV. PURE INFINITIVES AND PREPOSITIONAL INFINITIVES (Continued)	207
XLV. THE PURE INFINITIVE (Continued). THE INFINITIVE WITH à OR de	211
XLVI. THE INFINITIVE WITH à (Continued)	215
XLVII. THE INFINITIVE WITH de . MISCELLANEOUS NOTES .	219.
XLVIII. VERB-FORMS IN -ant : ADJECTIVE, PARTICIPLE, GER- UND	223
XLIX. PARTICIPLE AND GERUND (Concluded).	227
L. THE VARIATIONS OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE	231
LI. THE PAST PARTICIPLE (Continued)	235
LII. THE PAST PARTICIPLE (Concluded)	239
LIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS	243
LIV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Continued)	247
LV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Continued)	251
LVI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Continued)	255
LVII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Continued)	259
LVIII. COMBINATIONS OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS	263
LIX. Il AND le NEUTER	267

LESSON	PAGE
LX. On, y, en (Continued)	271
LXI. THE DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES	275
LXII. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE	279
LXIII. THE ARTICLES (Continued)	283
LXIV. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (Continued)	287
LXV. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (Continued)	291
LXVI. Le and la BEFORE NAMES OF COUNTRIES	295
LXVII. THE VARIABILITY AND SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES	299
LXVIII. THE POSITION OF DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES	303
LXIX. THE POSITION OF DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES (Continued)	307
LXX. CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS	311
LXXI. CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS (Concluded)	315
LXXII. ADVERBS	319
LXXIII. ADVERBS IN NEGATION	323
LXXIV. NEGATION (Continued)	327
LXXV. NEGATION (Continued)	331
LXXVI. NEGATION (Continued)	335
LXXVII. NEGATION (Concluded)	339

PART II

TYPICAL FRENCH VERBS: FUNDAMENTAL FACTS AND PRINCIPLES	343
TABLES OF TYPICAL VERBS	365
THE GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS	394
ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY	405
FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	441
GENERAL INDEX	473

A STATEMENT TO THE TEACHER

I

A grammar that does not explicitly consider the pronunciation of the language with which it deals almost inevitably gives to its unskilled users the lasting impression that 'grammar' is essentially a matter of good and bad words or forms, and of syntax (see the quotation from Gaston Paris in Lesson XLIV): a sufficient reason for the chapter on pronunciation, with which this book begins. But that chapter also offers bases for various important principles which could not have been made clear without it, and it seemed that however skilled in phonetics the teacher might be, the pupil should have a brief treatise on French pronunciation, convenient to study and to consult.

My experience in various classrooms leads me to think that nearly all students, undergraduate or younger, might profit most by learning first how to pronounce the five selections from *Les Pensées de Riquet* in Lessons I-V, in connection with those lessons in their entirety. Better methods may quickly suggest themselves after an examination of §§ 1-32 and the Lessons immediately following.

The chapter on pronunciation is necessarily of the simplest character, — first, because the science of phonetics has not yet brought forth convincing detailed conclusions as to the phenomena of articulation (a final result which, if attained, will be far beyond the scope of elementary teaching); secondly (and this is the truly compelling reason), because beginners would be befogged rather than enlightened by detailed descriptions of the complicated operations now known or believed to occur whenever any speech-sound is produced. A few elementary facts of physics (acoustics) and of anatomy, a few highly typical physiological facts characterizing the production of a given speech-sound (where and how it is produced), will suffice at

least for approximate identifications, should not be excessively difficult for an attentive beginner, and should give him what seems to me the foundation of all linguistic studies — an accurate realization of the nature of speech-sounds. It is to be hoped that in the following pages (§§ 1-32) this endeavor to explain simply will prove to mean a judicious selection and will not be regarded as a futile pedagogical device. Whoever may desire to go deeper into French phonology can make use of Professor Paul Passy's *Petite Phonétique comparée*, or of his *Sounds of French*, or of various other easily obtainable works, including phonetic 'readers' and charts.¹ Finally, teachers familiar with scientific phonetics and with French pronunciation will find no difficulty in developing the extremely elementary matter contained in this book. The importance which it attaches to pronunciation is not to be measured by the brevity of §§ 1-32.

The phonetic symbols used here are those of the International Phonetic Association, now adopted by thousands of teachers. The velar voiced plosive is represented by [g], and it is assumed that Standard French employs the uvular r [R].

Besides the many French words or locutions whose sounds are considered in §§ 1-32, and in various Lessons, several passages are represented both in their conventional form and by phonetic symbols, and scores of paradigms are printed in both forms whenever the question of pronunciation seems vital. Phonetic exercises are outlined in the Remarks and Suggestions in § 5.

II

Certain features of the seventy-seven lessons into which I have endeavored to put a useful portion of the 'essentials' justify comment.

1. With rare exceptions, words do not occur singly in nature. Hence the absence of those 'vocabularies' with which it has been customary to begin each 'lesson' in textbooks comparable with this. Words are in general more easily remembered from a connected

¹ Phonetic treatises for all stages of study are recorded in the bibliographies of J. Geddes, W. Viëtor, and G. Panconcelli-Calzia. See also *Le Maître phonétique*.

passage than when exhibited as *dissecta membra*. Why offer fragments when, a moment later, they must all be assembled in a natural, or supposedly natural, combination which might have been given at once, without loss of space? Besides, it is well to make acquaintance at the outset with some good author.

2. Having been taken, in most cases, from modern plays, novels, sketches, etc., our examples should not smell of the lamp. However, they are mostly brief, and each conspicuously illustrates some fact under discussion: **Il faut qu'il me parle** does not conspicuously or instructively illustrate either the dative or the subjunctive; such examples are avoided. All examples, except those *intended* to set off archaisms, illustrate living usage, the usage of unaffected conversation and of unaffected writing. Hence the absence, or the special criticism, of (for example) **Il eût fallu que nous en parlussions**, of **Êtes-vous malade?** — **Je le suis**, of **Chanté-je?**, etc.¹

3. Certain rather difficult phases of syntax which are bound to occur on every page of even the easiest French texts have not been evaded and have not been treated with that nonchalance of manner and of method which has done so much to confirm the widespread belief that 'French is an easy language'; but such phases are deferred as long as possible; for example, the subjunctive, the position of descriptive adjectives, etc.

4. My treatment of the verb-groups and their tenses requires a detailed explanation in this Statement; for the confusion of terms which now prevails and makes this phase so obscure has obliged me to take a new course: in accordance with the method of all scientific works, I have endeavored to distinguish everywhere between forms and their functions.

The present state of the nomenclature question, in its bearing on tenses, is displayed by the following table, a representative form from each six-form verb-group sufficing to show what group of forms is referred to by each of the many supposedly defining names now current, or destined to be current if certain new terms triumph.

¹ See the Index under 'Archaisms.'

The following table is based on the *Report of the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature* (a pamphlet, December 1913; the complete report is contained also in the annual volume of the National Educational Society for 1913, published in 1914); 'N.S.' marks the new styles recommended by this Committee.

A TABLE OF REPRESENTATIVE VERB-FORMS WITH
THEIR NAMES

INDICATIVE

<i>Representative Form</i>	<i>Supposedly Defining Name</i>
[1] écrit	a. Present Indicative (présent de l'indicatif)
[2] écrivait	a. Imperfect Indicative (imparfait) b. Imperfect c. N.S. Past Descriptive d. The Narrative Tense (<i>infrequent name</i>)
[3] écrivit	a. Past Definite (passé défini) b. Preterit (prétérit) c. Past Historical d. N.S. Past Absolute
[4] écrira	a. Future Indicative (futur)
[5] écrirait	a. Conditional (conditionnel) b. Simple Conditional (conditionnel simple) c. N.S. (<i>with reference to tense-function</i>) Past Future
[6] a écrit	a. Past Indefinite (passé indéfini , or parfait indéfini) b. N.S. (<i>not really innovating</i>) Present Perfect
[7] avait écrit	a. Pluperfect (plus-que-parfait) b. N.S. Past Perfect
[8] eut écrit	a. Past Anterior (passé antérieur , or parfait antérieur) b. N.S. Second Past Perfect
[9] aura écrit	a. Future Perfect (futur antérieur)
[10] aurait écrit	a. Past Conditional (passé du conditionnel , or conditionnel antérieur) b. Perfect Conditional c. Compound Conditional d. N.S. (<i>with reference to tense-function</i>) Past Future Perfect
[11] a eu écrit	a. Compound Past Anterior (plus-que-parfait surcomposé , or temps surcomposé). (<i>Not mentioned in the Report</i>)

SUBJUNCTIVE

[12] écrive	a. Present Subjunctive (présent du subjonctif)
[13] écrivit	a. Imperfect Subjunctive (imparfait du subjonctif) b. <i>N.S.</i> (<i>not really innovating</i>) Past [Subjunctive]. <i>See 14</i>
[14] ait écrit	a. Past Subjunctive (parfait du subjonctif). <i>See 13</i> b. <i>N.S.</i> (<i>not really innovating</i>) Present Perfect [Subjunctive]
[15] eût écrit	a. Pluperfect Subjunctive (plus-que-parfait du subjonctif) b. <i>N.S.</i> Past Perfect [Subjunctive]

These tables show that there are now current, in English form, not less than twenty-two supposedly defining names for the eleven possible groups exemplified under 'indicative,' including **écrivait** and **aurait écrit**, and not less than seven supposedly defining names for the four possible groups exemplified under 'subjunctive,' of which two (13 and 14), though wholly different, have occasionally the same name ('past subjunctive').

All these twenty-nine or more names have arisen, of course, from impressions due to the commonest, or supposedly commonest, functions or function of each group of forms; but, with the possible exception of the 'past definite' (or 'preterit,' or 'past historical,' or 'past absolute'), not one of these names is always correct as a group identifier and simultaneously as a defining name, and most of them are commonly misnomers in respect to functions.

Thus, to reënforce later examples, **Je pars** may be not only 'present,' but 'future' and 'past absolute'; **Il sort à l'instant** might be called a 'present perfect'; **Il sera malade** need not be 'future,' and **Il serait malade** need not be either 'conditional' or 'past future'; similarly **Il aura écrit** and **Il aurait écrit**. Again, **Elle a écrit** ('past indefinite' or 'present perfect') is the living equivalent for the purely literary **Elle écrivit**. In **S'il écrivait tout de suite** (or **leur écrivait demain**) the form **écrivait** is neither 'imperfect' nor 'past' nor perceptibly 'descriptive.' In **Bien qu'il ait écrit** either a 'past absolute' or a 'present perfect' may be the true *tense*. In **Bien que j'eusse pu le voir** the subjunctive form **eusse pu** may conceal

either *j'avais pu* or *j'aurais pu* (the context would not always enable one to decide). In *Il fallut que nous partissions* (in spoken French, only *Il a fallu que nous partions*) the form *partissions* is traditionally called 'imperfect,' though it obviously may express an instantaneous act; now 'past' is recommended. In *Je ne ferai rien qui pût nuire, en quoi que ce soit, à ces deux hommes*, the form *pût* obviously conceals or expels *pourrait*, or possibly *pourra*. Is this *pût* in the 'imperfect' (or 'past') subjunctive 'tense'? And is it advisable to tell students, e.g., that 'the past indefinite is often used to express past definite ideas' or 'in a past definite sense'?

How shall we get out of this maze and avoid misnomers (often gross) in teaching French?

Me judice, there is only one way, and that way is as practical as it is simple, clear, and logical: it is to identify each of the five non-subjunctive groups containing (commonly) six forms by a brief and easily learnable designation which shall concern only the forms as *forms*, and contain no intimation as to functions. Therefore the simple 'indicative' groups are designated with the letters *A B C D E*, following the conventional order of conjugating. Hence *A* for the group represented by *écrit*, *B* for that represented by *écrivait*, etc. Containing a past participle, the groups represented by *a écrit*, by *avait écrit*, etc., are designated by *A p.p.*, *B p.p.*, etc. The subjunctive forms are designated as belonging to the living groups, with *L.S.* (living subjunctive) for *écrive* etc. and *L.S. p.p.* for *ait écrit* etc., while the obsolete or obsolescent forms are designated with *O.S.* for the group represented by *écrivit*, and with *O.S. p.p.* for the group represented by *eût écrit*.

These abbreviations are to be regarded purely as non-defining identifiers of groups of *forms*; the *functions* of those forms (fifteen possible groups) may be described by any of the twenty-nine or more defining names now current or likely to become so. However, our use of these non-committal abbreviations is not such as to force any one to employ them against his will, and it will be seen that the memory is not taxed unduly, though tests have shown that they can be learned in a few hours at most, much more readily than the conventional names.

5. For students not yet in college, most of the seventy-seven lessons will be too long ; but shorter assignments are possible. Thus Lesson I may be cut in two at § 38, Lesson II at the end of § 43, c, etc. The exercises may likewise be abbreviated.

6. In colleges or universities, approximately one year's work should suffice for the whole book.

7. Certain exercises which at first glance may look too hard will be found, upon closer examination, to follow with easing fidelity various models and examples.

8. Queries are frequent, and some quizzes in French (*questionnaires*) are offered ; but these latter become monotonous in print, occupy a great deal of space, and can be readily invented by anyone who speaks French.

9. The notes over each vocabulary should be read by every student at the outset.

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA

LIVING FRENCH

TO THE
ASSOCIATION

PART I

SOME ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

AN INTRODUCTORY SURVEY

THE PRONUNCIATION OF FRENCH

1. Grammar deals with the *sounds* and *forms* of *words* and with the principles underlying the *idiomatic expression* of *ideas*. Ideas can be idiomatically expressed in one word, as 'yes,' or in a combination of words called a *phrase*, *clause*, or *sentence*.

a. The study of *speech-sounds*, in general, is called *phonetics*; the study of the sounds of a particular language, as French, is called *phonology*. The study of *word-forms* is called *morphology*; morphology deals with prefixes, suffixes, inflectional endings, etc. The study of the relations that words assume when they are combined is called *syntax*, and we apply this name also to a given arrangement required for the idiomatic expression of a given thought, just as by phonology and morphology we often understand a given *state* of sounds or a given *state* of forms, as something that we may study if we will. A language is of course intangible, but can be seen or heard and has an anatomy whose character and functions it is the business of grammar to describe. For those who have not been enabled to acquire a foreign language *naturally*, by the long and slow process that we go through in acquiring our mother tongue, a knowledge of grammar should afford systematic and convenient means of avoiding many mistakes; and it serves to develop whatever linguistic talent we happen to possess.¹

ILLUSTRATION. *Quelles villes as-tu vues?* means, 'What cities have you seen?' Here we have a series of visible symbols representing a series

¹ § 1 is amplified by the passages quoted in §§ 157, 249, 254.

of sounds whose character may be examined (phonology); also a series of forms, for **Quelles** is the feminine plural form of the interrogative adjective **quel**, while **villes** is the plural of **ville** (feminine) and **vues** is one of the four forms of the past participle of **voir**, a verb meaning 'see,' **as-tu** being the form of the second person singular, present indicative, of **avoir** 'have,' whereas the form for the second person plural is **avez-vous**. The idiomatic arrangement **Quelles villes as-tu vues ?**, producing an intelligible idea, is syntax, and our analysis of this arrangement belongs to the branch of study called syntax.

The sounds of a language are described as *vowels* and *consonants*; its words are classified as *parts of speech* (nouns, pronouns, etc.), defined according to their several functions. We shall deal first with the production of *sounds*.

THE ORGANS OF SPEECH

2. Speech is produced by the various *vocal organs* which govern our breath as it issues from our *lungs* and passes through our *mouth* or *nose*, or through both. These organs are the *lungs*, the *windpipe*, the *larynx*, the *lower jaw*, every part of the *mouth*, and the *nasal passages*.

a. The larynx is the upper part of the windpipe; it forms what we call Adam's apple. Across the larynx, from front to back, and forming part of its walls, run two elastic bands called the *vocal cords*. When we are merely breathing, these two shelflike folds are lax and are drawn back so as to make a wide opening, the *glottis*; but when we are speaking, they are in constant action. Their free edges then approach each other so as almost to close the glottis, and they vibrate so rapidly as to produce the musical effect called *voice*. In speech, they cease to vibrate audibly only when we happen to form a *voiceless consonant* (as **k**, **t**, or **p**), or when we whisper.

b. The back of the mouth, just above the larynx and largely visible, is called the *pharynx*. Above the visible part of the pharynx is a cavity from whose top proceed the *nasal passages*. These begin, internally, at two openings called the *posterior nares* (rear nostrils), pass over the roof of the mouth, and end in the *nostrils* proper, through which a good deal of their structure can be seen with the

help of an electric light. In front of the pharynx, and joined to its sides, begins the roof of the mouth. The roof of the mouth, called the *palate*, is hard and ribbed from the front portion of the *gums* to an area whose limits can be most satisfactorily ascertained by touching all its accessible parts. This rear area, called the *soft palate*, terminates in a flexible, easily visible appendage, called the *uvula*, which hangs rather loose when the rear of the nasal passages is open, but has swung backward and upward when this opening is closed. When we are speaking, the uvula is constantly in motion, now raised and thrust back against the pharynx, now lowered; with the help of an electric light, some of its movements may be advantageously observed.

c. The *lower jaw*, the *tongue*, *gums*, *teeth*, *cheeks*, and *lips* are also continually at work in the formation of *speech*. Every part of the mouth has its function, and, like the larynx and the nasal passages, the whole mouth acts as a *resonance chamber*, thus being part of a wonderful musical instrument which has many sound-boards and in a well-built speaker or singer can produce an almost limitless variety of sounds or noises. When language observes certain regular intervals — that is, regular variations of pitch — and when it follows a particular beat, called 'time,' it is *song*; when no such marked regularity is observed, it is simply *speech*.

SPEECH-SOUNDS

3. When our vocal cords are made to vibrate we hear a sound which is called a *vowel* if this sound is duly modified by the tongue, lips, etc., and if there is no distinctly audible friction or stopping of the breath. When the breath is so checked or hindered in its passage as to produce a noise, we get various effects called *consonants*.¹

¹ Recent investigations have revealed that 'the difference between noise and [musical] tone is one of degree. . . . Noise is a sound of too short duration or too complex in structure to be analyzed or understood by the ear. . . . In some instances noises are due to a changing period, producing the effect of non-periodicity; but by far the greater number of noises which are continuous are merely complex and only apparently irregular, their analysis being more or less difficult.' (D. C. Miller.)

a. The Terms Vowel and Consonant Defined. Sounds with a maximum of voice (or musical resonance) are *vowels*; those with no voice, or merely supported by voice, are *consonants*.

For example, *a*, *o*, *e*, are called vowels because, whether we give them an English or a French value, they are due to definite modifications of the breath, to the shape of the sound-wave which strikes our ear, and are not accompanied by any distinctly audible element of noise. On the other hand, *b* and *d*, for example, are consonants, for neither can be produced without closing some part of the mouth; *p* and *t* differ from *b* and *d* only in that they are voiceless,—that is, pure noises,—whereas *b* and *d* are accompanied by musical sound.

b. Pronounce vigorously the vowels, but *not* the consonants, that you *hear* in the words 'boot,' 'boat,' 'dog,' 'arm,' 'at,' 'bet,' 'fate,' 'it,' 'meet,' holding the tips of your fingers gently against your throat so as to feel the vibrations of your larynx; in each case the resonance should be purely musical, the element of noise being too slight to be perceived if present. Now pronounce vigorously the pairs of voiced and voiceless consonants, *b p*, *d t*, *g k*, *z s*, *v f*, as they sound in 'bib,' 'pip,' 'did,' 'trot,' 'gag,' 'kick,' 'zoo,' 'sisy,' 'valve,' and 'fife,' isolating them completely from the vowels, *not* giving them their conventional alphabetical names but purely and simply the character which they have in the words quoted, and noting carefully how vibration occurs, or does not occur, in each pair; note also how each of these consonants is due to an audible stopping or rubbing of the breath, according to whether the consonant is explosive or fricative. Now pronounce, in the same experimental manner, *l m n*, and a well-trilled *r* [rrrr], giving to each of these consonants *not* its conventional alphabetical name but the character it has as the first or last element of *any* word—for example, in 'lull,' 'mum,' 'nun,' 'r(r)oar(rr) at': you will observe that these four consonants are more or less vocalic, 'musical'; whereas *p*, *t*, *k*, are pure noises, commonly known as 'stops'; and whereas *f* and *s*, though capable of being prolonged until the breath is exhausted, are not accompanied by vibration of the vocal cords,

A consonant produced by merely hindering the breath, as **l, m, n, r, v, f, z, s**, may be kept audible and nearly uniform as long as that breath can be made to last; hence is a continuant. A consonant produced by stopping the breath, then suddenly letting it escape, is necessarily instantaneous, and can be kept audible only by a series of explosions. If you have ever observed how a stutterer mispronounces his continuants and explosives (or 'plosives'), you should now understand how he mispronounces, for example, 'T-t-take fff-four or fffff-five, old mm-man; I 'vvve g-g-got p-p-plenty mmm-more where thth-those k-k-came from.' The continuants would come out in waves; the plosives would be marked by complete discontinuations, however short.

c. One more general observation concerning the various types of vowels and consonants, *not* the symbols, but what we hear. Vowels, and even consonants, may be pronounced with varying degrees of openness: that is, with the mouth half open, as for [a] in the French word **par** 'by'; with a very narrow opening, as for [i], as in **si** 'if'; or with complete closure, as for [m] or [p]. [a], as in **là** 'there,' is an ideal type of vowel; [i], as in **y** 'there,' is almost consonantal and easily becomes [j], as in **il y a** 'there is,' rapidly pronounced [ilia] or [ilja], getting here, before [a], the character of our **y** in 'you.'

All vowels are more or less open; all consonants are more or less close.

SOUNDS AND SYMBOLS

4. The terms 'vowels' and 'consonants' are generally employed to designate not only *sounds* but *symbols*—that is, the 'letters' used to represent sounds. In our words 'rude,' 'mute,' 'pure,' 'hub,' 'hurt,' 'full,' and 'busy,' one symbol (u) has to represent seven different sounds; c has two totally different values in 'cent' and 'cant.' In general, English is, in its spelling, a highly misrepresented language, so highly misrepresented that 'potatoes' can be spelled **peauxphtheightoughze** with authority for all these twenty-one letters. French spelling is much more consistent than ours, but far from

ideal, for we find the close vowel [o] represented by **o** in **mot** 'word,' but by **au** in **saut** 'leap,' and by **eau** in **eau** 'water.' So **t** has two different values in **pétition** and is silent in **mot**, whereas **c** and **q** have the same value in **coq** 'cock,' i.e. [k], and symbolize [s] and [k] in **cinq** 'five,' except when **cinq** is pronounced [sē]; etc., etc.

A thoroughly good alphabet has one symbol for each sound, and only one.

REMARK. To be wholly accurate, a phonetic system would have to be extremely complicated, far too complicated for general use; but we can satisfy ourselves with close approximations.

As we must deal scientifically with French pronunciation, not only for its own sake but also because pronunciation is often involved in the discussion of other matters, and as the sounds of French can be represented and explained far more simply if we use one symbol, and only one, for each sound, that is, if we spell scientifically, we shall employ henceforward an accurate system of phonetic symbols, and our system will be that of the International Phonetic Association; for this system is the most accurate in general use, is simple, clear, and is being used by an increasingly large number of language students throughout the world. Furthermore, by frequently substituting phonetic spelling for the conventional symbols by which French is represented and misrepresented we may soon develop a keen appreciation of the true nature of speech-sounds. To learn to pronounce any language correctly we must hear it spoken by an educated native or by some one who 'speaks like a native'; or, if this privilege is beyond our reach, good phonographic records, when not too stogy, are excellent guides.¹ However varied, the sounds of French are limited to a few score of marked types, and once these have been learned, a phonetic alphabet offers us a consistent system which is easy to understand and easy to apply not only to French but to other languages.

¹ French phonographic records, with corresponding printed texts, can be obtained from the various agents. Realistic prose is preferable to verse, and song-records should not be used in elementary work.

THE CONVENTIONAL SYMBOLS

5. In French books and in French handwriting we find nearly the same conventional symbols or 'letters' as in our own — that is, our alphabet. But these symbols have not the same values as our symbols, though they often have very similar values, and the French give to each letter a name differing more or less from our conventional name. Furthermore, the French constantly employ various *diacritical marks* which are foreign to us. Thus, an acute accent, as in ~~in *été* 'been,' indicates a close e [e]; whereas a grave accent, as in *très* 'very,' indicates an open e [ɛ].~~ A circumflex accent, as in *hôte* 'host,' indicates a long close vowel, if o, or a long open vowel, if e, as in *tête* 'head' etc., though exceptions must be noted. A cedilla, as in *ça* 'that,' gives c the value of s [s]. A ~~tréma, or diæresis, as in *héroïne*, means that the group oi contains, not the sound [wa], as in *loi* 'law,'~~ but two separate vowels. All the diacritics employed in French are adequately represented in our various French texts, and should be studied in connection with our phonetic transcriptions.

REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS. Orthography ('correct writing')—*l'orthographe*—is the art of spelling (of 'writing') in the manner prescribed by authoritative dictionaries compiled from books whose authors, in nearly all cases, have followed old traditions. Therefore 'to spell correctly' is to know how to reproduce traditional ways of representing present sounds. How can one learn the almost endless inconsistencies and eccentricities of this system? In part, by memorizing them through the eye—a process which may be shortened somewhat by studying lists of orthographic variants; better, by making such lists oneself. Here the following suggestions are offered:

1. First, make sure of the phonetic symbols in § 6. Examples to be memorized are given in § 6, and elsewhere in this book.
2. Retranscribe, phonetically, the passages represented both conventionally and phonetically in our Lessons or elsewhere, verifying your results.
3. Transcribe phonetically other passages for which no phonetic transcription is offered, and have your independent transcriptions verified.
4. Note carefully how all phonetic transcriptions differ from their conventionally printed sources. In the source strike out all silent letters and encircle all indivisible groups which represent only one sound.

TABLE OF PHONETIC SYMBOLS

6. The names of these symbols are merely *what we hear* in a given word. The various *conventional* ways of representing these phonetic symbols can be illustrated with only one or two examples in this Table.

[a]	à 'to,' chat 'cat'	[R]	rit 'laughs' (<i>uvular</i>)
[ɑ]	mât 'mast,' pas 'step'	[s]	si 'if'
[æ]	as in Engl. 'add' <i>â - /</i>	[ʃ]	chou 'cabbage'
[b]	bœc 'beak'	[t]	tu 'thou,' 'you'
[d]	du 'of the'	[u]	ou 'or'
[e]	et 'and,' été 'been'	[ʉ]	nu(ʃ)t 'night,' tu(ʃ) 'killed'
[ɛ]	met 'puts,' laid 'ugly'	[v]	avec 'with'
[ə]	de 'of,' je 'I'	[y]	dur 'hard' <i>duw</i>
[f]	fil 'thread'	[w]	ou(i) 'yes'
[g]	gai 'merry'	[z]	zéro 'zero'
[h]	Engl. 'he'	[ʒ]	je 'I,' âge 'age'
[i]	si 'if'	[ɑ̃]	an 'year,' en 'in' (<i>nasal</i>)
[j]	yak 'yak,' bille 'ball'	[ɔ̃]	bon 'good' (<i>nasal</i>)
[k]	coq 'cock'	[ɛ̃]	main 'hand,' fin 'end' (<i>nasal</i>)
[l]	lit 'bed'	[œ̃]	un 'one' (<i>nasal</i>)
[ʎ]	South. Fr. bille 'ball'	[:]	means that the vowel (or con- sonant) preceding is long
[m]	mou 'soft'	[ː]	means half-long
[n]	né 'born'	[ˑ]	marks a tense vowel
[ɲ]	digne 'worthy'	[ˑ]	marks a lax vowel
[o]	hôte 'host,' au 'to the'	[]	(square brackets) enclose all phonetic transcriptions
[ɔ]	robe 'dress'	()	means that of two pronuncia- tions either is possible, ac- cording to circumstances
[œ]	peur 'fear,' œuf 'egg'		
[ø]	feu 'fire'		
[p]	pas 'step'		
[r]	rit 'laughs' (<i>tip of tongue</i>)		

a. Other symbols which are occasionally required :

[ð]	Engl. 'then'	[θ]	Engl. 'thin'
[ŋ]	Engl. 'sing'	[/]	rising inflection
[ɹ]	South. Engl. and East. U.S.A., as in 'red'	[\]	falling inflection
[ɹ̥]	designates a voice-murmur, the faintest and vaguest type of vowel, merely voice	[⁰] or [o]	means voiceless
		[ˑ]	indicates that the syllable im- mediately following is to be stressed

VOWELS

Normal Vowels

7. French has eight *normal vowels*. These are formed in the mouth only. They represent eight well-defined *qualities of sound*, subject to slight variations of quality (vowel-color) which we may generally disregard. Each may be either short or long, or half-long.

a. The following diagram, corresponding to a sagittal (vertical lengthwise) section of the mouth, indicates whether the tongue is arched in the back of the mouth, as for [u], lying comparatively flat, as for [a], or raised toward the front of the hard palate, as for [i], etc. Vowels are called *back vowels* or *front vowels*, *high vowels* or *low vowels*, according to the most striking position that the tongue takes in their formation.

PHARYNX	SOFT PALATE		HARD PALATE		LIPS
	Closed	u		i	
Half-closed	o		e		
Half-open	ɔ		ɛ		
Open	ɑ		a		

b. For [u] the lips must be protruded and rounded so as to form a small circular opening; the back of the tongue is raised toward the soft palate, but not so high as to produce audible friction.

Examples: *tout* [tu] 'all,' *court* [ku:r] 'short.' Close English equivalents in 'toot' and 'moon' (Northern English or American pronunciation. This vowel does not regularly occur in the south of England).

c. For [o], close o, the lips are protruded as for [u], but with a slightly larger opening; the back of the tongue is arched toward the soft palate, but not quite so high as for [u].

Examples: *mot* [mo] 'word,' *trône* [tro:n] 'throne,' *jaune* [ʒo:n] 'yellow.' Close English equivalents in 'note' and 'bone,' but the English vowel is not always well rounded (cf. *ò*, above) and is usually followed by a feeble [u].

d. For [ɔ], open *o*, the back of the tongue is lowered still more and the lip-opening is further enlarged.

Examples: *dot* [dɔt] 'dowry,' *fort* [fɔ:r] 'strong.' Approximated by the vowel of 'hub' (American pronunciation), but a little nearer the vowel of 'cord.' Out of 'rubber' (in whist) the French have made *robre* [ʁɔbr].

e. For [ɑ], close *a*, the tongue lies a little lower than for [ɔ] and is not quite so far forward as for [a], but its tip may touch the base of the lower front teeth; the lips are almost neutral; the mouth is wider open in front than for [a], but less open toward the back. Experiment: Hold your hollowed palm loosely over your mouth while you are producing [ɑ], as in 'father.' Now, without making any other movement, keep removing and replacing it; the result will be alternately [a] and [ɑ], [ɑ] being exemplified by *pas* [pa] 'step' and by *pâte* [pa:t] 'dough,' [a] by *à* 'to' and by *art* [a:r] 'art,' with a vowel midway between our *a* in 'add' and our *a* in 'father,' (which is approximately the [ɑ] of *pas* and *pâte*). This experiment, which should be repeated with every type of vowel, will show us that the [ɔ] of *cor* 'horn' is less open than the [ɑ] of *pas* and *pâte*.

f. For [a] the tongue must rest against the lower front teeth, and may even be thrust out over them; the corners of the lips are spread a little further apart than for [ɑ]. See *e* and repeat the experiment therein suggested.

Examples: *va* [va] 'goes,' *mare* [ma:r] 'pool.' This vowel does not occur in Standard English.

REMARK. The vowel [æ], as in 'add,' is articulated between [a] and [ɛ]. Note the character of [ɛ], § 10, *c*.

g. For [ɛ], open *e*, raise the blade (front) of the tongue slightly toward the front of the hard palate, making a somewhat longer and therefore narrower lip-opening than for [a].

Examples: *est* [ɛ] 'is,' *aïse* [ɛ:z] 'ease.' Approximated by our *e* in 'bet' and in 'held,' but not so open.

h. For [ɛ], close *e*, the blade of the tongue should be raised still further toward the front of the hard palate and the lips must be spread somewhat more than for [ɛ].

Examples: **été** [ete] 'been,' **maison** [me:zɔ̃] 'house.' Approximated by our **a** in 'fate'; but 'fate,' as usually pronounced, does not contain a pure [e].

REMARK. [e] is almost never long, for it always occurs in unstressed syllables (§ 24, *b*) or is final (§ 24, *a*). Opinions differ as to the relative heights of the tongue in articulating [ɛ] and [e].

i. For [i] the tip of the tongue is raised toward the front of the hard palate so close as almost to touch it, but is bent downward toward or against the lower teeth; the lips form a somewhat longer, narrower opening than for [e] — the opening characteristic of a smile.

Examples: **vie** [vi] 'life,' **machine** [maʃin] 'machine,' **tige** [ti:ʒ] 'stem.' Closely akin to **ee** in 'meet' or to **i** in 'machine,' but always pure.

Abnormal Vowels

8. French has three *abnormal* or *mixed vowels*. These, like the normal vowels (§ 7), are formed in the mouth; but, unlike the normal vowels, they result from a conflict of positions. 'In passing from one normal vowel to another the respective positions of the tongue and the lips are adjusted so that they both raise or both lower the pitch [which rises as we pass from **u** to **i**]. In the case of the abnormal vowels, on the other hand, these two actions tend to counteract one another.' (P. Passy.)

a. The following diagram adds the abnormal or mixed vowels to the normal or unmixed vowels. See § 7, *a*.

	SOFT PALATE	HARD PALATE	Lips
Closed	u	y i	
Half-closed	o	ø e	
Half-open	ɔ	œ ε	
Open	ɑ a		

b. For [œ] place the tongue as for [ɛ] and spread the lips as for [ɔ].

Examples: **neuf** [nœf] 'new,' **feminine neuve** [nœ:v].

c. For [ø] place the tongue as for [e] and round the lips as for [o].

Examples: **fameux** [famø] 'famous,' *feminine* **fameuse** [famøz].

d. For [y] place the tongue as for [i] and round the lips as for [u].

Examples: **nu** [ny] 'naked,' **dur-e** [dy:r] 'hard.'

REMARK. The German ü, as in *Flüsse* 'rivers,' arises from a mixing of the two lax vowels [i] and [ü]. See § 32, b.

Weak Vowels

9. The eleven vowels just described are tense; hence their exact quality is unmistakable and they may be called *strong vowels*. If we relax somewhat in pronouncing [ɔ], [a], [e], and [ø] or [œ], we get four *weak vowels* which occur only in unstressed syllables.

a. [ɔ̃]. Examples: **coteau** [kòto] 'hillock,' **promis** [pròmɪ] 'promised.'

REMARK. [ɔ̃] is often heard in our word 'obey.'

b. [à]. Examples: **mari** [màri] 'husband,' **château** [ʃàto] 'castle.'

c. [è]. Examples: **effort** [èfɔ:r] 'effort,' **esprit** [èspri] 'wit,' etc.

REMARK. [è] hovers between [e] and [ɛ].

d. [ə]. Examples: **petit** [pəti or pti] (commonly printed **p'tit** in realistic novels etc.) 'small,' **mesure** [məzy:r or mzy:r] 'measure,' **je me le dis** [ʒə m(ə) l(ə) di or ʒmldi] 'I say it to myself,' **votre train** [votrə trɛ] 'your train,' **monsieur** [məsʃə or mʃʃə] 'sir,' **je ne résiste pas** [ʒə nə rezistə pa or ʒ(ə)n rezistə pa] 'I don't resist,' **peut-être pas** [pətɛ:trə pa or pte:trə pa] 'perhaps not,' etc.

REMARK. [ə] is one of the most frequent of French sounds and is also extremely common in English, as in 'McClintock' [mækklɪntək], 'fanatic' [fə-nætɪk], 'elephant' [eləfənt], 'athletic' (mispronounced) [æθlətɪk], etc. In French, a so-called 'mute e'—**e muet**—is silent except where it is required to ease the pronunciation of a difficult group of consonants, as in **maître clerc** [mɛ:trɛklɛ:r] 'head clerk,' **tournesol** [turnəsɔl] 'sunflower,' etc. For the same reason, an [ə] is occasionally pronounced where no **e muet** is written, as in **lorsque** [lɔrsəkə] 'when' etc. Such an [ə] is called an *accessory vowel*, or a *glide*.

The Nasal Vowels

10. If, in pronouncing any of the *oral vowels* (§§ 7-9), two brightly polished *cold* mirrors be held close to the mouth and nostrils, only one of them — that near the mouth — will be dimmed by a spot of moisture. This occurs because the soft palate and uvula (§ 2, *b*) are raised and thrust back so as entirely to shut off the nasal passages, thus forcing the breath to pass wholly through the mouth. But when we pronounce any of the *nasal vowels* the uvula and soft palate are lowered and retracted so that our breath passes through both mouth and nose, causing both mirrors to be dimmed. (This experiment may be varied: see the end of § 14.) French has four nasal vowels.

a. [ã]. Examples: **an** [ã] 'year,' **ange** [ã:ʒ] 'angel,' **encre** [ã:kr] 'ink.'

b. [ɔ̃]. Examples: **bon** [bɔ̃] 'good,' **monde** [mɔ̃:d] 'world,' **nombre** [nɔ̃:br] 'number.'

c. [ɛ̃]. Examples: **main** [mɛ̃] 'hand,' **essaim** [èsɛ̃] 'swarm,' **plein** [plɛ̃] 'full,' **fin** [fɛ̃] 'end,' **soin** [swɛ̃] 'care,' **peindre** [pɛ̃:dr] '(to) paint,' **mince** [mɛ̃:s] 'thin,' **moindre** [mwɛ̃:dr] 'least.'

d. [œ̃]. Examples: **un lac** [œ̃ lak] 'a lake,' **humble** [œ̃:bl] 'humble.'

REMARK. However these four nasal vowels may be spelled, they are respectively a nasalized [ɑ], a nasalized [ɔ] (approaching [o]), a nasalized [ɛ] (more nearly [æ]), and a nasalized [œ].

e. **General Observation.** In English we have no true nasal vowels. The so-called *nasal twang* is due not to 'talking through the nose' but to catarrhal conditions or to strangely simulated catarrhal effects, or to various other unhealthy conditions, real or merely simulated, which cause the exponents of this phenomenon to let the nose resonate as if it were *dogged* or *stopped*. To verify this statement, pinch both nostrils and then attempt to pronounce *any* word or series of words; the result will be a continuous twang *if* the uvula is allowed to sag or to hang as for the nasal consonants [m] and [n], or as for any of the legitimate nasal vowels. We may ruin a pure

nasal tone, or produce a bad nasal tone, by not allowing the stream of air to flow freely through the nose, just as we may ruin or mar any other vowel or consonant by bad articulation. A violin with frayed strings or a cracked sound-board cannot produce sweet tones.

Diphthongs

11. A *diphthong* is a sound containing two vowels pronounced in one syllable (§ 27). Our English words 'I,' 'my,' 'boy,' 'day,' 'low,' and 'oar' seem to untrained ears to contain only one vowel, but each of them is characterized by a fluctuation of vowel-quality. If we try to prolong for a second or two what is incorrectly called a 'long i' (e.g. 'I') we perceive that it consists of a stressed vowel like [a] or [ɑ] followed by an unstressed vowel resembling [ɪ] or [è]. The other sounds noted above show similar fluctuations. In all cases, a diphthong is such a compound of two sounds, whether we *write* it with only one letter or with more than one. Thus 'vane,' 'vain,' and 'vein' are commonly pronounced not [ve:n] but [vè'n], and we tend to diphthongize most of our stressed vowels, especially before non-explosive consonants.

a. French has various *symbols* which once represented true diphthongs, as *eu* in *fleur* [floc̄:R] 'flower,' *ou* in *four* [fu:R] 'oven,' *au* in *saut* [so] 'leap,' *ai* in *mai* [mɛ] 'May,' etc., but these various digraphs now represent only one sound. Similarly, the trigraph *eau* in *beau* 'beautiful,' etc., no longer represents a triphthong but merely [o].

b. In French, diphthongs may occur in rapid utterance when words having contiguous vowels join them in a single syllable: *Où as-tu été?* — *A Orange et à Orléans* ('Where have you been? — In Orange and in Orleans') may be [uat̄ete? — aʁã:zeɔrlɛ̃jã], with two diphthongs and a triphthong. Also, a diphthong occurs occasionally inside words; thus, [pɛ̃zã] represents a frequent pronunciation of *peyaan* 'peasant,' and *pays* 'country' may be pronounced either [pɛ̃] or [peji]; etc. But such cases are exceptional.

CONSONANTS

12. As we have said (§ 3), all consonants contain an element of noise, produced by friction or stoppage. Hence each consonant may be called a *continuant* or *plosive*, according to its formation. Furthermore, each consonant may be *voiced* or *voiceless* (§ 3, *b*).

a. The following diagram shows the place and the manner of articulation of the French consonants.

		CHARACTERISTIC PLACE OR POSITION OF THE ARTICULATION						
		Glottal	Uvular	Velar	Palatal	Dental	Labial	
							Labiodental Bilabial	
MANNER OF THE ARTICULATION	Plosive			k g		t d	p b	
	Rolled		r			r		
	Nasal				ɲ	n	m	
	Lateral				(Δ)	l		
	Fricative	h			j	ʃ ʒ s z	f v	ç w

Plosives

13. The French *plosives* differ from ours in some important respects.

a. For [k g] the back of the tongue is pressed against the front of the soft palate, somewhat further forward than in English, and no puff of air or blowing (off-glide) should be heard after the explosion.

Examples: **qui** [ki] 'who,' **quoi** [kwa] 'what,' **cacao** [kakao] 'cocoa,' **bac** [bak] 'ferry,' **guide** [gi:d] 'guide,' **zigzag** [zigzag] 'zigzag.'

NOTE. Before a front vowel, as [i], this consonant is articulated further forward than before a back vowel, as [u]. Other consonants are subject to analogous shifts of position.

REMARKS. English-speaking persons may learn to pronounce this *velar plosive* correctly thus: Hold in your palm, close to your lips and level with them, a bit of tissue-paper about one inch square; then pronounce vigorously *qui*, *quoi*, and other words containing [k], or merely [kikiki, kakaka] and the like. If the bit of paper merely flutters, as a rule the right consonant has been produced, though a good French [k] *can* be produced with a puff that will blow the paper out of the hand. The same experiment may be applied to [t] and [p].

English-speaking persons (also Germans) generally fail to pronounce French [k t p] correctly because they allow the glottis (§ 2, *a*) to remain open after the explosion has occurred, so that breath [h], without vibration of the vocal cords, is heard before the following sound, usually a vowel, becomes audible. 'Hence a German, pronouncing the syllable *pa*, for example, close to a lighted candle, will extinguish the flame; not so a Frenchman.'¹

The candle is extinguished during the voiceless off-glide which incorrectly follows the voiceless plosive (here [p]) before the voiced on-glide of the vowel (here [ɑ]) has begun. Voiceless off-glides are properly audible in French only when they follow a voiceless consonant and are truly final. To French ears they are very disagreeable if heard where they do not belong.

b. The dental plosive [t d] is commonly formed by pressing the whole rim of the tongue against the gums, so as to make a contact in the form of a half-ellipse, the tip being curved downward toward or against the lower front teeth. The puff or blowing already mentioned (§ 13, *a*) and explained (Remarks) must be avoided.

Examples: *titre* [titʁ] 'title,' *ton* [tɔ̃] 'tone,' *tête* [tɛ:t] 'head,' *dite* [dit] 'said,' *dada* [dada] 'hobby,' *vide* [vi:d] 'empty.'

c. For the labial plosive [p b] close the lips firmly, then produce a sharp explosion, again avoiding the voiceless medial off-glide which is so often heard after our English *p* before vowels.

Examples: *papa* [papa] 'father,' *cap* [kap] 'cape' (of land), *cape* [kap] 'hood,' *bis* [bi:s] 'twice,' *bébé* [bebe] 'baby,' *nabab* [nabab] 'nabob.'

d. QUERY. Why are [k g], [t d], and [p b] given in pairs? What is meant by 'voiced' and by 'voiceless'? See § 3, *a* and *b*.

¹ Rousselot and Laclotte, *Précis de prononciation française*, p. 63.

Nasal Consonants

14. The three *nasal consonants* [m n ɲ] are formed by three different mouth-closures, each of which coincides with a free escape of air through the nose.

a. For [m] the closure is the same as for [p b], but there is no explosion.

Examples: **même** [mɛ:m] 'same,' **immense** [im(m)ɑ̃s] 'immense,' **hymne** [imn] 'hymn,' **automnal** [ɔ̃tɔmnal] 'autumnal.'

REMARK. A bad cold in the head stops the nasal passages and thus transforms [m] into [b], and it is often dubious whether a sheep's bleat is [m:ɛɛɛ] or [m:bɛɛɛ] or [bɛɛɛ].

b. For [n] the closure is the same as for [d], but there is no explosion, and the air passes freely through the nose.

Examples: **nid** [ni] 'nest,' **étonné** [etɔne] 'astonished,' **âne** [ɑ:n] 'donkey.'

c. For [ɲ], called **n mouillée**,¹ the front of the tongue must be arched firmly against the hard palate, the uvula being well lowered so as to allow the breath to escape freely through the nose as for [n]. This consonant, called *palatal* because it is due to a very marked contact with the *hard* palate, may end a syllable.

Examples: **mignon** [miɲ] 'darling,' **digne** [di:ɲ] 'worthy,' **champagne** [ʃɑ̃pa:ɲ] 'champagne' (wine).

REMARK. In his *General Phonetics* (p. 15), Mr. G. Noël-Armfield says: 'The passage of the air through the nose may be easily demonstrated by smokers who inhale. If, after inhaling, they pronounce [m], [n], or [ɲ] they will see that the nasal passage is open, whilst the oral is closed. Non-smokers may prove the passage of the air through the nose with the aid of a visiting card and a piece of cold glass. . . . One edge of the card should be placed horizontally under the nose, against the upper lip; the other should be pressed against the glass. When these nasal consonants are uttered it will be found that only the portion of the glass above the card will be dimmed by condensation of the moist breath.' Try this experiment and see § 10.

¹ Past participle feminine of **mouiller** [muje] '(to) wet, moisten,' — a popular description having no scientific value; 'hard,' 'soft,' and other like designations are likewise to be avoided.

[l] and [Λ]

15. 'In the case of **L** the soft side edges of the tongue are moved by the stream of air, and, without completely interrupting the tone, produce inequalities in its strength.' (Helmholtz.) Hence the name 'lateral.' We must add that for a French **l** [l] the tongue is placed as for [t d n], so that it is much more like our English initial **l** than like our **l** after a vowel; furthermore, French [l] is formed nearer the teeth than is our **l** in, say, 'lee' or 'milk,' the **l** of 'lee' (initial **l**) being closer to the French type. Of course [l] is accompanied by a free outstreaming of air along either side, or both sides, of the tongue. It should be as clear as possible; note how many persons make 'all right' sound like *aw right*.

Examples: **lit** [li] 'bed,' **ville** [vil] 'city,' **à Lille** [a li:l] 'at Lille,' **illégal** [illegal] 'illegal.'

a. For [Λ], called **l mouillée**, the French that we are studying, that is, Northern French, substitutes [j], as in saying '**l mouillée**' [l muje], a consonant differing little from our **y** in 'you.' A true [Λ] is produced by pressing the front of the tongue against the hard palate approximately as for [ɲ], but its tip should rest against the lower teeth and its soft edges should vibrate as for [l]. Though still recommended by various authorities, [Λ] is wholly obsolete in Northern France and attempts to pronounce it usually result in [lj]; thus [mulje] for [muje] '(to) wet.' Compare [miljø] or, commonly, [mijø] for **milieu** 'middle,' and [miljɔ̃] or [mijɔ̃] for **million** 'million.'

[r] and [R]

16. Instead of the *trilled* **r** [r], formed by a rapid, plainly visible vibration of the tip of the tongue, Parisians and most city Frenchmen employ a *glottal* **r** [ʁ] or a *uvular* **r** [R]. The uvular **r** [R] is produced by the vibration of the uvula against the back of the tongue.

Examples of each type: **rire** [ri:r] '(to) laugh,' **rouge** [ru:ʒ] 'red,' **terrible** [tèr(r)i:bl]; *better* [ri:r], [ru:ʒ], [tèr(R)i:bl].

REMARKS. The trilled *r* [r] is almost universal outside the larger cities, and is preferred by singers and actors when 'realism' does not call for [ʀ] or [ʁ], for [r] was formerly universal and is easier, less wearing, to pronounce. [r] is frequent in England when a vowel immediately follows; in the United States [r] is used in telephone central offices.

In Southern England, and generally in the United States, we use a fricative *r* [ɹ], 'formed by raising the tip of the tongue toward the gums, without, however, raising the blade as for [ʃ ʒ],' and also (in the Middle West, U.S.A.) by twisting the tip of the tongue backward against the hard palate. Either French *r*, but especially the uvular type [ʀ], is hard for most of us to acquire; but our *r* is as foreign to a Frenchman as is his more vigorous [r] or [ʀ] to us.

[h]

17. In French, *h* is *seen* far oftener than it is heard. Many words are spelled with an aitch (*h*) simply because they were so spelled in Latin, although for nearly two thousand years this symbol has represented hardly anything save a waste of ink. Thus we find *l'homme* [lɔm] 'the man,' because medieval writers were aware that *homme* comes from *homine(m)*; but, not realizing so clearly that *on* [ɔ̃] 'one' (indefinite pronoun) comes from *homo*, nominative of *homine(m)*, they seldom spelled it *hom*. The words *habitude* [abityd] 'habit,' *heure* [œ:r] 'hour,' *compréhensif* [kɔ̃prẽsif] 'comprehensive,' and many others are to be explained like *homme*. The two or three hundred words whose initial *h* causes hiatus are nearly all of Germanic or of unknown origin.

[h] is produced by breathing audibly through a wide-open glottis and (for speech) through the mouth.

Examples showing how an 'aspirate *h*' merely causes hiatus: *la honte* [la ɔ:t] 'the shame,' *la herse* [la ɛrs] 'the harrow,' *le hibou* [lə ibu] 'the owl,' *en Hollande* [ɑ̃ olɑ:d] 'in Holland,' etc.

REMARK. A true [h] is seldom heard, except on the stage, where it preserves an archaic usage dating back to the Germanic invasions of about 450-950 A.D. It may occur also where no *h* is written, between two vowels of which the second is stressed: *fléau* [fleo or occasionally fleho] 'plague.'

[j]

18. [j], often called a semivowel, occurs when the tongue is raised above the position for [i] so as closely to approach the hard palate and produce audible friction. [j] has supplanted [ʎ]. See § 15, a.

Examples: **briller** [brije] '(to) shine,' **brille** [bri:j] 'shines.'

[y]

19. For [y] the lips are shaped almost as for [y], but the opening is somewhat narrower; the tongue approaches the hard palate as for [ø] or, less often, as for [y].

Examples: **huit huitres** [qi qitʁ] 'eight oysters,' **une tuile** [yn tui:l] 'a tile,' **fuyant** [fujɑ̃] 'fleeing,' **suer** [sue] '(to) sweat.'

[w]

20. This bilabial fricative [w] resembles our voiced w, as in 'woo,' but results rather from a swift passing through [u] to the vowel following.

Examples: **oui** [wi] 'yes,' **ouest** [west] 'west,' **doit** [dwa] 'owes,' **trois** [trwa] 'three.'

NOTE. The lips are more rounded for French **oui** than for English 'we.'

[s z]

21. [s] is nearly identical with our voiceless s in 'sin,' 'hiss,' etc., but our voiceless sibilant is often pronounced with the tip of the tongue close to the upper gums, whereas for French [s] the blade is arched so as closely to approach the front of the hard palate while its tip is bent down against the lower front teeth and its lateral edges rest against the upper back teeth. [z] is merely a voiced [s].

Examples: **si** [si] 'if,' **fosse** [fo:s] 'ditch,' **fil** [fi:s or fis] 'son,' **zone** [zo:n] 'zone,' **la rose** [la ro:z] 'the rose,' **le gaz** [lə ɡɑ:z] 'the gas.'

[ʃ ʒ]

22. [ʃ] is [s] more palatalized; that is, the tip and blade of the tongue are raised toward the hard palate and gums while the lateral edges are placed approximately as for [s]. [ʒ] is merely [ʃ] voiced.

Examples: *le chat* [lə ʃa] 'the cat,' *lâche* [la:ʃ] 'cowardly,' *jambe* [ʒɑ:b] 'leg,' *juge* [ʒy:ʒ] 'judge.'

REMARK. Our digraph *sh* represents to some French eyes merely *s*, or (between vowels) *z*; hence 'Washington' is commonly pronounced [vazɛtɪʒ], and *schampooing* [ʃɑpuɛ̃] 'shampooing' has received its *c* purely to preserve the original English consonant, which differs very little from the French variety. Both *sh* in English and *ch* in French normally represent a *simple* consonant. Cf. *qu* for [k], as in *qui*, and other combinations of consonants and vowels which are only old ways of representing what are now simple consonants or simple vowels. What is a digraph? What is a trigraph?

THE ALPHABET IN FRANCE

23. In handwriting and in printing (more markedly in printing) the French use letters very similar to ours, but in common parlance give them the following names:

Here we give *first* the conventional symbol as commonly printed, *second* the old way of pronouncing it in reciting the alphabet, *third* the old fashion of writing it out. Few letters are ever written out as words.

A a [a]	a	J j [ʒi]	ji	S s [es]	esse
B b [be]	bé	K k [ka]	ka	T t [te]	té
C c [se]	cé	L l [el]	elle	U u [y]	u
D d [de]	dé	M m [em]	emme	V v [ve]	vé
E e [e]	e	N n [en]	enne	W w [dubl ve]	double v
F f [ef]	effe	O o [o]	o	X x [iks]	ixe
G g [ʒe]	gé	P p [pe]	pé	Y y [i græk]	i grec
H h [aʃ]	ache	Q q [ky]	qu	Z z [zed]	zède or
I i [i]	i	R r [ɛ:r]	erre		zéd'

a. The new system of spelling aloud (*la nouvelle épellation*), as commonly practiced, gives to each vowel-symbol a single sound; each consonant-symbol is *written* single (b, c, d, etc.), and is *pronounced* either with the

neutral vowel [ə] (*be, se, de*, etc.)— which results in confusion, for *je* is a bad name to give to *g*— or an attempt is made to pronounce each symbol according to the value it is supposed to have in a given word.

b. Evidently, the conventional names given above do not regularly correspond to phonetic facts; for, as we have already seen, and as we shall see further, one letter may represent various sounds, whereas in a good phonetic alphabet *one symbol represents one sound* (or audible effect), *and only one*. Furthermore, in a phonetic alphabet no symbol is ever silent; whereas conventional French spelling, like our own, contains many silent letters.

QUANTITY

24. In French, as in English, sounds may be short or long, or the same sound may vary according to a momentary importance or lack of importance, etc. Thus [p], being a plosive, is necessarily always short, whereas [n] and other continuants may be very markedly prolonged; but the ear more readily observes the length of vowels, especially in stressed syllables. French vowels may be decidedly long, of medial length, or decidedly short. For our purposes it will generally suffice to recognize merely two quantities, *short* and *long*, as in *mettre* [mɛ:tr] '(to) put' and *maître* [mɛ:tr] 'master.'

a. In a final open syllable (a syllable ending in a vowel-sound) a vowel is normally always short.

Examples: *Je l'ai vue aujourd'hui* [ʒ(ə) le vy oʒurdʒi] 'I've seen her to-day.'

b. In unstressed syllables vowels are almost always short.

Examples: *Il m'en a assuré* [il mɛna asyʁe] 'He has assured me of it,' but *Il m'en assure* [il mɛnasy:ʁ] 'He assures me of it.' So *la tête* [la tɛ:t] 'the head,' but *un tête-à-tête* [œtɛtatɛ:t] 'a confidential talk.'

c. In a final syllable closed by [v], [z], [ʒ], [j], [ɲ], and [r] or [ʀ], which are voiced fricatives, a vowel is almost always long; therefore these are length-giving consonants.

Examples: *J'achève mon plan de la cave* [ʒaʃɛ:v mɔ̃ plɑ̃ də la ka:v] 'I'm finishing my plan of the cellar,' *Je vois la plage et la mer* [ʒə vwa la

pla:ʒ e la mɛ:r] 'I see the shore and the sea,' **Voilà mon travail** [vwala mɔ trava:j] 'There is my work,' **En Espagne** [ənɛspa:p] 'In Spain,' **Il est heureux et elle est heureuse** [ilɛtœrø e ɛlɛtœrø:z] 'He is happy and she is happy.'

REMARK. A non-final [R] or [r] does not lengthen a preceding stressed vowel: **la part** [la pa:r] 'the share,' but **la porte** [la pɔrt] 'the door.'

d. Stressed vowels bearing a circumflex accent are usually long.

Examples: **mâle** [mɑ:l] 'male,' **l'île** [li:l] 'the island,' **la côte** [la ko:t] 'the coast,' **l'âme** [la:m] 'the soul.'

REMARK. The ^ generally means that a consonant which once followed the vowel marked with ^ has been lost; hence ^ usually indicates compensative lengthening.

e. In a closed stressed syllable [o], [ø], [ɔ̃], [ɑ̃], [ɛ̃], and [œ̃] are always long, whatever consonant follows, and they must not be much shorter in unstressed closed syllables.

Examples: **La chose est longue et creuse** [la ʃo:z ɛ lɔ:g e krø:z] 'The thing is long and hollow,' **Elle se penche contre la rampe** [el sɛ pɑ̃:f kɔ:tr la rɑ:p] 'She leans against the railing,' **Cela semble bien mince** [sɛla sɑ̃:bl bjɛ mɛ:s] 'That seems very thin,' **Mon bon François est trop humble** [mɔ bɔ frɑ̃:swɑ ɛ trɔpœ:bl] 'My good Francis is too humble.'

STRESS

25. If we pronounce any phrase naturally, we can easily perceive that some parts of it are *louder* than others. Such parts are said to be *stressed*.

a. In English, we stress words sometimes on their first syllable, sometimes not. In French, the stress usually falls upon the last syllable of a word, unless that word happens to be itself so unemphatic as to be merely touched. Hence French is essentially an *oxytonic* language, whereas English is essentially *paroxytonic* (e.g. 'mother') or *propoxytonic* (e.g. 'motherly'), and has thrown back the original stresses of most of the French words which it has borrowed: **fameux** [fa'mø] 'famous,' **bureau** [by'ro] 'bureau,' etc.

NOTE. If the last written syllable contains an *e muet* as in **notre** 'our,' this *e* is always merely a supporting vowel, if pronounced, and is never stressed.

b. The explanation of the oxytonic character of French is that as French developed out of Latin, of which it is one of the still living forms, all syllables following the last stressed syllable were gradually weakened so as to become either barely audible or wholly silent. A Frenchman says **Notre cheval est fort**, 'Our horse is strong,' because the Romans said '*Noster caballus est fortis*'. A Frenchman, pronouncing this Latin sentence, would naturally follow the analogy of French accentuation and say *Nos'ter cabal'lus est fort'is* [nɔs'tɛr ka-bal'ly:s ɛst fɔr'ti:s], stressing the final syllable in each case. Of 'Shakespeare' he makes [ʃɛk'spi:r].

French versification is based on this oxytonic system of accentuation.

c. Usually, French syllabic stress is not quite so strong (loud) as English syllabic stress, and a series of words leading to a word or to words of greater importance may get an almost uniform loudness. Ex.: **Est-ce que vous allez à Calais, ou au Havre?** [ɛskə vuzalezakalə u o a:vR?] 'Are you going to Calais or to Havre?' gives us perceptible stresses only on **Calais** [ka'lɛ] and on **Havre** ['a:vR].

d. French has a tendency to shift the stress back in enumerations: **On peut voir cela dans Corneille, dans Molière, dans Racine** [ɔ pø vva:r sələ dā 'kɔrne:j, dā 'mɔljɛ:r, dā 'rasin] 'One can see that in Corneille, in Molière, in Racine' (*normally* [kɔr'ne:j, mɔl'jɛ:r, ra'sin]).

e. Emotional words may become paroxytonic, seldom proparoxytonic: **C'est dégoûtant** [sɛ de'gutā] 'It's disgusting'; **Incroyable!** [ɛ'krwajabl] 'Incredible!'; **Oui, beaucoup** [wi, 'bo:ku] 'Yes, much'; etc.¹

REMARK. French cannot be spoken idiomatically without such occasional shifts of stress; but they must be learned by observation, the rules that govern them being uncertain and complicated.

f. Strong contrasts lead to shifts, as in English: **Aujourd'hui tout le monde pose. L'homme propose, la femme dispose, l'industrie expose,**

¹ 'Un excellent moyen de s'en convaincre, c'est d'observer des enfants qui se disputent et se disent des sottises: ils s'appellent "*animal*," "*cochon*". Puis on en prend un à part, et on lui demande, comme pour le gronder, ce qu'il vient de dire; il répétera, avec accentuation normale, « Je lui ai dit *co'chon* ».' P. Passy, *Petite Phonétique comparée*, p. 33.

le commerce *dépose*, les sciences *composent*, et les grands hommes *reposent* [ozurdʒi tu lə mɔːd poːz. lɔm 'prɔpoːz, la fam 'dispoːz, lɛdystri 'ɛkspoːz, lə kɔmɛrs 'depoːz, le sjɑːs 'kɔpoːz, e le grɑzɔm 'rɔpoːz] 'Nowadays everybody poses. *Man proposes*, woman *disposes*, industry *exposes* [exhibits], commerce *deposes* [deposits], the sciences *compose*, and the great men *repose*.' (Commerson.)

REMARKS. As in English, the stressed syllables of important words are more vigorously stressed (are louder) than the stressed syllables of unimportant words. Shifts of stress often markedly change the quality and quantity of French sounds. Thus *je meurs* ('I die') = [ʒəmœːʀ], but *nous mourons* ('we die') = [numuːʀɔ]; in extremely colloquial French, *bonjour* ('good morning,' 'good afternoon,' etc.), hastily pronounced, may become *b'jour* [bʀʒuːʀ]; likewise *mademoiselle* [mad(ə)mwazel] may become *mamselle* [mamzel], and we find *madame* [madam] 'realistically' represented by *mame* [mam]. See § 9, also §§ 162, 165-169, 187-188, 224, 278, 280, 291-294, and the Index, under 'Stress.'

INTONATION OR INFLECTION

26. In speaking French, as in speaking English, there are innumerable changes of *pitch*. These changes are generally glides rather than jumps, jumps occurring, as a rule, only between breath-groups (§ 28), that is, when we pass through a perceptible pause (silence) from one division of a connected thought to the next division. In *speech* there are no regular intervals, that is, no *fixed notes* and no *key-note*; the pitch almost always rises or falls by imperceptible stages (rising inflection and falling inflection).

In French, as in English, variations of pitch correspond, more or less conventionally, to the character of the idea that we wish to express; but even the most typical differ according to the speaker, and no variation of pitch can be satisfactorily represented, save by continuous curves; such curves may accurately plot given intonations but are difficult to interpret correctly. A series of musical notes can indicate merely certain points in the changing pitch. French intonations often differ markedly from English (still more, from American) intonations. In general, French changes of pitch are greater.

SYLLABLES AND SYLLABIFICATION

27. In French, as in English, a *syllable* is a sound, or a group of sounds, individualized to our *hearing* by a sudden increase in the force of our outgoing breath. After the increase comes a diminution, then another increase, and so on, until we have ceased speaking. Thus sentence-stress depends upon *syllabification*.

a. Syllables are marked by the moments of least intensity; they are waves in the stream of air out of which we are forming words; only when we pause, then begin another breath-group, have they any necessary correspondence with the visibly separated units called words. Pronounce *naturally* to a roomful of people the sounds 'Take an aim'; some of them will understand 'Take a name.' 'Tis' and 'twas' show natural divisions, and [æt|ɔl] is a pedantic pronunciation of 'at all,' phonetically identical with 'a tall.'

b. When a consonant comes between two vowels it belongs to the second vowel; à *trois heures*, 'at three o'clock,' contains the syllables [a trwa zœ:r]; if a French printer had to divide *douleur* 'pain,' or *fumée* 'smoke,' or *recevoir* '(to) receive,' he would divide thus: *douleur*, *fu-mée*, *re-cevoir* or *rece-voir*.

REMARK. The digraphs *ch*, *ph*, *th*, and *gn* represent the simple consonants [ʃ, f, t, ɲ], as in *chic*, *mâcher* '(to) chew,' *éléphant*, *athée* 'atheist,' and *peigner* [pe:ɲe] '(to) comb.' Note also that many consonants which are *graphically* double are *phonetically* single: *accord* [akɔ:r] 'agreement,' *attend* [atɑ̃] 'awaits,' etc. True double consonants are rare in French; they occur either in *learned words*, such as *illégal* [illegal], or in exceptional combinations, such as *cher Robert* [ʃe:r ʁobe:r] 'dear Robert,' *une belle langue* [bellɑ̃:g] 'a beautiful language,' etc.

c. Compound consonants (two different consonants in combination) begin a syllable if the second is *l* or *r* (except *l-r*, which seldom occurs, or *r-l*, as in *par-ler* 'speak'; and a few other groups must be separated like *parler*). In other cases where two or more consonants come together, the first commonly ends the syllable preceding that begun by the second, or by the second and third, etc.

REMARKS. The divisions made in English printing often give a wholly erroneous idea as to syllables. Thus 'floating' would be divided into 'float-ing,' though its second syllable is begun by its *t*, etc. The divisions made by French printers correspond much oftener to natural syllabification; yet some false divisions are made, and conventional spelling renders many of them unavoidable. Examples: **diffère** [dife:R], 'differs,' becomes **dif-fère**; **bonheur** [bɔ̃œ:R], 'happiness,' becomes **bon-heur**; **inhabitable** [inabitabl], 'uninhabitable,' becomes **in-habitable**; etc. The rule of French printers forbids dividing a word either before or after *x* or *y* between vowels, because each of these letters is sounded half with one syllable and half with the other; yet they freely divide between *x* and *h*, though the second half of the *x* (in this case *x* = [gz]) sounds with the syllable in which the *h* is printed. Thus **exhaler** 'exhale' = [ègzale] and **foyer** 'hearth' = [fwaje]. Further details will be found in French manuals for printers and authors.

BREATH-GROUPS

28. In speaking, we may need only part of a given exhalation, or our idea may be just long enough to require a whole exhalation, or it may be so long as to require us to take a fresh breath. Not knowing how to adjust speech to breath, children (especially when attempting to recite) sometimes take a fresh breath at the wrong points when an idea is rather long and complex, and thus produce a series of gasps. But trained speakers and singers instinctively utilize each exhalation to good advantage, so that we are seldom disturbed by the noise of inhalation (gasping).

a. If an idea is absolutely simple (indivisible) and short, it requires only a small part of a normal deliberate exhalation. **Il vient** [il vjɛ̃], 'He's coming,' is a simple (indivisible) idea. Its two syllables make two waves on one larger wave which constitutes a breath-group. If now to **Il vient** we add **aujourd'hui** [ozurɔ̃ji] 'to-day,' the first large wave in our single exhalation is followed by a second large wave composed of three small waves (three syllables), unless **aujourd'hui** is so closely connected with **Il vient** that we naturally force it into the first breath-group, in which case we have not two breath-groups (**Il vient, aujourd'hui**) making five small waves on two larger waves, but one large wave on which there are five small waves.

b. In verse (French or English) the unnatural interruption of a breath-group, called 'overflow' and **enjambement** ('striding over'), often produces the hiccup or gasp described above, and, if flagrant, unduly distracts us from the *thought* which the verse-maker is expressing to the *abnormal sounds* of the language which he is abusing. On the other hand, a series of natural pauses between breath-groups may be so marked and so uniform as to make one feel that the verse-maker must have counted on his fingers, or we may be impressed by a mechanically jingling effect. Fashions have varied; at the present time the most admired poets, both French and English, make their language seem as natural as possible in respect to the agreement of breath-groups with the logical divisions of thoughts.

c. In French, as in English, breath-groups are generally marked by punctuation, though the less important divisions are generally disregarded.

d. French punctuation uses the same signs as ours, but not in the same manner, and in each language great inconsistency prevails. To prove this to be the truth, one would have merely to submit to a group of educated persons, English or French, a page of manuscript devoid of punctuation marks. Each individual would punctuate differently, and no author would be likely to punctuate twice in the same manner a given page of his own work.

Often the French employ a comma (**une virgule**) where we use a semicolon (**un point et virgule**). : (**deux points**), the point or period (**le point**), ? and ! (**les points d'interrogation et d'exclamation**), are used nearly as in English; ... (**les points suspensifs**) mark an unfinished emotional utterance or an interrupted thought. ?... and !... occur where ...?, ...!, might have been expected. In dialogue an initial — (**un tiret**) marks each change of speaker; other kinds of quotations are enclosed in « » or in « » (**guillemets**); quotations within quotations (e.g. He said, "Vile" is too strong) are indicated in French only when « » or « » follows a dash, never as in English; « » (sometimes « ») and — may occur on the same page to differentiate quotations. Note also () (**la parenthèse**) and [] (**les crochets**).

LINKING OR *LIAISON*

29. Though in printing or writing we separate words for the *eye*, in natural speech they are not separated for the ear unless we pause. Therefore, if a word ending in a consonant is followed in the same breath-group by a word beginning with a vowel, the rules of syllabification given above (§ 27) still hold good; that is, *between* words as well as *inside* them.

a. Linking or *liaison* [ljeːzɔ̃] takes place when a final consonant, whether ordinarily silent or not, becomes the initial sound of the following word: ~~Allez-vous en, mon enfant~~ [alevuzā, mɔ̃nāˈfɑ̃ or mɔ̃nāˈfɑ̃] 'Go away, child'; ~~Allez-y~~ [alezi] 'Go there'; ~~Ils ont deux ou trois enfants~~ [ilzɔ̃ dɔ̃zutrɔ̃wazāˈfɑ̃] 'They have two or three children'; etc.

b. In many combinations linking almost invariably takes place, especially in groups which have been constantly used for centuries and, when linked, simply maintain an original pronunciation; thus ~~vous avez~~ [vuzave], 'you have,' shows that the *s* of *vous* has become silent in ~~avez-vous~~ [avevu] 'have you.' Compare ~~est-il~~ [etil or eti], 'is he,' with ~~il est~~ [ilɛ] 'he is'; then invert ~~on avait~~ [ɔ̃navɛ] 'one had.' Again, ~~un vers admirable~~ [œ̃ vɛːradmiraˈbl] 'an admirable verse,' alongside of ~~ces vers admirables~~ [sɛ vɛːrzadmiraˈbl] 'these admirable verses,' proves that the *s* of the singular has been kept only in writing (for the eye), the *liaison* being made for the singular with [ʀ], for the plural with [z].

c. In occasional groups *liaison* often fails to occur (~~un chien anglais~~ [œ̃ ʃjɛ̃ āˈɡlɛ] 'an English dog'), and in many cases such a hiatus (immediate contact of two vowels) is required: ~~Paris est charmant~~ [pari ɛ ʃɑ̃rmɑ̃] 'Paris is delightful.' There are many words whose final consonants are *never* pronounced.

d. We can best learn how to link by carefully observing how educated French people speak in everyday conversation, but something can be learned also from phonetic transcriptions, such as are given in several of our Lessons, and a few statements of general principles should be useful.

30. Six or seven centuries ago the many final consonants which are now silent were always pronounced, whether followed by a consonant or by a vowel. Gradually, however, the tendency of French to prefer open syllables (syllables ending in a vowel) to closed syllables (syllables ending in a consonant), and a tendency to avoid more or less difficult groups of consonants, led to a general dropping of final consonants unless they happened to be followed habitually by a vowel. This explains why we say **tout enfant** [tutā·fā] 'every child,' but **tout père** [tu pɛ:R] 'every father.' In general, linking causes us to restore to pronunciation sounds which have become silent in certain combinations.

a. If a final consonant is linked there must be no pause between the two words that it binds. Any infringement of this rule indicates that the speaker is a foreigner, or that he lacks the normal control of his articulation: **Jean est aimable** [ʒāetema·bl] 'John is likable,' pronounced [ʒā ε|tema·bl], would be unnatural and absurd. In our phonetic transcriptions words which are naturally to be linked or closely joined are commonly printed as typographical units; but for various reasons this practice is not advisable in all cases.

b. However they may be *conventionally* printed or written, the sounds or 'noises' [k g, t d, p b], and the remaining consonants, *as expressed by phonetic symbols*, have exactly the same value between words as inside words.

31. When **liaison** occurs, the conventional symbols are pronounced thus:

a. **c, k, g,** and **q** as [k].

Examples: **ce lac anglais** [səlakā·glɛ] 'this English lake,' **un yak étonnant** [œyaketonā] 'an astonishing yak,' **un long hiver** [œlɔ̃kive:R] 'a long winter,' **cinq hommes** [sɛ̃kɔ̃m] 'five men.'

b. Whether ordinarily silent or not, in linking **l, r, m, n** are [l, R, m, n].

Examples: **s'il est vrai** [silɛvʀɛ] 'if it's true,' whereas before a consonant the **l** of **il** is commonly silent, as in **s'il vous plaît** [sivuplɛ] 'if you

please'; **pour aimer un voleur** in a stagy pronunciation becomes [purè-mèræ̀vɔlə:R] '(to) love a thief,' colloquially [purèmeæ̀vɔlə:R]; **on aime** 'one loves' = [ɔ̃ne:m], **un enfant** 'a child' = [œ̃nɑ̃fɑ̃], but **un chien** 'a dog' = [œ̃ sʃjẽ]; the **m** of **daim**, **essaim**, **faim**, **nom**, **parfum** is never linked.

c. Occasionally, **f** becomes [v].

Examples: **à neuf heures** [anøvœ:R] 'at nine o'clock,' but **neuf fois** [nøfwa] 'nine times'; **un vif intérêt** 'a lively interest' keeps its **f** as [f].

REMARK. **à neuf heures** is derived from the Vulgar Latin *ad nove(m) horas* (*anovorās*).

d. The conventional symbols **s**, **x**, **z** all become [z], unless, when *not* linked, they are pronounced [s], [ks], and [z].

Examples: **les hommes** [lezɔm] 'the men,' **deux ailes** [døzel] 'two wings,' **allez-y** [alezi] 'go there.'

REMARK. In many words, **x** (final), as in **deux** 'two' and **animaux** [animo] 'animals,' is merely a remnant of a medieval symbol which stood for **us**: **deux**, **chevaux** 'horses,' **heureux** [œrø] 'happy,' and many other words were once written **deus**, **chevaus**, etc.

Final Observations

32. a. Those of us who have not been in a position to acquire a correct pronunciation of French by early and constant intercourse with French people can acquire it only by the closest observation, aided by a good memory and by the power of accurately imitating sounds. If we have not begun the study of French till we are, say, fifteen or sixteen years of age, our vocal organs adapt themselves only with a noticeable and constant effort to the foreign sounds. This effort will become gradually less trying, and in some cases will disappear, *if* we practice the French sounds just as conscientiously as we should practice to attain great skill in playing a musical instrument or in singing. Our vocal organs are in truth a musical instrument, and if the sounds that we have been producing with them have always been English, we must necessarily make a wholly different series of adjustments when we undertake to produce or to reproduce French sounds.

b. Whatever may be the language whose sounds we are trying to understand and to acquire, we can vastly increase our knowledge and our powers

of performance by frequent experimentation. Thus, for example, if [y], represented conventionally in French by u, prove difficult — one of 'those impossible sounds'! — the student can easily get the right result as follows: Let him enclose between his lips at their middle, complying with § 8, *d*, a short glass tube about three eighths of an inch in diameter; if now he tries to say [di], the only result should be [dy], as in *du* 'of the.' Other easy and useful experiments — many of them requiring only the simplest instruments, or none at all, and adequately explained in various modern treatises on phonetics — can be tried for other sounds.

c. The author of this book once knew a French medical student who, being ambitious and thorough, used to study English works on his subject as well as French. This student would walk up and down his room reading his English aloud, and he understood every word of it, but hardly a syllable of his pronunciation was English. Giving to our chaotic conventional symbols the values which they would usually have in French conventional spelling, he evolved a species of gibberish which an uninformed listener might have mistaken for patois or thieves' jargon. Possibly none of us has ever heard French treated in quite the same manner, but many of us have heard it strangely mocked. Unless we study French as a *living* language we shall necessarily miss nearly all its physical beauty and sacrifice much of its utility.

PREMIÈRE LEÇON

THE ARTICLES. THE PLURAL OF NOUNS. SIX FORMS OF AVOIR. THE UNSTRESSED NOMINATIVE FORMS OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

33. Texte français (*Les Pensées de Riquet*), avec une transcription phonétique, une traduction et une analyse grammaticale [tekst frã:se (le pã:se də rike), avɛk-yn trã:skripsjõ fõnetik, yn tradyksjõ, e yn-analiz gramatikal]. 'French text (*The Thoughts of Riquet*), with a phonetic transcription, a translation, and a grammatical analysis.'

Les hommes, les animaux, les	1	<i>The / shows where each corresponding line of French ends</i>
[lezõm lezanimo le		
pierres, grandissent en s'appro-	2	(The) men, (the) animals, (the)/
pje:r grã:dis ã saprõ-		stones, become larger as they draw
chant et deviennent énormes quand	3	near [<i>lit.</i> on approaching]/and be-
ʃã e døvjentenõrm kã-		come enormous when / they are
ils sont sur moi. Moi non. Je	4	[close] upon me. Not I. I/remain
til sõ syr mwa mwa nõ zõ		always of the same size [<i>lit.</i> equally
demeure toujours aussi grand	5	large, <i>as large as before</i>]/wherever
dãmœ:r tuzu:r- õ:si grã		[<i>lit.</i> everywhere where] I am.
partout où je suis.	6	<i>Make this 'literal' translation</i>
partu u zõ sũ]		<i>more idiomatic.</i>

NOTES. (a) The common nouns **hommes**, **animaux**, and **pierres** are here generic; hence, contrary to English usage, the definite article **les**, used before plural nouns of either gender. (b) **approchant** is a gerund, here united with the reflexive pronoun **se**, elided. (c) **Moi non** (word for word, 'I not') gives us the stressed form of the nominative personal pronoun; **je non** would be incorrect, for **je** cannot be stressed. (d) For this passage, and for those immediately following, a 'formal' style of pronunciation is indicated, though the speaker, Riquet, is a dog, the dog of M. [mæsjø] Bergeret. (e) *Les Pensées de Riquet* are quoted from *Crainquebille*, *Putois*, *Riquet*, etc., by Anatole France, i.e. Anatole Thibaut, 1844-. Anatole France is also the author of *Le Crime de Sylvestre Bonnard*, 1881, and of many other delightful books.

34. As written, the French definite article has the forms **le**, **la**, **l'**, and **les**, illustrated, with their usual pronunciation, by the following examples :

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. le texte [lə tɛkst] the text | 9. la Pierre [la pjɛ:r] the stone |
| 2. l' animal [lanimal] the animal | 10. l' âme [lɑ:m] the soul |
| 3. l' homme [lɔm] the man | 11. l' heure [lœ:r] the hour |
| 4. le hangar [lə ɑ̃:ga:r] the shed | 12. la horde [la ɔrd] the horde |
| 5. les textes [le tɛkst] | 13. les pierres [le pjɛ:r] |
| 6. les animaux [lezanimɔ] } <i>Plural</i> | 14. les âmes [lezɑ:m] } <i>Plural</i> |
| 7. les hommes [lezɔm] } <i>Forms</i> | 15. les heures [lezœ:r] } <i>Forms</i> |
| 8. les hangars [le.ɑ̃:ga:r] } | 16. les hordes [le ɔrd] } |

35. French nouns are either masculine (1-8) or feminine (9-16). In French, grammatical gender usually does not correspond to natural sex, though natural sex is generally recognized grammatically where we say 'he' and 'she.'

36. Most French nouns form their plural by adding **s**, pronounced [z] when united with a following vowel; but, as such linking commonly does not occur, the *number* of a given noun, in spoken French, must commonly be learned from the context.

37. As shown in § 34, the definite article is **l'** before *any* singular beginning with a vowel. See examples 2, 3, 10, 11. (The **h** of **homme** and of **heure** is purely graphic, i.e. it has no phonetic value; it has not been audible since Roman times.)

a. Before a vowel **les** is pronounced [lez]. See examples 6, 7, 14, 15.

b. Before a consonant or a so-called 'aspirate **h**,' **le** = [lɛ] or often merely [l]; **la** = [la]; **les** = [le]. See examples 1, 4, 5, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16.

REMARK. In everyday French, no initial **h** is ever audible; the so-called 'aspirate **h**' merely prevents educated persons from saying e.g. **l'angar**, and changes [yn], **une**, to [ynə]: **une horde** etc. See § 38.

38. The indefinite article is written **un** before masculines, **une** before feminines: **un** **texte** [œ tɛkst] 'a text,' **un** **homme** [œnɔm] 'a man,' **un** **hangar** [œ ɑ̃:ga:r] 'a shed,' **un** **animal** [œnanimɔ] 'an animal,' **une** **Pierre** [yn pjɛ:r] 'a stone,' **une** **horde** [ynə ɔrd *not* ynɔrd] 'a horde,' **une** **honte** [ynə ɔ:t] 'a shame.'

Note that **un** and **une** must not be linked to words beginning with 'aspirate h.' See the Remark in § 37.

Write **un** before nouns 1-4 in § 34, **une** before nouns 9-12, and note how each resulting group is pronounced.

a. The indefinite article has the plural **des** (derived from **de + les**), varying in pronunciation like **les**. Examples of **des** with the present indicative of the verb **avoir** '(to) have':

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1. J'ai des chiens [ʒe de ʃjɛ̃] I have (some) dogs | j'ai |
| 2. Tu as des amis [ty a dezami] You have (Thou hast) friends | tu as |
| 3. Il a des homards [ila de ɔma:r] He has (some) lobsters | il a |
| 3. Elle a des livres [ela de li:vʁ] She has (some) books | elle a |
| 4. Nous avons des sœurs [nuzavɔ̃ de sœ:r] We have sisters | nous avons |
| 5. Vous avez des mères [vuzave de mɛ:r] You have mothers | vous avez |
| 6. Ils ont des poires [ilzɔ̃ de pwa:r] They have (some) pears | ils ont |
| 6. Elles ont des dettes [elzɔ̃ de det] They have (some) debts | elles ont |

NOTE. This **des** must not be stressed, and, if 'some' or 'any' be used to translate it, neither may be stressed: **J'ai des dettes** = 'I have debts' or 'I have some debts' (not 'some debts'); **As-tu des poires?** = 'Have you any pears?'; **Si elles ont des dettes** = 'If they have any debts' (or simply 'have debts').

39. The forms of the personal pronouns used as subjects are here illustrated with the sounds they have before vowels: **j'** is **je** elided. Note that in example 6, with **elles**, French has a feminine plural corresponding to **elle** 'she' (or 'it') in example 3. A masculine antecedent requires **il** or **ils**; a feminine antecedent requires **elle** or **elles**; an antecedent of mixed gender requires **ils**.

40. Examples of **il**, **elle**, **ils**, and **elles**, in connection with the interrogative formula **Est-ce que** [esk or eskə], a shortened form of **Est-ce vrai que** [ɛsvʁɛ kə], meaning 'Is it true that . . .?':

1. **Est-ce que l'homme grandit** [grɑ̃-di] ('becomes larger')? **Il grandit.**
2. **Est-ce qu'une pierre grandit?** **Oui** [wi], **elle grandit.** 'Yes, it does.'
3. **Est-ce que la dette grandit?** **Oui**, **elle grandit.** 'Yes, it's becoming larger.'
4. **Est-ce que les hommes et les pierres grandissent?** **Oui**, **ils deviennent énormes.**

EXERCISE

Referring to all §§ 33-40, translate, then pronounce :

I. 1. Has M. Bergeret (any) friends? 2. M. Bergeret has Riquet. 3. Riquet is the friend of M. Bergeret. 4. When a man has a dog he has a friend. 5. Have dogs any thoughts? 6. Yes, dogs have thoughts. 7. Have you thoughts? 8. We have thoughts and we have books. 9. If I have debts have I friends? Not I! 10. If you have friends have you debts? Yes. 11. Does a debt become larger as it approaches? 12. Yes, debts become larger as they approach. They become enormous. 13. Do men become larger? 14. When they are close upon me they become enormous. 15. Have you (*pl. and sg.*) any thoughts? I have (We have) some books. 16. Have you a French text? 17. Yes, we have a French text, a phonetic transcription, and a grammatical analysis.

II. *Additional Exercise.* Combine each of the eight groups in § 38, *a*, with the next, so as to make the verb in the first take the object in the second, but in its singular form, etc. Use *Où est . . . ?* 'Where is . . . ?' and *Où sont . . . ?* 'Where are . . . ?' with each of the sixteen nouns in § 34, pronouncing each resulting group.

QUERIES. 1. Why isn't **animaux** called a 'regular plural'? What advantage may a plural like **animaux** (*sg. animal*) have over a plural like **hommes**? 2. Wherein does the gender of **le père** 'the father' differ from that of **la mère** 'the mother,' and that of **le livre** from that of **la pierre**? Does **les** enable us to determine gender? 3. Do **il, ils, elle, and elle** necessarily reveal sex? If not, why not? Have we in English any personal pronoun exactly equivalent to **elles**? If not, why not? How shall we translate this? — 'Where are the mother and the father? They are Paris [**à Paris**].' 4. In **tu** [*ty*] the French have a true singular pronoun, the second person, used by intimate friends, by adults to little children etc.; have we any exact equivalent in *living* English? 5. How did you translate **Il grandit** in example 1, § 40? What is the true meaning of 'does' in example 2? Did you note the progressive form 'it's becoming' in example 3? 6. Did you note the ordinal numeral **Première** (*fem.*) at beginning of this lesson? 7. Are you sufficiently familiar with the **ma** in this lesson to be able to utilize it all in Lesson II?

DEUXIÈME LEÇON

UNSTRESSED PERSONAL PRONOUNS (CONTINUED). NOMINATIVES. ACCUSATIVES. DATIVES. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF ÊTRE, OF TROUVER, OF PRIVER, OF PARLER

41. Texte français, avec une transcription phonétique, une traduction et une analyse grammaticale (Suite 'Continuation').

Quand le maître me tend sous la	1	When the master holds out to me under the/table his food, which
[kɑ̃ lə me:tr mə tɑ̃ su la		
table sa nourriture, qu'il va mettre	2	he is going to put/into his mouth,
tabl sa nurity:r kil va metr		it is to/tempt me and to punish
dans sa bouche, c'est pour me	3	me if I succumb/to the tempta-
dɑ̃ sa buʃ se pur mə		tion. For I cannot/believe that
tenter et me punir si je succombe	4	he deprives himself for me.
tɑ̃te e mə pyni:r si ʒə sykɔ:b-		
à la tentation. Car je ne puis	5	<i>Again, this 'literal' transla-</i>
ala tɑ̃:ta:sjɔ̃ ka:r ʒə nə pɥi		<i>tion should be put into idiomatic</i>
croire qu'il se prive pour moi.	6	<i>English.</i>
krwa:r kil sə pri:v pur mwa]		

NOTES. (a) Again Riquet is represented as using a 'formal' style of pronunciation. No pauses should be made except to indicate natural breath-groups (§ 28). Observe again that phonetic transcriptions, wasting no symbols, require less room than conventional printing; observe, also, that in our phonetic transcription words are separated only for the sake of convenient comparison. (b) *tend*, following the dative pronoun *me*, is from *tendre* (cf. '(to) tender'); *va* is from *aller* [ale], a very irregular verb; *puis* is from *pouvoir* '(to) be able,' also very irregular. (c) Note the order of the French words, perhaps most impressive when we attempt to arrange the English words like the French.

42. Study the *present indicative* of *être* [ɛ:tr] '(to) be,' of *trouver* [tru:v] '(to) find,' of *priver* [pri:v] '(to) deprive,' with *unstressed nominatives* and *accusatives*; also *parler* [parle] '(to) speak,' with the *dative*.

As before (§ 38, a), the three persons of the singular are designated by 1, 2, 3; the three persons of the plural by 4, 5, 6.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. je suis [ʒə sɥi(z)] I am | 1. suis-je ? [sɥi:ʒ] am I ? |
| 2. tu es [ty ɛ(z)] you are | 2. es-tu ? [ɛty] are you ? |
| 3. il est [ilɛ(t)] he is | 3. est-il ? [ɛtil] is he ? |
| 4. nous sommes [nu sɔm(z)] we are | 4. sommes-nous ? [sɔm nu] are we ? |
| 5. vous êtes [vuze:t(z)] you are | 5. êtes-vous ? [ɛ:t vu] are you ? |
| 6. ils sont [il sɔ̃(t)] they are | 6. sont-ils ? [sɔ̃til] are they ? |

NOTE. The symbol in () indicates pronunciation in linking, as in *Je suis à Paris* [ʒə sɥiza pari] 'I am in Paris.' The *s* of *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles* = [z] if linked (§ 31, *d*, etc.).

a. As indicated by *suis-je* etc., a question may be expressed simply by reversing pronoun and verb. A hyphen (*un trait d'union* [trɛ dynjɔ̃]) is always inserted when *je*, *tu*, etc. *follow* their verb.

EXERCISE

Using the interrogative group first, put each of the twelve forms *je suis* etc. before *à Paris* 'in Paris,' or before other simple phrases, e.g. the following groups, all of them meaning 'at home,' according to the person: *chez moi* [ʒe mwa], *chez toi* [twa], *chez nous* [nu], *chez vous* [vu].

43. Unstressed Accusative Pronouns, Proclitic. Illustrations

<i>Il me trouve</i> [il mə tru:v] He finds me	1. <i>me</i>
<i>Elle te trouve</i> [ɛl tɔ tru:v] She finds you (thee)	2. <i>te</i>
<i>Je le trouve</i> [ʒə lɔ tru:v] I find him (<i>or it</i>)	3. <i>le</i>
<i>Tu la trouves</i> [ty la tru:v] You find her (<i>or it</i>)	3. <i>la</i>
<i>On nous trouve</i> [ɔ nu tru:v] One finds us	4. <i>nous</i>
<i>Nous vous trouvons</i> [nu vu tru:vɔ̃] We find you (<i>pl. or sg.</i>)	5. <i>vous</i>
<i>Vous les trouvez</i> [vu le tru:vɛ] You find them	6. <i>les</i>
<i>Ils nous trouvent</i> [il nu tru:v] They find us	

QUERIES. How many different *forms* and how many different *sounds* has this verb in its present tense (indicative) as here exemplified? What does 'proclitic' mean?

a. Except *le*, *la*, *les*, for which we must substitute *se* [sə], the accusative proclitics in the seven illustrations just given may be used reflexively:

Je me prive [ʒə mə pri:v] I deprive myself	1. Je me
Tu te prives [ty tə pri:v] You deprive yourself	2. Tu te
Il se prive [il sə pri:v] He deprives himself	3. Il se
Elle se prive [pri:v] She deprives herself	3. Elle se
On se prive [pri:v] One deprives oneself	3. On se
Nous nous privons [pri:vɔ̃] We deprive ourselves	4. Nous nous
Vous vous privez [pri:vɛ] You deprive yourselves (-self)	5. Vous vous
Ils se privent [pri:v] They (<i>m.</i>) deprive themselves	6. Ils se
Elles se privent [pri:v] They (<i>f.</i>) deprive themselves	6. Elles se

b. Except *le, la, les*, for which we must substitute *lui* [lɥi] 'to him,' 'to her,' and *leur* [lœr] 'to them,' these objective proclitics may be used as datives, i.e. *as indirect objects without a preposition*. Thus :

(Dative)

Il me parle [parl] He speaks to me	1. me
Je te parle [parl] I speak to you (<i>sg.</i>)	2. te
Tu lui parles [parl] You speak to him (<i>or her</i>)	3. lui
Vous nous parlez [parle] You speak to us	4. nous
Nous vous parlons [parlɔ̃] We speak to you (<i>pl. or sg.</i>)	5. vous
Ils leur parlent [parl] They speak to them	6. leur

REMARK. After any subject of the third person *se* may likewise be used as a dative.

QUERIES. How many objective forms (or sounds) do these three sets of examples give us in all? Which forms have only one function?

c. **Stress.** All these proclitic pronouns, nominative or objective, must be *lightly* stressed: **Je le trouve** means 'I find him,' 'I find it,' *not* 'I find *him*,' 'I find *it*.' So **Tu me parles** means 'You speak to me,' *not* 'You speak to *me*.'

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

(II and III to be done in class)

I. As **succomber** '(to) succumb' and **tenter** '(to) tempt' are conjugated like **trouver**, the following sentences can now be translated :

1. Dogs succumb if men speak to them and tempt them. 2. When the master tempts me I succumb. 3. Men succumb to a temptation, and animals succumb to a temptation. 4. Do you (**vous**) succumb

when a man tempts you? 5. I always succumb (I succumb always) when M. Bergeret holds out food to me under the table. 6. M. Bergeret is the master. 7. I am Riquet, M. Bergeret's dog (the dog of M. Bergeret). 8. Does M. Bergeret deprive himself for me? 9. Do men deprive themselves for animals? 10. I cannot believe that they deprive themselves for dogs. 11. We deprive ourselves for a friend. 12. Wherever you find us you tempt us. 13. When I am under the table you tempt me. 14. If you tempt us we succumb. 15. You have a dog; you tempt him. 16. If you tempt him it is to punish him if he succumbs. (*Note: si il becomes s'il, as si ils becomes s'ils; but before elle and elles, si is not elided.*)

II. Use the whole present indicative of **chercher** [ʃɛʁʃe] '(to) seek,' '(to) look for' (conjugated like **trouver**) with each form of the accusative proclitic pronoun as an object, and **à Paris** 'in Paris,' or **chez moi** 'at my house,' **chez toi** (*sg.*) 'at your house,' **chez nous** 'at our house,' and **chez vous** (*pl.*) 'at your house,' as complements. See § 42, exercise.

III. **On trouve tout ce qu'on cherche** [ɔ̃ tru:v tus kɔ̃ ʃɛʁʃ] means, literally, 'One finds everything that one looks for.' Make six other combinations of this saying. Word for word, **tout ce que** = 'all that which'; **que** is accusative.

IV. Use the whole present indicative of **montrer** [mɔ̃'tre] '(to) show' (conjugated like **trouver**) with six of the masculine nouns in § 34 as direct objects (accusative) and six proclitic datives (§ 43, *b*), in turn, as indirect objects. Order: nominative, dative, verb, accusative noun-object.

V. Use the whole present indicative of **s'approcher** [sɔ̃'pʁɔʃe] '(to) approach' (conjugated like **se priver**, § 43, *b*), with **de moi** [də mwa], **de toi** [də twa], **de nous** [də nu], **de vous** [də vu], and **de la table** [də la tabl], as complements. Note that here **de moi** = simply 'me,' **de toi** = simply 'you' (or 'thee'), etc.; for **s'approcher** requires **de** before the following object.

Model: Il s'approche de moi.

TROISIÈME LEÇON

THE ARTICLES WITH *DE* AND *A*44. Suite des *Pensées de Riquet*, avec transcription phonétique, etc.

- Mon maître me tient chaud quand je** 1 My master keeps me warm
 [mɔ̃ me:tr mə tʃɛ ʃo kɑ̃ ʒə when I/am lying behind him
suis couché derrière lui dans son fauteuil. 2 in his easy-chair./And that
 sɥi kuʃe dɛrʒɛ:r lɥi dɑ̃ sɔ̃ fotœ:j comes from the fact that he
Et cela vient de ce qu'il est un dieu. 3 is a god./There is also in
 e s(ə)la vʃɛ dɑ̃ s(ə) kilɛtœ̃ djø front of the fireplace a warm
Il y a aussi devant la cheminée une dalle 4 hearthstone. / That hearth-
 ilja õsi d(ə)vɑ̃ la ʃəmine yn dal stone is divine.
chaude. Cette dalle est divine. 5 I speak when I wish to.
 ʃo:d set dal e divi:n] From the mouth/of the
Je parle quand je veux. De la bouche 6 master there come forth also
 [ʒə parl kɑ̃ ʒə vø d(ə)la buʃ sounds which form/mean-
du maître il sort aussi des sons qui forment 7 ings. But these meanings
 dy me:tr il sɔ:r õsi de sɔ̃ ki fɔrm are much less/distinct than
des sens. Mais ces sens sont bien moins 8 those that I express by the/
 de sɑ̃:s me se sɑ̃:s sɔ̃ bjɛ mwɛ sounds of my voice. In my
distincts que ceux que j'exprime par les 9 mouth everything has/a
 distɛ:kt kə sɛ kə ʒɛkspri:m par le meaning. In that of the mas-
sons de ma voix. Dans ma bouche tout a 10 ter there are/many mean-
 sɔ̃ d(ə)ma vwa dɑ̃ ma buʃ tuta ingless noises. It is difficult
un sens. Dans celle du maître il y a 11 and/necessary to guess the
 œ̃ sɑ̃:s dɑ̃ sel dy me:tr ilja thought of the master.
beaucoup de vains bruits. Il est difficile et 12 *Make this translation*
 boku d(ə)vɛ brɥi ile difisil e *more idiomatic. Note again*
nécessaire de deviner la pensée du maître. 13 *how the French order of*
 nesɛsɛ:r dɑ̃d(ə)vine la pɑ̃:sɛ dy me:tr] *words differs from ours.*

NOTES. (a) Even in the 'formal' style of pronunciation [ə] is almost or quite inaudible in certain easy groups of consonants. (b) *tient* is from *tenir* (§ 482); *vient* is from *venir* (§ 482); *veux* is from *vouloir* (§ 166); *sort* (line 7) is from *sortir* (§ 225, f), and *il sort*, lit. 'it comes forth,' here *suspends the logical subject des sons*. (c) *de ce qu'il est* means, word for word, 'from that (*pronoun*) that (*conjunction*) he is,' etc.; idiomatically, 'from his being.' (d) *il y a* means, word for word, 'it there has.'

QUERIES. What is **qui**, in line 7? and **que** (with two different values), in line 9? Do you think that after reading this French passage three times, aloud, you could exactly reproduce it with the help of the translation?

45. *Combinations of de with the Definite Article*

du son [dy sɔ̃] of the sound	de la chose [də la ʃoz] of the thing
du hareng [dy aʁɑ̃] of the herring	de la hotte [də la ɔt] of the basket
de l'œuf [də lœf] of the egg	de l'île [də li:l] of the island
de l'hôtel [də lɔtɛl] of the hotel	de l'herbe [də lɛʁb] of the grass
des sons [də sɔ̃] of the sounds	des choses [də ʃoz] of the things
des harengs [də aʁɑ̃] of the herrings	des hottes [də ɔt] of the baskets
des œufs [dəzœf] of the eggs	des îles [dəzi:l] of the islands
des hôtels [dəzɔtɛl] of the hotels	des herbes [dəzɛʁb] of the herbs

a. **RULE.** From the above examples we derive the following rule: **du** (for **de le**) and **des** (for **de les**) are used before a noun exactly like their respective simple forms without **de**, that is, **le** and **les**; so **de la**. See the sixteen examples in § 34.

To be more explicit, (*a*) before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant or so-called 'aspirate h,' **de le** becomes **du** and **de les** becomes **des** = [də]; (*b*) before a masculine beginning with a vowel-symbol or a silent h, we get **de l'** (sg.) or **des** (pl.) = [dəz]; (*c*) before a consonant or 'aspirate h,' **de la** remains **de la**; (*d*) before a vowel-symbol or a silent h, **de la** becomes **de l'**. Verify.

REMARK. The simple rule in § 45, *a*, and the explicit statement following it, hold good for the combinations of the definite article with the preposition à ('to,' 'at,' etc.), in § 47, though of course we get different sounds.

b. French has no special case-form for the genitive or possessive: **la bouche du maître** = 'the mouth of the master' or 'the master's mouth.'

46. Partitive Groups. In **De la bouche du maître il sort des sons qui forment des sens** (§ 44), for us who analyze, **de** has three different values: 'from' or 'out of,' a possessive value ('of the master'), and, as combined with **les**, a purely partitive value in which the prepositional force of **de** is hardly felt. Thus **J'ai du pain** [pɛ̃] means simply 'I have (some) bread,' the whole group **du pain** being the direct object

of *j'ai*. So *des sons* (§ 44, line 7), the logical subject of its clause, means simply 'sounds,' and *des sens* is the direct object of *forment*. 'I see islands' = *Je vois* [vwa] *des îles* and *not Je vois îles*. So 'If I see any islands' = *Si je vois des îles*.

Used thus, *des* is virtually a kind of plural indefinite article: *Nous avons un homard, nous avons des homards; Ils ont des harengs dans des hottes; Tu as une hotte (des hottes) dans le hangar*. Or we may say that *in this function du, de l', de la, and des* are virtually indefinite quantitative adjectives. In *Je parle du maître* the prepositional value of *de* is clearly felt.

NOTE 1. A *hotte* is a long, wide basket, hung from the shoulders.

NOTE 2. The omission of the article in the partitive group *de vains bruits* (§ 44, line 12) will be explained in § 53.

EXERCISE

Referring particularly to §§ 44-46, translate the following:

1. I have a dog. Have you any dogs? 2. Yes, we have (some) dogs. 3. Have the dogs (any) food? (*Use Est-ce que.*) 4. You (*Tu*) have many things in your basket. 5. Have you any bread? 6. Yes, I have some bread, a herring, and some eggs. 7. There is also a lobster in the basket, and there are (*again il y a*) some lobsters in the shed. 8. Where are the pears? 9. There are some pears on (*sur*) the table in the hotel. 10. Where is M. Bergeret's dog? 11. He is lying in an easy-chair behind his master. 12. M. Bergeret, Riquet's master, always has (has always) easy-chairs in front of the fireplace, and there is always a book on his (*sa*) table. 13. M. Bergeret has French books and he has English books; M. Bergeret has many books. 14. When M. Bergeret has thoughts he speaks to (*à*) Riquet. 15. M. Bergeret speaks to him and keeps him (*lui*) warm when they are in M. Bergeret's easy-chair. 16. Riquet is a dog, M. Bergeret is a god. 17. From M. Bergeret's mouth there come forth sounds. 18. These sounds have meanings, but these meanings are less distinct than those that I express. 19. In a dog's mouth everything has a meaning. 20. In that of a man (= In a man's) there are many meaningless noises. 21. It is difficult to guess my master's thoughts.

47. *Combinations of à with the Definite Article*

au son [o sɔ̃]	au hareng [o arɑ̃]	à la chose [a la]	à la hotte [a la]
à l'œuf [a lœf]	à l'hôtel [a lɔ̃tɛl]	à l'île [a li:l]	à l'herbe [a lɛrb]
aux sons [o sɔ̃]	aux harengs [o arɑ̃]	aux choses [o]	aux hottes [o ɔt]
aux œufs [ozø]	aux hôtels [ozɔ̃tɛl]	aux îles [ozi:l]	aux herbes [ozɛrb]

a. These examples show that **au** (for **à le**) and **aux** (for **à les**) are used in precisely the same way as **du** (for **de le**) and **des** (for **de les**) etc. See the rule in § 45, a, and the more explicit statement following it. The **x** of **aux**, when sounded in linking, becomes [z].

NOTE. The **x** of **aux** is explained in the Remark at the end of § 31, d.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. Put the right combinations of **à + le, la, les** before the sixteen nouns in § 34.

II. The present indicative of **offrir** [ɔfri:r], '(to) offer,' is conjugated like that of **trouver** (§ 43):

j'offre [ʒɔfr], **tu offres** [ty ɔfr], **il offre** [ilɔfr], etc.

Using these forms, and those of other verbs already given, translate the following:

III. 1. We offer everything that we have to the hospital (**l'hôpital** [lɔpital]). 2. You offer everything that you have to the soldiers (**les soldats** [le solda]). 3. They (*m. and f.*) offer everything that they have to the children (**les enfants** [lezɑ̃fɑ̃]). 4. Those (**Ces**) men are offering some bread and some herrings to the children.

IV. Vary **Je vous offre un fauteuil** so as to use *all* the present indicative, *all* the non-reflexive dative forms (§ 43, c), and the plural of **fauteuil**. In each case note the **liaison**.

QUATRIÈME LEÇON

THE DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES (CONTINUED). FORMS OF INTERROGATION. THE TYPE *LIBRE*48. Suite des *Pensées de Riquet*, avec transcription phonétique, etc.

- Manger est bon. Avoir mangé est meilleur.** 1 To eat is good. To
[mā:ʒe ε bɔ̃ avwɑ:r mā:ʒe ε mɛjœ:r have eaten is better./For
- Car l'ennemi qui vous épie pour prendre votre** 2 the enemy who is spying
ka:r lenmi ki vuzɛpi pur prɑ:dɾə vɔtrə upon you to take [away]
- nourriture est prompt et subtil.** 3 your/food is ready and
nurity:r ε prɔ̃ ε syptil] full of wiles.
- Tout passe et se succède. Moi seul je** 4 All things pass and suc-
[tu pɑ:s ε sɔ̃ syksɛdɛ mwa sœ:l ʒɔ cceed one another. I alone
- demeure. Je suis toujours au milieu de tout,** 5 /abide. I am always in
dɑmœ:r ʒɔ sɥi tuʒu:r o miljø də tu the midst of everything,
- et les hommes, les animaux et les choses** 6 /and men, animals, and
e leʒɔm leʒanimɔ e le ʃo:z things/are ranged, hos-
sɔ̃ rɑ:ʒe œstil u favɔra:bl otu:r tile or favorable, round
- de moi.** 7 about/me.
- də mwa] 8 One sees in sleep [when
one is asleep] men, /dogs,
- On voit dans le sommeil des hommes, des** 9 houses, trees, /pleasing
[ɔ̃ vwa də lə sɔmɛ:j deʒɔm de forms and terrible forms.
- chiens, des maisons, des arbres, des formes** 10 And when one /awakes,
ʃjɛ de mɛ:zɔ̃ dezarbr de fɔrm these forms have disap-
aimables et des formes terribles. Et quand on 11 peared.
- zema:bl e de fɔrm tɛr(r)jɛ:bl e kɑ̃tɔ̃ *A valuable aid is to*
- s'éveille, ces formes ont disparu.** 12 *learn short, interesting*
seve:j se fɔrmzɔ̃ dispary] *passages by heart.*

NOTES. (a) *vous*, in line 2, has a comprehensive sense, like our 'you' when no one is directly addressed; this *vous* serves as an accusative (or dative) corresponding to *on*, which is always nominative, as in line 9. (b) *tout*, lines 4 and 5, has here the value of *toutes les choses* 'all things'; hence the reciprocal value of *se*, line 4. (c) In phonetic transcriptions, hardly anything is more difficult to represent satisfactorily than the length of vowels, for often it varies according to personal emphasis.

49. The Generic Article. Nouns that stand without restriction for a whole class or species, or for an abstraction, habitually require the definite article. Hence *les hommes, les choses, le sommeil*, etc.

REMARK. Note that *des hommes, des chiens, des maisons, des arbres*, following *le sommeil*, are not generic but partitive (§ 46). Observe the slight pause between *le sommeil* and *des hommes*. Were there no pause, *le sommeil des hommes* would mean 'the sleep of men.'

a. Number of the Generic Noun. When a class or species comprises many individuals, French (like English) generally prefers the plural, and often the plural must be used in order to avoid ambiguity. Thus we may say either *La baleine est énorme* [la bale:n etenɔrm] 'The whale is huge,' or *Les baleines sont énormes* 'Whales are huge,' both *French* groups requiring the article. As in English, the plural generally implies that the individuals falling under a given head differ more or less: *Les hommes, les animaux, les pierres, grandissent en s'approchant*. Again, *J'aime les roses* [ʒɛ:m le ro:z], 'I love roses' (all roses), is more colloquial than *J'aime la rose*, and *J'aime le livre* [li:vʁ] could not be substituted, generically, for *J'aime les livres* 'I love books.'

REMARKS. (a) *J'étudie l'allemand* [ʒetydi lalmɑ̃] means 'I'm studying German,' or *possibly* 'I'm studying the German' (as a racial species, or the particular German that you and I have in mind). *J'étudie les Allemands* means 'I'm studying the Germans,' and it can mean nothing else. (If personal, a substantive of nationality is capitalized; pure adjectives and non-personal common nouns, only by exception.) (b) Abstract nouns, like *sommeil*, are seldom pluralized; pluralizing divides the abstraction into specimens: *la laideur* = '(the) ugliness'; *les laideurs* = 'the ugly characteristics.'

b. The Effect of Quantitative Words. The generic article is not used after quantitative words. Hence, *Le pain est bon* [lə pɑ̃ ɛ bɔ̃] 'Bread is good,' but *Nous avons assez* [asɛ] *de pain* 'We have enough bread,' *trop* [tʁɔ] *de pain* 'too much bread,' *beaucoup de pain* 'plenty of bread,' *tant d'argent* 'so much money,' *si peu d'argent* 'so little money,' etc. So *L'eau est indispensable* [lo etɛ̃dispɑ̃sabl] 'Water is indispensable,' but *Cherchez-moi un verre d'eau* [ʃɛʁʃɛ mwa œvɛʁ do] 'Get me a glass of water.'

REMARK. In *l'amour du beau* 'the love of the beautiful,' *l'amour* is specific, whereas *du beau* (not partitive) is generic.

c. **The Article before Predicate Nouns.** A predicate nominative noun following a generic plural is usually partitive: **Est-ce que les perles** [pɛʁl] **sont des pierres?** 'Are pearls stones?' But the predicate nominative is not partitive if the things named are identical: **Les affaires** [afɛːʀ] **sont les affaires** 'Business is business.'

50. **Questions.** Questions which can be answered with 'yes' or 'no' are exemplified by **Est-ce qu'il vient?** 'Is he coming?' or **Vient-il?** [vjɛːtil]. Other questions contain an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb: **Qui est là?** 'Who's there?' **Quel livre avez-vous?** 'Which (What) book have you?' **Où sont les verres?** 'Where are the glasses?' **Où sont-ils?** 'Where are they?'

a. **The Type *Parle-t-il?*** ('Does he speak?' 'Is he speaking?'), ***A-t-elle?*** ('Has she?'). Verbs whose third person singular ends in a vowel-symbol or in a vowel-sound (as *il parle, elle a*) insert *t* [t] before *il, elle, and on*.

REMARK. Until about four centuries ago, forms such as *parle il* and *a elle* were general; the *t* now invariably inserted, as exemplified above, was borrowed from those verbs which have it as part of their inflectional ending or otherwise, as *grandit-elle* [grɑ̃ːditɛl], *vient-on* [vjɛːtɔ̃], *est-il* [ɛtil], and *vend-on* [vɑ̃ːtɔ̃] 'does one sell?' This insertion of *t* illustrates the influence of *analogy*.

b. **The Type *Est-ce que je mange?*** [mɑ̃ːʒ] ('Do I eat?'). Whenever archaic or ugly forms would result from reversing (as they do in the first person singular, present indicative, of the first conjugation and of some others), interrogation may be expressed by **Est-ce que** (§ 40), or by a rising pitch.

REMARK. Though given as normal in many grammars, forms such as **Mangé-je?** [mɑ̃ʒɛːʒ], **Parlé-je?** [parlɛːʒ], etc. are avoided even in writing; in conversation they are ridiculous. Other groups from other conjugations might also be absurd, as **Mens-je?** [mɑ̃ːʒ] for **Est-ce que je mens?** 'Do I lie?' (cf. *mange*, imperative, 'eat').

51. **Adjectives in *-e*** (usually silent). These vary only by taking **s** to agree with a plural: **libre-s** [li:br] 'free,' **utile-s** [ytil] 'useful,' etc.

FOR TRANSLATION AND PRONUNCIATION

1. Is thought free? Are men's thoughts free? 2. A dog's thoughts are free, and we have many thoughts. 3. A man has thoughts when he speaks, but does he always speak (does he speak always) when he has a thought? 4. There are dogs that speak when you offer them food. I speak when I wish to. 5. When sounds come out of (**sortent de**) my mouth they form meanings. 6. These meanings are distinct and they are useful. 7. There are too many (**trop de**) meaningless noises; there are noises wherever we are, and wherever I am I find many temptations. 8. Temptations are to be met (find themselves) everywhere, and they are enormous. 9. If my master tempts me I succumb, for dogs always succumb (succumb always) to their (**leur-s**) masters' temptations. 10. And men too, when they seek temptations, they always find them (find them always). 11. We find everything that we seek. 12. If a man seeks a temptation he always finds it. 13. Gold (**L'or**, *m.* [lɔ:r]) is indispensable and it tempts men. 14. Does it tempt dogs? No (**Non** [nɔ̃]). But food tempts us; it tempts us wherever we are; we find it indispensable, and men find it useful. 15. When an enemy is spying upon us it is to take away our (**notre**) food. 16. The enemy that spies upon me when I am eating is swift to act (**prompt**) and full of wiles. 17. There are too many enemies everywhere; you find enemies wherever you are; I find them round about me. 18. I see them in sleep, when I am lying on the warm hearthstone; I see them when I am eating in the shed behind the house (*f.*). 19. If a dog approaches me when I am eating, it is to take away my food. 20. Many animals are always looking for food. 21. I always have enough food, for my master is good, and he gives me (**me donne**) everything that I wish (**veux**).

CINQUIÈME LEÇON

THE ARTICLES (CONTINUED). POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

52. Fin des *Pensées de Riquet*, avec transcription phonétique, etc.

La vie d'un chien est pleine de dangers.	1	The life of a dog is full of <u>perils</u> . / And, to avoid
[la vi dœ sjɛ ɛ plɛ(ˈ)n d(ə) dɑːʒe		
Et pour éviter la souffrance, il faut veiller	2	suffering, it is necessary
e purevite la sufrɑːs il fo ve(ː)je		to be awake [<i>i. e.</i> <u>vigi-</u>
à toute heure, pendant les repas, et même	3	lant]/(at) every moment,
a tutœːr pɑː(ˈ)dɑ le rɑpa e mœːm		during <u>meals</u> , and even/
pendant le sommeil. . . .	4	during <u>sleep</u> .
pɑː(ˈ)dɑ lə sœmɛːj]		There are carriages
Il y a des voitures que les chevaux traînent	5	which (the) horses drag/
[ilja de vwatyːr k(ə) le ʃ(ə)vo tœːn		through the streets. They
par les rues. Elles sont terribles. Il y a	6	are terrible. There are/
par le ry el sɔ tɛr(R)iːbl ilja		carriages which [or, <u>some</u>
des voitures qui vont toutes seules en soufflant	7	carriages] go all alone,
de vwatyːr ki vɔ tut sœ(ː)l ɑ suflɑ		<u>breathing/very hard</u> [<u>an</u>
très fort. Celles-là aussi sont pleines d'inimi-	8	<u>allusion to the auto-</u>
tre fœːr sella ɔːsi sɔ plɛ(ˈ)n dinimi-		<u>mobiles of about 1903</u>].
tié. Les hommes en haillons sont haïssables,	9	They, too, are full of <u>en-</u>
tje lezœm(z) ɑ ɑːʒ sɔ aisaːbl		<u>mity</u> ./(The) men in <u>rags</u>
et ceux aussi qui portent des paniers sur	10	are <u>hateful</u> , / and those,
e sœ ɔːsi ki pœrt de panje syr		also, who carry baskets on
leur tête ou qui roulent des tonneaux. Je	11	/their heads [<u>note Engl.</u>
lœr tɛːt u ki ruːl de tœno ʒœ		<u>pl.</u>] or who roll <u>casks</u> . I/
n'aime pas les enfants qui, se cherchant,	12	don't like (the) children
nœːm pɑ lezɑːfɑ ki sœ ʃœrʃɑ		who, chasing each other,
se fuyant, courent et poussent de grands cris	13	/fleeing from each other
sœ fujɑ kuːr e pus dɑ grɑ kri		[or, from one another],
dans les rues. Le monde est plein de choses	14	<u>run and yell</u> [<u>lit.</u> utter
dɑ le ry lə mɔːd ɛ plɛ d(ə) ʃœz		great cries]/in the streets.
hostiles et redoutables.	15	The world is full of/hos-
œstɪl e rœdutaːbl]		tile and formidable things.

NOTES. (a) With *la vie* and *des voitures*, fem., we get *pleine-s*; with *Le monde* we get *plein*. Hence, *plein-s*, masc.; *pleine-s*, fem. (b) Compare *chevaux*, *cheval*, with *animaux*, *animal*. (c) *Celles-là*, fem. dem. pronoun,

pl.; the masc. pl., **ceux**, to agree with **hommes**, occurs in line 10. (*d*) **Je n'aime pas** shows the normal reinforcing negative particle **pas**. (*e*) In line 12, **se** is not reflexive but reciprocal: the children, as they play tag, do not chase and run away from themselves. (*f*) Again it is recommended that short, interesting passages, like this, be learned thoroughly, if not by heart. Read the French in § 52 three or four times (the last, if possible, *without thinking in English*); then, using only the English, try to reproduce the French correctly.

53. The Types *J'ai du pain* and *J'ai de bon pain*. When an indeterminate noun is preceded by an adjective, any partitive group which both words form has no article: **J'ai du pain** 'I have (some) bread,' but **J'ai de bon pain** 'I have (some) good bread'; so, in line 13, **de grands cris** (*not des grands cris*). See, however, § 318, *f*.

NOTE 1. Furthermore, the article is not used before various indeterminate nouns in prepositional phrases equivalent to an adjective or adverb. Note **Les hommes en haillons**, § 52, line 9. Likewise, adverbially, **vivre sans amis** 'to live without friends,' **se priver de nourriture** 'to deprive oneself of food,' etc. Note the group **pleine de dangers**, § 52, line 1.

NOTE 2. The negative particle **pas** has the same effect as, e.g., **assez**, **beaucoup**, **trop**, and other pronominal adverbs, or as quantitative nouns, e.g. **un verre de vin** 'a glass of wine,' **une tasse de café** 'a cup of coffee,' etc. **Je n'ai pas de pain** = 'I have no bread,' **Tu n'as pas d'amis** = 'You have no friends.'

54. *The Possessive Adjective; its Forms and its Sounds*

BEFORE A MASC. SING. SB.

mon pain [mɔ̃ pɛ̃] my bread
mon hamac [mɔ̃ amak] my hammock
mon ami [mɔ̃ nami] my friend
mon habit [mɔ̃ nabi] my coat

BEFORE A FEM. SING. SB.

ma vie [ma vi] my life
ma hache [ma aʃ] my ax
mon amie [mɔ̃ nami] my friend
mon heure [mɔ̃ nœ:r] my hour

RULE. (1) Before a masculine singular use **mon**, noting that when linked [ɔ̃] may be partly or wholly denasalized but that it generally keeps the quality (vowel-color) characteristic of [ɔ̃]. (2) Before a feminine singular beginning with a vowel (as **amie** or **heure**) use **mon**; before any other feminine singular use **ma**. Verify this rule.

a. **Ton** and **ta** 'your' ('thy'), **son** and **sa** 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' obey the same rule as **mon**. (Write 'his bread,' 'her hammock,' 'her friend,' 'your ax,' 'your hour,' etc.).

b. Before any plural noun use **mes**, **tes**, **ses**, noting that we get precisely the same phonetic variation as with **les** 'the':

Les amis de mes amis sont mes amis My friends' friends are my friends
Voilà tes frères et ta sœur [sœ:r] There are your brothers and your sister
Voici toutes ses petites amies [pətizami] Here are all her little friends

c. Ordinarily, French distinguishes between 'his' and 'her' (**son**, **sa**, **ses**) only by the context. Note that **mon**, **ton**, **son**, or **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, agree in gender and in number with the thing possessed, *not* with the possessor, but that the once purely masculine forms **mon**, **ton**, **son** must be used before *all* vowels: **ta jolie amie** 'your pretty friend,' but **ton amie**.

d. The forms denoting more than one possessor do not distinguish gender:

notre fils [nɔtrə fis] our son	notre île [nɔtri:l] our island
nos fils [no fis] our sons	nos îles [nozi:l] our islands
votre oncle [vɔtrɔ:k] your uncle	votre hache [vɔtrə aʃ] your ax
vos oncles [vozɔ:k] your uncles	vos haches [vo aʃ] your axes
leur lit [lœr li] their bed	leur mère [lœr mɛ:r] their mother
leurs lits [lœr li] their beds	leurs mères [lœr mɛ:r] their mothers

NOTE. Whether **vous** is addressed to one person or to more, its adjective is always **votre** or **vos**. **Tu**, always singular, requires **ton**, **ta**, **tes**.

e. **Repetition.** In French the possessive adjective and the article must be repeated before each of two or more successive nouns: **ta mère et ton père** 'your mother and (your) father,' so **la mère et le père**; **leurs amis ou leurs ennemis** 'their friends or (their) foes,' so **les amis et les ennemis**.

REMARK. One could no more say **ta mère et père**, or **ton père et mère**, than one could say 'this man and boys.' The repetition of an *identical* form, as in **vos fils et vos filles** [fi:j] 'your sons and (your) daughters,' or in **mes chiens et mes chevaux** (both m. pl.), is due to the influence of groups in which *different* forms are required through change of number or of gender.

FOR TRANSLATION AND PRONUNCIATION

I. Model: **J'ai reçu ta réponse à ma lettre** [ʒə rəsy ta repō:s a ma lɛtr] = 'I have received your reply to my letter.'

Vary this model so as to use **reçu** with the whole present indicative of **avoir** (§ 38, *a*), at the same time changing 'your reply to my letter' to 'my reply to their letter (*or* letters),' etc. Six reasonable combinations.

Then, before **réponse** or **réponses** (use both), insert **aimable** or **aimables** 'obliging' (§ 51), making each possessive take the form required before a vowel (§ 54, *c*).

II. Model: **Y a-t-il des harengs dans ta (sa, votre) hotte ?** = 'Are there any herrings in your (his, her, your) basket?'

Consult § 53, Note 2, and Model I; then answer this varied question negatively, using **hottes** as well as **hotte**, also **panier** (*m.*). Three reasonable combinations.

III. Model: **Votre jeune ami a perdu toute sa fortune et il n'a pas de parents** [votrə ʒœnami a pɛrdy tut sa fɔrty:n e il na pa də parɑ̃] = 'Your young friend has lost his whole fortune and he has no relatives.'

Vary this model by making **jeune ami** plural. Alter the rest to suit.

IV. Translate with two different possessives (as 'his,' 'her,' or 'their,' as well as 'your') this question: 'If your father and mother are in Paris, where are your brothers and sisters?'

V. *Translate.* 1. In the streets there are horses that drag carriages. 2. All (the) carriages are terrible. 3. The streets are full of dangers. 4. When I am in a street I see many hostile things. 5. I do not like men who roll casks, and those who carry baskets on their heads are hateful. 6. Children who yell as they play tag (§ 52, *lines 12-13*) are hateful, and a man in rags is always full of enmity. 7. A dog's life is full of dangers, even during meals and during sleep.

VI. (*For class-room work only.*) Model to be varied: **J'ouvre mon livre et je lui montre tous les passages qui le regardent.** See § 43.

SIXIÈME LEÇON

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. INTERROGATION (CONTINUED)

55. Formulas of Comparison: Examples and Rules.

La plupart des adjectifs qui expriment la	1	Most of the adjectives
[la plypa:r dezadzɛktif ki ɛksprim la	2	which express the qual-
qualité d'une personne ou d'une chose sont	3	ity of a person or of a
kalite dyn pɛrson u dyn ʒoz sɔ̃	4	thing are free to have
susceptibles de trois degrés divers. Le	5	three different degrees.
syseptibl də trwa dɛgre dive:r lə	6	The first is called the
premier s'appelle le positif: Votre idée est	7	positive: 'Your idea is
prɔ̃mje sapel lə pozitif vɔtride ɛ	8	simple.' The second is
simple. Le second s'appelle le comparatif:	9	called the comparative:
sɛ:pl lə sɛgɔ̃ sapel lə kɔparatif		'Your idea is simpler than
Votre idée est plus simple que la mienne.		mine.' The third is called
vɔtride ɛ ply sɛ:pl kə la mjɛn		the superlative: 'Your
Le troisième s'appelle le superlatif: Votre		idea is the simplest of all
lə trwazjɛm sapel lə syperlatif vɔ-		the ideas that exist.'
idée est la plus simple de toutes les idées		
tride ɛ la ply sɛ:pl də tut lezide		<i>Note also beaucoup plus</i>
qui existent. ¹		<i>simple</i> 'much (far) more
ki ɛgzist]		<i>simple, bien plus simple</i>
		<i>'far simpler,' etc. (cf. § 56).</i>

a. To decrease the degree we use **moins** [mwɛ̃] 'less': **moins simple** 'less simple,' 'not so simple,' **le (la) moins simple** 'the least simple,' **les moins simples**. To express equality we use **aussi** (**une idée aussi simple que la tienne** 'an idea as simple as yours') or sometimes merely **comme** [kɔm]: **simple comme bonjour** 'as simple as good day.' Note that **que** means either 'as' or 'than.'

FORMULA: (le) (la) (les) **plus**, or **moins**, + descriptive adjective, the adjective always agreeing in gender and number with the article (**le plus grand**, **la plus grande**, **les plus grand-e-s**, 'the greater,' 'the greatest') or with the substantive (**de plus jolies idées** 'prettier ideas,' **une plus jolie idée** 'a prettier idea,' **des plus jolies idées** 'of the prettiest ideas,' etc.).

¹ Cf. Brachet and Dussouchet, p. 119.

NOTE 1. The article preceding **plus** or **moins** is put in () because it is not always used, even before superlatives: **C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus simple** 'Nothing could be more simple,' 'It is the simplest thing imaginable' (*word for word*, 'It is all that which it there has of most simple').

NOTE 2. Unlike English, French has no special *forms* to differentiate superlatives from comparatives, but safely depends on the context: **une plus grande déception** = 'a greater disappointment,' **ma plus grande déception** = 'my greatest disappointment.' When the adjective follows its noun, the superlative is marked by **le, la, les**: **mon ami le plus fidèle** 'my most faithful friend' (*or mon plus fidèle ami*).

b. A few synthetic (i.e. one-word) forms are survivals of the Latin comparative: **Manger est bon, avoir mangé est meilleur** (*not plus bon*; see § 48) 'To eat is good, to have eaten is better'; but such forms may also be superlative: **ma meilleure idée** 'my best idea' (*or mon idée la meilleure*); masc. **meilleur-s**; fem. **meilleure-s**.

REMARKS. **Meilleur-e** 'better,' 'best,' is the only accepted comparative or superlative of **bon**, fem. **bonne** [bɔ̃]. — **Moindre-s** [mwɛ̃:dr] is given as the comparative or superlative of **petit-e-s** [p(ə)ti, p(ə)tit] 'small,' but means 'less,' 'least,' etc., as in **de moindre valeur** 'of less worth,' **sans la moindre valeur** 'without the slightest worth'; i.e., unlike **plus petit, plus petite**, etc., **moindre** is *not* used of physical dimensions. — **Pire** [pi:r] is more emphatic than **plus mauvais-e** [mɔvɛ, mɔvɛ:z] 'worse,' 'worst,' and is more restricted. Examples: **mon pire ennemi** 'my worst enemy,' but *not* **la pire gare** 'the worst railway station'!

NOTE. When a thing is compared with itself, only **le** (here properly *neuter*) precedes **plus** or **moins**: **C'est vers le soir que les roses sont le plus belles** 'It is toward evening that roses are most beautiful.'

56. Adverbs. Adverbs are compared like adjectives, but only with **le**: **vite** [vit] 'quickly,' **plus vite** 'more quickly,' **le plus vite** '(the) most quickly'; **lentement** [lɑ̃:təmɑ̃] 'slowly,' **moins lentement** '~~more~~ slowly,' **le moins lentement** '(the) least slowly.' Note the types **aussi (vite) que** 'as (fast) as,' **peu souvent** 'not very often,' **de plus en plus vite** 'faster and faster,' **plus . . . plus** 'the more . . . the more,' etc.

NOTE. **Mieux** [mjø] 'better,' **le mieux** '(the) best,' wholly excludes **plus bien**; but **moins bien** 'less well,' 'not so well,' is an everyday form; **pis** [pi] 'worse' (cf. **pire**) is much less used than **plus mal**: **mal** 'ill' (adv.),

'badly,' plus mal, le plus mal, moins mal, le moins mal. Before various adjectival past participles, mieux is commoner than plus: le mieux connu [kòny] 'the best-known,' la mieux connue, les mieux connus, le mieux aimé [lə mjøzɛ'me] 'the most loved,' etc.

57. *Examples of all the Pronominal Possessive Forms*

leur ami et le mien [lə mjɛ̃]	le mien	their friend and mine
sa mère et la mienne [la mjɛ̃n]	la mienne	her mother and mine
mon frère et le tien [lə tjɛ̃]	le tien	my brother and yours
ma sœur et la tienne [la tjɛ̃n]	la tienne	my sister and yours
votre frère et le sien [lə sjɛ̃]	le sien	your brother and his (hers)
ta haine et la sienne [la sjɛ̃n]	la sienne	your hatred and hers (his)
son père et le nôtre [lə no:tʁ]	le nôtre	his father and ours
sa rose et la nôtre [la no:tʁ]	la nôtre	her rose and ours
leur chien et le vôtre [lə vo:tʁ]	le vôtre	their dog and yours
leur réponse et la vôtre [la vo:tʁ]	la vôtre	their answer and yours
mon oncle et le leur [lə lœ:r]	le leur	my uncle and theirs
ma maison et la leur [la lœ:r]	la leur	my house and theirs

NOTE 1. The plural requires les and -s throughout: leurs amis et les miens, ma maison et les leurs, tes haines et les siennes, etc.

NOTE 2. Note that the pronouns nôtre, vôtre, and leur have long vowels [o:] and [œ:]; whereas the adjectives, unstressed proclitic forms, have short vowels [ɔ] and [œ].

58. *The Type La nourriture est-elle bonne?* When the subject nominative of a question happens to be a demonstrative pronoun or a noun, interrogation is commonly expressed as follows:

La nourriture est-elle bonne ?	1	Is the food good ?
Ton frère parle-t-il anglais ?	2	Does your brother speak English ?

Answer: 'yes' or 'no' (§ 50). Order: noun + verb + pronoun. So, *Cela est-il possible?* 'Is that possible?'—Note that before anglais and other names of languages the article, le, is not required after the one verb parler; it would be required after any other verb: *Il sait le chinois* 'He knows Chinese.'

Tout le monde rit. Pourquoi ces 3 Everybody laughs. Why do
gens trouvent-ils cela si drôle ? these people think that so funny?

Comment cette difficulté est-elle 4 How is that difficulty less great
moins grande que toutes les autres? than any of the rest (all the others)?

Here the answer must be a sentence. Note pourquoi and comment.

EXERCISES: POSSESSIVES AND QUESTIONS (WITH REVIEW)

(**Est-ce que** is here temporarily ruled out, except when archaic groups such as **parlé-je** are to be avoided. See § 50, *b*. Also consult the various French passages and paradigms in Lessons I to V, inclusive.)

I. 1. Do stones become larger (**grand-**) when they are close upon me? 2. When are they larger than a house? 3. When are they largest? 4. Do men and animals deprive themselves of food? 5. Do I always remain of the same size? or am I bigger (**grand**) when I have eaten? 6. Is a lobster red (**rouge**)? 7. When are lobsters reddest? 8. Why is a herring not so red as (less red than) a lobster? 9. Are books more necessary to men than to children? 10. Are books as necessary as food? 11. What book have you there? 12. The best of books (**des . . .**). 13. Is it better than mine? 14. Yes, it's much better (far better) than yours. 15. ~~Your book~~ is the worst imaginable (§ 55, *Note 1*). 16. There are no pearls in your book, there are many pearls in mine. 17. I like things (**les . . .**) when I find them useful. 18. My enemies are not useful; they are the most terrible things imaginable (§ 55, *Note 1*). 19. My enemies are even worse than yours or than my master's (**ceux de**). 20. When is it necessary to be most vigilant (**veiller . . .**)? 21. Here is my answer (**Voici . . .**): at every moment. 22. When my master is keeping me warm behind him in his easy-chair, my worst enemy is approaching. 23. He likes my food, for it is much better than his. 24. All dogs (**Tous . . .**) like meals (*m.*) that are better than theirs. 25. The streets (*f.*) are full of dangers. In mine there are more (**plus de**) children than in all the rest, and there are men who roll casks. 26. These casks go very fast, even faster than the men who roll them. 27. Why are men in rags the most hateful? 28. There are dangers everywhere. 29. I don't like the animals that drag carriages, for they are hostile. 30. A dog's life is full of formidable things.

II. (*For class-room work only.*) Model: **Il offre moins de choses à mon frère (à ma sœur) qu'au vôtre (qu'à la vôtre) = 'He offers fewer things to my brother (to my sister) than to yours.'**

See § 47, II-III, and illustrate all the possible combinations of **à** and the possessive pronoun. Complete **du mien, de la tienne**, etc.

SEPTIÈME LEÇON

FORMS FOR THE IMPERFECT OR PAST DESCRIPTIVE TENSE

59. Tense-Values of these Forms. Without ceasing to describe an act as something real or possible at a time called *present*, *je parle* may mean not only 'I speak,' but also 'I'm speaking,' 'I keep speaking,' etc. By 'Accidents will happen' we often mean that they happen inevitably from time to time. An act (or a state) may therefore be thought of as *repeated*, or *progressive*, or *customary*, or *possible* in the present. This is true also of an act (or state) thought of as future or as past. For the past, French differentiates tenses with particular accuracy. English has more forms, but 'I spoke' may often be substituted for 'I was speaking,' 'I would speak,' 'I kept speaking,' etc., without shocking our linguistic sense, and without notably changing the value of our tense.

REMARK. Similarly, *French* does not consistently distinguish between an event reaching from somewhere in the past to the present, or indefinitely past, and one which occurred within definite limits and absolutely. Thus *Je lui ai parlé* may often be replaced by *Je lui parlai* = 'I spoke to him,' or vice versa. See § 61, Note 2, and § 71.

60. Examples of the Imperfect or Past Descriptive Tense-Forms. Group B

<i>je parlais</i> [parle(z)]	<i>j'étais</i> [ete(z)]	<i>j'avais</i> [ave(z)]
<i>tu parlais</i> [parle(z)]	<i>tu étais</i> [ete(z)]	<i>tu avais</i> [ave(z)]
<i>il parlait</i> [parle(t)]	<i>on était</i> [ete(t)]	<i>elle avait</i> [ave(t)]
<i>nous parlions</i> [parljɔ̃(z)]	<i>nous étions</i> [etjɔ̃(z)]	<i>nous avions</i> [avjɔ̃(z)]
<i>vous parliez</i> [parlje(z)]	<i>vous étiez</i> [etje(z)]	<i>vous aviez</i> [avje(z)]
<i>ils parlaient</i> [parle(t)]	<i>elles étaient</i> [ete(t)]	<i>ils avaient</i> [ave(t)]
I spoke, etc.	I was, etc.	I had, etc.
I was speaking, etc.	I was being, etc.	I was having, etc.
I used to speak, etc.	I used to be, etc.	I used to have, etc.
I kept speaking, etc.	I would be, etc.	I would have, etc.
I would speak (<i>a habit</i>), etc.	(§ 63, Note)	(§ 63, Note)

NOTE 1. The *conditional* or *past future* (e.g. *je parlerais* 'I should speak,' *tu parlerais* 'you would speak,' etc.) always ends in *-rais, -rais, -rait, -rions, -riez, -raient*. The *imperfect* or *past descriptive* ends thus only when *r* happens to be part of the root or stem: *tirer* '(to) pull' gives *je tirais* 'I was pulling' etc.

Inflectional endings: *-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient*.

NOTE 2. These inflectional endings (*-ais* etc.) are alike for all French verbs. If we know one form of group *B* of any verb, the five others are obvious: *j'apprenais à lire* ('I was learning to read') gives us *nous apprenions à lire* etc.; so *elle trouvait* gives *je trouvais* etc. Note the stem in each case.

REMARK. In grammars, these and other inflectional endings are often displayed thus: *je parl-ais, j'av-ais, j'ét-ais*, etc. Such typographical divisions conflict with the universal rules of syllabification; natural (phonetic) divisions would be better indicated thus: *par-lais, a-vais, ét-tais*, etc., or, for a verb like *jouer* ('play'), thus: *jou-ais* etc. See § 27.

61. Terminology. As this group of forms in *-ais* etc. may have *various* time-values (meanings), none of the several names which have been given to it can be always accurate. Other groups, present, past, and future, may also express 'imperfect' acts or states; and other groups may be vividly 'descriptive.'

a. For example, *Si je parlais, elle m'écouterait* (conditional of *écouter*) may mean *either* 'If I were talking [*now*], she would listen to me,' or 'If I talked [*to-morrow* or *at any future time*], she would listen to me.' Again, *S'il me tuait?* ('Suppose he should kill me?') expresses an act which is not only future but instantaneous; therefore not 'imperfect,' except as everything future is imperfect (*imparfait* 'not finished'). Again, if by 'descriptive' we refer to any mental picture, the form *était* is not descriptive in, say, *Cela était vrai* ('That was true'), though the condition that it reports is past. The term 'descriptive' necessarily varies in appropriateness according to the degree of visibility that a given verb happens to attain.

b. A frequent and serious mistake which must be scrupulously avoided is the confusing of a *form* (e.g. *parlait*) with the *functions* or *meanings* of that form. To avoid this confusion, when we are merely indicating a *form* and are not attempting to tell what it may *mean* (according to the context) we shall use five capital letters (*A B C D E*). The six forms *je parle, tu*

parles, etc., belong to group *A*; the six forms *je parlais*, *tu parlais*, etc., belong to group *B*. The groups *C*, *D*, and *E* will be considered later.

NOTE 1. 'Past descriptive' is a new name; 'imperfect' is very old. Each attempts to cover the functions of all forms exemplified by *je parlais* etc. (thousands of forms with various functions for each).

NOTE 2. French grammarians have called the group of forms exemplified by *j'ai parlé* (= 'I have spoken,' 'I have been speaking,' or 'I spoke') *le passé indéfini*, whereas the group exemplified by *je parlai* etc. (= 'I spoke,' at a definite moment or within known time-limits) is called *le passé défini*. In living French, as spoken, 'the past indefinite' is habitually used as a substitute for 'the past definite'; so that *le passé indéfini* has at least two very different meanings and therefore a misleading name.

62. *Meanings of the Imperfect or Past Descriptive, i.e. of Group B (je parlais, tu avais, etc.). A Recommendation*

A Recommendation. In translating or interpreting any form belonging to this group it will be well to test each of the English styles given in § 60, under the three paradigms. A good sense of English idiom will usually enable you to decide which particular style is both most graceful and most accurate. Thus, too, — and for a student of French this is the truly relevant result, — you will gradually acquire an understanding of the French forms so as to use *them* correctly, to distinguish them rigorously from other forms, especially from the *past absolute* (§§ 65–67) and from the compound forms exemplified by *j'ai trouvé* = 'I found' and *je suis venu* = 'I came.' Learn to think in *French* as soon as possible.

NOTE. Wherever French expresses a given tense-meaning by a single form, as *je parlais*, English-speaking students almost invariably 'react' with a *single* English form, as 'I spoke,' even though that single form may be unidiomatic and often clearly incorrect. Observe the difference between 'He was speaking French' and 'He spoke (knew how to speak) French,' both = *Il parlait français*; again, between 'He spoke when I came in' and 'He was speaking when I came in,' etc. 'He is (was) speaking' has quite as good a right to be regularly counted as a tense-form as has 'I have spoken' (*j'ai parlé*) or 'I had spoken' (*j'avais parlé*).

63.

Some Contrasting Examples

Pendant que nous parlions tout le monde est sorti.	1	While we were talking, everybody went out.
Quand je suis revenu vous étiez dans votre chambre.	2	When I came home, you were in your room.
Chaque fois que tu parlais anglais tous les autres parlaient français, ils trouvaient ça drôle.	3	Every time you spoke English everybody else would speak French: they thought that [was] funny.
<u>Quelques instants plus tard, le bateau était amarré.</u>	4	A few seconds later the boat was <u>lying at her moorings.</u>
On a amarré le bateau à midi.	5	The boat was moored at noon.

NOTE. 'To be' can give 'is being,' 'was being,' etc. only when followed by a participle; we cannot say 'while you were being in your room.' ('We had told Billy to be good; so he was being good' is merely a play on words.) In 'I was having (difficulties),' *was having* means 'was experiencing.'

EXERCISES

I. In *Les Pensées de Riquet* (§ 41) occur the present indicative forms **tend**, **va**, **est**, and **succombe**. The first person singular for the past descriptive (*B*) for each of these forms is **je tendais**, **j'allais**, **j'étais**, and **je succombais**. Write out the five remaining forms for each of these verbs, then substitute in that passage a past descriptive (*B*) for each present tense (*A*), as needed. What is the result?

II. Pursue the same course in the passage in § 44, noting that there we need **je tenais** etc. for **tient**, **je venais** etc. for **vient**, **je voulais** etc. for **je veux**, **il sortait** etc. for **il sort**, **je formais** etc. for **forment**, **j'exprimais** etc. for **j'exprime**. If you translate your result, see how you can vary your forms in conformity with § 60 (translations) and § 62.

III. By reversing **je trouvais**, **tu trouvais**, etc. we get **trouvais-je** [tru've:ʒ] (for the first singular commonly **est-ce que je trouvais**), **trouvais-tu**, etc. Give the whole past descriptive (*B*) interrogatively, otherwise preserving the combinations in § 43, *a*. So, likewise, for **Je me prive**, § 43, *b*. When written, or as it is being written, each new combination should be pronounced.

HUITIÈME LEÇON

THE PAST ABSOLUTE TENSE (GROUP C). THE
DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

64. Paradigms from *parler* '(to) speak,' *avoir* '(to) have,' *être* '(to) be.' Group C:

<i>je parlai</i> [parle]	<i>j'eus</i> [y(z)]	<i>je fus</i> [fy(z)]
<i>tu parlais</i> [parla(z)]	<i>tu eus</i> [y(z)]	<i>tu fus</i> [fy(z)]
<i>on parla</i> [parla]	<i>elle eut</i> [y(t)]	<i>cela fut</i> [fy(t)]
<i>nous parlâmes</i> [parla:m(z)]	<i>nous eûmes</i> [y'm(z)]	<i>nous fûmes</i> [fy'm(z)]
<i>vous parlâtes</i> [parlat(z)]	<i>vous eûtes</i> [yt(z)]	<i>vous fûtes</i> [fyt(z)]
<i>elles parlèrent</i> [parle:r(t)]	<i>ils eurent</i> [y:r(t)]	<i>ils furent</i> [fy:r(t)]
I spoke, etc.	I had, I got, etc.	I was, etc.

NOTE 1. Inflectional endings for the *first conjugation* (type *parler*): *-ai, -as, -a, -âmes, -âtes, -èrent*. The *â* of *-âmes* is sometimes pronounced [ɑ]. Like the [y] of *eûmes* and *fûmes*, the [ɛ] of *-èrent*, and the [y] of *eurent* and *furent*, it may vary in length, but does not become markedly short.

NOTE 2. The inflectional endings of the past absolute (C) of *avoir* and *être* (both irregular verbs) happen at the same time to be part of the stem; but the same sounds (written *-us, -ut, -ûmes*, etc.) serve as inflectional endings for a few other irregular verbs; for example, *je reçus* 'I received,' etc., forms for the past absolute of *recevoir* [rəs(ə)vwa:r].

NOTE 3. Though very irregular, both *avoir* and *être* are conjugated in our first lessons because both are indispensable, whether used independently or as auxiliary verbs.

65. *Tense-Values of Group C.* The *past absolute* (*le passé défini*), as expressed by group C, is now obsolete in everyday speech. It is used in literary narration to represent one or more actions (or a state) as beginning, continuing, and ending at a given moment in the past, not connected with the present.¹ The user of this tense-group thinks

¹ Of this tense-group the editors of the *Dictionnaire général* (prefatory matter, p. 270) rightly say: 'Il a disparu complètement de la langue parlée et n'a plus qu'une valeur littéraire qu'il est peut-être destiné à perdre dans un bref délai.'

of a given event, or of several, as a unit. He is not impressed by the idea of repetition or duration; both these are merely incidental notions when the verb does not happen to describe a single or an instantaneous event. Examples:

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| On répéta cela deux mille fois. | 1 | That was repeated 2000 times. |
| Pendant des siècles Rome domina le monde. Son empire fut immense. | 2 | For centuries Rome ruled the world. Her empire was immense. |
| J'eus de la chance cette fois. | 3 | I had (some) luck that time. |
- (In everyday French: **a répété, a dominé, a été, j'ai eu.** See § 61, Note.)

66. *Further Examples from Ma Sœur Henriette, by Ernest Renan (1823-1892)*

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| A partir de ce moment, notre état fut la pauvreté. Mon frère, qui avait dix-neuf ans, partit pour Paris et commença dès lors cette vie de travail et de constante application qui ne devait pas avoir toute sa récompense. Nous quit-
tâmes Tréguier, * * *, et nous allâmes habiter Lannion, où ma mère avait sa famille. | 1
3
5
7
9 | From that moment [<i>word for word, 'To start from that moment'</i>] our condition was poverty. My brother, who was nineteen years old, left for Paris and began <u>forthwith</u> that life of work and of constant application which was not destined to be fully <u>rewarded</u> . We left Tréguier, . . . and went to live at Lannion, [<i>freely</i>] the home of my <u>mother's</u> family. |
|---|-----------------------|--|

(Continued in Lesson IX.)

NOTES. (a) The past absolute **partit** (line 3) is from the intransitive verb **partir** (line 1). (b) **commença** (line 4) must have a cedilla to preserve the [s] heard in all forms of **commencer**. (c) **où ma mère avait sa famille** does not mean exactly 'where my mother had her family.'

67. 'The past definite [or past absolute] tense lies wholly in the past. It is the true past tense, and represents a looking backward. Tending to sum up and to give a comprehensive view, it implies that the action was completed, came to an end. . . . The imperfect [past descriptive], on the other hand, leaves unsettled the question of when and whether it was completed. The speaker takes the attitude of an onlooker, so that instead of a looking backward the imperfect represents a looking on.'¹

¹ E. C. Armstrong, *Syntax of the French Verb*, § 36.

Note whether this statement (§ 67) covers accurately the examples in § 66.

The past absolute **fut** (line 1) refers to a definite period whose beginning is marked by **A partir de ce moment**, and whose end occurred in the course of the various events which Renan is narrating. We might almost translate this **fut** by the paraphrase 'became and continued until such and such a date to be,' etc. The absolute tense-value of **partit**, **commença**, **quittâmes**, and **allâmes** is obvious: each happens to express an instantaneous act which occurred at a known moment.

On the other hand, we do not know when Renan's brother became nineteen years old, nor when he ceased to be of that age; hence, **avait dix-neuf ans**. So for the form **devait** (group *B* of **devoir**) and the **avait** of **avait sa famille**.

A verb in group *B* commonly records *one of the environing circumstances* under which some expressed or understood event definitely occurred, whether repeated or not. A *state* is treated like an event.

68.

The Demonstrative Adjective

Unless followed by **-ci** ('here') or **-là** ('there'), adverbial suffixes, the forms exemplified below may mean either 'this,' 'these,' or 'that,' 'those,' according to the context (**ce moment** = 'this moment' or 'that moment'; **ce moment-ci** = only 'this moment'; **ce moment-là** = only 'that moment').

BEFORE ANY MASCULINE SINGULAR	BEFORE ANY FEMININE SINGULAR
ce moment , ce moment-ci , ce moment-là	cette dalle , cette dalle-ci (<i>or -là</i>)
ce hareng [sə arā] this herring	cette haine [set e:n] that hatred
cet enfant [setā:fā] that child	cette heure [setœ:r] this hour

NOTE 1. Before all plurals, **ces**: **ces jours** [se ʒu:r] 'these (those) days,' **ces harengs** [se arā] 'these (those) herrings,' **ces dalles-ci** [se dal si] 'these slabs,' **ces heures** [sezœ:r], etc. Compare **cet enfant** with **ce bon enfant**.

QUERIES. What are the four written forms of the demonstrative adjective? What happens to **ce** and to **cette** before an 'aspirate **h**'? (Cf. § 54, c.)

NOTE 2. The neuter demonstrative pronoun **ce**, 'this,' 'that,' 'it,' will be considered further in §§ 76-83.

a. Repetition. A single demonstrative adjective cannot govern more than one noun; hence, **ce chien et ce cheval**, **ces chiens et ces chevaux**, **cet homme et cette femme**, etc. Cf. § 54.

69. *Tense-Groups A, B, and C of parler. a Comparison*

<i>A</i> (PRESENT TENSE)	<i>B</i> (PAST DESCRIPTIVE)	<i>C</i> (PAST ABSOLUTE)
je parl(e) -e	je parl(ais) -ais	je parl(ai) -ai
tu parl(es) -es	tu parl(ais) -ais	tu parl(as) -as
il parl(e) -e	on parl(ait) -ait	elle parl(a) -a
nous parl(ons) -ons	nous parl(ions) -ions	nous parl(âmes) -âmes
vous parl(ez) -ez	vous parl(iez) -iez	vous parl(âtes) -âtes
ils parl(ent) -ent	elles parl(aient) -aient	ils parl(èrent) -èrent

EXERCISES, INCLUDING A REVIEW

I. Group *B* for *chercher* is *je cherchais* etc.; group *C* for *montrer* is *je montrai* etc.

Vary the following model so as to use all six forms of each verb, also six suitable forms of the possessive adjective (§ 54) and six suitable forms of the possessive pronoun (§ 57). Model: **Pendant qu'elle cherchait ta lettre je lui montrai la mienne** = 'While she was looking for your letter I showed her mine.' (Datives as in § 43, *c*).

II. **Je leur donnai tout ce que j'avais alors** = 'I gave them all that I had then.'

Vary this model so as to use all group *C* of *donner*, all group *B* of *avoir*, all the datives in § 43, *c*, and each of the following objects:

tout ce que [tusk] 'all that'; **tout le pain que** 'all the bread that'; **tous les œufs que** 'all the eggs that'; **toute l'eau que** [tut lo ka] 'all the water that'; **toutes les jolies choses que** 'all the pretty things that.'

III. Illustrate all the forms of *ce* with the sixteen nouns in § 34.

QUERIES. In view of §§ 59, 61-62, and 65, could any of the verbs in § 44 correctly be made past absolute (*C*)? Experiment with **parlai**, **voulus**, **sortit**, etc. (cf. § 44, Note *b*). What would result if in § 48 every *A* form were replaced by a *B* form — **est** by **était**, **succède** by **succédait**, **voit** by **voyait**, etc.? What would result in § 48 if a *C* form were substituted in each case — **On voit** becoming **On vit** (cf. **sortit** and **partit**)? Could correct *forms* of the demonstrative adjective be reasonably substituted for the definite article in the French of §§ 41 and 44?

NEUVIÈME LEÇON

THE TYPES *J'AI PARLÉ*, *J'AVAIS PARLÉ*, *JE SUIS ARRIVÉ*,
J'ÉTAIS ARRIVÉ. FORMS OF PAST PARTICIPLES AND PURE
ADJECTIVES. THE NEUTER PRONOUN *CE*.

70. Fin de l'extrait de *Ma Sœur Henriette*. Examples of Tenses.

(Renan tells how his sister cared for him)

Le soir, en hiver, elle m'amenait à l'église sous son manteau; c'était pour moi une grande joie de fouler la neige ainsi abrité de toutes parts. * * *

Un jour, trouvant mes mouvements embarrassés, elle vit que je cherchais timidement à dissimuler le défaut d'un vêtement usé. Elle pleura; la vue de ce pauvre enfant destiné à la misère, avec d'autres instincts, lui serra le cœur. Elle résolut d'accepter le combat de la vie, et s'imposa la tâche de combler à elle seule l'abîme que la mauvaise fortune de notre père avait creusé devant nous.

1 In the evening, in winter, she
would take me to church under
3 her cloak; it was for me a great
joy to ~~tr~~ead the snow thus shel-
5 tered on all sides. . . .

7 One day, noticing an awkward-
ness in my movements, she saw
that I was trying timidly to hide the
9 shabbiness of a worn-out garment.
She wept; the sight of that poor
11 child, doomed to poverty, and other
instinctive feelings, made her heart
13 ache. She resolved to accept life's
struggle, and imposed upon herself
15 the task of filling up alone the abyss
that our father's evil fortune had
17 dug across our path [*lit.* before us].

NOTES. (a) Forms from group *B* are here strongly contrasted with forms from group *C*: *elle vit* (from *voir*), *je cherchais*, *Elle pleura*, *serra*, *Elle résolut* (from *résoudre*), *s'imposa*. (b) *à elle seule* = lit. 'by herself alone'; here *elle* is stressed. (c) *lui serra le cœur* might be 'literally' translated *clutched her* (dative) *the heart* — a regular construction.

71. Colloquial and Literary Usage. As indicated in Lessons VII and VIII, the past absolute (*le passé défini*), i.e. group *C*, is generally replaced in everyday French by the compound group exemplified by *j'ai parlé* (for *je parlai*), by *j'ai eu* (for *j'eus*), by *j'ai été* (for *je fus*), etc.

LITERARY OR CONVERSATIONAL

César a été assassiné.
Nous avons quitté Tréguier et
nous sommes allés habiter Lannion.

PURELY LITERARY

1 César fut assassiné.
2 Nous quittâmes Tréguier et nous
allâmes habiter Lannion.

72. The Past Participle with *avoir*. Neither the gender nor the number of the *subject* has any effect upon the form of the past participle following *avoir*: **elles ont cherché, elle a été, nous avons quitté**, etc.

NOTE. With *avoir* the past participle varies from its simplest form only when preceded by an accusative object: **la ville que nous avons quittée** 'the city that we (have) left,' **les belles choses que j'ai trouvées** 'the lovely things that I (have) found,' **les hommes et les femmes que tu as vus** (inclusive form) 'the men and women you have seen (*or* saw),' etc.

a. *Groups A p.p. and B p.p. with avoir*

Typical Forms

J'ai parlé, etc. = 'I spoke' *or* (pres. pf.) 'I have spoken'
Tu as eu, etc. = 'you had,' 'you got,' *or* (pres. pf.) 'you have had'
Elle a été, etc. = 'she was' *or* (pres. pf.) 'she has been'
Nous avons quitté, etc. = 'we left' *or* (pres. pf.) 'we have left'
Vous avez trouvé, etc. = 'you found' *or* (pres. pf.) 'you have found'
Elles ont cherché, etc. = 'they sought' *or* (pres. pf.) 'they have sought'

NOTE. Likewise, for group *B p.p.*, **j'avais trouvé** 'I had found,' **elle avait été** 'she had been,' **elles avaient parlé** 'they had spoken,' etc.

73. Intransitive Past Participles with *être*. Numerous intransitive verbs — e.g. **entrer dans** 'enter,' **rester à** 'remain in *or* at,' etc. — form their compound tenses with *être*. In every such case, the past participle must vary like a pure adjective, to agree in gender and number with the subject. Examples:

a. *Groups A p.p. and B p.p. with être (cf. § 427, b)*

Typical Forms

Je suis parti(e), etc. = 'I went away' *or* 'I have gone away'
Tu es sorti(e), etc. = 'you went out' *or* 'you have gone out'
Elle est sortie, etc. = 'she went out' *or* 'she has gone out'
Nous sommes allé(e)s, etc. = 'we went' *or* 'we have gone'
Vous étiez tombé(e) or tombés or tombées, etc. = 'you had fallen'
Ils étaient entrés or elles étaient entrées, etc. = 'they had entered'

NOTE 1. As *vous* may be of either gender or of either number, the past participle with *vous* may have any one of the four possible forms. *Je* and *tu* may be either masculine or feminine; so *nous*.

NOTE 2. Any pure adjective would show the same variation of form: *Je suis grand-or grande* 'I am tall'; therefore, *Tu es grand or grande, Il était grand, Cela est trop grand* 'That's too big,' *Elle était très grande, Nous sommes grands or grandes, Vous êtes grand or grande or grands or grandes*.

NOTE 3. Nearly all past participles have four forms; many pure adjectives have only three (*anglais, anglaise, anglaises*, 'English'; *heureux, heureuse, heureuses*, 'happy'). Some have only two: *libre(s), chic(s)*.

NOTE 4. In passive constructions the past participle varies as in § 73.

74. *Ce (ce, c')*. This neuter demonstrative pronoun (not stressed) may stand for something vague. Except when it precedes a relative pronoun, it almost always occurs with some form of être, either as subject or as predicate nominative. Examples:

Qui est cette dame ? — C'est ma 1 *Who is that lady? — It's my*
sœur. sister.

Qui sont ces gens-là ? Ce sont 2 *Who are those people? They're*
des étrangers, n'est-ce pas ? — Ce strangers (foreigners), aren't they?
sont des touristes, voilà tout ce que — They are tourists; that's all I
je puis vous dire. Est-ce assez ? can tell you. Is it enough?

75. *Ceci* 'this,' *cela* or (more familiarly) *ça* 'that.' Within certain limits (to be considered later), these stressed forms may be subjects or objects of many verbs, but only in rare groups can they be *immediately* followed by relative pronouns, as, for example, when *C'est ça* [slight pause] *que* (*qui*, and possibly *dont* 'of which') = *Voilà ce que* etc. *Normal* groups are exemplified by *Voilà ce (Voilà celui) que je cherche* 'That is what (That is the one) I'm looking for,' etc. *C'est ça (C'est celui-là)* [slight pause] *que je cherche* is emphatic, and *Tu as cela (ça) que je cherche* is not French.

FOR TRANSLATION AND PRONUNCIATION

I. Model: *J'avais quitté X. vers sept heures du matin, seul (f. seule); j'étais arrivé (f. arrivée) à P. avant deux heures de l'après-midi* = 'I had left X. about seven o'clock in the morning, alone; I had reached P. about two o'clock in the afternoon.'

before

Vary this by using *all* group *B p. p.* of each verb; also by changing the adverbial phrases thus: **un peu avant trois heures** [œ pø avã trwazœ:r] = 'a little before three o'clock'; **à quatre heures** [katrœ:r] = 'at four'; **vers cinq heures** [sœkœ:r] = 'about five'; **sur les six** [syʀ le sis] = 'about six'; **un peu après huit heures et demie** [apʀe ɥitœ:redœmi] = 'shortly after half past eight.'

II. (*For oral work.*) The feminine of **le premier** 'the first' is **la première** [la pʀœmjœ:r]; **le dernier** 'the last' gives **la dernière**.

Elle est sortie la première = 'She was the first to go out.'

Vary this model by substituting **vous** (either gender, either number), and use all four forms of each adjective.

III. Model: **Nous les avons vus (or vues), mais nous ne leur avons jamais parlé** = 'We've seen them (we saw them), but we have never spoken (we never spoke) to them.' (Why either meaning? See § 71.)

Consult § 43; then change each pronoun so as to use *all* group *A p. p.* of each verb.

IV. Using the two different styles exemplified in § 71, translate 'You went to Paris; my father and mother remained at Lannion.'

V. (*For oral work.*) Noting that **N'est-ce pas?** [nœspa] is merely an unemphatic way of saying **N'est-ce pas vrai?** ('Isn't it true?' 'Isn't that true?'), translate the following:

1. Who were those people that we saw at Vitry? those two men and that lady?
2. They were tourists, weren't they?
3. They were foreigners, that is all that I can tell you.
4. Wasn't it (*A or B*) English that they were talking?
5. You are studying English, aren't you?
6. No, my friend, what I am studying is (*again use ce*) German.
7. When I was nineteen (years old), I spoke English a little, but I have forgotten (**oublier**) all that I learned (*again A p. p., with appris*).
8. We forget a good many things, don't we?

QUERIES. (a) The only nouns in § 70 whose gender is not revealed by the context are **hiver** (m.), **église** (f.), and **instincts** (m.). What establishes the gender in all other cases? (b) Why both **le** and **la** in **le combat de la vie**? (c) What does **ce** stand for in line 2? (d) What forms of the demonstrative pronoun have we met in §§ 44 and 52? and how are they used?

DIXIÈME LEÇON

CE, CECI, CELA (ÇA), CONTINUED. CELUI, CELLE, ETC.

76. *Ce* is neuter and cannot be used as an exact grammatical equivalent of any truly personal pronoun. As the apparent subject of *est*, *était*, *fut*, etc., it serves to suspend a substantive: *C'est votre frère* 'It's your brother';—but *Ce sont vos frères* 'It's your brothers' shows, by its plural verb, that the substantive is the true subject.

QUERY. How do you explain Chaucer's sentence in the *Man of Law's Tale*: 'It am I'? Is the *logical* subject 'It' or 'I'?

77. **The Neuter Adjective Form.** Any adjective following *c'est*, *c'était*, etc., can have only the so-called masculine singular, that is, *neuter* form: *C'est très beau, mais ce n'est pas vrai* 'That is very beautiful, but it isn't true.'

QUERY. What conclusion may we derive from the fact that in speaking of an obviously sexless thing, as *une table* or *un paysage* 'a landscape,' we may say *C'est très joli!* ('It's very pretty!'), whereas if we are looking at a man (*un homme*), a woman (*une femme*), or a horse (*un cheval*), we should have to say *Il est très joli!* or *Elle est très jolie?* Simply this: that we may be indifferent as to the gender of what is obviously or apparently sexless. Yet *ce* cannot be completely identified even with a sexless thing; hence *J'aime ça, c'est joli*, 'I like that, it's pretty,' but *J'aime cette idée, elle est jolie*.

78. From *c'est vrai que* 'it is true that,' or the like, we may derive *c'est que* 'the fact is that,' *est-ce que* (§ 40), and the set phrase *n'est-ce pas* (page 70, V). Note

<i>C'est vrai qu'il n'est plus là.</i>	1	It's true that he's no longer there.
<i>Vous êtes malade, c'est certain.</i>	2	You're ill, that's certain.
<i>Ce qui est sûr, ce que j'ai démontré, c'est qu'elle a menti.</i>	3	What's sure, what I've proved, is that she (has) lied.
<i>S'il parle chinois, c'est qu'il est né en Chine.</i>	4	If he speaks Chinese the reason is that he was born in China.

a. RULE. Relative clauses of the type illustrated in example 3 require a **ce que** to introduce the appositive clause, and explanatory clauses following a **si**-clause must begin with a **c'est que**, **c'était que**, or the like, as in example 4.

REMARK. In explanations, **c'est** is general whatever the tense of the verb following **que**, and **c'était** could hardly be correct if the following verb were a true past absolute (any form from group C). Examples: **C'est là que j'ai vu** (**j'avais vu**, etc.), but possibly **C'était là que je voyais**, etc.; *not* **C'était là que je vis** ('saw'); also **C'est là que j'ai vu**, *not* **C'était là que j'ai vu**.

79. **Ce before Relative Clauses.** With a few exceptions, no verb except **être** can be joined to **ce** unless a relative clause intervenes. Therefore for **Ce me tente** we must substitute **Ceci (Cela) me tente** 'This (That) tempts me,' whereas **Ce que vous m'offrez me tente** 'What you offer me tempts me' is correct. Cf. §§ 81-82.

80. *The Types C'est ici . . . , C'est là . . .*

C'est ici le lieu de préciser.	1	<i>Here is the place to be precise.</i>
La fourmi n'est pas prêteuse,	2	<i>The ant is not given to lending;</i>
c'est là son moindre défaut.		<i>that is the least of her faults.</i>

RULE. When a predicate substantive is to be emphatically localized, as here, **ceci** and **cela** are split, the suffix **ci** becoming **ici** while **la** becomes **là**.

REMARK. **Ceci est le lieu**, or **Cela est son moindre défaut**, would seem to make **ceci** and **cela** true substitutes for the nouns (**le**) **lieu** and (**son**) **moindre**) **défaut**. Compare **voilà** with **c'est ici** and **c'est là**. *W. Corri*

81. *Ceci and Cela (ça) as Subjects, Objects, etc.*

Ceci est vrai, cela est faux.	1	<i>This is true, that is false.</i>
Est-ce bien vrai cela (ça)?	2	<i>Is that really true?</i>
Cela (ça) m'étonne. Le crois-tu?	3	<i>That astonishes me. Do you believe it? You believe that?</i>
Tu crois ça?		

Omission of the Suffixes **-ci** and **-là**. **Ceci** and **cela (ça)** may be the subjects or objects of verbs, or the objects of prepositions (**de ceci**, **pour cela**, etc.), or may be modified by **tout** (**tout ceci**, **tout cela**); but neither

can be followed by an inserted relative clause, hence **Ce que tu annonces** (or **Ce que tu m'annonces là**) **m'étonne** 'What you announce astonishes me,' not **Cela que tu** etc. This rule applies to **celui-ci** etc., § 82.

82. Celui, Ceux, Celle, Celles, Celui-ci, etc.

Celui qui parlait est fou.	1	The one who was talking is crazy.
Vos plumes (f.) sont meilleures	2	Your pens are better than these,
que celles-ci, mais où sont celles		but where are those that you
que vous m'avez montrées hier ?		showed me yesterday?

Forms: masc. sg. **celui**; masc. pl. **ceux**; fem. **celle, celles**.

Omission of the Suffixes -ci and -là. These demonstratives may stand for any definite person or thing. They may be subjects or objects; but **-ci** or **-là** must not be freely added immediately before a relative or prepositional complement. Hence: **J'aime mieux celles-là** 'I prefer those,' **Celles-là sont bonnes, C'est celui-ci** ('This is the one'); **but ceux qui, celle que, celui de Jean** ('John's'), **celles sur la table**, etc.

NOTE 1. **Voilà celui que j'aime**, 'There is (or That is) the one I like,' illustrates normal usage. **Ceux-là même qui le savent l'ont nié**, 'The very persons who know it have denied it,' is also normal because **même** is inserted before **qui**.

NOTE 2. The forms **-ci** and **-là** make the pronoun strongly demonstrative; therefore they are seldom needed after **ce, celui**, etc. if some descriptive phrase, as **qui parlait, de Jean**, etc., shows plainly where the speaker is directing his thoughts.

NOTE 3. 'The one,' 'that one,' 'the ones,' etc. When these forms are employed as in Note 2, the French equivalent is never **l'un, l'une**, nor **les uns, les unes** (though these forms are used as pronouns), but **celui, celle**, etc.

83. Ce qui and ce que in Indirect Questions. 'What do you think?' = **Que pensez-vous ?** but indirect questions require **ce que, ce qui** (dem. + rel.):

Vous demandez ce que je pense.	You ask what I think. I ask you
Je vous demande ce qui est arrivé.	what has happened.

NOTE on **quel**. This interrogative adjective, meaning 'Which . . .?' or 'What . . .?' has four forms: **quel homme ?** = 'what (which) man?' masc. sg.; **quelle femme ?** = 'what (which) woman?' fem. sg.; **quels hommes ?** **quelles femmes ?**

EXERCISES

Using **voici** and **voilà** as well as **c'est ici . . .** and **c'est là . . .** translate :

1. This is our tenth lesson. 2. It is in this lesson (*f.*) that we study **ce**, **ceci**, **cela** or **ça**, and that we find also **celui**, **celle**, **ceux**, **celles**, etc. 3. In order to understand (**Pour comprendre**) all these forms (*f.*), it is necessary to be wide-awake every instant. 4. In the first lesson we studied (*group A p.p.*) **le**, **la**, **les**. 5. And it was (**c'est**) there, also, that we found a French text with a phonetic transcription and a translation. 6. It was in the second lesson that we saw how **de** and **à** (these are prepositions) [prepozisjɔ̃] combine (**se combiner**) with **le** and **les**. 7. That is not difficult. 8. In that lesson one finds **c'est**. 9. This **c'est** combines **ce** with a form of **être** (**de être**). 10. **Ce** is called (§ 55, *near beginning*) a **pronom démonstratif neutre**. 11. There are (*not voilà*!) four forms of this pronoun. 12. What are these four forms? 13. What are those that we find for the **démonstratif masculin** and for the **démonstratif féminin**? 14. How do these (*m.*) express their plural (**pluriel**)? 15. Has this (*m.*) always an **s** (*f.*)? 16. If you look for demonstrative pronouns in the third lesson, what demonstrative pronouns do you find there (**y**)? — 'those that I express' (**c'est-à-dire**: **les sens**), 'in *that* of the master' (that is to say, 'in his mouth'). 17. There you have also: 'And that comes from the fact that he is a god.' 18. In the fifth lesson one finds, 'They, too, are full of enmity' (that is to say, 'the carriages'). 19. 'That' is a feminine demonstrative. 20. 'Men in rags are hateful, and likewise those who carry baskets on their heads.' 21. Is there a **-là** (*un -là*) after this pronoun? I ask what you have seen, what we have studied, in *The Thoughts of Riquet*. 22. Are the pronouns in the fourth lesson more difficult than those that you find in this? 23. *These* are more difficult. That is what I think (*use Voilà*). 24. Which lessons are the most hateful, those that are full of pronouns, or all the others? 25. For me, the one that I have studied least; *that* is the worst of all (**toutes**).

ONZIÈME LEÇON

THE FUTURE TENSE: GROUP D

84. *Paradigms from parler, être, and avoir*

je parlerai [parlɔʁe]	je serai [sɛʁe]	j'aurai [ɔʁe]	r-ai
tu parleras [parlɔʁa(z)]	tu seras [sɛʁa(z)]	tu auras [ɔʁa(z)]	r-as
on parlera [parlɔʁa]	elle sera [sɛʁa]	cela aura [ɔʁa]	r-a
nous parlerons [parlɔʁɔ̃(z)]	nous serons [sɛʁɔ̃(z)]	nous aurons [ɔʁɔ̃(z)]	r-ons
vous parlerez [parlɔʁɛ(z)]	vous serez [sɛʁɛ(z)]	vous aurez [ɔʁɛ(z)]	r-ez
elles parleront [parlɔʁɔ̃(t)]	ils seront [sɛʁɔ̃(t)]	ils auront [ɔʁɔ̃(t)]	r-ont
I shall speak, etc.	I shall be, etc.	I shall have, etc.	

NOTE 1. The inflectional endings for the *future tense* (group *D*), for all verbs, are simply the six forms of the present indicative (group *A*) of *avoir* (§ 38, *a*), from which the unstressed element *av-* has been dropped: *je parler-ai, tu parler-as, il parler-a, nous parler-(av)ons, vous parler-(av)ez, ils parler-ont*. Group *D* is formed, therefore, by adding group *A* of *avoir* (without its *av-*) to an infinitive. For Group *D*, we shall regard as inflectional endings *-(e)rai, -(e)ras, etc.*

NOTE 2. For *être* and *avoir* group *D* happens to show abnormal stems; for nearly all other verbs group *D* can be formed easily if we know the infinitive. For further explanations see § 394.

85. « *Oui, mon colonel* » (illustrating futurity in various forms)

<p>En 1741 [i.e. dix-sept cent quarante et un], une armée française, commandée par le colonel Chevert, avait envahi la Bohême et assiégeait Prague. Chevert, ayant remarqué un endroit mal défendu, résolut de s'emparer de la place par surprise. Il réunit les sergents d'un régiment de grenadiers, et s'adressant à l'un d'eux, il lui dit: « Pascal, tu vas prendre une échelle, tu grimperas sur la muraille. — Oui, mon colonel. — La</p>	<p>1 3 5 7 9 11 13</p>	<p>In 1741, a French army, commanded by Colonel Chevert, had invaded Bohemia and was besieging Prague. Chevert, having noticed an ill-defended point, resolved to capture this fortified city by surprise. He called together the sergeants of a regiment of grenadiers, and, turning to one of them, said to him: 'Pascal, you're going to take a ladder and you will climb the wall.' 'Yes, colonel.' 'The sentinel will cry,</p>
--	--	---

<p>sentinelle criera: Qui vive? Tu ne répondras point. — Oui, mon colonel. — Elle tirera sur toi. — Oui, mon colonel. — Elle te manquera. — Oui, mon colonel. — Tu la tueras. — Oui, mon colonel. — Et je suis là pour te soutenir. »</p> <p>Pascal grimpe sur le rempart. La sentinelle tire sur lui et le manque. Pascal la tue, et les Français entrent dans la ville.</p>	<p>15 reply.' 'Yes, colonel.' 'He will fire at you.' 'Yes, colonel.' 'He will miss you.' 'Yes, colonel.' 'You will kill him.' 'Yes, colonel.'</p> <p>19 'And I shall be there to support you.'</p> <p>21 Pascal climbs upon the rampart. The sentinel fires at him and misses him. Pascal kills him, and the French enter the city.</p>
---	---

NOTES. (a) **En 1741** = [ã dis se sã karã:teã]. (b) **la Bohême** [bõem]. After **de**, 'of,' 'from,' **le** and **la** are omitted before names of countries in most old groups: **le roi de Bohême** 'the king of Bohemia,' **je suis venu de France** 'I have come from France.' After **en**, 'in,' 'to,' 'into,' the article is always omitted before names of countries: **en Italie**, but **pour l'Italie**, etc. Note **le colonel**, the article before a title. (c) **réunit** (from **réunir**) and **dit** (from **dire**), as *forms*, may belong either to group A or to group C. Possibly this may be the present of vivid narration, a style often used in everyday conversation, and often not purely for vividness but to avoid either the cumbrous repetition of A *p.p.* or obsolete forms (C). (d) **l'un d'eux**. Here **le** has little or no *meaning*; it is used (but not colloquially) to avoid the hiatus of **à un d'eux**, which is the colloquial form. (e) **mon colonel**. An English-speaking soldier may say, 'Yes, colonel,' or simply 'Yes, sir'; French subordinates must use **mon**, except to sergeants and corporals.

86. The Name of Group D. Group D, called 'the Future Tense,' habitually expresses true futurity, whatever else it may express.

REMARK. The future tense-group of standard English is formed with 'shall' and 'will.' As these two auxiliaries not only vary according to the grammatical *person*, but change and exchange their meanings according to circumstances, our English future is extremely complicated. The French future group is simpler in its formation, but it too may express various degrees of *obligation, willingness, desire*, etc. (§§ 85, 88; also § 100).

a. Meanings of Group D. In § 85, **criera** [kri'ra], **tirera** [ti'r(ə)ra], and **manquera** express pure futurity, whereas **grimperas**, **répondras**, and **tueras** [ty'ra] (also **tu vas prendre**) express both prophecy and command. In line 20 we find a form from group A (**je suis là**) used

to express futurity as if futurity were present. Thus this passage contains three ways, all of them frequent, of expressing futurity.

NOTE. In group *A*, *aller* has these forms: *je vais* (cf. § 403), *tu vas*, *il va* (*elle va*, *va-t-elle*, etc.), *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont* (*elles vont*). *Aller* is a very irregular verb; its future is *j'irai*, *tu iras*, etc.

b. *Si* and Logical Futurity. Meaning strictly 'if' (*not* 'whether'), *si* cannot be followed by any future verb-form; under other circumstances (contrary to everyday English usage) French subordinate clauses require group *D* whenever true futurity is to be expressed:

Pendant que (Aussitôt que, Quand) vous serez là, écrivez-moi.	1	While (As soon as, When) you are there, write to me.
Tu y resteras tant que tu voudras, tu leur diras ce qu'il te plaira.	2	You may (shall) remain there as long as you (shall) desire, you may tell them whatever you like.

NOTES. *Là* is a stressed adverb of place; *y* is an unstressed adverb of place, as in *il y a*. Observe their respective positions. The forms *voudras* and *plaira* are from the irregular verbs *vouloir* and *plaire*, but are perfectly regular in their own group (*D*). What, therefore, are the five other forms for each?

87. The rule in § 86, *b*, applies to the *future perfect* (group *D p.p.*):

Quand tu auras fini ton livre, nous en parlerons.	When you (shall) have finished your book, we'll talk about it.
---	--

NOTES. Group *D p.p.* is formed precisely like groups *A p.p.* and *B p.p.* (§§ 72-73). Like *y* [*i*], *en* [*ā*] is an unstressed adverb, often pronominal. Note its position.

EXERCISES (INCLUDING REVIEW)

I. Model: *Leur en parlera-t-elle?* = 'Will she talk to them about it?'

Vary this question by using all group *D* and the other forms of the dative (§ 43, *b*).

II. Model: *Je n'y serai pas avant onze heures.* [*avā 5:zœ:r*] = 'I shall not be there before eleven o'clock.' (Before *onze* avoid linking.)

Noting the *t* of *parlera-t-elle*, also *y* (here proclitic), vary this model by using all group *D* and vary the adverbial complement (*avant onze heures*) as indicated for Model I on page 69; but use

also **une heure** 'one o'clock,' **dix heures** [dizœ:r] 'ten o'clock,' **neuf heures** [nœvœ:r] 'nine o'clock,' and **minuit** 'midnight.'

III. Model: **Nous allons habiter Lannion.**

See § 86, *a*, Note; then translate: 'Are you going to live in Paris? Where are your father and mother going to live? I am going to remain at home (**chez . . .**), my father and mother are going to (**en**) Italy (§ 85, *Notes*), and my sister is going to (**à**) Rouen [rwa].'

IV. Model: **Tant qu'elle ne sera pas rentrée tu n'apprendras rien** = 'Until she has (shall have) returned (home) you will not learn anything.'

Translate: 'Until I (we, they) have returned, we shall (you will, they will) learn nothing (*or* not learn anything).'

V. (*Oral work, in class.*) Group *A* of **savoir** '(to) know,' 'be aware,' has **je sais** [sɛ], **tu sais** [sɛ], **il sait** [sɛ], with the regular plural forms **nous savons**, **vous savez**, **ils savent**.

Model: **Je ne sais (pas) s'il répondra**; also **Tu sais qu'elle n'a pas répondu**.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE

Aventure d'un cambrioleur [avɑ̃ty:r dœ kɑ̃briolœ:r]

'Adventure of a Burglar'

(**Ce héros évite l'argot, il parle plutôt comme un livre = ?**)

I. 1. Having found a house where there were (**il y . . .**) many things that he admired, a burglar who had little money resolved to take possession (**s'emparer**) of those that he liked best. 2. His father and mother likewise had little money, and they were accustomed to accept whatever he offered them. 3. There are people who always succumb to temptations, but that was the least of their faults.

II. 1. Having spied very often upon the movements of the master of that house (business is business), our hero was sure that he (**celui-là**) was never at home after ten o'clock in the evening. 2. There are many people in this world who are never at home at that hour (. . . -là).

DOUZIÈME LEÇON

GROUP D (CONTINUED). SOME NEGATIVES

88. Le Petit Poisson [pwasõ] et le Pêcheur 'The Little Fish and the Fisherman.'

Un jour un pêcheur prit un carpillon
 [œ zu:r œ pe:ʃœ:r pritœ karpijõ
 au bord d'une rivière. Comme il le
 o bõ:r dyn rivje:r kãmil læ
 mettait dans son filet, le carpillon lui
 mete dã sõ file l(ə) karpijõ lũi
 dit: « Que ferez-vous de moi? je ne
 di kə f(ə)re vu d(ə) mwa zə n(ə)
 vous fournirai qu'une petite bouchée.
 vu furnire kyn p(ə)tit buʃe
 Pourquoi ne me rejetez-vous pas à l'eau?
 purkwa nə m(ə) rəʒte vu paza lo
 Je deviendrai une grosse carpe. Plus
 zə dəvjẽdre yn gros: karp ply
 tard vous pourrez me repêcher et à moi
 ta:r vu pure mə r(ə)pe:ʃe e amwa
 seule je vous donnerai un bon repas.»
 sœ:l zə vu dɔn(ə)re œ bõ r(ə)pa
 Mais le pêcheur se montra sourd aux
 me l(ə) pe:ʃœ:r s(ə) mõ:tra su:r o
 prières du carpillon. « Non, mon ami,
 prije:r dy karpijõ nõ mõ:nami
 dit-il, vous irez dans la poêle. Un bon
 diti:l vuzire dã la pwa:l œ bõ
 tiens vaut mieux que deux tu l'auras.»
 tjẽ vo mjø k(ə) dø ty lɔra]

- 1 One day a fisherman
 caught a very young carp
 2 by the bank of a stream.
 As he was putting it into
 3 his creel [*lit.* net], the little
 carp said to him:
 4 'What are you going to
 do with me? I shall make
 5 only a small mouthful for
 you. Why don't you throw
 6 me back into the water? [If
 you do that] I shall become
 7 a big carp. Later you'll be
 able to [you can] fish me
 8 out again and all by myself
 I shall make you a good
 9 meal.'
 But the fisherman turned
 10 a deaf ear [*lit.* showed him-
 self deaf] to the little carp's
 11 entreaties.
 'No, my friend,' said he,
 12 'you shall go into the frying-
 pan. A fish in the hand is
 13 worth two in the brook.'
 Est-ce là notre proverbe?

NOTES. (a) prit (line 1) is from *C* of *prendre*; *D* je prendrai etc. (b) mettait (line 3) from *mettre*; *D* je mettrai etc. (c) ferez (line 4), deviendrai (line 7), and pourrez (line 8) are from the irregular verbs *faire*, *devenir*, and *pouvoir*; like *devenir* are conjugated *venir* '(to) come' and *tenir* '(to) hold.' (d) sourd has the fem. *sourde* [*surd*]. (e) Group *A* of

tenir gives **je (tu) tiens, il tient, nous tenons** [tənɔ̃], **vous tenez, ils tiennent** [tjen]. See note (c). This **tiens** is 2d p. sg. imperative. (f) **vaut** (line 13) is from the irregular verb **valoir** '(to) be worth' (§ 470); note **mieux**.

X. QUERY. How otherwise might we interpret **Que ferez-vous de moi**?

REMARK. Our 'shall' sometimes corresponds not to one of the endings **-ai, -as**, etc. (*D*), but to some of various independent auxiliaries, as **devoir**, '(to) be obliged to,' '(to) have to,' etc., or **vouloir que** '(to) desire that,' etc. Our 'will' often expresses true volition too emphatically to allow using group *D*: 'He *can* come, but he *will* not (come)' = **Il peut venir, mais il ne veut pas**.

89. Misplaced Futurity. Group *D* habitually expresses real futurity, whether it happens to express at the same time various degrees of desire, or not. Occasionally it expresses what may be called *misplaced futurity*:

Si elle ne vient pas, c'est qu'elle sera malade. 1 If she hasn't come, the reason must be that she is ill.

a. Group *D p.p.* may express a surmise as to something *past*:

Où est mon revolver [REVOLVE:R]? L'aura-t-on caché quelque part? 2 - Where is my revolver? Can it have been hidden somewhere?

REMARK. In English too (seldom in the U.S.) one may hear e.g. 'How many miles will it be from here to . . .?' in some parts of Great Britain even e.g. 'That tree will be an oak, won't it?'

This misplaced future is due to a transference of the *logical future of a verb which is not expressed* to a verb which is logically either present or past. Paraphrase thus: 'She hasn't come; we shall probably discover [*this verb not expressed*] that she is ill.' Again, 'Shall I learn that some one has concealed it?'

b. Group *D* in Relative Clauses. Contrary to ordinary English usage, but in accordance with § 86, *b*, relative clauses require group *D* or group *D p.p.*, if their verb is logically future:

Ce monsieur [mɛsjø] te donnera tout ce que tu mériteras. 3 This gentleman will give you all that you (shall) deserve.

Ces messieurs [mɛsjø] emporteront tout ce qu'ils auront pu trouver. 4 These gentlemen will carry off whatever they may (shall?) have been able to find. *Correlatively*: **Ils disparaîtront aussi vite qu'ils pourront** (*D* of **pouvoir**). They will disappear as fast as they can.

90.

A Brief Summary of Negatives

Try to understand all these forms without thinking in English.

Non. Exs.: **Non, monsieur. Non, non.** *In contrasts:* **Moi non.** *More colloquially:* **Pas moi.**

Pas. Exs.: **Je ne parle pas. Je n'ai pas d'amis. C'est délicieux, n'est-ce pas? Je ris ('laugh')** pour ne pas pleurer. **Tu l'aimes? Pas du tout!** ('Not at all!')

Point (*more emphatic than pas, but usually not colloquial*). Ex.: **Tu ne répondras point.**

Personne. Exs.: **Je ne vois personne. Personne! Personne n'est là.**

Rien. Exs.: **Il n'y a rien. Rien n'est plus vrai. Rien! Tu ne t'intéresses à rien.**

Jamais. Exs.: **Je ne les rencontre jamais. Jamais! Je n'ai jamais d'argent. Je ne vois jamais personne.**

Ne with que = 'only.' Exs.: **Je n'admire que lui** ('I admire only him'). **Cela n'est que trop vrai. Tu ne parles que de ça!** *Note how this que supplements ne.*

Plus. Exs.: **Je n'y vais plus. Je n'en parlerai plus jamais. Personne n'en parlera plus. Il n'a plus ('no longer any')** d'argent; *but* **Il n'a pas plus d'argent que toi.**

EXERCISE

(In review of various sections. See especially the passages in §§ 70, 85, and 88)

I. 1. The burglar finds two of his friends, and here is what he says to them; 2. 'Benoît and Bêta, we are lucky. 3. I have found a house which is full of pretty things. 4. Benoit, you (tu) like books; you shall have a good book. 5. Bêta, you (tu) prefer (like better) a good meal; you shall have it, all that you can eat (*D + infin.*). 6. For me there will be something too. 7. Everybody will thus have (have thus) a reward.'

II. 1. While the hero of this adventure (*f.*) and his two friends are approaching that ill-defended point of which (*dont*) we have spoken, where is the gentleman who goes out every evening before ten o'clock? 2. Has he possibly remained (*simply D p.p.*) at home?

III. 1. 'My friends,' says the burglar, 'life is full of dangers; it's necessary to avoid them (§ 52). 2. Gentlemen like this one don't like

men in rags, and they don't like those who enter their houses while they are in (**au**) bed. 3. You will remain outside (**dehors**). 4. As it (**il**) is now eleven o'clock, the gentleman will have gone out. 5. His dog will be in the shed. 6. So long as he remains there (**y**), there will be little danger, and when the gentleman returns we shall have departed (**partir**) with all that we have been able to carry off. 7. If he returns too soon (. . . **tôt**) you will find a ladder and you will climb over the wall. 8. While I am at work (*D of travailler*), you can (*D*) remain hidden under the trees. 9. There you will be sheltered on every side and you will be my sentinels. 10. If some stranger approaches, I shall be there to support you. 11. I have a revolver.' (He shows it.) 'I will fire, and I shall not miss. I never miss a man when I fire at him. 12. The enemy will have no revolver. People (**On**) never carry revolvers when they (**on**) go to good (to the good) cafés.'

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE

(For sight-work; based on § 88)

1. Where did the fisherman catch his fish? 2. He caught them in a little stream. 3. They were (§ 74) young carp. 4. One of them said to him: 'Are you going to eat us?' 5. 'Yes,' said the fisherman, 'each (**chacun-e**) of you will make me a good mouthful.' 6. 'If you throw us back into the water we shall grow (**grandir-**); we shall become big carp if you don't eat us now.' 7. 'I prefer my carp when they are young,' said the fisherman. 8. 'What is more important (**important**) is (§ 78) that if I do not eat you now you will perhaps be no longer here (**là**) when I return. 9. No, my little friends,' said he, 'now that (**que**) I have you in my net, you are going to remain there; but you will soon arrive (arrive soon: **bientôt**) at my house, and I shall give you to my wife (**femme, f.**), who will put you into her frying-pan.' 10. As this fisherman never lied (**ment-**), he gave all the little carp to his wife, and a few (**quelques**) moments later they found themselves (*B*) in the frying-pan. 11. Everything passes in this world; all things pass and succeed one another.

TREIZIÈME LEÇON

THE CONDITIONAL: GROUP E. TENSE AND MOOD

91. *Paradigms from parler, être, and avoir*

je parlerais	je serais	j'aurais	r-ais	[RE(z)]
tu parlerais	tu serais	tu aurais	r-ais	[RE(z)]
il parlerait	ce serait	elle aurait	r-ait	[RE(t)]
nous parlerions	nous serions	nous aurions	r-ions	[Rj3(z)]
vous parleriez	vous seriez	vous auriez	r-iez	[Rje(z)]
elles parleraient	ils seraient	elles auraient	r-aient	[RE(t)]

I should speak, etc. I should be, etc. I should have, etc. Cf. § 84.

NOTE. For all verbs this group was formed by adding to an infinitive (as *parler*) group *B* of *avoir* (*avais* etc.), less the unstressed element *av-*: *je parler-(av)ais, tu parler-(av)ais, il parler-(av)ait, nous parler-(av)ions, vous parler-(av)iez, ils parler-(av)aient*. For *être* and *avoir* group *E* is irregular (cf. §§ 84 and 394).

a. Groups E and D Compared. This group of forms (*E*), called the *simple conditional* (or *past of the future*), is to the future group (*D*) as our group with 'should' and 'would' is to our group with 'shall' and 'will': *je parlerais : je parlerai : 'I should speak' : 'I shall speak,'* etc.

92. *Compound Groups.* The two groups (*E*) from *être* and *avoir* are combined with the past participles of many verbs to form the *compound conditional*, i.e. group *E p. p.*:

J'aurais parlé, mais je ne serais pas venu.	1	I should have spoken, but I should not have come.
Aurait-elle parlé? Quand serait-elle venue?	2	Would she have spoken? When would she have come?

a. Groups E p. p. and D p. p. Compared. Group *E p. p.* bears the same relation to group *E* as group *D p. p.* bears to group *D*: *j'aurais parlé : je parlerais : j'aurai parlé : je parlerai*.

93. Group *E* either a *Tense* or a *Mood*. In either function this group (*E* or *E p. p.*) denotes some unrealized activity or state in the present, the future, or the past.

94. Group *E* as a Tense (Past of the Future, or 'Past Future'). Here either group (*E* or *E p.p.*) always depends upon, or is associated with, a main verb in a past tense. The main verb is usually 'thought,' 'believed,' 'hoped,' 'said,' or the like :

Ces gens déclarèrent (or **avaient déclaré**) **qu'ils arriveraient avant moi et qu'ils seraient déjà repartis avant mon arrivée.**

Those people declared (had declared) that they would arrive before me and that they would already have started off again before my arrival.

Originally: **Nous arriverons avant vous et nous serons déjà repartis avant votre arrivée.**

95. The Conditional (i.e. Group *E*) as a Mood. Here the conditional, true to its name, occurs (1) in the conclusion of a sentence whose premise is contrary to fact or assumed as dubious; or (2) it is used in dubious assertion or dubious inquiry.

a. Conditions without *Si*. The premise is commonly a *si*-clause, but it may be expressed otherwise or may be merely imagined :

Sans eux (moi, lui) tu chercherais encore ce criminel. 1 But for them (me, him) you would still be looking for that criminal.

Il ne faut même pas chuchoter, on pourrait nous entendre. 2 We mustn't even whisper; we might be overheard.

Au moment où tu perdrais ta place tout serait fini pour toi. 3 The instant you lost your position everything would be over for you.

b. Conditions with *Si*. In the premise, living French usually has a form from group *B* or group *B p.p.* after *si* 'if': **si je parlais, si j'avais parlé**, etc. In the conclusion (the main clause), it habitually uses a true conditional form (*E*) to express a *present* or *future* conclusion that follows if we assume the untrue or dubious premise to be true. For the *past* we usually find group *E p.p.* :

Si cette dame savait le français elle pourrait vous comprendre. 4 If this lady knew French she could understand you. (*But she doesn't!*)

Si cette dame avait su le français elle aurait pu vous comprendre. 5 If that lady had known French she could have understood you.

c. Example in which nothing but a probability can be involved :

Si elle venait demain te trouverait-elle chez toi ? 6 If she came (should come) tomorrow would she find you in?

d. In doubtful assertions or doubtful inquiries the conditional is frequent :

Le comte serait malade ? dis-je. 7 'Can the count be ill?' said I.
D'après mon journal, la personne 8 According to my newspaper, the
qui aurait empoisonné le médecin, 9 person alleged to have poisoned the
ce serait sa propre bonne. 10 doctor is his own servant.

NOTE. It is unnecessary to repeat the explanation in § 89, Remark.

96. *Examples to be studied before undertaking the Exercises*

D'ordinaire, j'aurais pu entrer 1 Ordinarily, I could have got in
par la cave. Cela n'aurait dérangé 2 through the cellar. That wouldn't
personne. Quelqu'un rôderait-il 3 have disturbed anyone. Might
dans l'obscurité? Si le cambrio- 4 somebody be prowling in the dark-
leur avait trébuché sur l'un des 5 ness? If the burglar had stumbled
meubles du salon serait-il tombé? 6 on one of the pieces of furniture
Et si la fidèle domestique qui 7 in the parlor would he have fallen?
soignait son maître avait entendu 8 And if the faithful servant who
quelque bruit au rez-de-chaussée 9 was caring for her master had
[RE d(ə) so:se] aurait-elle couru au 10 heard some noise on the ground
haut de l'escalier? 11 floor would she have hastened to
Il y avait si peu de bruit qu'on 12 the top of the stairs?
aurait pu entendre voler une 13 There was so little noise that
mouche.¹ 14 you could have heard a pin drop.
A une personne moins intelli- 15 To a less intelligent person, all
gente, tout ce zèle pourrait sembler 16 this (that) zeal might seem exces-
excessif. Évidemment. Où serait la 17 sive. Evidently. Why should it be
difficulté de trouver une autre place? 18 so difficult to find another place?
Personne ne serait forcé d'exécuter 19 No one would be forced to carry
un ordre comme celui-là. Personne. 20 out an order like that. Nobody.
Heureusement, cette brave 21 Fortunately, this excellent wo-
femme songeait à ses gages 22 man was thinking of her pay al-
presque autant qu'à la maladie de 23 most as much as of her master's
son maître. 24 illness.

¹ voler = to fly; une mouche = a fly.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Two or three days before the arrival of our three criminals, the gentleman who ordinarily would have been at his café at that hour (. . . -là) had fallen ill. 2. He found himself (*B*) forced to remain in bed, so weak (**tellement faible**) that he couldn't have killed a fly. 3. His doctor had told him (*dative*) that there would be little danger, but that he must not (**devait**) leave his room so long as he should be ill. 4. Fortunately, he would have that excellent servant always near him (**près de . . .**); she would take care of him. 5. To the servant the doctor had said that nobody must disturb his patient (**malade**; *here substantive*), nobody! that the slightest noise might easily (**bien**) carry him off. 6. 'If it is necessary to talk,' said he, 'you will talk in as low tones as possible (**aussi bas que . . .**).'

II. A less intelligent person might have forgotten that lesson, but this servant knew well that if her master died (**mour-**) she would be forced to seek another position, and evidently the doctor knew that he would lose a patient if this one departed for some other world.

III. 1. When the burglar arrived with his two friends (shortly before eleven o'clock in the evening) no one was visible (**visible**); the house seemed empty (**vide**). 2. But that faithful servant was awake (§ 52), and she was carrying out the doctor's orders with a zeal that might have seemed excessive if the case (**le cas**) had not been so grave (**grave**), for her as well as for him, also for her master. 3. When, therefore (**donc**), she heard (**entendit**) a noise which came (*B*), evidently, from the ground floor, she hastened (**courut**) to the top of the stairs and listened. 4. Somebody was prowling in the darkness. 5. She knew (*B*) that it must be (**ce devait être**) a criminal. 6. She knew also that if he stumbled over some piece of furniture, that would make a (**fer-**) noise, and that if there were the slightest noise everything might be over.

IV. *Additional Exercise.* Give all group *E* for **se réveiller**, 'to awake.' See § 91 and use the complements in I and II, pages 69-70.

QUATORZIÈME LEÇON

THE CONDITIONAL (CONTINUED)

97. In Concessions and Conclusions. The concessive clause often expresses a possibility emphasized by **quand même**, less often by **quand** alone:

Et quand même ma pièce serait sifflée, je n'hésiterais pas. And even though my piece should be hissed, I wouldn't hesitate.

NOTE. **Même si** is less common in this case than **quand même** and is not followed by the conditional forms.

QUERY. Why should **quand même**, with no verb following it, mean 'nevertheless,' 'just the same'? Example: **Je le dirais quand même** 'I'd say it just the same.'

98. Other Concessive Formulas. (Cf. § 97.) When the premise is not expressed by a **si**-clause, both clauses may contain the conditional, without **quand même**, and with or without a conjunctive **que**:

On te flanquerait dans la rue que 1 You might be chucked into the street and you'd still say 'thanks.'

Évidemment je me trouverais à Paris, ce serait un jeu d'enfant. 2 Evidently, if I happened to be in Paris, this would be child's play.

REMARK. Instead of the types just quoted, we may find subject and verb inverted, as in **Vivrais-je cent ans, je n'oublierais pas le tableau que nous offrit sa figure** 'Were I to live a hundred years, I should not forget the picture presented to us by his face'; but **Quand même je vivrais** etc. would be more colloquial.

99. In Suppositions without Concession. A supposition often seems to express a higher degree of doubt, less probability, if a conditional form (*E*) follows **au cas où** or **dans le cas où** 'in case,' than when **si** with an imperfect indicative form (*B*) is used:

Au cas où vous iriez en Angleterre, envoyez-nous une carte postale. In case you should go to England, send us a post-card.

100. Expressing Obligation. Originally, like our forms with 'shall' and 'should' + infinitive, groups *D* and *E* expressed obligation: word for word, **je parlerai (je parler ai)** meant 'I have to speak,' and **je parler (av)ais (je parler -ais)** meant 'I had [prospectively] to speak.' This idea is now expressed rather by the group **avoir + à + infinitive (j'ai à parler, j'avais à parler)**, or by **je dois parler** 'I must speak,' 'I am to speak,' **je devais parler** 'I was to speak,' etc.; yet the original meaning of each group still appears, as already illustrated for group *D* (§ 86, *a*), and as it will now be exemplified for group *E*:

VALPIERRE. — Tu as supposé que ce monsieur allait épouser ta fille?

(Here **allait épouser = épouserait**.)

BRIGNOL. — J'en suis sûr. Pourquoi ne l'épouserait-il pas?

(*Brignol et sa fille*, II, 6)

V. You have assumed that this gentleman was going to marry your daughter?

B. I am sure of it. Why shouldn't he marry her? (*not* 'Why wouldn't he?')

Similarly with no negative: **Pourquoi l'épouserait-il?** (but also normally **Pourquoi devrait-il, or doit-il, l'épouser?**).

101. *Various Examples of the Conditional*

From *Le Rêve* (1888), 'The Dream,' a poetic novel by Émile Zola (1840–1902), a representative of the 'naturalistic school,' *l'école naturaliste*.

<p>— Oh! ce que je voudrais, ce que je voudrais, ce serait d'épouser un prince. . . . Un prince que je n'aurais jamais vu, qui viendrait un soir, au jour tombant, me prendre par la main et m'emmener dans un palais. * * * [Je voudrais] Des chevaux que j'entendrais hennir sous mes fenêtres, des pierres dont le flot ruissellerait sur mes genoux, de l'or, une pluie, un déluge d'or, qui tomberait de mes deux mains dès que je les ouvrirais . . .</p>	<p>1 3 5 7 9 11 13</p>	<p>'Oh, what I should like, what I should like, would be to wed a prince — a prince whom I should never have seen,¹ who would come some evening, at the fall of day, to take me by the hand and lead me away to a palace. . . . [I should like] horses which I should hear neighing under my windows, gems streaming upon my knees, gold, a rain, a deluge of gold, which should fall from both my hands as soon as I should open them —'</p>
---	--	--

¹ More colloquially: 'whom I had never seen'; but note what such an 'I had' would mean. See comment (*b*).

COMMENTS. (a) In each **je voudrais** the conditional makes the desire less positively assertive: a **je veux** (group *A*) would mean 'I wish' (almost, 'must have'); a **je voudrai** (group *D*) would mean 'I shall wish' (and shall fully expect to have). The premise, not expressed, we might supply thus: **Si mon rêve pouvait se réaliser, ce que je voudrais, ce serait . . .**, 'If my dream could come true, what I should like would be . . .'; but the speaker (Angélique) is merely imagining. (b) For the negated conditional **que je n'aurais jamais vu** let us substitute the positive form **que j'aurais vu** 'whom I should have seen,' and it will then be evident that we can supply a reasonable premise, as 'if he had appeared,' 'in case such a prince should have appeared.' Again, the prince would come, **il viendrait (qui viendrait), if there were** such a prince, but there isn't. (c) If Angélique had the horses (she has not, and never will have them), they would be heard, **elle les entendrait**, neighing under her windows, etc. (d) But **j'ouvrirais** is purely a tense, a future shifted back into the past: **une pluie d'or tombera** (group *D*) **de mes deux mains dès que je les ouvrirai** (group *D*); **une pluie d'or tomberait** (group *E*) **de mes deux mains dès que je les ouvrirais** (group *E*). See § 86, *b*.

102. Contrary to everyday English usage, French requires the 'conditional' in a relative or other subordinate clause when the main clause contains a 'conditional' and both verbs really express the same tense, unless the subordinate clause begins with **si** 'if.'

Je dirais tout ce que je voudrais 1 I should say whatever I wished
(*not* **voulais**), **tout ce qui me semblerait** (*not* **semblait**) **justifié.** to (should wish to), whatever seemed (should seem) warranted.

Vous trouveriez alors ce dont vous auriez besoin. Vous retourneriez à Paris dès que (quand) votre travail serait fini. 2 You would find then what you needed (*lit.* that of which you should have need). You'd return (go back) to Paris as soon as (when) your work was done.

But **Si ces gens avaient étudié davantage ils auraient appris que la terre n'est pas plate** 'If those people had studied more they would have learned that the earth is not flat.'

EXERCISE

I. 1. The man, the criminal, comes out of the parlor and enters the hall (**le corridor**). 2. There he stumbles upon a chair (**une chaise**), but fortunately it does not fall. 3. The servant does not hesitate. 4. 'Who is it?' she whispers (whispers she). 5. 'Is it you?' (**vous**).

6. 'Yes,' whispers the burglar. 7. 'How did you get in?' 'I got in through the cellar.' (*In each case, group A p.p.*) 8. 'Through the cellar?— Oh! then you will go out by the same road (**chemin, m.**). 9. Sh! (**Chut!**), somebody might hear you.' 10. So quietly (with so little noise) that one might have heard ^{arrived au balandre, plus une} a pin drop, the criminal goes out and that faithful servant returns to her easy-chair.

II. 1. If she had not been so faithful to the doctor's orders, who knows what might have happened? 2. So many things happen in this world! 3. Without the shadow (**ombre**) of a doubt (**un doute**) her master could not have returned to his café; for he was so weak that the slightest noise (§ 55, *b*) would have killed him, and that excellent servant would perhaps still be seeking (*E*) a place. 4. The doctor, evidently, would have lost (**perdu**) a patient, and he would not have thought that very funny (§ 63), for he needed all his patients, and as for (**quant à**) the servant, she would perhaps not have found the place that she would have deserved, for one does not find everything that one seeks.

III. 1. As for Bêta and Benoît, the former (**celui-là**) did not get (§ 64) his book, and the latter (**celui-ci**) did not get his meal. 2. Un bon *tiens* vaut mieux que deux *tu l'auras*.

ORAL WORK ON LESSONS XIII AND XIV

1. Even if (though) you should become a big carp you should go into the frying-pan. 2. I might speak, but you wouldn't listen to me. 3. Even though you should speak French to that lady she couldn't understand you, for she is as deaf as a fish (**pot**). 4. The instant you arrived I should leave for Paris. 5. But for you, I should have that money. 6. According to your newspaper, that doctor was poisoned. 7. I had supposed that you were to marry his daughter. 8. Why shouldn't I marry her? 9. In case I should go to Italy, send me a post-card.

QUINZIÈME LEÇON

THE PLUPERFECT TENSES (THREE GROUPS)

103. French has three compound groups to express anteriority in the past :

I. Group *B p.p.* *J'avais parlé* ('I had spoken'), *j'étais venu* ('I had come'). In French this group is called *le plus-que-parfait* [lə plys kə parfɛ]; in English it may be called the *past perfect* (a new name), or the *pluperfect* (an old name). As 'pluperfect' really covers three very different groups, we shall use it only as a comprehensive term and say that *j'avais parlé* and *j'étais venu* exemplify group *B p.p.* (*B* for *avais* and *étais*; *p.p.* for the past participle, as before).

II. Group *C p.p.* *J'eus parlé* ('I had spoken'), *je fus venu* ('I had come'). In English, the *second past perfect* (a new name), or the *past anterior* (an old name); in French, *le passé antérieur*. We shall avoid confusion by saying *C p.p.*

III. Group *A 2 p.p.* (*two* past participles). *J'ai eu parlé* ('I had spoken'), *j'ai été arrivé* ('I had arrived'). That is, the *compound past anterior*; in French, *le plus-que-parfait surcomposé*. Our designation clearly indicates that this rare group contains two past participles.

NOTE. *Quand j'ai parlé je me retire* = 'Whenever I have spoken I withdraw.' Here *quand j'ai parlé* denotes that one act precedes another, but this group is not recognized as pluperfect; in this case *j'ai parlé* is the present perfect. Cf. 'past perfect' (above).

104. Functions. Any of the three groups exemplified above may be used to indicate that a past activity preceded another past activity; but group *B p.p.* marks no definite time limit: the activity which it expresses may have occurred at any time before some other activity:

Au moment où vous êtes venus, At the time when you came we
nous avions déjà quitté Dinard. had already left Dinard.

105. After *après que*, *aussitôt que*, *sitôt que*, *dès que* 'as soon as,' and after *quand* or *lorsque* 'when' or 'whenever,' group *B p.p.* (*j'avais parlé*, *j'étais venu*) is correct *if repeated action is to be expressed*:

<p>Je me levais (<i>B</i>) tous les jours de bonne heure pour travailler. Aussitôt que j'avais écrit (<i>B p.p.</i>) quelques pages, je sortais (<i>B</i>); dès que j'étais revenu (<i>B p.p.</i>), je déjeunais (<i>B</i>); puis, quand mes visiteurs étaient partis (<i>B p.p.</i>), je reprenais (<i>B</i>) mon travail. Au bout de deux ans, <u>il était fini.</u></p>	<p>1 I was accustomed to rise early every day to work. As soon as I had written a few pages I would go out; as soon as I had returned</p> <p>3</p> <p>5 I would breakfast; then, when my visitors had departed, I would resume my work. At the end of two</p> <p>7</p> <p>9 years it was done.</p>
--	--

REMARK. Evidently, group *B* has expressed here, with the past participle (*B p.p.*), what it expresses when alone, repetition, but with the added fact of completion, and each *B p.p.* group describes an act which immediately preceded another act. Note that *il fut fini* would express an act; *il était fini* expresses a result.

a. Group *B p.p.* may also describe a single activity, but not as immediately or causally preceding some other single activity:

<p>Dix ans après que vous l'aviez vu à Madrid, nous l'avons rencontré (<i>purely bookishly</i>, nous le rencontrâmes) à Rome.</p>	<p>Ten years after you had seen him at Madrid we met him at Rome.</p>
---	---

REMARK. Here the speaker feels no causal connection, no close time relation, between the two events. It would be incorrect to say, e. g., *Après qu'elle avait mis son chapeau, nous sommes sortis* (or *nous sortîmes*).

b. If there is but one anterior activity, after *après que* etc. it requires group *C p.p.* (or *A 2 p.p.*) in order to be marked as preceding another activity:

Je me levai (*C*) de bonne heure pour travailler. Aussitôt que j'eus écrit (*C p.p.*) quelques pages, je sortis (*C*); dès que je fus revenu (*C p.p.*), je déjeunai; puis, quand mes visiteurs furent partis (*C p.p.*), je repris (*C*) mon travail. (*Note carefully what has been substituted.*)

106. When Either *B p.p.* or *C p.p.* is Allowable. A few centuries ago, group *C p.p.* was constantly used where *B p.p.* is now habitual:

never equivalent

A qui ot (eut) il parlé? ('To whom had he spoken?') *now*, **A qui avait-il parlé?** Also, **A qui avoit (avait) il parlé?** We find a survival of that fluctuation between *B* and *C* after à **peine** . . . **que** and with certain other adverbial conjunctive groups :

A peine ce livre avait-il (or eut-il) paru, que son auteur le désavoua. 1 Hardly had this book appeared when its author disavowed it.

Elle n'avait (or n'eut) pas encore prononcé une syllabe que tout le monde la reconnut (from C of reconnaître). 2 She had not yet uttered a syllable, when everybody recognized her.

Nous n'étions (ne fûmes) pas plutôt arrivés que la guerre éclata. 3 We had hardly arrived when the war broke out.

a. C p.p. in Main Clauses. An act which the context definitely times may be expressed by either *B p.p.* or *C p.p.* without the conjunction **que** :

Un moment, je le perdis de vue, mais je l'eus (or je l'ai eu) vite rattrapé. 4 For an instant I lost sight of him, but I had quickly overtaken him.

J'avais (or j'eus) vite fini de lire cette lettre. 5 I did not take long to read that letter.

Tout cela était (or fut) arrivé en une minute. 6 All that had happened in a minute.

NOTE. Group *A 2 p.p.* (**je l'ai eu vite rattrapé**) will be considered in § 111.

EXERCISES

I. 1. As soon as I had finished my work I would spend (**passer**, *B*) an hour, often two, at my brother's. 2. After he had read the four or five pages that I had written (*p.p.*, *f.*), if he had told me that my ideas were well expressed (often they had been expressed very ill) I would return home, lunch (**déjeuner**, *B*), and study (*B*) until (**jusqu'à**) six o'clock. 3. My two sisters, who had come to Paris with me and had already begun their studies (**études**, *f.*) at the Sorbonne (*f.*), had many ideas like (**comme**) my brother's and like mine. 4. Whenever they had found something that interested them they would talk to us

about it (**nous en . . .**). 5. That life was full of agreeable things; we had never had so many joys when we were living in Havre.

II. 1. When Pascal had found a ladder he climbed the wall at the ill-defended point which his colonel had showed to him. 2. The colonel (as we have read elsewhere)¹ had resolved (**résolu**) to take possession of Prague by surprise. 3. He had told (**dit**) this grenadier that he would find a sentinel on the rampart, that the sentinel would cry 'Who goes there?' and that as soon as he had uttered these three syllables he would fire. 4. Hardly had Pascal appeared at the top of the wall when the sentinel saw (**vit**) him and fired, but he missed him. 5. It was (*A or C*) then that our grenadier carried out the order which he had received. 6. Even if that sentinel had not seen Pascal (*E p.p.*), he would have been killed, for Pascal had always been swift to act when he knew that he was in (**se + B of savoir + en**) danger or had some order to carry out (§ 100).

III. For **perdre** 'to lose,' group *C* has **je perdis, tu perdis, il perdit, nous perdîmes, vous perdités, ils perdirent**. (Note the circumflex accent.)

Without abbreviating, vary the first example in § 106, *a*, so as to use the five remaining forms of each verb-group, changing the accusative pronoun suitably each time.

IV. 'I had told her that I would (*or should*) speak to them about it (**. . . en parler**) as soon as they had arrived.'

Translate this; then vary your translation by using five other forms of the nominative and five other forms of the dative, making a reasonable combination in each case.

V. **Aussitôt qu'il m'eut vu il s'en alla comme le vent. Je n'aurais pas pu le rattraper, quand même j'aurais su le chemin aussi bien que lui.** 'As soon as he had seen me he went off like the wind. I couldn't have overtaken him even if I had known the road as well as he.'

Vary this by using only the plural of each group.

¹ In such a case **le** is usual: **P'avons lu.**

SEIZIÈME LEÇON

ALL THE INDICATIVE TENSE-GROUPS OF *PARLER*, *AVOIR*,
AND *ÊTRE*

(Being often a tense-group as well as a mood, the 'Conditional' is included.)¹

107. *Parler* (form in *-ant*: *parlant* = 'speaking'). Simple Groups

A: je parle, tu parles, on parle, nous parlons, vous parlez, ils parlent.

('I speak,' 'I talk,' 'I'm speaking,' 'I'm talking,' etc.) How conjugated interrogatively? Is this group always truly present? Compare *Si tu parles on t'admire* with *Si tu parles on t'admira*. See also § 85.

B: je parlais, tu parlais, il parlait, nous parlions, vous parliez, ils parlaient.

('I was speaking,' 'I would speak,' 'I spoke,' etc. See § 61.) Does this group always refer to the past? *Si tu parlais elle t'écouterait*.

C: je parlai, tu parlas, elle parla, nous parlâmes, vous parlâtes, elles parlèrent.

('I spoke' etc.) Is this a living group? (See § 65.) When is it replaced by group *A*? (See § 85.) When by group *A p.p.*? (See § 71.)

D: je parlerai, tu parleras, on parlera, nous parlerons, vous parlerez, ils parleront.

('I shall speak,' 'I shall be speaking,' etc.; also, sometimes, 'I speak' etc.) How was this group of forms composed? Does it *always* express true futurity? (See § 89.) What must *si* mean, strictly, before any form of group *D*? When true futurity is to be expressed, what are some of the conjunctions that require *D*? (See § 86, *b*.)

E: je parlerais, tu parlerais, chacun parlerait, nous parlerions, vous parleriez, ces gens parleraient.

('I should speak,' 'I should be speaking,' etc.; also, sometimes, 'I spoke' etc.) How was group *E* composed? (See § 91.) When is it a mood, and when a tense? (See §§ 93-95.)

REMARKS. Of whatever conjugation, whether regular or irregular, most French verbs have these five simple groups, and if the rules as to the use of given forms to express this or that tense are true of one complete verb, they almost always hold true for any other complete verb.

¹ Likewise in later lessons.

either - unrealized in past - present future

The 'first conjugation,' here exemplified by *parler*, contains several thousand verbs. This is the *living* conjugation, that which is constantly being increased by modern ideas: *téléphoner*.

The conjugation in *-ir*, exemplified in § 132 by *finir*, contains a few hundred verbs, to which very few have recently been added.

The truly *dead* conjugations, exemplified by *avoir*, *recevoir* '(to) receive,' *vendre* '(to) sell,' and by all other verbs whose infinitive does not end in *-er* or in *-ir*, do not contain more than a hundred verbs, not counting derivatives.

108. *Avoir* (form in *-ant*: *ayant* = 'having'). *Simple Groups*

A: j'ai, tu as, on a, nous avons, vous avez, ces dames ont.

B: j'avais, tu avais, elle avait, nous avions, vous aviez, elles avaient.

C: j'eus, tu eus, on eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, mes amis eurent.

D: j'aurai, tu auras, ça aura, nous aurons, vous aurez, ils auront.

E: j'aurais, tu aurais, il aurait, nous aurions, vous auriez, ils auraient.

REMARK. Tense-values generally the same as for *parler* and many other verbs. Note that *Je l'aurai* may mean 'I shall get it,' that *Si je l'ai* may mean 'If I get it,' etc., the acquisition being the first and the active phase of possession.

109. *Être* (form in *-ant*: *étant* = 'being'; cf. § 112). *Simple Groups*

A: je suis, tu es, elle est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont.

B: j'étais, tu étais, cela était, nous étions, vous étiez, elles étaient.

C: je fus, tu fus, quelqu'un fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils furent.

D: je serai, tu seras, on sera, nous serons, vous serez, ces gens seront.

E: je serais, tu serais, il serait, nous serions, vous seriez, ils seraient.

REMARKS. Usually *être* is merely a link-word; that is, like 'to be' it usually has a complement: '*Mon ami est . . .*' — *what is he?*

For English-speaking persons, at all events, *être* is perhaps more liable than any other French verb to be difficult to use correctly in regard to its tenses; probably because it almost never expresses action. Compare *Il chantait* with 'He was singing'; then compare *Il était blessé* 'He was wounded' (a wounded man) with *Il fut blessé* 'He was wounded' (at a certain moment he received a wound; this was not a condition, but an *act*). See §§ 59 and 65. Note that in *Il fut blessé* we have the past absolute tense with the passive voice; whereas *Il fut venu* is the 'second past perfect,' le *passé antérieur*. *Il fut venu* is in the same tense as *Il eut été blessé*.

Compound Groups

110. Avoir as an Auxiliary. By adding to any of the thirty simple forms in §§ 108-109 a suitable past participle, transitive or intransitive, we get thirty compound forms in which the participle always keeps its simplest form unless preceded by a plural or feminine accusative object. Examples:

A p.p.: **J'ai parlé** = 'I have spoken,' 'I've been speaking,' or 'I spoke'; **Elle a couru** = 'She has run' or 'She ran'; **Nous y avons été** = 'We've been there' or 'We were there'; **Vous les avez vu(e)s** = 'You have seen them' or 'You saw them'; etc. See §§ 71-72.

B p.p.: **J'avais parlé** = 'I had spoken,' 'I had been speaking'; **Nous avions couru** = 'We had run,' 'We had been running'; **Tu l'avais comprise** = 'You had understood her'; etc. See §§ 105-106.

C p.p.: **Une fois, lorsque je lui eus parlé de ça, il . . .** = 'Once, when I'd spoken to him of that, he . . .'; **Elle m'eut vite compris** = 'She had soon understood me'; etc. See § 105, *b*, and § 106.

D p.p.: **Je les aurai fini(e)s avant ça** = 'I shall have finished them before that'; **Elle aura couru** = 'She'll have run,' 'She must have been running'; etc. See §§ 87, 89.

E p.p.: **Je ne l'aurais pas dit** = 'I shouldn't have said it,' etc. See §§ 92-95. (Here 'should' does *not* express the idea of duty or obligation.)

111. Group A 2 p.p. By combining *two* past participles with any form of *A* we get the somewhat rare yet colloquial group *A 2 p.p.*: 'the compound past anterior' (**le plus-que-parfait surcomposé**):

Aussitôt que tout le monde en a été sorti, j'y suis entré(e). 1 As soon as everybody had gone out, I went in.

Dès qu'elle a eu diné, nous avons fait nos adieux et nous sommes parti(e)s. 2 As soon as she had dined, we said our good-bys and departed.

112. Être as an Auxiliary. The thirty (or, more accurately, twenty-seven) simple forms of **être** (§ 109) may likewise be combined with the past participles of various intransitive verbs of motion, the participle varying according to the number and gender of the subject (§ 73): **J'y suis allé(e)** = 'I have gone there,' 'I went there'; **Tu étais**

arrivé(e) = 'You had arrived'; **Il était entré** = 'He had entered';
Elle était morte = 'She had died'; **Il était mort** = 'He was dead';
Nous étions parti(e)s = 'We had departed'; **Vous étiez resté(e)s** =
 'You had remained'; **Elles étaient tombées** = 'They'd fallen'; etc.

A SUMMARY EXERCISE ON THE TENSE-GROUPS

(Use both *A p.p.* and *C*)

1. Your brother is speaking of China (§ 333, *ex. 6 and b*), isn't he? Yes, he was born there (§ 78). 2. Have you read his book? Yes, I read it (*A p.p.*) when I was at Dinard. 3. Had Jeanne finished her work when you came? 4. She had already finished it when I left, at ten o'clock. 5. She was going to her brother's at four o'clock, but when I returned she hadn't yet arrived. 6. She'll probably (**probablement**) go this evening to her sister's. 7. Have you seen her? 8. According to our friend the doctor, she is (§ 95, *a*) not very pretty. 9. If she were really (**vraiment**) pretty, who knows what might happen! 10. I came (*A p.p.*) here before you, and I haven't yet seen a single (**une seule**) pretty woman. 11. Would that gentleman have married Brignol's daughter even if she hadn't had a sou? (*B p.p.* or *E p.p.*; see § 97). 12. Oh, I'm sure of it. 13. Why shouldn't he have married her (§ 100)? 14. Is it money that one marries? 15. Why do you ask that? 16. That is something (**une chose**) which will interest you more (**davantage**) when we have learned why you did not stay (remain) at Rouen — your business was going so well! 17. I should have stayed there (**y**), perhaps, if one of my men hadn't fallen ill. 18. But for him, I might have found the work too difficult. 19. I came away, therefore, this morning, as soon as I had said (*A 2 p.p.*) my good-bys to four or five friends. 20. When did you arrive here? 21. An hour after everybody had breakfasted, and when everybody had gone out.

SUGGESTION. As the only sure way of becoming familiar with forms is to practice on them in many different combinations, it would be well to write out and pronounce a good many more sentences. Any of our Lessons, from I to XVI, will provide models enough.

DIX-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

113. *Quelques exemples des pronoms relatifs : qui, que, dont, où, lequel*

<p>L'enfant qui lit attentivement les fables y reconnaît les mœurs du chien qu'il caresse, du chat dont il abuse, de la souris dont il a peur, toute la basse-cour où il se plaît mieux qu'à l'école. Pour les animaux féroces, il y retrouve ce que sa mère lui en a dit: le loup dont on menace les méchants enfants, le renard qui rôde autour du poulailler, le lion dont on lui a vanté les mœurs clémentes. Il s'amuse singulièrement des petits drames dans lesquels figurent ces personnages. Il y prend parti pour le faible contre le fort, pour l'innocent contre le coupable, et en tire ainsi une première idée de la justice.</p>	<p>1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 17 19</p>	<p>The child who reads fables attentively recognizes in them the ways of the dog that he <u>pets</u>, of the cat that he abuses, of the <u>mouse</u> that he is afraid of, the whole <u>farmyard</u> where he gets more pleasure than at school. As for the ferocious animals, he finds again in the fables [y] what his mother has told him about them: the wolf with which naughty children are threatened, the fox that prowls round the <u>henhouse</u>, the lion whose merciful <u>ways</u> he has heard lauded. He is singularly delighted by the little dramas in which these characters appear. He <u>takes side</u> (therein) for the <u>weak</u> against the strong, for the innocent against the guilty, and thus derives from them a first idea of fair play.</p>
---	---	---

From the *Histoire de la littérature française* by Désiré Nisard (1806-1888.) This passage will furnish oral work. See §§ 448, 460, 474-476.

NOTES. (a) From *A* of the irregular verbs *lire*, *reconnaître*, *plaire*, and *prendre*, we get *lit*, *reconnaît*, *plaît*, and *prend*, lines 1, 2, 6, 16. (b) In each case, *y* means 'therein' (i.e. *dans les fables*). (c) Each *en* implies a phrase with *de*: *a dit des* ('concerning the') *animaux féroces*; *tire de ces* ('from') *petits drames*. (d) *s'amuser de quelque chose* = '(to) find entertainment in something.' (e) Note the order of words after *dont on* (line 9), marred by our translation, as in line 15 after *dans lesquels*.

114. *Qui*, nominative, and *que* (*qu'*), accusative, may have an antecedent of either gender or number, or a neuter antecedent, as *ce*: *ce*

qui, ce que, 'that which' (usually, 'what'). See the examples in § 113 and these:

Qu'est-ce qu'il lit, cet enfant ? What is it that he reads, that child?
Il lit ce qui lui plaît. He reads what he likes.

115. Prepositional Groups. Following a preposition, **qui** usually refers to persons: **l'homme contre qui** 'the man against whom,' etc. Of the lower animals, use **lequel** (variable; § 121): **les renards contre lesquels**. Of things, **lequel** (or **où**; § 120) is required.

116. Duquel etc. The definite article varies before **quel(s)**, m., **quelle(s)**, f., as elsewhere: **duquel, desquel(le)s, auquel, auquel(le)s**.

117. Lequel, laquelle, etc. may follow any preposition, and may be nominative or accusative; thus,

Le père de ta Giselle, lequel, 1 The father of your Giselle,
bien entendu, comprend cette af- who, of course, understands that
faire . . . matter . . .

NOTE. Here, for clearness, English requires 'Your Giselle's father, who . . .'

La mère de Jean, laquelle vous 2 John's mother, whom you know
connaissez . . . (laquelle vient . . . (who has just arrived . . .).
d'arriver . . .).

a. Likewise after a preposition. If both nouns are alike, a **lequel, laquelle**, supposedly refers to the first, but such groups are avoided.

118. Dont ('of whom,' 'of which,' 'whose,' 'with which,' etc.) implies some phrase with **de**: **Voilà la chose dont je parle : je parle de cette chose**. It may be replaced by **duquel, de laquelle, desquels**, or **desquelles** to avoid ambiguity (§ 117). **Dont**, meaning 'whose,' may precede **le (la, les)** + noun, but only thus:

C'est celui dont le nez est si 1 It's the one whose nose is so
rouge. red.

C'est l'homme dont vous ne 2 It's the man of whom you can
voyez que le nez. see nothing but his nose.

NOTE. If the thing possessed is subject, it follows immediately; if not, it follows an intervening verb, as in example 2, also § 113.

119. Celui, celle(s), and ceux (§ 82) may be followed by *de qui*, à *qui*, etc. (of animate beings); by *lequel*, *duquel*, à *laquelle*, etc., if necessary (§ 118); but the neuter *ce* may be followed only by *qui*, *que*, *dont*, à *quoi* ('to which'), *sur quoi*, etc. (never by *lequel*):

C'est ce dont je parle (ce à quoi je fais allusion, ce qui me regarde, ce que je ne comprends pas, etc.). That is what I'm talking about (what I'm alluding to, what concerns me, what I don't understand, etc.).

120. Où. As a relative pronoun, où ('where,' 'wherein,' 'whither') is frequently used of points in space or time :

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| Trouve le livre où ça se dit. | 1 | Find the book where that's said. |
| Voilà la maison où (dans laquelle) je suis né. | 2 | That's the house where (in which) I was born. |
| Tu iras où tu voudras, mais pas là où nous allons. | 3 | You may go wherever you please, but not where we are going. |
| Elle arrive à un moment où tout est sens dessus dessous. | 4 | She arrives at a moment when everything is upside down. |

NOTE. *d'où* = 'whence,' 'from where,' 'where . . . from'; *par où* = '(by) which way.'

121. *Définition et Tableau des Pronoms Relatifs*¹

« Le pronom relatif rattache une proposition à un nom ou à un pronom² d'une proposition qui précède. Il établit une relation entre les deux propositions. »

'The relative pronoun connects a clause with a noun or a pronoun in a clause which precedes. It establishes a relation between the two clauses.'

PRONOMS RELATIFS INVARIABLES	PRONOMS RELATIFS VARIABLES			
	Singulier		Pluriel	
	Masculin	Féminin	Masculin	Féminin
qui				
que				
qu'				
quoi	lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles
dont	duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles
où	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles

¹ Cf. Brunot and Bony, p. 61.

² Ce nom ou ce pronom s'appelle l'antécédent du pronom relatif.

EXERCISES

(Every translatable word to be translated, and blank spaces to be filled with whatever French may be required)

I. Variations in French of the matter in § 113.

II. This is the seventeenth lesson, the one in which we bring together (**réunissons**) for the first time all the forms of the relative pronoun that we shall need; they (**ce**) are those which, from this moment,¹ we shall find almost everywhere in this book.

III. 1. If, for (**par**) example, I say: 'The horse that that man sold yesterday is not the one that he showed to my brother,' it is necessary to employ twice (**deux fois**) the form **Quel** 2. This form is simple, and it would be invariable if it did not lose (**perd-**) its **e** before a vowel (**une voyelle**). 3. If one says: 'The horses that are pulling that carriage are not better than mine,' one has employed **qui**. Therefore, nominative (**-if**): **Qui**; accusative (**-if**): **que** 4. What (**Quel**) is the **antécédent** of each of these forms in these examples? 5. Why is **Qui** invariable? 6. It has the same form before a vowel that it has before a consonant (**une consonne**).

IV. 1. If, now, I say: 'The man in whose house we saw so many pretty things is a burglar,' I have been forced to employ **lequel** 2. That gives us, in (**en**) all, four forms, or five if we count **qu**. 3. Why would **dont** be impossible [ēpōsi·bl] in this last example (**m**)? [*Answer in English.*] 4. Now we will say (**dir-**): 'The lady in whose house we saw what we saw is the sister of the burglar who had all those pretty things.' 5. What forms have we employed this time? 6. If we have not said **chez qui**, we have said . . . 7. What form should we have employed in case we had said (**E p.p.**): 'The ladies' etc.? 8. Evidently, . . .; for (**car**) what we need here, the form that we need here, is a plural (**m**). 9. In case we should need to say (**de . . .**): 'The men in whose house' etc., or 'The men in whose carriages' etc., which forms might we (**pourr-**) employ?

¹ See § 68. (In this case **que** is not elided.)

DIX-HUITIÈME LEÇON

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (CONTINUED). C'EST MOI

122. *Moi, toi, etc.* Whenever it is stressed, whether nominative or not, the personal pronoun has the following forms, here exemplified with the relative :

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| C'est <u>moi</u> qui <u>ai</u> raison [RE:Z]. | 1 | I am the one that's right. |
| C'est <u>toi</u> qui <u>aurais</u> tort [tɔ:R], | 2 | It would be you that would be |
| mais <u>celui</u> qui <u>aurait</u> honte, ce se-
rait lui. | | wrong, but the one to feel ashamed
would be he. |
| Ce n'est pas <u>nous</u> qui <u>avons</u> peur | 3 | It isn't we who arè afraid, it's |
| [pœ:R], c'est vous (or elle). | | you (or she). |
| Est-ce vous qui partez ? Non ? | 4 | Is it you that are leaving? No? |
| Alors ce doit être eux (elles). | | Then it must be they. |

NOTES. In the idiom *avoir raison* (*tort, honte, peur*) the article is *archaically* omitted; *archaically*, because it was formerly possible to say *avoir argent, avoir pain, etc.* Relics of a syntax which was once general are called *archaisms* (of syntax). In example 4 *ce* is allowed as subject of *doit* (from *A* of *devoir*), but here *doit* is merely an auxiliary verb (see § 79).

123. *C'est moi etc.* Before *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, and vous*, we find only the third singular of être (*c'est, c'était, ce fut, etc.*); before *eux and elles*, the third plural (*sont, étaient, etc.*) is better, though *sont-ce eux (elles)* is avoided. Note *si ce n'est eux, etc.*; this locution requires a singular verb (*est, était, etc.*).

a. *Doubtful Antecedents.* The verb following the relative usually agrees in person and number with the antecedent: *Celui qui a tort, c'est moi* (antecedent *celui*); but the antecedent may be doubtful: *Je suis celui qui pourrai (or pourra) expliquer cela* 'I am the one who will be able to explain that,' *Nous sommes les personnes qui réclamons (or réclament) ce droit* 'We are the persons who claim this right.'

REMARK. In a group such as *Ce n'est pas moi qui ai dit ça* ('It was not I who said that') the verb is *attracted* into the first singular. The truth is logically stated thus: *Celui qui a dit ça (ce) n'est pas moi*. Such attraction is frequent after negated clauses.

124. *Ce qui* and *ce que* in Interrogation. Having no unlimited *nominative* neuter interrogative, like 'what' in 'What happens?' French uses *Qu'est-ce qui*, as in *Qu'est-ce qui arrive?* 'What happens?' For the *accusative*, *que* (*qu'*) suffices: *Que dit-il?* 'What is he saying?' *Qu'a-t-il?* 'What has he?' ('What is the matter with him?'); but *Qu'est-ce que* (cf. *Qu'est-ce qui*) is in constant use, and is often preferable as being less abrupt: *Qu'est-ce qu'il dit?* *Qu'est-ce qu'il a?* etc.

125. *Ce qui (que)* = 'What.' In many indirect questions, *ce qui* and *ce que* are the required equivalents of our neuter interrogative 'what': *Qu'est-ce qui arrive?* *Qui sait ce qui arrive?* ('Who knows what happens?') *Que dit-il?* *Je ne sais pas ce qu'il dit* ('I don't know what he says').

126. *Ce qui* and *ce que* after Vague Antecedents :

<i>Il ne vient plus, ce qui me paraît curieux (ce que je regrette).</i>	<i>He no longer comes, which (fact) strikes me as odd (which I regret).</i>
---	---



127. The Order *que* + Verb + Subject. We cannot shift the emphasis to 'father' by changing 'This is the wine that your father drinks' to 'This is the wine that drinks your father,' for 'that' (like 'which') is invariable; nor can we say 'Do you know the lady whom is to marry my cousin' (clear, though impossible!); but *Voici le vin que boit votre père*, and *Connaissez-vous la dame qu'épouse votre cousin?* or *C'est ce que pense celui-là*, all exemplify an arrangement which is general when the subject is a noun or (often) a stressable pronoun,¹ though the verb may come last:

<i>C'est ce que mon père en dit, or</i>	<i>That is what my father says about</i>
<i>C'est ce qu'en dit mon père; but</i>	<i>it, or . . . what my father says, etc.</i>
<i>C'est ce que mon père en dit à nos amis.</i>	<i>That is what my father says about it to our friends.</i>

128. *Que* as a Predicate Nominative (only with *être*, *devenir*, and their synonyms) :

<i>Ah! égoïstes que nous sommes!</i>	<i>Oh, selfish creatures that we are!</i>
<i>Sais-tu ce qu'elle est devenue?</i>	<i>Do you know what has become of her?</i>

¹ Excluding, of course, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, etc.

129. *Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?* = 'What is that?' As for the first *que*, see § 124; as for the second, see § 128; the third, though originally a relative, now serves merely to point to *cela*, as if it were a : *Qu'est-ce que c'est  (que) cela?* It may be called an indicating conjunction. Similarly:

Triste acquisition qu'une épouse A sad acquisition, such a wife!
pareille. Vous voyez ce que c'est que You see what it is to love in that
d'aimer de cette façon. fashion.

130. The Type *le jour que*. In this group, and in various other groups like it, *que* is usual:

Il est arrivé le même jour et à la He arrived the same day and at
même heure que tu es parti. the same hour that you went away.

NOTE. Here *où* might be used instead of *que*, but *quand* would be wrong.

EXERCISES (INCLUDING REVIEW)

I. Group *A* of *faire* '(to) do,' 'make,' gives *fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font*.

(Translate 'I am not the one who does that (*or* it),' etc., using this model to illustrate the variations of the verb, according to § 122.

II. Group *A* of *connaître* '(to) know' (as one 'knows' persons), gives *connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent*.

Consult § 123 (also § 122) and translate the following, in two ways when possible:

1. The one who knows him is I. 2. It's I who know him best.
3. The one who knows you best is Geneviève. 4. *Geneviève* knows you best. 5. Those that know you best are Jacques and I. 6. It's Jacques and I who (that) know you best. 7. You are the one that knows us least. 8. Is it they that are afraid? 9. Who is it if it isn't they? 10. No, it isn't they (etc.). 11. Can you (*D*) explain all these forms? 12. Yes, we are the ones (etc.; *D*). 13. Who was it (*A*) that thought (*A p.p.*) this lesson difficult? You? 14. Yes, sir; I. And I know (*sais*) that there are several mistakes (*fautes, f.*) in what I have written. 15. Who has (*Who is it that has*) made the fewest (*le moins de*) mistakes? 16. Was it (*A*) you that were wrong? 17. No, you weren't the ones who were wrong, it was you who were right.

III. De quelle façon exprimerait-on en français les phrases que voici? (Note que voici):

1. He might go wherever (§ 33) he liked (*E of vouloir*; *i. e. voudrais etc.*), I would not go with him. 2. We should say whatever we wished, whatever seemed warranted. 3. We should find then whatever we needed. 4. In case you should need me, send me a post-card. 5. We should arrive at a moment when everything would be upside down. 6. I prefer (*aimer + mieux + pure infin.*) to remain where I am. 7. Where I am I have everything that I need. 8. In the city where we happen to be . . . (*se trouver*). 9. In the cities to which we are alluding . . . 10. In the street through which we were going . . .

IV. Consult § 127; then translate:

1. That is what my *father* says. 2. Those are the things of which my *mother* has spoken. 3. This is the house where my *brother* was born.

V. Jamais en français une préposition ne peut suivre son complément; en anglais, au contraire, cette façon de parler est fréquente et en même temps correcte. En voici (*N.B.*) quelques exemples à traduire:

1. Show me the house that you were born in. 2. Is that the city that you are going to? 3. Are those the gentlemen that you've spoken of? 4. What are the ideas that you are alluding to? 5. Who is the lady that you're going with?

VI. En anglais, il est permis en certains cas d'omettre le pronom relatif; en français, ce pronom ne s'omet jamais. Traduisez:

1. Is it you they are looking for? 2. Where is the letter you were going to show me? 3. The English we speak does not please me.

VII. 1. Riquet thought that stones grow larger as they approach, which seems impossible. 2. He thought, also, that we are in the midst of everything, which I cannot believe. 3. You know what it is to have such thoughts.

DIX-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

REGULAR VERBS IN *-IR*. TYPE *FINIR*. INDICATIVE GROUPS.
RELATIVE PRONOUNS (CONTINUED). SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS

131. **The Living Conjugations.** Only those verbs whose infinitive ends in *-er* (as exemplified by *parler*) and in *-ir* (as exemplified by *finir*) belong to *living* conjugations (§ 107, Remarks). Of several hundred verbs conjugated precisely like *finir*, all are completely 'regular'; for, as the stress always falls on their inflectional endings, no preceding syllable can vary perceptibly in its length or quality.

132. *Groups A, B, C, D, and E, of finir*

<i>A</i>		<i>B</i>	
1. je finis	-is [i(z)]	je finissais	-iss-ais [ise(z)]
2. tu finis	-is [i(z)]	tu finissais	-iss-ais [ise(z)]
3. il finit	-it [i(t)]	on finissait	-iss-ait [ise(t)]
4. nous finissons	-iss-ons [isʒ(z)]	nous finissions	-iss-ions [isjʒ(z)]
5. vous finissez	-iss-ez [ise(z)]	vous finissiez	-iss-iez [isje(z)]
6. ils finissent	-iss-ent [is(t)]	elles finissaient	-iss-aient [ise(t)]
I finish, etc. (See § 59.)		I was finishing, etc. (See § 61.)	

Inflectional Endings. Note the *ss* [s] in forms 4, 5, 6 of *A*, and throughout *B*. Note also the gerund and verbal adjective (in *b* and *c*).

<i>C</i>		<i>D</i>	<i>E</i>
1. je finis	-is [i(z)]	je finirai	je finirais
2. tu finis	-is [i(z)]	tu finiras	tu finirais
3. elle finit	-it [i(t)]	ça finira	tout finirait
4. nous finimes	-imes [i:m(z)]	nous finirons	nous finirions
5. vous finîtes	-îtes [it(s)]	vous finirez	vous finiriez
6. elles finirent	-irent [i:r(t)]	ils finiront	ils finiraient
I finished, etc.		I shall finish, etc.	I should finish, etc.

Note the *i* of *finimes* and *finîtes* (cf. *parlâmes* and *parlâtes*). In *D* and *E*, *finir* has precisely the same endings as *parler*: *je parlerai* etc., *je finirai* etc.; *je parlerais* etc., *je finirais* etc. How were groups *D* and *E* formed? (See §§ 84 and 394.)

a. *Past participle*: *fini, finie, finis, finies*. See §§ 72-73.

b. *Gerund*: *en finissant* (invariable) '(by) finishing,' '(in) finishing,' etc.

c. *Variable verbal adjective*: *finissant-s, finissante-s*: *le jour finissant* 'the closing day,' etc.

NOTE. For *parler*: (en) *parlant*; *des animaux parlants*.

Sounds. In 1 of *A*, reversing is avoided: *Est-ce que je finis*, rather than *Finis-je* [fini:ʒ]. So, not *Rougis-je*? 'Am I blushing?' etc. *Finirai-je* sounds like *Finirais-je* [finirɛ:ʒ].

d. All the following verbs are conjugated like *finir*.

<i>abolir</i> abolish	<i>se divertir</i> enjoy oneself	<i>obéir à</i> obey
<i>agir</i> act	<i>franchir</i> get over	<i>désobéir à</i> disobey
<i>bannir</i> banish	<i>guérir</i> cure, get well	<i>punir de</i> punish for
<i>bâtir</i> build	<i>jouir de</i> enjoy	<i>ravir de</i> delight with
<i>bondir</i> leap	<i>maigrir</i> grow thin	<i>réfléchir à</i> reflect on
<i>choisir</i> choose	<i>nourrir</i> feed	<i>réussir à</i> succeed in
<i>divertir</i> amuse	<i>se nourrir de</i> live on	(<i>réussir à parler</i>)

So *haïr* '(to) hate'; but with *je hais, tu hais, il hait* [e or he], in group *A*. *Haïr* has an 'aspirate h.' Hence *Je le hais*.

Note that *s'agir* (*de*), reflexive, is impersonal: *De quoi s'agit-il?* = 'What is being talked about?' 'What is involved?' etc. *Il s'agissait de vous* = 'It was about you,' etc. *Il s'agit de trouver quelqu'un* = 'The point is to find some one,' etc.

EXERCISES

I. Conjugate interrogatively groups *A* and *B* of *maigrir*.

II. Model: *Je t'avertis que si tu passes tout ton temps à te divertir tu ne réussiras jamais* = 'I warn you that if you spend all your time amusing yourself you will never succeed.'

Vary this by changing *Je te* to *Nous le*; the rest to suit. Likewise with *Vous me* etc. Likewise with *Nous vous* etc.

III. Model: *Si je lui désobéissais il (or elle) me punirait* = ?

Make three new combinations, using only proclitic pronouns as subjects and objects. See § 43.

IV. Write out and pronounce (as should be done in all cases) group *C* of *bondir*, using as complements *sur lui* (*moi, toi*, etc.).

Les travaillent à qui mieux x m. 2007

QUI = CE QUI, CELUI QUI, CELUI QUE 109

V. Model: Où les hiboux bâtissent-ils leurs nids, et de quoi se nourrissent-ils? = 'Where do (the) owls build their nests, and what do they live on?'

Put both verbs into the conditional (*E*), and change les hiboux to le hibou. Make three other reasonable combinations.

133. Qui = ce qui. Often after *voici*; oftener after *voilà*. Examples:

Et, si une hésitation me restait, 1 And, if I still felt any hesitation, *voici* qui la balaye au diable. here is what sweeps it to Jericho.

Elle n'est pas méchante, voilà 2 She's not malicious, that's sure. *qui est certain.* — Voilà qui m'est What do I care? (*Lit.* That is égal. what is indifferent to me.)

Note also (*et*), *qui plus est*. Example: Il s'avilit, *et, qui plus est*, il n'en rougit pas = 'He debases himself, and, what's more, he does it without blushing.'

134. Qui = celui qui, or celui que. In generalizations. Examples:

Qui ne dit mot consent. 1 Silence means assent.

Choisissez qui vous voudrez. 2 Choose whomever you please.

QUERY. What value has *qui* in the motto of the Order of the Garter? *Honni soit qui mal y pense* = 'Evil be to him [*lit.* Shamed be he] who evil thinks.'

a. Also à qui, pour qui, etc.: *Tout vient à point (à) qui sait attendre* = 'Everything comes in due time to him who (to whoever) knows how to wait.'

Note the frequent idiom exemplified by *C'était à qui arriverait le premier* = 'There was rivalry as to who should arrive first.'

REMARK. Sometimes *qui* stands for an old objective form, originally spelt *cui*—the form concealed in *l'homme à qui je parle*, and in the following: *Ma mère, vous recevez qui bon vous semble* (*in full*: *qui il vous semble bon de recevoir*) = 'Mother, you receive whomever you please.' We might substitute e.g. *ceux que vous trouvez bon de recevoir*.

135. Qui . . . qui . . . Distributively, for *les uns . . . , les autres*.

Tout le monde se trompe, qui Everyone makes mistakes, some plus, qui moins. (of us) more, some less.

Similarly, *Qui riait, qui pleurait* = 'Some were laughing, some were weeping.'

136. *Some Special Types of Plurals*

a. Nearly all nouns (and adjectives) in **-al** change to **-aux**.

Examples: **animal** 'animal,' **animaux**; **cheval** 'horse,' **chevaux**. So **brutal**, **loyal**, etc. (Cf. § 338, *g*).

NOTES. The modern word **bal** (m.) 'ball' (for dancing), very seldom plural, gives **bals**.

All words in **-al** are masculine.

b. Nouns and adjectives in **-au**, nouns in **-eu**, and a few nouns in **-ou**,¹ add **-x**.

Examples: **bateaux** 'boats,' **eaux** (f.) 'waters,' **oiseaux** 'birds,' etc. So **beaux**, m. pl. of **beau** 'beautiful.' Mostly masculine.

Examples: **les dieux** 'the gods,' **deux feux** 'two fires,' **de beaux cheveux** 'beautiful hair,' **les jeux d'exercice** 'athletic games,' etc. Masculine type.

Examples: **ce bijou** 'this jewel,' **un caillou** 'a pebble,' **le chou** 'the cabbage,' **du genou** 'of the knee,' **quel hibou!** 'what an owl!' **un joujou** 'a toy.' *But* **un clou**, **des clous**, 'a nail,' 'nails' (to drive), etc.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. 1. He disobeys them (him, her), and, what's more, that amuses him! 2. But he isn't malicious; that is what astonishes me. (*Here, two ways.*) 3. For whoever spends all his time amusing himself, life is nothing but a temptation. 4. To whoever succeeds everything seems pleasing.

II. Write first the singular, then the plural, of every noun in § 136, *a* and *b*, before **énorme-s**, or **aimable-s**, or **utile-s**, pronouncing each combination. In each case use **le**, **un**, **des**, or the like.

III. Oral exercises connecting § 132, *d*, with § 136.

¹ Afin d'être mieux compris, l'auteur se permet de renvoyer ses collègues au livre de M. Otto Jespersen, *How to Teach a Foreign Language* (édition anglaise), page 114 et *passim*.

VINGTIÈME LEÇON

RELATIVE PRONOUNS (CONTINUED)

137. Relatives Not Omitted. In French no relative pronoun may be omitted; and (after verbs of perception, chiefly) French often employs a relative contrary to English usage:

Le voilà qui vient !	1	There he is, coming !
Je les entends qui montent.	2	I hear them coming up.

Or, **Je les entends monter.** Here the relative does not clearly identify.

138. *Entre* and *Parmi*. Qui may be used (of persons) after most prepositions, but not after *entre* 'between,' or *parmi* 'among': **les amis, parmi lesquels je vous compte** 'the friends, among whom I count you,' etc. So, also, **les personnes au milieu desquelles** 'the persons amid whom.'

NOTE. On **qui que ce soit (fût),** *lit.* 'whoever it may be' (or 'was,' etc.), often = 'anyone,' and **quoi que ce soit (fût)** 'whatever it may be' (or 'was,' etc.), or 'anything,' see § 228. *concession of indifference*

139. *Que* occurs often as a predicate nominative (§ 128), and in a few archaisms it occurs as a subject: **Adviene que pourra** (i.e. **ce qui pourra advenir**) 'Happen what may.'¹ Cf. **coûte que coûte** 'cost what it may,' in which **que = ce que**.

NOTE. In, say, **Qu'est-ce qui (que),** the **que** of **qu'est** is the neuter interrogative.

140. *Quoi* occurs as a relative only when its antecedent is vague or neuter, e.g. **rien** 'nothing,' or **ce: il n'y a rien à quoi (sur quoi, etc.)**

¹ French children are told that they must not replace the other conjunctive pronouns with **que**: 'Il faut se garder de remplacer par **que** les autres pronoms conjunctifs. On ne doit pas dire: **la femme qu'est venue** (pour . . . **qui est venue**); **la marchande** [shopwoman] **que j'ai parlé** (pour . . . **dont j'ai parlé**), et encore bien moins: **le pont** [bridge] **que j'ai passé dessus** (pour: **le pont sur lequel je suis passé**.) (Méthode Brunot-Bony.) If French children (and some of their elders) never made these mistakes, would they be thus warned against them?

'there's nothing to which' ('on which,' etc.): **ce à quoi je pense** 'what I'm thinking about.' Note, also, the following examples:

Sur quoi (Après quoi) il s'en va.	1	Whereupon he goes off.
Avez-vous de quoi vivre ?	2	Have you enough to live on?
Il n'y a pas de quoi (me remercier).	3	Don't mention it!

REMARK. Cases such as **une chose par quoi** (= **par laquelle**) are exceptional. Note the really sexless character of **une chose**. This use of **quoi** was formerly common after various kinds of nouns.

QUERY. What could be the antecedent of **quoi** in, for example, **Il y a ici de quoi vêtir cinq cents enfants** 'There is enough (the wherewithal) here to clothe five hundred children'?

141. **Dont** (Latin *de unde, dunde*), originally an adverb of place, has kept the meaning 'whence' only in figurative expressions. Example: **la race (la maison) dont je suis sorti** (or **issu**) 'the stock (the house) whence I came' etc.; but *literally* use **d'où** or **de laquelle** etc.: **La maison d'où nous sommes sortis est à vendre** = 'The house that we have come out of is for sale.'

NOTE. **Dont** must imply no preposition except **de** (or occasionally **par**). Hence **la foule dont il était suivi** ('the crowd by which he was being followed') implies **il était suivi d'une foule** (possibly, **par une foule**). So **l'histoire dont on riait** ('the story they were laughing at') implies **rire de quelque chose**, or **rire de** implies **dont**. So **le loup dont** ('with which') **on menace les méchants enfants** (§ 113) implies **menacer de**. Etc.

142. **Où** (Latin *ubi* 'where') was formerly used of persons (**un homme où** 'a man in whom,' **des hommes où** etc.); also of nouns such as **chose** 'thing' (**une chose où**). *Now*, **où** can have as its antecedent only common nouns expressing situation in space or time (cf. § 120), or place-names (e.g. Paris). But this relative **où** can generally be replaced by a suitable preposition + **lequel** etc. (§§ 116-117): **la chambre où** 'the room in which,' or **la chambre dans laquelle**; **le temps où** 'the time during which,' or **le temps pendant lequel**; etc.

NOTES. As a relative, **où** cannot be *initial*; hence **Là où vous allez il y a une belle plage** 'Where you are going there is a fine beach'; but *internally* this **là** is not always required: **Allez où vous voudrez** 'Go wherever you please.' 'That is where . . .' = **C'est là que . . .**, not **C'est là où**.

143. *Other Plurals* (cf. § 136), not formed like *homme-s*¹

a. Most nouns in *-ail* [a:j], all masculine, merely add *-s*, as *les éventails* 'the fans'; but some seven change *-ails* to *-aux*. Among them: *corail* 'coral,' *émail* 'enamel,' *travail* 'work,' 'labor.'

b. *Le ciel* ('the sky') has *cieux* [sjø] (*technically*, *ciels*), and *un œil* [œ:j] ('an eye') has *les yeux* [jø]. As *œuf* [œf] ('egg') gives *œufs* [ø], so *bœuf* [bœf] ('ox') gives *bœufs* [bø].

c. Nouns in *-s*, in *-x*, and in *-z* are invariable, but in nearly all cases their singular cannot be linked and therefore ends in a vowel for the *ear*; however, singular or plural, *fil* 'son-s' is [fis].

Examples: *le pas* [pa] 'the step,' *le bras* 'the arm,' *un gueux* [gø] 'a vagabond,' 'a rogue,' *le nez* 'the nose,' etc.

Note *un repas exquis* [rəpa èkski] ('an exquisite meal') but *des repas exquis* [rəpazèkski], *un pas* ('step') *ou deux* [pa u dø] but *pas à pas* [pazapa] 'step by step,' etc. Only set phrases allow such singular forms to be linked.

EXERCISES (INCLUDING REVIEW)

I. See particularly § 113; be careful as to emphasis.

1. If one reads fables attentively one recognizes in them the ways of many animals that one knows. 2. The animals that I should be afraid of aren't those whose merciful ways are lauded (*use on*) in the fables. 3. What I like best is stories (*f.*) in which dogs and horses figure, but I like all stories in which animals are involved (*où + s'agir*; § 132, *d'*). 4. I read (*lis*) those that are studied by our children (§ 127). 5. I am particularly delighted by stories that are full of ferocious animals. 6. If a lion whose ways have been pleasing finds a place therein (*y*), so much the better. 7. Have you ever met the man to whom the lion showed himself (*s'est montré*, or *C*) so merciful? or the mouse that deceived the cat that the naughty children abused (*B*)? or the family in whose barnyard the fox would prowl (*B*) whenever he thought (*B*) that he would not meet the dog? 8. And was the henhouse behind which this fox was accustomed to prowl (*B*) near the house where that dog's master lived?

¹ Voir la note au bas de la page 110.

II. Pourquoi faut-il dire « l'enfant y retrouve *ce que* sa mère lui en a dit » pour exprimer notre pronom relatif 'what'? Traduisez :

1. What I have said is that I wrote three pages. 2. I study what pleases me. 3. I shall study whatever pleases me (*D*).

III. Variations orales des exemples les plus importants des §§ 137-143.

IV. Translate (with special reference to §§ 137-143):

1. There is your friend coming up the stairs. 2. I hear him coming up. 3. Whoever it may be, I don't like him. 4. I have never said that to anyone. 5. I shall do what I please (*plaire with dative, or vouloir; D*), happen what may. 6. I shall arrive there at the hour that I said I should arrive at, cost what it may. 7. Have you enough money (§ 140, *ex. 2*) to pay [for] a carriage? 8. No? Then here are five francs. Thanks! Don't mention it. 9. Have you all the money you are going to need? 10. I have enough to live on. 11. If one has the wherewithal to clothe a family as big as mine, one is lucky. 12. The stock (family) from which I issued (*aux. être*) has always had ideas to which I don't incline, ideas that I should laugh at if they were truly amusing. 13. You're going to the theater? 14. Yes, that's where I'm going.

V. With special reference to pronunciation, write in French :

1. An egg as big (*gros*) as an ox. 2. Eggs as big as oxen. 3. An enormous eye (*adj. last*). 4. Enormous eyes. 5. The eyes of owls are as big as those of men. 6. What corals! and what jewels! 7. The heavens were full of gods. 8. One of the gods had only one eye (§§ 90, 143, *b*). 9. Why talk (*infin.*) of the skies of Italy? Ours are not less beautiful. 10. We're finishing our labors. 11. The horses are finishing their work. 12. Is gold as hard (*dur*) as enamel? 13. An exquisite enamel! 14. Exquisite enamels!

VINGT ET UNIÈME LEÇON

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. **Forms.** All forms of the relative pronouns, except *dont*, may be used as interrogatives (*pronoms interrogatifs*), as follows:

Qui le croit ?	Qui êtes-vous ?	1	Who believes it? Who are you?
Qui est-elle ?	Qui sont-ils ?	2	Who is she? Who are they?
Qui cherchez-vous ?	Qui voit-il ?	3	Who(m) are you looking for? Whom does he see?
A qui le dites-vous ?	Pour qui me prenez-vous ?	4	<i>Idiom.</i> , As if I didn't know! For whom do you take me?
De qui est cette conjecture ?		5	Whose guess is that?
A qui est ce pauvre chien ?		6	Who(m) does this poor dog belong to?

145. Qui interrogative may be a subject or predicate nominative (exs. 1 and 2); a direct object of a transitive verb (ex. 3); the object of any preposition (exs. 4, 5, 6). It is invariable, is often stressed, and should not be elided. It is always personal. (Compare *Qui arrive ?* with *Qu'est-ce qui arrive ?*)

NOTE. *Qui est-ce qui arrive ?* is less blunt than *Qui arrive ?* and *Qui est-ce que vous cherchez ?* is less blunt than *Qui cherchez-vous ?* Likewise, *A qui est-ce que* etc. for *A qui . . .* (Groups wherein *être* would be repeated are barred: *A qui est ce chien ?* not *A qui est-ce qu'est ce chien ?*)

a. *Qui* is generally masculine, but may be feminine: *Qui est plus belle ?*

146. *Que (qu')*. This neuter interrogative is the unstressed form of *quoi* (just as *me* is the unstressed form of *moi*). It cannot be used as a subject unless we regard it as such when followed by *est*, *était*, and other singular forms of *être*. Examples:

Qu'est-ce qui l'embête ? What (is it that) annoys him?

REMARKS. *Que l'embête ?* would be impossible. Even with *est*, *était*, etc., *que* must be supplemented by *ce*: *Qu'est-ce donc ?* 'What is it then?'

Que vous en semble-t-il? 'What do you think about it?' shows **que** supplemented by the neuter **il**. Note also what verbs occur in **Qu'arrive-t-il?** 'What happens?' **Qu'en reste-t-il?** 'What remains of it?' **Qu'en était-il sorti?** 'What had come of it?' **Que se passe-t-il?** 'What is occurring?'

Que vous en semble? (without **il**), though colloquial, illustrates archaic syntax.

a. In very colloquial French, **Qu'est-ce** occasionally stands for **Qui est-ce**.

BENJAMINE, *appelant*. — Monsieur Paul Normand.

PAUL. — **Qu'est-ce** [i.e. **Qui est-ce**] qui m'appelle?

BENJAMINE. — **C'est moi, monsieur.**

b. **Qu'est-ce**, without **il**, *elle*, etc., may be condescending or derogatory:

Votre ami est beaucoup mieux ('nicer,' 'better-looking') **que vous**.

Qu'est-ce que c'est? (*freely*, 'What's his trade?' *but word for word*, 'What is it?') **C'est un peintre** 'He's a painter.'

EXERCISE I

1. What is killing that man? 2. What is he killing? 3. What expresses your idea better than that? 4. What thinks your friend? 5. What said the little fish? 6. He said: 'What are you going to do with me?' 7. What happened? (*Use C.*) 8. The fisherman put (*mit*) the carplet into his creel. 9. What occurred then? 10. The fisherman's wife put it, this carplet, into her frying-pan. 11. What remained (was left) of it? 12. The bones (*arêtes* [arɛ:t]). 13. What was it that annoyed this poor little fish? 14. What annoyed him was (*ce + A of être*) that way (*façon*) of ending (*infin.*) his life. 15. What do you think about it? (*Four ways.*)

147. **Que** is used in inquiring about *things* (grammatically masculine or feminine) when **quel** or **lequel** (§ 155) would necessarily imply a consideration of several objects. Examples:

Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça? — Ça, mon enfant, c'est une girafe. — Et qu'est-ce donc, une girafe? 1 What is that? — That, my child, is a giraffe. — And *what* is a giraffe?

Qu'est-ce que je vois là? C'est Guignol. 2 What is it that I (What do I) see there? That's Punch.

a. Applied to persons, **que + être** usually = our 'what . . .?': **Qu'est-il, ce monsieur?** 'What is that gentleman?' **C'est un financier.**

NOTE. *Que* subject nominative (as in *Que vous en semble-t-il?*) must not be confounded with *que* predicate nominative, exemplified by *Que suis-je?* 'What am I?' by *Que sont-ils?* 'What are they?' by *Que devient-elle?* 'What does she become?' ('What is becoming of her?') or by *Que sont-elles devenues?* 'What has become of them?' (Note these two verbs.)

EXERCISE II

1. Who is calling me? 2. What does he want (*désirer*)? 3. Who is it? 4. It's an advertising agent (*courtier de publicité*). 5. What's that? 6. That, sir? I don't know (*sais*) what it is. 7. The gentleman will tell you what it is. 8. Good day, sir. 9. The servant tells me that you are an (*omit un*) advertising agent. 10. Is that really what you are? 11. Yes, that is what I am. 12. And you, sir, what are you? 13. I? I'm what's called a painter. *Etc.*

148. *Que* (*qu'*) is often a proclitic accusative:

Que dit-il (or Qu'est-ce qu'il dit) 1 What does he say and what do
et qu'en penses-tu? Qu'y a-t-il de you think about it? What is there
si drôle en ce qu'il dit? that's so funny in what he says?

a. *Que* (rarely *Qu'*) occurs in direct questions before a few infinitives:

Que dire? Que faire? Que répon- 2 What is (was) to be said? . . .
dre? (But not, e.g., Qu'expliquer?) done? . . . replied?

REMARK. *Que* must not be strongly stressed. Hence, *not Que, Jean, en penses-tu?* but *Jean, qu'en penses-tu?* or *Qu'en penses-tu, Jean?* etc.

149. *Quoi* corresponds to *que* as *moi* corresponds to *me*, being required in all stressed positions:

Quoi? (or Quoi!) Tu pars déjà? 1 What? You're leaving already?
Je dis . . . Vous dites quoi? 2 I say — You say *what*?
Pourquoi le dire? A quoi bon 3 Why say it? What is the use
discuter? De quoi s'agissait-il? of arguing? What was involved?

REMARKS. In *Pourquoi le dire?* (ex. 3) *quoi* is the object of *pour*; in *Pour quoi faire?* 'In order to do what?' it is the (accusative) object of *faire*, but cannot be *que* (as in *Que dire?*) because *pour* attracts the stressed form; so in *En quoi faisant?* or *En faisant quoi?* 'In doing what?' In *A quoi bon* we have an ellipsis: this *quoi* is a neuter pronoun, not an adjective modifying *bon*. In indirect questions *quoi* does not require *ce*.

150. Quel (quelle, quels, quelles) precedes nouns or various forms of être :

Quel Age avez-vous, et quels 1 How old are you, and what
sujets avez-vous étudiés? subjects have you studied?

Quelle heure est-il, et quel train 2 What time is it, and what (which)
allons-nous prendre? train are we going to take?

NOTE. Also exclamatively: Quel aplomb! 'What (a) cheek!' Quelle
voix! 'What a voice!' Quels enfants! 'What children!' Quel joli lapin!
'What a pretty rabbit!'

Quelle est ta raison? Quelles 3 What is your reason? What
sont tes excuses? are your excuses?

Exclamatively: Quelle était ma surprise de n'y trouver personne! 'What
was my surprise to find nobody there!'

EXERCISE III

1. What had she said? (*Two ways.*) 2. What did you think about
it? (*Two ways.*) 3. What was there so annoying (. . . **embêtant**) in
what she alluded to? (**a fait . . .**). Nothing. 4. Then why speak of
it? 5. What is the use of taking sides (§ 149, *ex. 3*) when one
doesn't know what's involved (§ 149, *Remarks*)? 6. What a man!
No, rather (**plutôt**) what a woman! 7. What is it you are saying
(§ 474, *A*)? 8. Why ask? 9. What I say does not concern you.
10. I'm the one who will succeed in (§ 132, *d*) bringing our friends
together (**rapprocher**). 11. By doing what? 12. How do you know
what their reasons are? (*Noun last.*) 13. What excuse could you
find? 14. You don't even know (**même pas**) what trains they are
going to take.

VINGT-DEUXIÈME LEÇON

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (CONCLUDED)
INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

151. **Qui** (= 'who,' 'whom'), interrogative, allows no antecedent in indirect questions (*Dites-moi qui c'est, dites-moi qui vous choisissez* 'Tell me who it is, tell me whom you choose'); whereas **que** ('what') may occur without **ce** only before a few infinitives (as below), and here we must sometimes use **quoi**.

Que or Quoi Before Infinitives. After **je ne sais (pas)**, and a few variants, either **que** or **quoi** may precede an infinitive; thus:

Je ne sais que (or quoi) dire. I don't know what to say.

But, **Je ne sais quoi imiter** 'I don't know what to imitate,' because **imiter** may be intransitive. **Je ne sais qu'imiter** would mean 'I know only how to imitate.' Cf. **Ce n'est que lui** 'It's only he.'

Again, **Je ne sais pas du tout quoi jouer** = 'I don't at all know what to play,' says a card-player. **Je ne sais que jouer** would mean 'I know only how to play (gamble).'

152. **Je ne sais qui** often means hardly more than 'somebody (or other)'; so **je ne sais quoi** often means 'something (or other)':

Je ne sais qui m'a dit . . . (Cf. 1 **Somebody (or other, I don't know who) has told me—**
Quelqu'un m'a dit . . .)

Elle avait je ne sais quoi de mystérieux. 2 **There was something mysterious about her (I don't know what).** (Cf. **quelque chose de . . .**)

REMARK. Here **je ne sais** is seldom if ever varied in tense, number, or person, and each group virtually constitutes an indefinite pronoun; but the speaker necessarily expresses ignorance of identity (cf. **quelqu'un** and **quelque chose**).

153. In **Que lui faut-il?** ('What does he, or she, need?'), **Qu'importe cela?** ('What does that matter?'), **Qu'importe?** ('No matter! 'What difference does it make?'), and in variants thereof, **que** eludes analysis, but seems to have been originally nominative with **falloir**

(il faut, il fallait, il faudrait, etc.) and accusative with **importer** (importe, importait, etc.), or adverbial.

154. *Que* is more or less clearly adverbial in the following examples:

Que ne l'a-t-elle expliqué ?	1	(Oh,) Why hasn't she explained it?
Que vous êtes beau (belle) !	2	How handsome you are !
Qu'est-il besoin de le dire ?	3	What need of saying it ?
Que de choses vous avez vues !	4	How many things you've seen !
Que sert la science sans la vertu ?	5	What is the use of science without virtue ?

REMARKS. Examples 2 and 4 illustrate colloquial usage. Examples 1, 3, 5, are more or less stilted and might be altered thus: **Pourquoi ne l'a-t-elle pas expliqué ?** (note *pas*). **Quel besoin y a-t-il (ai-je etc.) de le dire ?** **A quoi sert, etc.**

N.B. *Que* and *quoi* must not be used for our *adjective* 'what': 'What man do you obey' = **A quel homme obéissez-vous ?** 'What is your opinion' = **Quel est votre avis ?**

155. *Quel* and *Lequel*. In living French, *quel* (*quelle* etc.), like 'which' and 'what,' usually expects a simple reply as to identity rather than a description of qualities.¹ So *lequel* (*laquelle* etc.), but always pronominally, always with the idea of plurality, and usually with reference to things or persons already mentioned:

Quel est votre petit nom ?	1	What is your Christian name?
Lequel de ces noms préférez-vous ? Lequel en est le plus ancien ?	2	Which of these names do you prefer? Which of them is the oldest?
De toutes ces carrières laquelle choisiras-tu, et dans laquelle auras-tu le plus de chances de réussir ?	3	Of all these careers, which will you choose, and in which shall you be most likely to succeed?

a. *Quel* in Exclamations. In exclamations, *quel* (*quelle* etc.) generally expresses either degree or quality:

Je sais bien quelle femme logique vous êtes.	4	I know well what a logical woman you are.
---	---	---

¹ *Quel* is derived from the Latin *qualis*, meaning 'of what kind?' *Qualis* > *qualitas* > French *qualité*, English 'quality.'

- Et ses dents ! Quelles dents ! 5 And his teeth ! What teeth !
 Quelle (charmante) maison ! 6 What a (charming) house !

NOTE. Never **quel un, quelle une**. English varies: **Quel garçon** = 'What a boy!' but **Quel temps** = 'What weather!'

b. In true interrogation, direct or indirect, **quel (quelle etc.)** seldom inquires as to qualities. Notable examples :

- Quel homme est Simonein ? — 7** What kind of man is Simonein ?
Un génie, mon vieux. — A genius, my boy.
Quelle est cette femme avec la- 8 *Freely translated,* Who and
quelle il est sorti ? — Une madame what is that woman with whom
de Valleroy ! Bien peu de chose ! he went out ? — A madame de
(Marquis de Priola, I, 7) Valleroy ! Nothing much !

NOTE. Occasionally **quel (quelle etc.)** stands alone (is used *absolutely*): **Connaissez-vous le proverbe ? — Quel ?** 'Which?' (*L'Autre*, III, 3). Here the normal form would be **Lequel ?** (i.e. **Quel proverbe ?**)

c. **Je ne sais quel (quelle etc.)**. This group is often equivalent to an indefinite adjective :

- Je ne sais quel air de vertu res- 9** A certain indefinable air of vir-
pirait dans ses traits. tue breathed in her features.

REMARKS. Unlike our 'I know not what . . .,' this formula belongs both to literature and to everyday speech. How would you translate this? — **Il l'avait lu dans je ne sais quel livre,** or **Vous rencontrerez je ne sais quelles difficultés.** Note also **Ça arrive dans n'importe quel pays** = 'That can happen in any country' (*lit.* 'in no matter what country'). What relation does this **je ne sais quel (quelle etc.)** bear to **je ne sais qui** and to **je ne sais quoi**? (See § 152.)

On **quel que soit (fût etc.)** 'whatever may be' ('was'), see § 228.

156. *Interrogative Adverbs in Questions or Exclamations*

1. **Combien** [kɔbjɛ̃]. **Combien tu lui ressembles !** 'How much you look like him (her)!' **Combien ça coûte-t-il ?** 'How much does that cost?' **Combien d'argent et combien de billets** [bijɛ] **avez-vous ?** 'How much money and how many tickets have you?' **Combien (d'entre eux) l'ont dit ?** 'How many (of them) have said it?' **Combien vous êtes bon !**

2. **Comment** [kòmã]. **Comment cela s'explique-t-il?** 'How is that (to be) explained?' **Comment allez-vous** 'How are you?' More formally, **Comment vous portez-vous?** Familiarly, **Comment ça va-t-il?** 'How goes it?' (in general).

3. **Où**. **Où voit-on cela?** 'Where does one (can one) see that?'

4. **Pourquoi**. See § 149, and note that **à quoi**, **de quoi**, **en quoi** ('in what,' 'in what way,' 'wherein'), etc. are not joined.

5. **Quand**. **Quand viendra-t-elle?** 'When will she come?' (Note that **lorsque**, 'when,' 'at the time that,' is never interrogative, and is always a conjunction.)

EXERCISES

I. To familiarize yourself with the interrogatives here considered, wherever possible change the subject or object of each of the twenty or more examples in §§ 151-156. Then translate II (below).

II. 1. Tell me what interests you, what you like most. 2. Many things. I don't know what to answer. What answer shall I give you? (*D or preferably faut-il*). 3. What a logical person you are! (§§ 154-156.) 4. What opinion can I (**puis-je**) give you? I have many opinions; which do you desire? 5. If you were choosing a career, which would you choose? Which is the best? 6. I should choose the one in which I should have the most chances of succeeding. 7. I don't know which would be the best. 8. How many careers are there for me? 9. Which of them are the most agreeable? How can I know? 10. Could I succeed in *anything* ('in no matter what')? 11. Somebody or other has said that science offers a good career, but what science? and wherein would that career be 'good'? 12. My friend X prefers the study of languages. Why? That is what I don't know. 13. He tells me that in order to learn a language one must know how to imitate (**faut + infn.**), but what? 14. If one knows only how to imitate?—One must know what to imitate, and whom one is to imitate (*again faut*). 15. What is the use of studying languages in grammars? 16. I've read, somewhere or other, that all grammars are full of mistakes. 17. How many grammars do you know (**connaître**)?

VINGT-TROISIÈME LEÇON

LE LANGAGE. PECULIARITIES OF THE VERBS IN -ER

157.

Le Langage¹

Pour la science, il n'y a pas de bien et de mal, au moins en linguistique : une prononciation, une forme, un procédé syntaxique, sont employés, ou ont été employés à telle époque² ou dans telle région et s'expliquent de telle façon, voilà tout ce qui l'intéresse.

Son objet étant³ précisément de constater que tout change sans cesse, que les phonèmes réputés aujourd'hui les plus grossièrement fautifs seront proclamés demain les seuls légitimes, que l'analogie de sons, de formes, de sens, de constructions, travaille incessamment à reformer d'après des affinités nouvelles⁴ les groupes qu'elle avait créés, elle est absolument fermée à l'idée de correction.⁵

Il n'en saurait être de même⁶ de l'art, qui a pour objet non la constatation mais l'enseignement; pour but non la connaissance des faits mais leur utilisation dans une certaine vue.

Une langue est un instrument de communication entre ceux qui s'en servent,⁷ et, quand on s'en sert⁷ « correctement », on est d'une part⁸ plus sûr d'être compris,⁹ et d'autre part on jouit d'une estime qui augmente la¹⁰ valeur sociale.

Une « faute de¹¹ français », une « faute d'orthographe » même, disqualifient ; il faut¹² donc les éviter, il faut parler et écrire « correctement ». Mais qui décidera de¹³ la correction ? Pour la prononciation, il n'y a pas d'autorité établie : l'Académie française,¹⁴ dont ç'aurait¹⁵ été sans doute le devoir, n'a jamais donné d'orthographe¹⁶ ; la seule règle est de parler comme on parle à Paris dans la bonne société (dont les acteurs du Théâtre-Français¹⁷ sont, surtout aux yeux des étrangers, les représentants attitrés) ; c'est une affaire de pratique et d'exercice.

Gaston Paris [pari's] (1839-1903), in a preface to L. Clédât's *Grammaire raisonnée de la langue française*. (The original is not paragraphed.)

NOTES. 1. See exercise III (page 126) and, if need be, the French-English vocabulary at the end of the book. Note carefully all new words.

2. 'at such and such a period.' 3. 'being' (see *être*, § 426). 4. 'new' (m. *nouveau*). 5. *correction* = 'correcting,' 'correctness,' or 'correction.' 6. *Il en est de même de* = 'The case is the same for'; here *saurait* (from *savoir*, *E*) has about the same value as *saurais* in *Je ne saurais vous le dire* 'I really couldn't tell you'; translate: 'No such thing can be said of.' 7. From *A* of *se servir* (*de*). 8. 'on the one hand.' 9. P. p. of *comprendre*. 10. Here, 'one's.' 11. Here, 'in.' 12. From *A* of *falloir*. 13. Here, 'shall decide as to' (§ 86, *a*). 14. Founded by Richelieu (1634) to compile and publish (*donner*) a dictionary of the French language, and thus to act as a kind of linguistic legislature. 15. Regular elision of *ce* before forms of *avoir*, aux. vb. 16. 'rules of pronunciation.' 17. Called also *la Comédie-Française*; a national theater, founded in 1680; presents a classic repertory (Molière etc.) and modern pieces; several other Parisian theaters more often reproduce the natural speech of 'good society.'

158.

Verbs in -yer. Type payer

Though not with complete consistency, before a silent *e* nearly all such verbs change their *y* to *i*. Examples:

1. *employer* 'employ': group *A*, *vous employez* [ɑplwajɛ], but *j'emploie* [ɑplwa]; for *D*, *tu emploieras* [ɑplwara] etc.

2. *essuyer* 'dry,' 'wipe': group *A*, *nous essuyons* [ɛsqijɔ̃], but *D*, *elle essuiera* [ɛsqi:j(ə)ra or ɛsqira] etc.; in *A*, *essuie-s* and *essuient* = [ɛsqi or ɛsqi(:)j].

3. *balayer* 'sweep,' 'sweep away,' *payer* 'pay,' 'pay for,' and like verbs, may keep *y* throughout, in which case their *aye* usually becomes [ɛ(:)j]. Instead of *je paierai* or *je payerai* [pɛ:j(ə)rɛ], etc., we sometimes find *je païrai* [pɛrɛ] etc. Cf. § 419.

a. Verbs in *-yer* [je] or in *-iller* [je], as *veiller* [vɛ:rje] 'be awake,' 'be watchful,' create some difficulty. Study what a French expert says:¹

« Pour tous ces verbes, il n'y a aucune différence de prononciation, aux deux premières personnes du pluriel, entre le présent de l'indicatif [*A*] et l'imparfait de l'indicatif [*B*] ou le présent du subjonctif. * * *

« Aujourd'hui, quand on veut bien faire comprendre, en parlant, que le verbe est à ['in'] l'imparfait, on prononce avec affectation *nous payions* [peijɔ̃], mais ce n'est là qu'un artifice qui repose sur l'orthographe. »

¹ L. Clédât, *Grammaire raisonnée*, § 373. See § 419 of this book.

159. *Verbs in -ier and -uer. Types étudier and tuer*

Sounds. In *speech*, all *-er* verbs wherein *-er-* follows a vowel (groups *D* and *E*) are treated thus: *j'étudie* [etydi] 'I study,' but *j'étudierai* = [ʒetydire] and *étudiez* = [etydirje]; but see §§ 394 and 418.

a. The Type *étudier*. Furthermore, *étudier* = [etydje], *études* = [etydjɔ̃], etc., *i* being [j] before audible inflectional endings. In *speech*, *étudions* and *étudiez* (indicative in group *B*, or present subjunctive) are distinguished only with an effort from *études* and *étudiez*. Cf. *payions* and *payiez* (§ 158, *a*).

b. Tuer 'kill' is usually a monosyllable: [tʁe]. Similarly, *je tuais* [tʁe]; *je louais* ('I was praising') = generally [lwa]; etc.

160. *Commencer and manger.* Verbs in *-cer* and in *-ger* must preserve [s] and [ʒ] throughout.

Hence the cedilla in *commencer* 'begin,' before *a* and *o*: *je commençais, tu commenças, nous commençons*, etc. Hence, likewise, the silent *e* in *manger* 'eat,' before *a* and *o*: *il mangea* [mãʒa], *nous mangeâmes, nous mangeons*, etc.

NOTE. This holds good for all kinds of words, but *ge* [ʒ] is so rare before *u* that *gageure* [gazy:ʀ], 'wager,' is commonly mispronounced [gazyœ:ʀ].

QUERIES. Why 'pronounceable,' but 'pronouncing'? Why 'singing,' but 'singeing' (from 'singe')? Why 'dungeon' (*donjon*)? How might a Frenchman pronounce *manga* or *commençons*? Why *ç'aurait* (= *ce aurait*) in § 157, line 23?

EXERCISES

I. Write in French, then pronounce:

1. I (We, You) wipe the glasses.
2. I (etc.) am paying that debt.
3. We (You) were paying for those lessons.
4. Lucile was sweeping (would sweep) all the rooms.
5. You (We) must be watchful (*Il faut que + subjunctive*).
6. We were studying; we must study.

II. Write out in full, then pronounce, groups *B* and *E* of *essayer* 'try,' group *D* of *lier* 'tie,' 'bind,' group *A* of *commencer*, and group *C* of *échanger* 'exchange,' using reasonable complements, as *le, la, les*, etc.

III. Translate (with reference particularly to § 157):

1. If we speak badly, or if we make (§ 478, *A*) mistakes in spelling, we are not so sure (= are less sure) of being understood. 2. On the other hand, if we speak well, if we write (§ 472, *A*) our books and letters in (*en*) good French, or in good English, the number (*le nombre*) of those who can (§ 89, *b*) understand us will be greater, and we shall enjoy an esteem which will increase our social value.

3. If we are studying language, we note that it is changing unceasingly, but that it changes slowly and that most of the forms of which we make use (*on with employer or se servir de*) are very old (*anciennes*). 4. But analogy is always at work re-forming the groups that it has created, and sounds or constructions which are considered (*use on*) grossly inaccurate (*fautif*-) will be proclaimed to-morrow the only *allowable* ones.

5. Yes, it is true that forms, processes of syntax — all speech-sounds (*m.*) — change unceasingly; it is true also that science is absolutely closed to [the idea of] correcting. 6. It notes and records; it endeavors (*essayer*) to explain such and such a group of sounds or such and such a construction (*f.*).

7. As an object of art, what is the aim of language (*du . . .*)? 8. Evidently instruction, the communication of ideas (*des . . .*), and the utilization of facts with a certain end in view (*simply as in line 14*). 9. If those who speak best seldom use slang (*argot, m.*), the reason is, in general, that this [i.e. slang] is not a good instrument for (*de*) communication. 10. There are many other things which are bad (*mauvais-*) and which it is necessary to avoid.

IV. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce qui n'existe pas pour la linguistique, selon notre auteur? 2. Pourquoi, en parlant n'importe quelle langue, doit-on essayer de parler «correctement»?

V. (Causerie.) Molière et la Comédie-Française.

VINGT-QUATRIÈME LEÇON

**FURTHER PECULIARITIES OF VERBS IN -ER. THE TYPES
MENER '(TO) LEAD,' CÉDER '(TO) YIELD,' RÉVER '(TO) DREAM,
JETER '(TO) THROW'**

PREFATORY NOTE. In the following anecdote of Louis XI (1423-1483) and his Astrologer, the only words possibly requiring definition are *règne* 'reign,' *prédit* (*p. p.*) 'predicted,' *venger* '(to) avenge,' *faire mourir* (see note), *envoie* . . . *chercher* (see note), *ordonne à* 'orders,' *fenêtre* 'window,' *prétendez* 'claim,' *parfaitement* 'perfectly,' *esprit* 'mind,' *là-dessus* 'thereupon,' *le faire jeter* (see note), *fit prendre* (see note), *soin* 'care,' *fit* (*C of faire*) 'did,' *pouvoir* (as a noun) 'power,' and *mort* 'death.'

161. Louis XI et son Astrologue [lwi ʒ:z e sɔnastrɔlɔg]

Un astrologue, sous le règne de Louis XI, ayant prédit quelque chose de désagréable à ce roi, Sa Majesté, pour se venger, résolut de le faire mourir.¹ Il envoie le jour suivant chercher² l'astrologue, et ordonne à ses gens, à un signal donné, de le jeter par la fenêtre.

Aussitôt que le roi le voit: « Vous qui prétendez, dit-il, être si sage, et savoir si parfaitement la destinée des autres, dites-moi un peu quelle est la vôtre, et combien de temps vous avez encore à vivre? »

L'astrologue, qui appréhendait quelque danger, répondit avec une grande présence d'esprit: « Je sais ma destinée, et je suis certain de mourir trois jours avant Votre Majesté. »

Le roi, là-dessus, loin de le faire jeter³ par la fenêtre, fit prendre,⁴ au contraire, le plus grand soin de lui,

1 [œnastrɔlɔg, su lə rɛɲ də lwi ʒ:z, ejɔ̃ pɛdi kɛlkəʃɔz də deza-grea:bl a s(ə) rwa, sa maʒeste, pur s(ə) vɑ:ʒe, rezɔly d(ə)lə fɛ:r mu:(i)ri:r. llɔ̃vwa lə ʒu:r sɥivɔ̃ ʃɛrʃe lastrɔlɔg, e ɔrdɔn a se ʒɑ̃, a œ sɪnal dɔne, d(ə)ləʒɔte par la f(ə)ne:tr.]

9 [osito kə l(ə) rwa lə vwa « vu ki pretɑ̃de, ditil, e:tr si sa:ʒ, e savwa:r si parfɛtmɑ̃ la destine dezo:tr, ditmwa œ pø. kel e la vo:tr, e kɔbjɛ də tɑ̃ vuzavezɑ̃-kɔ:r a vi:vr. »]

15 [lastrɔlɔg, ki apɛrɑ̃de kɛlkə dɑ:ʒe, repɔ̃di avekɥn grɑ̃:d pɛ-zɑ̃s dɛspri « ʒə se ma destine, e ʒə sɥi sɛrtɛ d(ə) mu:(i)ri:r trwa ʒu:r(z)avɔ̃ vɔtrə maʒeste. »]

19 [lə rwa, latsy, lwɛ d(ə)lə fɛ:r ʒɔte par la f(ə)ne:tr, fi pɛrɑ̃:dr, o kɔtrɛ:r, lə ply grɑ̃ swɛ də lɥi,

et fit tout ce qui était en son pouvoir 23 e fi tus ki etetā sō puvwa:r
 pour retarder la mort de celui qu'il pur rētarde la mō:r dā səlqi
 devait sitôt suivre. 25 kil dāve sito sūi:vr.]⁵

NOTES. 1. **le faire mourir** = (lit.) 'make him die,' (freely) 'have him put to death.' 2. **envoyer chercher quelqu'un** = (lit.) 'send [someone to] seek somebody'; here **l'astrologue** (accus.). Note that **envoie** is separated from **chercher** by an adverbial clause. 3. In **le faire jeter**, 'have him thrown,' **le** is the direct object not of **faire** but of **jeter**. Explained historically, **jeter** is not an active infinitive with a passive meaning, but is the direct object of the causal verb **faire**; hence interpret, word for word: make throw him through the window. Note the word-order in these examples of **faire** + infinitive. 4. **fit prendre** (lit.) 'made take' etc. See note 3. For all the forms of **faire**, see § 478. 5. We get [ə] or [ə̃], according to our speed or our 'style.'

162. *The Variations of mener, jeter, céder, rêver, etc., as Types*

(The following statements are partly for reference)

a. Mener [m(ə)ne], '(to) lead.' Before every silent **e** the stem-vowel becomes **è** [ɛ]. Hence, for group **A**, **je mène**, **tu mènes**, **il mène**, and **ils mènent**, but **nous menons** [m(ə)nō] and **vous menez** [m(ə)ne]; for **B**, **je menais** etc.; for **C**, **je menai** etc.; for **D**, **je mènerai** etc.; for **E**, **je mènerais** etc. *Gerund*: **en menant** 'by leading' etc. *P.p.*: **mené** etc.

NOTES. In some verbs, as **crever** 'burst,' the complete dropping of the stem-vowel anywhere would make a difficult or unpronounceable consonantal group; hence **il crève** [krɛ:v] and **il crevait** [krəve], *not* [krve].

Like **mener** are conjugated **amener** 'bring' (but *not* by *carrying*); **emmener** [ɛ̃m(ə)ne] 'lead away' ('take away' by *leading*); **achever** 'finish,' 'complete'; **lever** 'raise' (**se lever** = 'rise'); **peser** [pəze] 'weigh'; **semer** [s(ə)me] 'sow,' 'sprinkle' (in *slang*, 'get rid of'), etc.

b. Jeter [zəte], 'throw,' 'throw away,' behaves phonetically like **mener**, but represents its [ɛ] by **ett**; hence **je jetais**, but **je jette**, **je jetterai** [zɛtre], etc. See *d*.

c. Appeler [aple], 'call,' behaves like **jeter**; hence **vous appelez**, but **elles appellent** etc., with **ll** after [ɛ].

d. Verbs with -tt- or -ll-. The following everyday verbs in **-eter** and **-eler** take **tt** or **ll** to indicate that the preceding **e** is [ɛ]:

appeler call	je m'appelle but vous vous appelez (B)
atteler harness	tu attelles but ils attèlerent (C)
chanceler stagger	on chancelle but il chancelait (B)
épeler spell (aloud)	nous épelons but vous épelleriez (E)
niveler level	vous nivelez but nous nivellerons (D)
renouveler renew	ils renouvellent but je renouvelai (C)
feuilleter glance at	je feuillette but tu feuilletas (C)
haleter pant, gasp	tu halettes but nous [nu] haletons (A)
jeter throw	nous jetons but vous jetteriez (E)

e. Verbs with -èl- or -èt-. The following everyday verbs in **-eler** and **-eter** indicate their [ɛ] by **èl** or **èt**:

acheter [aʃte] buy	j'achète but nous achetons (A)
geler [ʒ(ə)le] freeze	il gèle but il gela (C)
marteler [martle] hammer	tu martèles but nous martelions (B)
peler [p(ə)le] peel	ils pèlent but vous peliez (B)

f. Céder [sede], 'yield.' Here **é** under stress becomes **è**. Therefore, in group *A*, **céder** has **cède**, **cèdes**, **cède**, **cèdent**, all with [ɛ]. In groups *D* and *E*, all verbs of this type are written with an **é** as in **je céderai**, **il céderait**, etc.; but this **é**, here slightly stressed (cf. **appellerai**), is nearly as open as in **cède** etc. Like **céder** are conjugated **espérer** [èspere, *nearly* espere] 'hope,' **régler** [reɣle, *nearly* reɣle] 'regulate,' 'settle,' and various other verbs having **é** + consonant(s) + **-er**.

g. Réver [RE:ve], 'dream,' tends to have [ɛ:] in its wholly unstressed stem, but has a very long open stem-vowel under stress; yet everywhere [ɛ:] is safest. Like **réver** is conjugated **mêler** 'mingle' (**se mêler à** = 'mingle in,' 'mingle with'; **se mêler de** = 'meddle with'; etc.).

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Who threw it? (*B and C*.) 2. Were you throwing them?
 3. He throws us back into the water (§ 88, *line 6*). 4. Do you reject me? 5. Shall I harness two horses? 6. Was he staggering?
 7. Does he stagger? 8. What are you reading (§ 475)? 9. I'm glancing at *Le Temps*. 10. Children spell each word aloud. 11. When we

telephone, we often spell out each word. 12. Why do you throw away the things that I buy? 13. When does a dog pant? 14. We pant when we have been running (*couru, A p.p.*) too fast. 15. You hammer too hard (*trop fort*). 16. I was renewing my ideas. 17. I shall bring you to my house when you have finished (*D p.p.*) your work. 18. The book that my friend is finishing (*achever*) is called *l'Appel aux armes*. 19. What is your name? My name is Alphonse. (*Use s'appeler.*) 20. The balloon (*le ballon*) bursts (will burst). 21. How much do you weigh? I weigh too much. 22. I hope to be able to (*espérer pouvoir*) buy that horse. 23. You hope to be able to harness him. 24. You are always dreaming. 25. You were always meddling in (*de*) things that did not concern you (*regarder*). 26. Do I yield? No, sir, I shall never yield.

II. (Based chiefly on § 161.)

1. What is an astrologer? (§§ 129, 147.) 2. An astrologer, sir, is a person who meddles in the affairs of other people (*d'autrui*), who predicts (*prédit*) our destiny, who tells us what's going to happen. 3. If what he has predicted pleases us, we increase his salary (*appointements, salaire*). 4. If, on the other hand, he has predicted something hateful, we send for the poor man and we threaten him. 5. Or, perhaps, we ask him (*dative*) how long he has to live. 6. Then, if he hasn't enough presence of mind to reply as did (*comme, or comme a fait*) the astrologer of [the] King Louis XI, we avenge ourselves by ordering (*en + vb.*) someone to throw him into the street. 7. For my part, I (*Moi, je*) do not claim (*prétends*) to be very wise, but if someone had predicted something disagreeable to me (*dative*) I should not have him (*ferais*) thrown out through the window, for he might (*pourrait*) fall on some gentleman whom that would annoy. 8. I always have (*fais*) the greatest care taken of persons whom I wish to get rid of ('shake'; § 162, *a*), and I do everything [that is] in my power to avoid disorder (*le désordre*).

VINGT-CINQUIÈME LEÇON

GROUPS A-E OF ALLER, ENVOYER, POUVOIR, VOULOIR

(In part for reference)

163. **Aller** [ale], '(to) go,' is regular in groups *B* and *C*; groups *D* and *E* begin in *ir-* (Latin *ire*), and *A* has forms with *v*.

GROUP <i>A</i>	EXAMPLES (<i>Study all</i>)
je vais [usually ve]	Je vais à [usually veza] Londres (London)
tu vas [va]	Tu vas acheter [vazaʃte] ces choses-là ?
on va [va]	Comment ça va-t-il ? Cela va très mal
nous allons [nuzalɔ]	Nous allons à merveille (. . . finely)
vous allez [vuzale]	Vous allez être malade You're going to be ill
elles vont [vɔ]	Ils y vont demain They go there to-morrow

NOTE 1. **Vais-je** [ve:ʒ] is less frequent than **Est-ce que je vais**. (**Je**) **vas** is plebeian.

NOTE 2. **Il va pleuvoir** 'It's going to rain' and **Il allait pleuvoir** 'It was going to rain' exemplify everyday usage. Colloquially, the type **quand elle va être ici** sometimes replaces the type **quand elle sera ici** (cf. § 86, *b*).

B: **j'allais** 'I was going' etc. (§ 60). *C*: **j'allai** 'I went' etc. (§ 64). *D*: **j'irai** 'I shall go' etc. (§ 84). *E*: **j'irais** 'I should go' etc. (§ 91).

NOTE 3. Save in a very few locutions (e.g. **Il y irait de ma vie** = 'My life would be at stake'), no form of *D* or *E* may follow *y*. Hence **J'y vais** is correct, but **J'y irai** (or **y irais** etc.) is not.

Gerund: **en allant** 'by going,' 'in going,' 'while going,' etc.

Auxiliary always **être**. See §§ 73 and 112.

a. **S'en aller** [sānale] = '(to) go away.'

NOTES. 'I'm going' = 'I'm going away' = **Je m'en vais**, not **Je vais**. In folk-speech, and even in more literary colloquial French, **en aller** is commonly used as a single word, so that we may both hear and read, e.g., **Je me serais en allé** 'I should have gone away,' instead of **Je m'en serais allé**.

164. **Envoyer** [āvwaje], '(to) send,' is conjugated like **employer** (§ 158), except in *D* and *E*, where it has **j'enverrai** [āvɛre], **j'enverrais** [āvɛrɛ], etc.

165. Pouvoir [puvwa:r], 'can,' 'could,' 'may,' 'might,' '(to) be able,' has *ou* in groups *A-E* wherever the stem is *not* stressed; otherwise *eu*, and in one case *ui* (*je puis*):

GROUP <i>A</i>	EXAMPLES (<i>Study all</i>)
<i>je peux</i> [pø]	<i>Je peux y [pøzi] aller. Je ne peux (pas) y aller</i>
<i>or je puis</i> [pɥi]	<i>En quoi puis-je [pɥi:ʒ] leur être utile ?</i>
<i>tu peux</i> [pø]	<i>Tu peux en [pøzd] prendre deux You may take two</i>
<i>elle peut</i> [pø]	<i>Cela peut-il être vrai ? Est-ce que ça peut être vrai ?</i>
<i>nous pouvons</i> [puvɔ̃]	<i>Nous pouvons en [puvɔ̃zd] parler We can speak of it</i>
<i>vous pouvez</i> [puve]	<i>Vous pouvez écrire [puvezekri:r]. Nous ne pouvons pas</i>
<i>elles peuvent</i> [pø:v]	<i>Elles peuvent y [pø:vti] entrer</i>

I can, I may, etc. *Peux-je* does not exist; *je puis* is frequent.

NOTE 1. After *pouvoir* the reënforcing negative adverb *pas* is commonly not required. Observe that *pouvoir* (like 'may,' 'might,' 'can,' 'could') takes a pure infinitive: *Elles ont pu y entrer*.

B: je pouvais [puve], 'I could,' 'I was able to,' etc. See § 60.

NOTE 2. In view of the defectiveness of 'can' ('could'), 'may' ('might'), and the non-existence of 'was (were) being able to,' note particularly §§ 62, 63, 67. This group expresses a continued or habitual power to do this or that: *Il pouvait partir à n'importe quel moment* = 'He could (was in a position to) leave at any moment' (*but perhaps he did not leave*). See example under group *C*, and note that our 'could' may be used also in translating forms from group *E*.

C: je pus [py], *tu pus* [py], *il put* [py], *nous pûmes* [pym], *vous pûtes* [pyt], *ils purent* [py:r], 'I could' etc. Illustrate *liaison* completely; thus, *je pus aller* [pyzale], *elles purent y* [py:rti] *envoyer, arriver*, etc.

Note the \wedge of *pûmes* and *pûtes*. *All* verbs having these endings (-us, -ut, etc.) have -ûmes and -ûtes. Note, e.g., *voulûmes* and *voulûtes* in *C*.

Note how the tense-value of this group contrasts with that of group *B*: *Aussitôt que nous lui parlâmes français il put nous répondre* = 'As soon as we spoke French to him he could answer us.' (There was a definite moment at which he could answer us.) See the note on group *B* and see § 65.

D: je pourrai [pure], 'I shall be able' etc. See § 84 and complete this group in connection with all group *A*; thus, *Si je peux . . . tu pourras . . .*

E: je pourrais [pure], 'I should be able to,' 'I could,' 'I might,' etc. See the note under *B* (end). See also § 91 and complete group *E*.

à tout moment
à l'instant

a. (Remark on the compound groups of **pouvoir**.) As our verbs 'can' and 'may' have no past participles, the value of **pu** [py], p. p. of **pouvoir**, can be most clearly illustrated by using 'be able' as the auxiliary verb. Examples:

A p. p.: **J'ai pu les vendre** 'I have been able to sell them' (or 'I could sell them,' *at a definite moment*). Also (sometimes ambiguously), 'Perhaps I have sold them.' See § 71.

B p. p.: **Elle avait pu l'acheter** 'She had been able to buy it.' Also (sometimes ambiguously), 'Perhaps she had bought it.'

C p. p.: **Dès que nous eûmes pu la voir . . .** 'As soon as we had been able to see her . . .' See § 105, *b*.

D p. p.: **Quand vous aurez pu l'achever . . .** 'When you (shall) have been able to finish it . . .' See § 87.

E p. p.: **Aurait-elle pu le dire?** 'Would she have been able to say it?' (or 'Could she have said it?' or 'Might she have said it?') Note this correspondence carefully.

166. Vouloir [vulwa:R], '(to) wish (to)' etc., has **ou** in its unstressed stem; elsewhere **eu**, throughout groups *A-E*:

GROUP A

EXAMPLES (*Study all*)

je veux [vø]	Je veux apprendre [vøzaprã:dr] I wish to learn
tu veux [vø]	Tu veux y [vøzi] aller? You wish to go there?
on veut [vø]	Elle pourrait apprendre, mais elle ne veut pas
nous voulons [vulõ]	Nous voulons achever [vulõza[ve] ce travail
vous voulez [vule]	Que voulez-vous dire? What do you mean?
elles veulent [vø:il]	Ils veulent annoncer [vøltãõse] quelque chose

I wish (to) etc. **Veux-je** is not used interrogatively in colloquial French.

B: **je voulais** [vule] 'I wished' ('I was wishing') etc. See § 60 and complete this group, with the complements used to illustrate group *A*.

C: **je voulus** [vuly] 'I wished' (*at a definite moment*) etc. Conjugated precisely like **je pus** etc. See § 165, *C*, and the notes under both *B* and *C* of **pouvoir**, § 165.

D: **je voudrai** [vudre] 'I shall wish' etc. See § 84 and complete this group: **Je partirai quand je voudrai**.

E: **je voudrais** [vudre] 'I should wish (or like)' etc. See § 91 and complete this group, borrowing a complement from §§ 101 and 102, or from § 165 (top).

a. (Remark on the compound groups of **vouloir**.) As our verb 'will' is defective, the tense-values of **j'ai voulu**, **j'avais voulu**, **j'eus voulu**, **j'aurai voulu**, and **j'aurais voulu** can be realized best by using 'wished' or 'liked' or 'desired,' as past participles.

EXERCISES

I. **Aller et s'en aller** (§ 163). Exercice oral.

II. Vary the following model so as to use all *B* and all *E*: **Si tu allais à Rouen, nous irions à Paris** (or **Dieppe, Nice, Monaco, au Havre**, etc.). Read aloud what you have written.

III. **Envoyer** (§ 164). 1. The king sent for his astrologer (§ 161). 2. Why did (do) kings send for their astrologers? 3. When would you send for yours, if you had one? (*Use en.*) 4. Why do we send for anything? (§ 138, *Note.*) 5. Have you sent for your letters to-day? 6. If you sent your letters this evening, would they arrive to-morrow? 7. Is that the newspaper that you're sending (are going to send) to your brother? 8. No, I shall send him *Le Figaro*.

IV. **Pouvoir et vouloir** (§§ 165-166). Questionnaire.

V. In the examples under *A p.p.* to *E p.p.* of **pouvoir** (§ 165) substitute **voulu** and note whether a reasonable combination results in each case.

VI. 1. He's so disagreeable! He will not come (You . . . *etc.*). 2. I don't like your friend and I will not speak to him. 3. Do I wish to come? Rather, Can I come? 4. I could have come yesterday, but I couldn't leave my work to-day. When I can see you I will send you [a] word. 5. Come (**Venez**) when you please (**vouloir**), but I should like to know at what time (**heure**) you are going to arrive. 6. Can you (Could you) arrive before six o'clock in the evening? 7. We should like to show you something that you have always wished to see. 8. If you wish to come you can (*A or D*) come. 9. What is the proverb? **Vouloir, c'est pouvoir!**

VINGT-SIXIÈME LEÇON

GROUPS A-E OF MOURIR, MOUVOIR, PLEUVOIR. AUCUN-E ETC.

(In part for reference)

167. Mourir [muri:R], '(to) die,' like pouvoir and vouloir, has eu in groups A-E whenever the stem is stressed; otherwise ou :

GROUP A

EXAMPLES (*Study all*)

je meurs [mœ:r]	Si je ne meurs pas aujourd'hui, je mourrai demain
tu meurs [mœ:r]	Tu meurs en [mœ:r(z)ā] France
elle meurt [mœ:r]	Il meurt de te voir He's dying to see you
nous mourons [murɔ̃]	Nous mourons avec [murɔ̃(z)avek] honneur
vous mourez [mure]	Vous mourez [z] honnêtement (. . . respectfully)
elles meurent [mœ:r]	Elles meurent ambitieuses [mœ:r(t)ābisjœ:z]

NOTE. Meurt-il (-elle, -on), also meurent-ils (-elles), have [t]; otherwise, meurt, meurent (and meurs) are linked colloquially with their r [R]; meurs-je does not occur.

B: je mourais [mure] 'I was dying' etc. See § 60.

C: je mourus (??) [mury] 'I died' (??) etc. (Rare except in 3d person!) See § 165, C, and complete this group, using ne . . . pas.

D: je mourrai [murre] 'I shall die' etc. See § 84 and complete D interrogatively, noting its [RR].

E: je mourrais [murre] 'I should die' etc. See §§ 91 and 95, and complete E, following this model: Je ne mourrais pas de honte si je mourais sans un sou (or the like). Note carefully the *graphic* and the *phonetic* difference between the B forms and the E forms.

REMARK. In mourrais etc. [RR] has been kept to avoid confusions of mourrais (E) with mourais (B) etc. We hear only one [R] in enverrais and enverrai (§ 164). Naturally, mourrai agrees with mourrais.

Gerund: en mourant 'in dying' etc. *Verbal adj.*: mourant-e 'dying.'

Compound groups always with être + mort-e: Elle était morte = 'She had died' or 'She was dead' — the difference is slight.

a. Se mourir (possible in A and B, very rare in D and E) generally expresses sympathy, pathos. Not colloquial.

168. **Mouvoir** [muvwa:r], '(to) move,' shows the same shift as **mourir** from **ou** to **eu**. Hence, in group *A*, **je meus** [mø] but **nous mouvons** etc.

B: **je mouvais** etc. *C*: **je mus** [my] etc., nothing but **m** being left of the stem. (See § 165, *C*.) *D*: **je mouvrai** etc. *E*: **je mouvrais** etc. *Gerund*: **en mouvant** 'in moving' etc. *Verbal adj.*: **mouvant-e** 'moving.' *P.p.*: **mû**, but **mue** without $\hat{}$.

NOTE. No form of **mouvoir** is in common use: '(to) move forward' = **avancer**, '(to) move backward' = **reculer** or **retirer**, '(to) move upward' = **lever** or **soulever** or **hausser**, etc., '(to) move downward' = **baisser** or **descendre**, etc., '(to) move away' = **éloigner**, '(to) move nearer' = **approcher**, etc. Use also **changer quelque chose (qqch.) de place**. '(To) move into' (e.g. a house) = **emménager**; '(to) move' (out of a house) = **déménager**; etc.

a. **Émouvoir**, '(to) stir' (the emotions), is frequent: **Cela émeut** ('That stirs [one]'). **Ému** has no $\hat{}$.

b. **Promouvoir**, '(to) promote' (a person), has only the infinitive and the past participle **promu-e** (no $\hat{}$).

169. **Pleuvoir** [plœvwa:r], '(to) rain,' usually impersonal, has **eu** throughout. Occasionally it has a definite subject: **Les coups pleuvaient** ('Blows were raining,' 'flying'). Group *A*: **il pleut** [i(l) plø] 'it's raining'; 3d pl. **pleuvent** [plœ:v]. *B*: **il pleuvait** 'it was raining.' *C*: **il plut** [ply] 'it rained' (**plaire**, 'please,' also gives **il plut**). *D*: **il pleuvra** [plœ:vra] 'it will rain.' *E*: **il pleuvrait** 'it would rain.' *Gerund*: **en pleuvant**. *P.p.*: **plu** (inv.): **il avait plu** 'it had rained.'

Some Indefinite Pronouns and Indefinite Adjectives

170. **Forms and Functions.** Certain forms occur only as pronouns; e.g. **personne**, m., 'nobody' (to be distinguished from **une personne** 'a person'), **rien**, m., 'nothing.' Others, either as pronouns or as adjectives; e.g. **autre-s** 'other-s,' **tout** 'all,' etc. Others, only as adjectives; e.g. **certain-e** (in the singular), and **quelque-s** 'some,' 'any,' 'a few.'

a. Examples of **aucun-e**, **chacun-e**, **plusieurs** (pron. or adj.), and **tout-e**. (Further details in §§ 171-186.)

Tu n'as aucune raison de le croire, aucun droit de le dire.	1	You have no reason to believe it, no right to say it.
J'ai plusieurs raisons et chacune de mes raisons est bonne.	2	I have several reasons and each of my reasons is good.
Tout homme a certains droits.	3	Every man has certain rights.

b. **Aucun**, m., **aucune**, f., has no plural in living French; an author might *write*, e.g., **Je n'ose faire aucuns projets** [okœ proʒe] 'I daren't make any plans,' but *not* **Je n'ai aucuns amis** (for 'no friends') nor **Je n'ose acheter aucuns chevaux** (for 'no horses'), for either of these groups would reveal that the plural is obsolete and that **aucuns projets** is correct only for the eye.

c. As a pronoun, **aucun-e** must have a definite antecedent or complement:

Vos livres ? Je n'en ai aucun.	4	Your books? I haven't any of them.
Tu as quelque excuse ? Aucune.	5	You have some excuse? None.
Aucun de nos amis n'est là.	6	None of our friends is there.

d. **Aucun-e** differs from **pas de** in that it cannot be quantitative: 'I have no money' = **Je n'ai pas d'argent**, *not* **Je n'ai aucun argent**. That is, **aucun-e** implies a possibility of contradicting with **plusieurs**. Hence, 'No, he has no wife' = **Non, il n'a pas de femme**, *not* **Non, il n'a aucune femme**; but **Il n'y a aucune femme comme la sienne** (or **Il n'y a pas de femme comme la sienne**) would be correct.

e. After **si** ('if'), in questions, and in clauses following negated verbs, **aucun-e** is used occasionally, with the meaning 'any':

Si vous aviez aucun espoir . . .	7	If you had any hope—
Avez-vous aucun espoir ?	8	Have you any hope?
Je ne crois pas qu'il trompe aucun de ses amis.	9	I don't believe that he deceives any of his friends.

NOTES. Example 7 implies 'no hope.' Example 8 implies a vague chance (*quelque* might seem more positive). In example 9 **aucun** is emphatic and is separated from **pas** by **que** (cf. c-d).

EXERCISES

I. Using *d'eux* and *d'elles* ('of them'), or *d'entre eux* and *d'entre elles* (same meaning), translate:

1. None of them will die. 2. None of them had died. 3. I've read those stories, but none of them has moved me. 4. No story moves me if it is not true. 5. Do you buy any books now? 6. If I had any money, I should buy some (*simply en + vb.*), but I haven't any. 7. If I had any hope of making any (*simply d'en + infin.*), the case would be different (§ 157, line 12; use *autrement*). 8. What hope have I? None, and I don't dare to make any plans. 9. Every plan has some defect (*défaut*). 10. None of the plans that I make is good.

II. *Causerie sur les saisons et le temps. Les §§ 168-170 en fourniront le vocabulaire; voir aussi les vers suivants:*

Cadet Rousselle¹ a trois maisons
 Qui n'ont ni poutres ni chevrons.
 C'est pour loger les hirondelles.
 Que direz-vous d'Cadet Rousselle?
 Ah! ah! ah! oui vraiment,
 Cadet Rousselle est bon enfant.

Cadet Rousselle a trois habits,
 Deux jaunes, l'autre en papier gris;
 Il met celui-là quand il gèle,
 Ou quand il pleut et quand il grêle.
 Ah! ah! ah! oui vraiment,
 Cadet Rousselle est bon enfant.

Etc.

¹ On trouvera huit strophes de cette chanson dans le *Grand Dictionnaire universel* de Larousse (voir Cadet Rousselle), dans l'anthologie de P. Vignault et ailleurs.

Handwritten notes:
 poutres - wooden
 chevrons - rafters
 hirondelles - swallows
 papier gris - grey paper

VINGT-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED)

171. *Chaque* (inv.), 'each,' 'every,' individualizes, like its pronominal form *chacun-e*, and neither can be normally negated:

<p><i>Chaque petit garçon, chaque petite fille, offre quelque chose, et ils reçoivent, chacun et chacune, quelque cadeau.</i></p>	<p>1 Each (every) little boy, each (every) little girl, offers something, and each (little boy and girl) receives some gift.</p>
---	--

NOTE. Popularly, *chaque* may replace *chacun-e*, if final: *Vous aurez ces pêches (f.) à quatre sous chaque* 'I'll let you have these peaches for four sous apiece.'

172. Possessives with *Chacun-e*. In apposition with *nous, vous, ils, elles*, the pronoun *chacun-e* may be followed by *notre, votre, leur*, etc., indicating more than one possessor:

<p><i>Nous avons chacun-e nos amis intimes (not ses amis).</i></p> <p><i>Vous êtes entrés chacun de votre côté (not son côté).</i></p>	<p>1 We have, each of us, our close friends.</p> <p>2 Each of you entered from his (rather than your) own side.</p>
--	---

REMARKS. After *ils* or *elles*, either *leur-s* or *son (sa, ses)* may follow *chacun-e*, because here there is at least an agreement as to person: *Elles ont chacune leur (or sa) raison d'agir ainsi* 'Each of them (f.) has her reason for acting thus.' *Vous êtes entrés chacun de son côté* (example 2) is possible, but should be avoided. *Remettez donc ces choses chacune à sa place*, 'Put back these things, then, each in its place,' is considered better French than . . . *à leur place*. (Here *chacune* is not parenthetical.)

NOTE. *Chacun* and *chacune* may be used together if it is necessary to be so specific, but *chacun* frequently covers both genders: *Chacun de nous a certains devoirs* 'Each of us [women as well as men] has certain duties.'

173. *Quelque-s*, 'some,' 'any,' has these pronominal forms: *quelqu'un* [kelkœ̃] m., *quelqu'une* [kelkyn] f.; pl. *quelques-uns* [kelkœ̃zœ̃] m., *quelques-unes* [kelkœ̃zyn] f. Examples:

- Quelque étranger a observé que 1 Some foreigner has observed
 le français a trop de règles. J'ai that French has too many rules.
 lu ça quelque part. I've read that somewhere.
 Quelque chose vaut mieux que 2 Something is better than nothing,
 rien, mais quoi ? but what ?
 Si j'achète des (or quelques) ru- 3 If I buy any (some) ribbons I
 bans, j'aurai dépensé les quelques shall have spent the few francs
 francs qui me restent. that I have left.

NOTES. Distinguish between *quelques poissons* 'some fish' (pl.) and *du poisson* (quantity rather than number). Observe that *un* (adj.) and *des* are normally never stressed: 'I have *some* bread, but not much' = e.g. *J'ai un peu de pain (quelque pain), mais pas beaucoup*. Again, 'Some dogs like some cats' = e.g. *Il y a quelques (certains) chiens qui aiment certains chats* etc. *Des chiens aiment des chats* would be quite un-French. See § 311.

- Quelqu'un m'a parlé de lui. 4 Someone has spoken to me of him.
 Quelques-unes de ces dames 5 Some of (A few of) those ladies
 montraient du talent, d'autres n'en showed talent, others had none
 avaient pas du tout. at all.

REMARK. *Quelqu'un* is generally used instead of *quelqu'une* when the feminine might seem too precise: *Monsieur, quelqu'un vous attend dans le salon* 'Someone is waiting for you, sir, in the drawing-room.' — *Qui ? — Une dame*.

174. *Certain-s*, m., *certaine-s*, f., varies in meaning according to its position: (*une*) *certaine chose* = 'a certain thing' (not yet specified); *une chose certaine* = 'a sure thing.' Other examples:

- J'ai certaine-s raison-s de les 1 I have a certain reason (certain
 croire. reasons) for believing them.
 (Un-e)certain-e Allemand-e m'en 2 A certain German (*m. and f.*)
 avait convaincu. had convinced me of it.
 Certain(e)s Allemand(e)s en ont 3 Certain Germans (*m. and f.*)
 trop ri. have laughed about it too much.

NOTE. In attenuations *un-e* is not omitted: *Une dame d'un certain âge* [sertend₃] 'a lady no longer young,' *un mur d'une certaine hauteur* 'a fairly high wall,' etc.

REMARK. The partitive group *de certain(e)s*, as in *Il y a de certaines gens* 'There are certain people,' is archaic or rare.

175. **Quelconque-s** (purely adjectival) may follow a singular or a plural noun :

- Prenez deux lignes quelconques.** 1 Take any two lines.
C'est un homme (une femme) quelconque. 2 He (She) is nobody in particular (an average person, *anybody*).

176. **Quiconque** 'who(so)ever,' 'whom(so)ever,' always masculine singular, may be a subject or an object :

- Quiconque enfreindra cette loi sera sévèrement puni.** 1 Whoever shall infringe (break) this law will be severely punished.
La loi punit quiconque suscite des révoltes. 2 The law punishes who(so)ever stirs up revolts.
Je le dirai à quiconque vous voudrez. 3 I will say it to anyone you please (to whomever you wish).

EXERCISES

(See especially §§ 170-176. Translate everything)

I. 1. Why, in every grammar, does one find so many examples?
 2. What other means is there of showing (*infin.*) how a given language (§ 161, *line 7*, and § 175) is spoken (*reflex.*) and how it is written (*s'écrit*)? 3. If each of us has understood what has been explained in this lesson and in the one that precedes it, we shall be able to use correctly most of the forms that we have studied. 4. If some of the sentences in this exercise should seem (§ 99) too difficult, look again and you will find what is needed.

II. 1. What are the forms that have been explained in the twenty-sixth lesson and in this? 2. They are . . . 3. How does one say in French, 'Everyone has studied these pages with care'? 4. How would one say, 'All the examples show us how one should (*il faut*) employ certain words and certain constructions'? 5. Has each of us observed when it is necessary to use *ne* with **aucun** and **aucune**? 6. I have read somewhere, and many people have said, that French is an easy subject (*adj. last*). 7. If anyone (*not aucun*) said that to me (If it were to me that one said that), I should be tempted to reply like a certain Englishman: 'Sir, can you speak it and write it correctly?' 8. Some foreigners learn to (**apprennent à**) speak

French like Frenchmen, but most of them (**la plupart**) may study it for years (**pendant des années**) without ever learning (*infin.*) to pronounce a syllable [of it (**à en**)] correctly. 9. To a foreigner many of the sounds of French may seem to resemble those of his own (**propre**) language, but the truth is that no sound is quite the same. 10. Some of us learn very quickly what our mistakes are (what are our mistakes); others never. 11. Take any two persons. Each of them would like to learn to speak French, to speak it correctly. Which of them has the most chances of succeeding? the one who thinks French easy? or the one who knows that it is as difficult to learn to speak it correctly as to play any musical instrument correctly (**jouer de + instrument de musique**)?

III. 1. All the little boys and all the little girls offer something and each of them receives (*two ways, with reçoit and reçoivent*) some gift. 2. If you put each of these books back in its place (*two ways*), none of them will be lost. 3. Repeat that to whomever you please. 4. How does the law punish who(so)ever stirs up revolts? 5. Whoever explains (*D*) these rules correctly shall have a reward.

IV. Correct the following mistakes :

1. Je n'ai aucun vin. 2. Aucune d'elles nous voit. 3. Tout personne est libre de croire qu'il voudra. 4. Des hommes aiment le vin et des hommes préfèrent l'eau. 5. Aucuns de ces hommes n'ont tort.

V. C'est encore Cadet Rousselle qui viendra à la rescousse (§§ 171-175):

Cadet Rousselle a trois beaux yeux,
L'un r'garde à Caen, l'autre à Bayeux ;
Comme il n'a pas la vue bien nette,
Le troisième c'est sa lorgnette.
(Refrain.)

Cadet Rousselle a trois cheveux,
Deux pour la face, un pour la queue ;
Et quand il sort, avec adresse
Il les met tous les trois en tresse.
(Refrain.)

VINGT-HUITIÈME LEÇON

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED)

(Largely in review)

177. **Différent(e)s, divers(es)**; 'several,' 'sundry,' 'various,' are always plural, vary only to agree in gender, always precede as vaguely numerical adjectives, and follow **de** only when it is truly prepositional, as in **parler de différentes affaires, de diverses entreprises**. So **plusieurs** (inv.), adjective² or pronoun (**plusieurs affaires, plusieurs d'entre elles**).

a. Maint (generally archaic) has four forms: **maint homme** [mē:tɔm] 'many a man,' **mainte-s fois** [mē:t fwa] 'many a time,' **maints amis** [mē:zami], **en maintes occasions** [mē:tzokazjɔ] 'upon many an occasion,' etc. As a pronoun, **maint** is obsolete.

REMARK. Of these forms, **plusieurs** is the most colloquial.

178. **Autre-s**, 'other' ('others'), often becomes **aut'** as a proclitic adjective (**l'aut' fois** [lot fwa]), but in careful speech is [otr], or [o:tr] if stressed. **Autres** is often used to mark groups: **nous (vous) autres**.

Vous (Nous) autres artistes (in folk-speech, even eux or elles autres).	1	You (We) artists (<i>contrasted with other groups</i>).
(Dites ça) A d'autres !	2	Tell that to the marines!
En a-t-elle un autre (une autre, d'autres, quelque autre, etc.).	3	Has she another (<i>m. and f.; others, some other, etc.</i>).
Voici mon seul crayon et ma seule plume, je n'en ai pas d'autres.	4	Here is my only pencil and my only pen; I have no others.
Aucun autre ne l'aurait fait.	5	No other would have done it.
D'autres n'en parlent jamais.	6	Others never speak of it.
Si,¹ beaucoup d'autres en parlent.	7	Yes, many others speak of it.
Autre chose est de le croire, autre chose est de le dire.	8	To believe it is one thing, to say it is another.

a. Autre usually **Modified**. As a pronoun (and, generally, as an adjective), **autre-s** must be preceded by some adjective, as **un, une**,

¹ Si replaces **oui** in contradictions of negative statements.

le, la, etc., or by *de* (*d'*). The locutions *de temps à autre* 'from time to time' (also *de temps en temps*), *de façon ou d'autre* 'somehow or other' (no article), and the like, are exceptional.

b. The Type l'un-e et l'autre, les uns et les autres, etc. Examples :

Je les approuve, l'un (l'une) et l'autre. Empêchez l'un ou l'autre de venir. Je ne les aime pas, ni l'une ni l'autre (ni les unes ni les autres).	9	I approve both. Prevent one or the other from coming. I don't like either of them. I don't like any of them.
---	---	--

c. Autre as an Adjective. The following examples further illustrate the adjective :

Cherchez un autre garçon !	10	Get another waiter !
Il a (n'a pas) d'autres enfants.	11	He has (no) other children.
Ma raison est tout autre que la sienne. (Ses raisons sont tout autres que les miennes.)	12	My reason is quite different from his. (His reasons are quite different from mine.)
J'ai parcouru l'un et l'autre ouvrage.	13	I have run through (glanced at) both works.

QUERY. Why, in the following living phrases, does *autre* illustrate archaic syntax (§ 122, Notes)? — *Autres temps, autres mœurs* 'Other times, other customs'; *C'est cela, pas autre chose* 'That's it, nothing else.' *Autrefois* = 'formerly' (cf. *Une autre fois je le ferai* 'Another time I'll do it').

REMARK. Examples 1-13 (but not 8 and 12) show that *autre* must be preceded by some other adjective, or by *de*, in normal groups.

d. Autres follows numerals: *les six autres*.

NOTE. *Bien d'autres* = *beaucoup d'autres*. Here *bien* is an adverb, as in *bien laid* 'very ugly.'

e. Encore un as an Adjective. When 'another' means 'one more,' French requires *encore un* (une) :

Donnez-moi un autre verre, celui-ci est sale.	14	Give me another glass, this (one) is dirty.
But, Donnez-moi encore un verre, il m'en faut trois.	15	Give me another (an additional) glass. I need three.

For the plural, *encore des verres*; but *d'autres verres* if *different* glasses are asked for. *Au bout de six autres années* = 'At the end of six years more.'

179. *Même-s* [mɛ(:)m] 'same.' Examples 1 and 2 need no comment:

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| Voici la même intrigue, les mêmes idées, oui, les mêmes que dans l'autre livre. | 1 | Here is the same plot, the same ideas; yes, the same as in the other book. |
| Tu as les mêmes amies que moi. | 2 | You have the same friends as I. |
| Ces deux œuvres se confondent dans une même personnalité. | 3 | These two works blend in one and the same personality. |

NOTE. Similarly, *C'est une seule et même idée*. The definite article is sometimes omitted: *Pour eux, même réponse* 'For them, (the) same reply.'

a. Following a noun, *même* (sometimes *mêmes*) means '. . . self', '. . . selves':

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| Elle est la vertu même, mais la vertu même ne le regarde pas (mais les vertus mêmes ne le regardent pas). | 4 | She is virtue itself, but virtue itself does not concern him (but the virtues themselves do not concern him). |
|---|---|---|

REMARKS. In example 4 *même-s* is more or less adverbial, as in *Je partirai aujourd'hui même* 'I shall leave this very day.' Hence French authors often write *même* where we might expect *mêmes*, as e.g. in *Les étrangers même* (or *mêmes*) *le savent* = *Même les étrangers le savent* = 'Even foreigners (or Foreigners, even) know it.' *C'est cela même* = '*That's it*' (That is just what I mean).

On the type *ceux-là même(s) qui* see § 82, Note 1.

Même-s may be joined to *moi, toi*, etc.: *moi-même, eux-mêmes, soi-même* ('oneself'), etc. *Même* has the same value in *nos amis même* as in *nous-mêmes*.

Ça revient au même (= *à la même chose*) 'That amounts to the same' is exceptional; likewise other groups in which *même* stands alone.

180. *Quelque chose de bon* 'something good.' Pronouns and pronominal adverbs require *de* before adjectives by which they are qualified: *quelque chose de bon* 'something good,' *rien de certain* 'nothing certain.' If the antecedent is truly masculine or feminine, the adjective must agree with it in gender and in number: *quelques-uns de très jolis, quelques-unes de très jolies* 'some very pretty ones,' *quelqu'un de moins beau* 'someone less good-looking,' *quelqu'une de bien belle* 'somebody very beautiful.'

EXERCISES

I. *To be written.* 1. I have begun various enterprises which I should like to see succeed, and if some of them succeeded, so much the better for me. 2. Unfortunately (**Malheureusement**), several of my best plans have already failed (**échouer**) because certain things have prevented me from getting money enough, etc. 3. Upon many and many an occasion, also, I have attempted (**essayer**) to do something too difficult, something that others, wiser than I, would never have attempted. 4. Some of us never attempt to do what others attempt but never finish (**achever**). 5. That amounts to the same thing, doesn't it? 6. You know (**connaissez**) Girard. Girard is somebody. 7. Well (**Eh bien**), he is wise. 8. When he undertakes (**entreprendre**) anything whatever, he doesn't talk about it. 9. Formerly, he would talk about everything he was going to do, to everyone, to whoever wished to listen to him. 10. Now, even his friends (*two ways*), even those who (*two ways*) know him best, do not meddle (§ 162, *g*) in his affairs. 11. Other times, other customs! 12. When G. has undertaken (**entrepris**) anything, he finishes it all by himself (§ 88). 13. Nobody knows what he is doing. Yes, his wife knows, sometimes; no one else (**personne d'autre**). 14. Our friend X is quite different from G. (**ressembler à, neg.**). He doesn't hide his plans. 15. 'What you know (**savoir**),' says he, 'nothing else.' 16. He has had some of the same ideas as G., but G. succeeds where X fails.

II. *Petit Questionnaire* (oral). 1. Si un garçon de restaurant vous offrait un verre sale, ou bien des verres trop petits, que lui diriez-vous? 2. Si . . . , je lui dirais: « Garçon, . . . » 3. Au cas où il n'y aurait pas assez de fourchettes (*f.*, 'forks'), que faudrait-il lui dire? 4. Et que dirait ce garçon si son patron ('boss,' 'employer') l'embêtait trop? 5. Comment un Français traduirait-il ceci?—'Jekyll and Hyde, whom everyone had taken (**pris**) for two different men (*adj. follows*), were one and the same person.' 6. Again: 'Even those (The very people) who repeat those things know that they aren't true.' 7. 'That's just it; the very children know that none of these stories is true, but there are (**il y en a**) some very funny ones.'

VINGT-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

TEL, TOUT, UN, NUL, PERSONNE, RIEN

181. *Un tel* etc. Preceding nouns, **un tel**, **une telle**, **de tels** (m.), **de telles** (f.), are the usual forms :

Un tel homme ne réussit nulle part, et personne n'emploie de telles méthodes (accusative). 1 Such a man doesn't succeed anywhere, and nobody employs such methods.

REMARK. In colloquial French, **un tel**, **une telle**, **de tels**, **de telles**, have been largely displaced by various other expressions: **une femme comme elle** (i.e. **une telle femme**), **un homme de cette espèce** 'a man of that kind' (i.e. **un tel homme**), **des méthodes comme celles-là** (i.e. **de telles méthodes**), etc.

a. *Tel . . . tel . . .* In correlations, **un**, **une**, **de**, are omitted when *tel* precedes:

Tel valet, tel maître. 2 Like master, like man.

Vous avez pris telles résolutions que vous avez voulues. 3 You have made such resolutions as you have desired.

b. *Tel que . . .* Usually a correlation (or comparison) makes *tel* follow its noun :

Une femme telle que Françoise, et des raisons telles que les siennes ne convaincront jamais personne. 4 A woman such as Frances, and reasons such as hers, will never convince anyone.

NOTE 1. *Tel* commonly introduces clauses of result: **Sa peur était telle que . . .** (**Telle était sa peur que . . .**) 'His fear was such that . . . (Such was his fear that . . .)', and elliptically, **Il procédait par des questions telles!** 'He proceeded by *such* questions!'

NOTE 2. Meaning 'such and such (a, an),' *tel* stands alone. See § 157, lines 3-4.

182. **Tout**, 'all,' 'every,' etc., has four written forms which have four sounds: [tu], [tut], [tuts], [tu(:)s]. Examples :

tout le temps	all the time [tu]	toute la vie	all (the) life [tut]
tout un monde	a whole world [tut]	toute âme	every soul [tut]
de tous les deux	of both [tu]	à toutes les dix	to all ten [tut]

NOTES. As a *pronoun*, **tous** is [tu(:s)]; **toutes** (f.) is [tut(s)]: **Tous (Toutes) viendront** 'All will come'; or **Ils viendront tous**, etc.; or **Toutes avaient peur** 'All were afraid,' etc. In some cases, linking is avoided. Exceptionally (as an adjective), **tous** is [tu'z]: **à tous égards** 'in all respects'; more normally, **à tous les égards**.

a. **Tout, tous** (no t!), etc., show approximately the same constructions as 'all' and 'every'; *not* as 'whole': **tout le (ce, mon, un) problème** 'all the (this, my, a) problem'; **tout homme** 'every man,' **toute femme** 'every woman,' **tout Paris** 'all Paris,' **toute Rome** 'all Rome.'

b. **Additional Illustrations of Tout.** In numerous groups, **tous** and **toutes** may immediately precede a noun: **de tous côtés** 'from (on) all sides,' **de toutes parts** 'from all sides'; also **de toutes sortes** 'of all kinds,' but hardly **de toutes espèces** (note the vowel); rather **de toute espèce** 'of every kind,' or **de toutes les espèces**. Note **tous (toutes) les deux** 'both,' . . . **trois** 'all three,' etc.; possibly without **les** if 'together' is meant. Usually below **dix**, and always above, **les** is used.

c. *Further Details as to tout, toute(s), and tous*

1. Note, also, **toujours** (formerly **tous jours**) 'always,' but **tous les jours** 'every day'; **toutefois** (formerly **toutes fois**) 'yet,' 'however,' but **toutes les fois (que)** 'every time (that).'

2. Meaning 'every,' **tout (toute)** is more or less restricted: **Il vient à toute heure** (or . . . **à toutes les heures**) 'He comes at any hour (. . . at all hours),' but not . . . **toute nuit** 'every night.'

3. **Tous les (toutes les) deux**, . . . **trois**, etc. may express alternation: **tous les deux jours** 'every other day,' **tous les trois ans** 'every third year,' **toutes les quatre minutes** 'every four minutes,' **toutes les cinq secondes** 'every fifth second,' etc.

4. As a neuter pronoun, **tout** normally stands alone (no **le**): **Tout ou rien** 'All or nothing,' **Voilà tout!** 'That's all!' etc. So **penser à tout** '(to) think of everything,' **en tout** 'in all (everything),' **partout** 'everywhere.' But in referring to a given whole quantity of anything, commonly **le tout**: **A combien se monte le tout?** 'How much for the whole purchase?' **Le tout, six francs** 'For the whole lot, six francs.' **Pas du tout** 'not at all.'

5. Note carefully the syntax and meaning of **tout de** in, for example, **On ignore tout de ce voyage** 'Nothing is known about that journey.'

6. **Tout** (direct object) commonly precedes infinitives and past participles: **pour tout voir** 'to see everything,' **je n'ai pas tout dit** 'I haven't said everything'; but *not* as an adjective: **pour comprendre tout ce qu'il dit** 'to understand everything he says,' **je n'ai pas dit tout ce dont . . .**, etc.

7. **Tous** [tu(:)s] and **toutes** [tut(s)] may immediately precede past participles, or (if more emphatic) follow: **Je les ai tous vus** 'I've seen them all,' etc. In such cases **toutes**, if linked, must be [tuts].

8. **Tout** occasionally means 'everybody': **On avait fermé, tout était parti** 'The doors had been closed, everyone had gone.'

9. **Tout** is often adverbial: **tout de suite** 'at once' ('forthwith'), etc.

183. Un (une), as a pronoun, can be singular or plural, like our 'one':

l'un(e) . . ., **l'autre** = '(the) one . . ., the other'; **les un(e)s** . . ., **les autres** = 'some . . ., the others (the rest)'; **l'un(e) ou l'autre** = 'one or the other (either)'; **ni l'un(e) ni l'autre** = 'neither'; **les un(e)s et les autres** = 'all'; **les un(e)s les autres** = 'each other' ('one another'); **se blesser l'un(e) l'autre** (**les uns** or **les unes les autres**) = '(to) wound each other,' etc.

On **l'un de**, **l'une de**, see § 85, Note *d*.

REMINDER. Our 'one' ('ones'), in *demonstrative* phrases, does *not* correspond to **un, une, uns, unes**: 'that one' = **celui-là, celle-là**, 'the one that' = **celui (celle) que**, 'the ones that' = **ceux (celles) que**, 'the useful ones' = **ceux (celles) qui sont utiles**, 'the black ones' = **les noir(e)s**, etc.

184. Nul-le, 'no,' 'none,' may replace **aucun-e** in purely negative constructions, but is generally less colloquial.

Note **nulle part** (set phrase) 'nowhere': **Je ne m'ennuie nulle part ailleurs** = 'I don't feel bored anywhere else.'

185. On (always an unstressed nominative) is an indefinite personal pronoun, constantly used where we have 'one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' etc., or a passive construction.

186. Personne, 'nobody' etc., and **rien**, 'nothing' etc., have approximately the same constructions; both usually require **ne**, save when used absolutely (§§ 90, 374, 376). For 'else,' add **d'autre**.

NOTE on **ne**. This negative particle should be used whenever a verb is to be negated, whatever other negative may be added.

EXERCISE

Marie X écrit à « Ma chère Louise »

My dear Louise,

1. Nothing could be (**Rien de . . . ; no verb**) more stunning (**chic, épatant**) than Rome. 2. Every day something interesting, and we always have (have always) time enough to (**pour**) see everything, all the beautiful objects and all the ugly ones (§ 183). 3. Everywhere we go we discover (**découvrons**) things that entertain us (**divertir**). 4. In every street (all the . . .) there is something that you (?) couldn't see anywhere else. 5. Whenever we feel inclined (**avoir + envie**) to see other places (**endroits**) we entrust (**confier**) everything to our servant — the whole house — and then we're off! (**nous voilà partis!**). 6. Like master, like *servant*, you know! 7. We have our simple pleasures, all three of us (**no de nous**), and our Paola never forgets her duties.

8. If you come, look for a pension (*f.*) near us (**près de chez nous**). 9. Then we could go on our jaunts together (**faire nos petites excursions ensemble**), all four of us, and every two or three days we might (**pouvoir, E**) follow the tourists. 10. Sometimes there is no other way (**moyen**) of seeing (*infin.*) what one must see (**doit or il faut . . .**). 11. Alfred is still wholly devoted to me (**être tout à . . .**), and even when there is nothing to do (**à . . .**) I am not at all bored. 12. In the evening we talk about such and such things that we have seen and of our various guides (**guides, m.**). 13. Every two or three minutes he makes me laugh (§ 161) by repeating (**en répétant**) some story or other. 14. These guides have all (*pronoun*) the same purpose, but they have not all (*pronoun*) the same methods. 15. Some declare that Nero fiddled (**jouer du violon**) while Rome was burning (**brûler**); others deny it.

(To be continued. **A suivre**)

TRENTIÈME LEÇON

THE TYPE *DEVOIR* (GROUPS A-E). WORK IN REVIEW

187. *Devoir* [dɔvwa:r] '(to) owe' (with 'must' etc.), may typify the so-called 'Third Conjugation' (§ 387), a *dead* type because no new verbs are added to it, and containing hardly more than six verbs in everyday use. The type is irregular because it has a variable stem (like *pouvoir*) and other peculiarities.

GROUP A

EXAMPLES

je dois [dwa]	Je lui dois un franc I owe him a franc
tu dois [dwa]	Tu dois le savoir You surely know it
on doit [dwa]	Il doit pleuvoir It must be raining
nous devons [dɔvɔ̃]	Nous devons partir à midi We're to leave at noon
vous devez [dɔvɛ]	Vous devez à tout le monde You're in debt to everyone
elles doivent [dwa:v]	Ils doivent l'avoir vu They must have seen him

Note that the stem has *oi* when stressed; otherwise *e*.

B: **je devais** etc. See § 60 and complete this group, using the various complements in our Examples.

C: **je dus, tu dus, il dut, nous dûmes, vous dîtes, ils durent**. Nothing of the stem is left except its *d*. See § 398, *c*, and indicate the sounds of these endings before **partir, y aller, and en parler**.

NOTE. Whereas **Il devait partir dans deux jours** means 'He was (destined) to leave in two days' (but perhaps he did not really go), **Il dut partir** would usually mean 'He had to leave' (and did leave). Why is **Il me dut un franc** an improbable combination?

D: **je devrai** etc., 'I shall have to' etc. See § 84.

E: **je devrais** etc., 'I should have to' etc. See § 91.

Examples of the Compound Groups

A p.p.: **J'ai dû lui dire que je ne lui payerais pas un sou** 'I've had (or I had) to tell him that I wouldn't pay him a penny.' **Il a dû pleuvoir** 'It must have rained (have been raining).' Compare **Tu dois l'avoir dit** ('I feel sure that you said it') with **Tu as dû le dire** ('You have had to say it,' 'You had to say it,' or 'I feel sure you said it,' 'You must have said it').

B p.p.: **J'avais dû lui dire . . .** 'I had had to tell him . . .' (had been obliged to tell him), 'Very likely I had told him . . .,' etc.

E p.p.: **Vous auriez dû tout dire (. . . ne rien dire)** 'You ought to have told everything (nothing).' Translate 'Ought she to have said it? Would they have had to leave in three days? Should we have been obliged to tell everything?'

REMARK. It is extremely important to compare now the various meanings of 'owe,' 'ought to,' 'ought to have,' 'should have to,' 'should have had to,' 'must,' 'must have,' '(to) be obliged to,' '(to) have been obliged to,' 'am to,' 'was to,' 'was to have,' etc., with the meanings of all the forms of **devoir**, which is not defective and is one of the most frequently used verbs in the French language. It is of course the defectiveness of our English forms that makes the correct use of **devoir** particularly difficult to us.

a. **Devoir** takes a pure infinitive (**Je dois partir**) except when one is indebted to someone for some action expressed by an infinitive: **Je lui dois d'avoir tout dit** 'I'm indebted to him for having told everything,' **Vous deviez à ces gens d'avoir réussi** 'You were under obligations to those people for having succeeded (for your success).'

Translate 'I was indebted to my brother for having told me all that.'

188. **Recevoir** [rəʒəvwɑ:r], '(to) receive,' is conjugated exactly like **devoir**, but of course has **reçev** instead of **dev** and requires a cedilla (ç) before **u** and **o**: **je reçois, je reçus, p.p. reçu**, etc. Cf. **dû**, but **dus, due, dues**.

a. So **apercevoir** '(to) perceive,' **concevoir** '(to) conceive,' **décevoir** '(to) disappoint or deceive,' **percevoir** '(to) collect' (taxes), etc.

EXERCISE I

1. Shall I owe you something? 2. You won't owe me anything.
3. Nobody will owe them anything. 4. What shall we have to say to her? 5. Shall you (*p!*) have to speak? 6. He had said that he would owe me thirty (**trente**) francs. 7. He still owes me (*dative + vb. + toujours*) that sum (**cette somme**). 8. If their enterprise had failed, they'd be in debt to everybody.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. **Je les aperçois** = 'I perceive them.'

Complete group *A*, using in each case a non-reflexive accusative ('me', 'you' *sg.*, 'him', 'her', 'it', 'you' *pl.*, 'them').

II. **Je m'en aperçois** = 'I notice it (am aware of it).'

Complete this reflexive group in the plural.

III. **Je me suis aperçu-e que** = 'I have noticed that . . .'

Complete this group, noting carefully that the auxiliary must be *être* in all reflexive constructions, and that this past participle must agree in gender and number with the subject. Use complements.

IV. **Est-ce que je reçois les choses que tu m'envoies?** = 'Do I receive the things that you send me?'

Give all group *A* of each verb, changing each pronoun to suit (nominatives and datives).

V. **Elle était très déçue de ne pas les trouver chez eux (elles)** = 'She was greatly disappointed not to find them at home.'

Vary your translations of six other reasonable combinations, containing 'I', 'you', 'we', 'they', and 'me', 'you' *sg.*, 'him or her', 'them.'

VI. Will they receive the money that we have owed them? Has he received the sum that's due him? Will he notice (*reflex.*) that you are not paying him the sums that you owe him? Have you not noticed (*reflex.*) that it is raining? If it were raining, would they be aware of it?

QUERY. How much in common have any of these verbs in *-oir* with *avoir* and *mouvoir* in respect to groups *A* to *E*?

EXERCISE II

Fin de la lettre de Marie à Louise

1. We have had five different guides, one of whom has no certain knowledge of (*ne + savoir + qu'imparfaitement*) the history of Rome, but he seems to be well informed as to (*bien renseigné sur*) that of his confrères. 2. While A. reads his Baedeker this good man (*brave . . .*) gives me many details [*deta:j*] of their lives and of his own (*merely the possessive pronoun*), comedies and tragedies. 3. We

always speak Italian (*italien*), both of us, but this guide speaks English or French, so that (*de sorte que*) his mistakes are not the same as ours. 4. If none of his stories is quite true, what matter? we are exchanging (*échanger*) ideas! 5. With another guide, we might learn less.

6. A woman like you, and a man like F. (*two ways*), would be sure to love this city. 7. In all respects (*two ways*), it would delight you. We love all Rome and all Italy. 8. We haven't yet seen everything, but if we remain here as long as we have any money we shall have seen a lot of things.

9. I must have spoken of the shops (*magasins, m.*). 10. I have noticed (*reflex.*) that many of the things that I buy here cost almost what we pay at home (*chez . . .*), and A. has noticed it too, especially when *I* (when it is I who) am buying something. 11. I am very much disappointed not to find that everything costs much less. 12. Very often A. pays less than I, even when we buy the same thing. 13. I'm indebted to him for having explained to me what I must say when it is necessary to bargain (*marchander*). 14. I receive a lesson every other day upon this point (*sur ce point, à ce sujet*). I perceive that I am no longer as naïve as when (*lorsque, not que quand*) we arrived. 15. I think I know (*crois savoir*) now what is due me (*dative + être + p.p.*).

16. When did I get (*recevoir, A p.p.*) my last letter from you? Haven't you noticed (*reflex.*) that I love letters? 17. We receive a few letters, every four or five days, from somebody; but yours, every two or three months (*mois, m.*). F. must be very interesting! 18. If *I* owed (*Moi, si je*) so many letters, I should wish to write them at once. 19. Have you some good excuse? or none? 20. Yes, you have one. What is it?

Toute à toi (*or vous*),

Marie

TRENTE ET UNIÈME LEÇON

VERBS IN *-ANDRE* (AS *RÉPANDRE*), *-ENDRE* (AS *RENDRE*), *-ONDRE* (AS *FONDRE*); ALSO *MORDRE* AND *PERDRE*. GROUPS A-E

(In part for reference)

189. Forms. Except *prendre* '(to) take,' and derivatives, all verbs whose infinitive ends in *-andre*, *-endre*, *-ondre* (also *mordre* 'bite,' and *perdre* 'lose') have the same inflectional endings throughout. Their stem-vowel varies in length according to its position, but not in quality; their final *d* in group *A* is linked as [t]. This group of verbs is often called the 'Third Conjugation'¹—also the 'Fourth'! As new words are never added to this group, it is a *dead* type of conjugation.

a. Rompre [ʀɔ:pr] '(to) break' (generally in a figurative sense) differs from *rendre* etc. only by the *t* of (il) *rompt* in group *A*, whereas *rendre*, *mordre*, etc. have a written *d* (pronounced [t], or silent; formerly written *t*: il *rent* etc.).

190. Rendre [ʀɑ:dr], '(to) give back,' 'render,' etc., will show how all this group of verbs is conjugated.

GROUP A

EXAMPLES (*Study all*)

je rends [ʀɑ(z)]	Si je le rends à Robert?
tu rends [ʀɑ(z)]	Tu me rends malade You're making me ill
on rend [ʀɑ(t)]	Il te rend un vrai service
nous rendons [ʀɑ·dɔ̃(z)]	Nous nous rendons We surrender
vous rendez [ʀɑ·de(z)]	Vous vous rendez compte . . . You realize . . .
elles rendent [ʀɑ:d(ət)]	Ils rendent hommage à . . . They pay homage to . . .

Note how the stem-vowel varies in length; *mordre* and *perdre* vary otherwise.

Linking. Note that *rendent* may remain [ʀɑ:d]: **rendent un service.**

¹ Because it perpetuates Latin verbs in *-ere* so classified. Many other French verbs are derived from the Latin third conjugation, and those in *-aindre*, *-eindre*, *-oindre* form a consistently-conjugated group containing more words than the so-called 'Second Conjugation,' exemplified by *devoir* and by six or seven verbs in *-cevoir*. See §§ 187-188, but especially § 387, *a*.

B: je rendais [rɑ̃ˈdɛ] etc. See § 60 and complete this group, using the complements in the Examples.

C: je rendis etc. See § 132, *C*, and complete this group thus: **Je ne me rendis pas** 'I didn't yield (surrender).'

D: je rendrai etc. See § 84 and complete this group thus: **Je lui rendrai son livre (son parapluie 'umbrella' etc.) s'il me rend le mien** 'I'll give him back his book (etc.) if, he gives me back mine.' Use a different pronoun in each variant.

E: je rendrais etc. See § 91 and complete this group thus: **Elle (Il, On) avait dit que tu te rendrais compte de ton erreur** 'He (etc.) had said that you would realize your mistake.' Vary each pronoun and *ton* so as to use six appropriate forms.

P. p.: rendu-s, rendue-s; auxiliary (except in reflexive or reciprocal constructions): **avoir**.

Example of a reciprocal construction: **Nous nous rendons justice, les un(e)s aux autres** 'We do each other (one another) justice.' Likewise, **Ces deux auteurs se rendent justice, l'un à l'autre, Ces deux femmes se rendaient justice, l'une à l'autre, etc. Elles se sont rendu justice etc.**

191. Mordre [mɔʁdʁ], '(to) bite,' and **perdre** [pɛʁdʁ], '(to) lose,' have a short stem-vowel wherever *d* is audible [d].

A: je mords [mɔːʁ], tu mords, il mord; mordons, mordez, mordent. Cf. je vends [vɑ̃], tu vends, il vend; vendons, vendez, vendent, from vendre '(to) sell.'

B: je perdais etc. Cf. je répandais etc. from répandre '(to) spread.'

C: je mordis etc. Cf. je descendis etc. from descendre '(to) descend,' 'come down,' 'lower' (an object), etc.; auxiliary être, or avoir in transitive constructions: **Elle était descendue** 'She had alighted'; *but* **Elle avait descendu l'escalier** 'She had come down the stairs,' or **Elle avait descendu le tableau** 'She'd lowered (let down) the picture.'

D: je perdrai, je mordrai, etc. So je fendrai 'I shall cleave' (split something), j'entendrai 'I shall hear,' j'étendrai 'I shall extend,' etc.

E: je mordrais, je perdrais, etc. So je répondrais 'I should answer' etc.

P. p.: mordu-s, mordue-s; perdu-s, perdue-s, etc.

Note where **mordre**, **tordre** ('twist'), **perdre**, etc. lose their *inflectional r*.

REMARK. Inversion of *I A* is rare: **Est-ce que je rends (mords etc.) Vends-je** would sound like **venge** ('avenge'): **Vends-je ces chats ? (!)**

192. Examples of *attendre* '(to) wait (for), await' with *depuis*

Je les attends depuis longtemps = 'I have been waiting for them a long while.' Note carefully how French and English differ as to tenses; French *A* corresponds here to English *A p.p.* Complete this model, using a different pronoun in each case. **Je m'y attendais depuis longtemps** = 'I had been expecting it for a long while.' Again note that *depuis* requires French *B*, corresponding to English *B p.p.* Complete this reflexive model.

193.

La Veine

PREFATORY NOTE. *La Veine* is a comedy by Alfred Capus, 1901. We quote (for conversation) from Act I, sc. 6. **La veine** means the run (or streak) of luck that a man may have, just as a miner may happen upon a *vein* of good ore. This recalls the proverb *Tout vient à point à qui sait attendre*.

The author, born at Aix in 1858, studied for a while in the École des Mines (Paris), then became a journalist. His first comedy, *Brignol et sa fille*, 1895, characterizes with truth and good humor a wholly irresponsible but delightful sponger who has no sense of duty in regard to his creditors and does not suffer in consequence; *au contraire!*

This dialogue should first be read aloud. For some twenty-four words or phrases which may not be clear (at sight) see the footnotes.

CHARLOTTE. — Comment !¹ vous avez des dettes ? 1

JULIEN. — Pourquoi n'en aurais-je² pas ?

CHARLOTTE. — Et vous ne les payez pas, probablement. 3

JULIEN. — C'est pour ça que⁸ je les ai.

CHARLOTTE. — Vous allez gâcher⁴ votre vie, si vous n'êtes pas 5
plus raisonnable, monsieur Julien. Moi, à⁵ votre place, avec l'édu-
cation que vous avez reçue, je voudrais arriver très haut. Vous 7
n'êtes donc pas ambitieux ?

JULIEN. — Mais si !⁶ 9

CHARLOTTE. — Je voudrais être un grand avocat,⁷ ou bien un 11
député,⁸ un ministre . . .⁹ je ne sais pas, moi . . .¹⁰ quelqu'un de
célèbre.

JULIEN (*riant*¹¹). — J'y songe.¹² 13

CHARLOTTE. — Mais vous ne faites¹⁸ rien pour cela.

JULIEN. — J'attends la veine. 15

CHARLOTTE. — Vous pourriez l'attendre longtemps.

JULIEN. — Qui sait ?

17

CHARLOTTE. — Oh ! si vous êtes superstitieux . . .

JULIEN. — Je ne suis pas superstitieux . . . Je crois que tout 19
homme un peu bien doué,¹⁴ pas trop sot,¹⁵ pas trop timide, a dans
la vie son heure de veine, un moment où les autres hommes 21
semblent travailler pour lui, où les fruits¹⁶ viennent se mettre
à portée¹⁷ de sa main pour qu'il les cueille.¹⁸ Cette heure-là, ma 23
petite Charlotte, c'est triste à dire, mais ce n'est ni le travail, ni
le courage, ni la patience qui nous la donnent. Elle sonne à une 25
horloge¹⁹ qu'on ne voit pas, et tant qu'elle n'a pas sonné pour
nous, nous avons beau déployer²⁰ tous les talents et toutes les 27
vertus, il n'y a rien à faire,²¹ nous sommes des fétus de paille.²²

CHARLOTTE. — Comme²³ c'est faux,²⁴ ce que vous dites là,²⁵ et 29
surtout décourageant !

NOTES. 1. 'What?' 2. *Not* 'wouldn't I' (§ 100). 3. 'That's why' etc.
4. 'make a mess of.' 5. 'in.' 6. 'Yes, I am!' (§ 178). 7. 'lawyer,' 'bar-
rister.' 8. 'deputy' (**membre de la Chambre des Députés**). 9. '(cabinet)
minister.' 10. Freely, 'how should I know?' (cf. line 6). 11. 'laughing'
(from *rire*). 12. *y* implies à : *songer à quelque chose* (qqch.) '(to) reflect
on a thing': 'I'm thinking it over.' 13. 'aren't doing' (from *faire*). 14. 'fairly
well endowed,' 'of fair ability.' 15. 'silly' (*f. sotté*). 16. [frqi]. 17. Possibly,
'come and put themselves within reach'; *venir annoncer, courir voir, aller
dire*, etc. represent a pure infinitive construction very frequent in French.
18. 'that he may gather them'; *cueille* (from *cueillir*; cf. 'cull') is here sub-
junctive. 19. 'strikes on a clock.' 20. Freely, 'it is vain for us to unfold
(display).' 21. Here, 'to be done.' 22. 'mere straws.' 23. Here, 'how':
cf. *comment*, line 1. 24. 'untrue,' 'false' (*f. fausse*); note where French
requires the adjective to be placed. 25. *Not cela que vous dites*. What
shall be done with this *là*? See §§ 80 and 81.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. Causerie sur la veine et les veinards.

II. Exercice ou questionnaire ayant trait aux §§ 191-192 (temps
des verbes, etc.).

TRENTE-DEUXIÈME LEÇON

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD (*LE MODE IMPÉRATIF*)

194. The Imperative states a *command* or a *request*, and sometimes a mere *wish* or *hope*. Strictly speaking, we can command or request only a 'second person' (*toi*, *vous*), but other grammatical 'persons' are commonly included. Examples for verbs of the *parler* type (first conjugation):

1. 2d sg.: Ferme la porte	Shut the door
2. 3d sg.: Qu'elle parle!	Let her speak!
3. 1st pl.: Marchons vite!	Let's walk fast!
4. 2d pl.: Changez tout	Change everything
5. 3d pl.: Qu'ils écoutent!	Let them listen!

Note that for *toi*, *nous*, and *vous* the subject is not expressed: **ferme**, **marchons**, **changez**.

a. In this conjugation (verbs in *-er*) the 2d singular has no *s* except before the enclitics *y* and *en*:

Penses-y [pā:səzi] toujours!	1	Think about it always.
Je vais fumer un cigare. —	2	I'm going to smoke a cigar. —
Fumes-en deux, si tu veux.		Smoke two, if you want to.

b. A few *irregular* imperatives ending in a vowel behave likewise: **Vas-y** 'Go there,' but **N'y va pas** 'Don't go there.' *Y* and *en* precede negated imperatives.

c. As is proved by the analogy of other conjugations which have special forms for the subjunctive in 2 and 5 (**Qu'elle parle** and **Qu'ils écoutent**), forms 2 and 5 (**parle** and **écoutent**) *conceal subjunctives* (§ 205), and express a wish (often firmly!) rather than a command.

d. Note that **parle** and **écoutent** are preceded by the conjunction **que** (as if the whole thought were **Je veux qu'elle parle, . . . qu'ils écoutent**), and that the subject is expressed (**elle**, **ils**).

e. In archaic locutions (i.e. in locutions whose syntax was formerly general) **que** is often omitted: **Dieu m'en garde!** 'God save me from it!' **Vive la France!** 'Long live France!'

195. With few exceptions, verbs of other conjugations (not in *-er*) likewise have the same forms for the imperative as for the indicative, but reveal a clearly subjunctive form in the 3d singular:

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: | Ne le reçois pas | Don't receive him |
| 2. 3d sg.: | Qu'il ne les reçoive pas ! | Let him not receive them ! |
| 3. 1st pl.: | Ne les recevons pas | Let's not receive them |
| 4. 2d pl.: | Ne la recevez pas | Don't receive her |
| 5. 3d pl.: | Qu'ils ne la reçoivent pas ! | Let them not receive it ! |

Compare **Qu'il ne les reçoive** [rəswa:v] **pas** with **Il les reçoit** [rəswa]. See § 194, c.

196. Let **attendre** illustrate the verbs in **-andre, -endre, -ondre**, etc. (§§ 189-192), affirmatively, with an accusative pronoun to represent each object:

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: | Attends-moi donc | Do wait for me |
| 2. 3d sg.: | Alors, qu'on t'attende ! | Then let them wait for you ! |
| 3. 1st pl.: | Attendons-le (-la, -les) | Let's wait for him (her, them) |
| 4. 2d pl.: | Attendez-nous, s'il vous plait | Wait for us, please |
| 5. 3d pl.: | Qu'ils vous attendent ! | Let them wait for you ! |

Compare **qu'on t'attende** [tatā:d] with **On t'attend** [tatā] 'They're waiting for you.' Like **reçoivent** (above), **attendent** here *conceals a subjunctive*.

Note in which cases the accusative precedes the verb.

197. *Negative imperatives* (like indicatives) are *preceded* by **me, te, le, la, lui** (dative), **nous, vous, les**, and **leur** (dative); also by **y** and **en**.

EXERCISE I

1. If the house pleases her, let her not sell it ! (*Hardly colloquial English.*) 2. If they're going to wait for you, let them not wait for you after six o'clock. (*Hardly colloquial English.*) 3. Don't wait for me (*two ways*). 4. Don't sell him those books if you need them. 5. Let's not show him anything. 6. Here are the cigars, let's smoke two of them; don't give me the smallest (**ne m'en . . .**) ! 7. If you don't like such ideas, let's not talk about them. (*Use en.*) 8. If you find Paris too dreary (**triste**), don't remain there (*pl. and sg.*); if it pleases you, stay there as long as you like. 9. If your enemy can harm you (**vous nuire, te nuire**), don't annoy him. 10. **Dieu . . .** !

198. *Positive* (not negative) imperatives *precede* the following simple accusative forms (enclitic and requiring a hyphen): **-moi, -toi, -le, -la, -les, -nous, -vous, -les**; also **-y** and **-en**. Use them all (except **y** and **en**), reflexively and non-reflexively, with **lever** '(to) raise' (**Je me lève** = 'I rise'), and with **défendre** '(to) defend' (conjugated like **rendre**), as in Exercise II.

199. **Obéir** (§ 132) requires the dative (**Je lui obéis** = 'I obey him' or 'her').

a. In the 3d plural, **obéir** has the *concealed subjunctive* form **obéissent**; in the 3d singular subjunctive, it has the *special* form **obéisse** (cf. **il obéit**).

EXERCISE II

1. It's ten o'clock, get up (rise), Henry! get up, [my] children!
2. Let's get up, it's eleven o'clock!
3. Defend yourself (yourselves).
4. Our lives are in danger, defend us.
5. Defend them, they're not guilty.
6. If the man is not guilty, let's defend him.
7. If she is innocent (**innocente** [inõsä:t]), let him defend her! (let them defend her!)
8. If the door is not already shut, shut it (*sg. and pl. vb.*).
9. Let him obey us.
10. Let them obey her.
11. Let's not obey them.
12. Let's not obey anyone (**à personne**).
13. Let us be obeyed (*use on*).
14. Let nobody (**personne**) obey them.

Table of Imperative Forms

200. The verbs typified by **parler, recevoir, rendre, and finir**, with the subjunctive forms (concealed or special) required to express commands and requests in the third person, give these forms:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: Parle. (Penses-y.) | Reçois-moi. |
| 2. 3d sg.: Qu'on chante! | Qu'elle te reçoive! |
| 3. 1st pl.: Fumons, Messieurs! | Recevons-le (-la, -les). |
| 4. 2d pl.: Chantez, Mesdames (or Madame). | Recevez-nous. |
| 5. 3d pl.: Qu'ils dînent! | Qu'elles vous reçoivent! |
| 1. 2d sg.: Ne te défends pas. | Obéis-moi. |
| 2. 3d sg.: Qu'on ne le vende pas! | Que cet enfant obéisse! |
| 3. 1st pl.: Ne nous rendons pas! | N'obéissons à personne! |
| 4. 2d pl.: Ne la (les) perdez pas. | Finissez ça. |
| 5. 3d pl.: Qu'elles se perdent! | Qu'elles agissent! |

REMARK. It would be well to practice also with verbs like those in §§ 158-160 and 162. Examples: **Mène-moi** but **Menez-moi**, **Cède-le** but **Cédez-le**, **Jette-les** but **Jetons-les**, **Appelle-la** but **Appelez-la**, **Emploie-nous** but **Employez-nous**, etc.

NOTE. Occasionally the 1st singular figures in a kind of imperative, always expressed by **Que + je + subjunctive** (*concealed* or special form): **Que je fume, alors!** = 'Let me smoke then!' **Que je m'en aille!** [ɑ:j] = 'Let me be going!' ('I must be off!')

QUERIES. Under the four types of verbs exemplified above, what are the only forms that ever differ from the corresponding *indicative*? When an imperative must be expressed by a subjunctive, where is a special form required? What is a *concealed subjunctive*?

201. *Examples of the Imperative from Geneviève, by
Alphonse de Lamartine (1790-1869)*

Ma mère me disait¹: « Geneviève, il me faut² cela, il me faut 1 ceci; apporte-moi ta petite sœur Josette sur mon lit, remporte-la dans son berceau et berce-la du bout de ton pied³ jusqu'à ce 3 qu'elle dorme⁴; va me chercher mon bas; ramasse mon peloton; va couper une salade au jardin; va au⁵ poulailler tâter s'il y a 5 des œufs chauds dans le nid⁶ des poules; hache des choux pour faire la soupe à ton père⁷; bats⁸ le beurre; mets⁹ du bois au 7 feu; écume la marmite qui bout¹⁰; jettes-y¹¹ le sel; étends la nappe, rince les verres; descends à la cave, ouvre le robinet, 9 remplis au tonneau la bouteille de vin. »

NOTES. 1. 'would say' (*B* of *dire*). 2. 'I must have.' 3. Freely, 'with your toe.' 4. Subjunctive (*see dormir*). 5. *Not vas au* (§ 194, *b*). 6. Sg. for pl. 7. Complement either of **faire** or (familiarily) of **la soupe** ('your father's soup'). 8. *See battre*. 9. *See mettre*. 10. *See bouillir*, also § 137. 11. *See § 194, a*.

QUERY. How shall we change each imperative in § 201 to the 2d plural? Which can you put into the 1st plural and 3d plural?

TRENTE-TROISIÈME LEÇON

THE IMPERATIVE (CONCLUDED)

202. In *avoir*, *être*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, and *vouloir* only subjunctive forms are used to express a command, request, or wish.

a. Avoir.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: Aie pitié de lui | Have pity on him |
| Also: Aies-en [ɛzɑ̃] pitié | Have pity on him (them, etc.) |
| 2. 3d sg.: Que ce monsieur ait patience ! | Let the gentleman be patient! |
| 3. 1st pl.: Ayons cette vertu | Let us have that virtue |
| 4. 2d pl.: Ayez l'obligeance de . . . | Be so good as to . . . |
| 5. 3d pl.: Qu'ils aient soif ! | May they be thirsty! |

Sounds: **aie-s'** = [ɛ(z)]; **ait** = [ɛ(t)]; **ayons** = [ɛjɔ̃(z)]; **ayez** = [ɛje(z)]; **aient** = [ɛ(t)].

QUERY. Where is the subject expressed?

b. Pouvoir.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: Puisses-tu réussir ! | May you (be able to) succeed! |
| 2. 3d sg.: Puisse-t-il revenir ! | May he (be able to) return! |
| 3. 1st pl.: Puissions-nous le revoir ! | May we see him again! |
| 4. 2d pl.: Puissiez-vous le comprendre ! | May you understand him! |
| 5. 3d pl.: Puissent-elles le dire ! | May they be able to say it! |

Sounds: [puis], [puisjɔ̃], [puisje], [puis(t)].

Note that the subject must here be expressed; these forms are not true imperatives, but express a wish. **Puissé-je** [puisɛ:ʒ], 'May I . . .', might be used colloquially.

c. Être.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: Sois amical, sois bon | Be friendly, be kind |
| 2. 3d sg.: Qu'il soit là ce soir ! | Let him be there this evening! |
| 3. 1st pl.: Soyons justes ! | Let's be fair! |
| 4. 2d pl.: Soyez amicaux | Be friendly |
| 5. 3d pl.: Qu'elles soient heureuses ! | May they be happy! |

Sounds: [swa(z)], [swa(t)], [swajɔ̃(z)], [swaje(z)], [swa(t)].

NOTE. **Soit** 'So be it!' is archaic because (as was commonly the case in Old French) no subject is expressed, and because its *t* is always pronounced. But this locution is in everyday use; hence not *felt* to be archaic.

d. Savoir [savwa:r] '(to) know,' 'be aware,' etc., is irregular:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. 2d sg.: Sache bien cela | Know that well |
| 2. 3d sg.: Qu'on sache tout ! | Let everything be known |
| 3. 1st pl.: Sachons bien nos devoirs | Let us know our duties well |
| 4. 2d pl.: Sachez, Monsieur (Messieurs) . . . | Let me tell you, sir, . . . <i>etc.</i> |
| 5. 3d pl.: Qu'ils ne le sachent pas ! | I hope they won't know it ! |

e. Vouloir has five forms in *-euill-* [œ:j], and three others in *-eu* [ø] and *ou* [u]. Only **veuillez** is frequent.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. 2d sg.: Veuille me dire . . . | Kindly tell me . . . |
| 2. 3d sg.: Dieu veuille que . . . | May God grant that . . . |
| 3. 1st pl.: Veillons ne pas mentir !¹ | Let's try to be truthful ! |
| 4. 2d pl.: Veillez (bien) m'écrire | Be so good-as to write to me |
| 5. 3d pl.: Qu'ils veuillent le faire ! | May they be willing to do it! |

NOTE. For the non-imperative subjunctive forms of **vouloir** see § 471.

203. Voir [vwa:r], '(to) see,' gives **vois** (2d sg.), **voyons**, and **voyez**, with subjunctives **voie** (3d sg.) and **voient** (3d pl.). **Voyons** is often merely an interjection: **Voyons ! réponds !** = 'Come! (Control yourself.) Answer!'

a. Voici and **voilà** contain the original form of the 2d singular imperative, **voi** (without *s*); but either may be used in addressing any number of persons: **Voilà, Messieurs !** 'There, gentlemen!' Compare **Voyez-le** 'See him' with **Le voilà** 'There he is.' For demonstrative questions, note **Ne voilà-t-il pas** 'Isn't that . . .,' 'Aren't those . . .,' etc. Avoid **Là est**, etc.

b. Voici and **voilà** must *follow* unstressed pronominal objects — that is, **me**, **te**, **le**, **la**, **les**, **nous**, **vous**, **que** (relative), and **en**: **Les voici !** 'Here they are!' **Te voilà !** 'There you are!' **Le parapluie que voilà !** 'That umbrella!' **En voici les meilleurs** 'Here are the best of them.'

c. Voilà may replace **il y a** meaning 'ago': **Je l'ai vu voilà maintenant quatre ans** 'I saw him four years ago,' or **Je l'ai vu il y a quatre ans**.

QUERY. Why not, for example, **Voici est ta chambre?** or **Voilà sont vos amis?**

¹ A polite way of saying **Ne mens pas** or **Ne mentez pas**.

d. **Va** and **allez** are often mere interjections meaning 'Come!' 'I can tell you,' 'You bet!' etc. **Allons donc!** often expresses impatience: 'Oh, I say!' etc., and **Allons, bon!** may express annoyance accompanied by incredulity, submission, etc.

e. **Tiens** (2d sg. of **tenir** 'hold') may express surprise: **Tiens! vous le croyez?** 'Well, well! you believe it?' or **Tiens! ça m'étonne** 'You don't say so!' or 'Dear me! I'm surprised to hear it,' **Tiens! c'est Louis** 'Hello! it's Louis,' etc. **Tenez!** (not addressed to oneself) may, like **Tiens**, mean 'Here!' or 'See!' etc. See § 482.

For examples of the future in an imperative sense, see § 85. A more or less impersonal imperative may be expressed by an infinitive (§ 250, *f*).

EXERCISE I

(Noter tous les exemples de l'impératif. Voir le vocabulaire français-anglais)

(*Le monsieur que nous allons mettre en scène est fort riche. Il possède une belle maison quelque part. Plaçons-le dans sa bibliothèque. Qu'il ait entre les mains un livre et qu'il le lise [voir lire]. Entre un domestique.*)

— Pardon, monsieur, quelqu'un demande à voir monsieur. 5

— Je suis très occupé en ce moment. Qu'il attende. . . . Il peut bien attendre, n'est-ce pas? 7

— Je ne sais pas, monsieur, c'est une dame.

— Allons, bon! (*Après avoir réfléchi.*) — Dites-lui que . . . Non, faites-la entrer. 9

(*Entre la visiteuse. Trente ans, plutôt jolie. Sur son chapeau un bel oiseau exotique, très bien empaillé. Le monsieur se lève.*)

— Je ne vous dérange pas, monsieur? 13

— Du tout, du tout! Je feuilletais quelques livres. Mais asseyez-vous, madame [voir **asseoir**, **s'asseoir** 'seat oneself']. Pardonnez-moi de vous avoir fait attendre. Prenez donc ce fauteuil. . . . Eh bien, madame, comment puis-je vous être utile? Veuillez bien me dire à quoi je dois l'honneur de cette visite. 17

— Voici, monsieur, de quoi il s'agit. Je m'intéresse beaucoup au sort de nos animaux, surtout à celui des chevaux. 19

— Continuez, je vous en prie. J'aime les animaux. 21

(*La visiteuse, souriant.*) — Notre Société, la Société protectrice des animaux, fait tout ce qu'elle peut pour les protéger, mais 23

elle a si besoin d'argent. . . . Il y en a beaucoup qui doivent travailler dix heures par jour, sans le moindre abri contre le soleil. Oui, ils souffrent. 25

— Je crois bien qu'ils souffrent! Quel temps! Mais vous alliez dire . . . 27

— Oui, monsieur, j'allais dire que notre Société a besoin de cent mille francs [100,000 fr.]. Or, si vous pouviez nous offrir . . . disons cent francs, cela ferait tant de bien, soyez-en sûr. Monsieur, il en tombe des centaines [§ 44, *line 7*] tous les jours, je veux dire des centaines de chevaux. Donnons-leur donc des chapeaux, à tous ces pauvres animaux. 31 33

(*Le monsieur, avec une remarquable présence d'esprit :*) — Oui, en effet ils ne naissent pas coiffés. Coiffons-les donc. 35

(*La visiteuse rit d'une façon on ne peut plus flatteuse [= extrêmement flatteuse]. Le monsieur lui fait un chèque de deux cents francs. Elle l'en remercie et sort.*) 37 39

Oral Exercise. Variations of all these imperative forms, with objects etc.

EXERCISE II

Test on the Imperatives etc. in §§ 202-203

1. Be patient. (*Use avoir.*) 2. Let us be patient. 3. Don't have the slightest pity on them. (*Two ways.*) 4. Let her have that virtue! 5. Let no one be hungry. 6. Be hungry and thirsty! 7. I'll not give you a sou! 8. Be so good as to give me a few sous, sir: I'm very poor. 9. Be as poor as you please! 10. I need my money for my business. 11. May you have luck, all of you, and may we see you again. 12. May the French be able to understand you! that is what I hope. 13. Let's be gone (*parti-*) before ten o'clock. 14. Let me tell you, gentlemen, that you are wrong, all of you. 15. So be it! (*Granted!*) 16. But can one always be right? 17. Be always right, and everybody will love you!

TRENTE-QUATRIÈME LEÇON

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (MOOD). *LE (MODE) SUBJONCTIF*

204. Purely Subjunctive Forms. The following *subjunctive* forms of **avoir** and **être** differ, both for the eye and for the ear, from the most closely corresponding forms of the indicative :

PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE	IND. (A)	PAST SUBJUNCTIVE	IND. (C)
1. j'aie [ɛ]	ai	1. j'eusse [ys]	eus
2. tu aies [ɛ(z)]	as	2. tu eusses [ys]	eus
3. on ait [ɛ(t)]	a	3. on eût [y(t)]	eut
4. nous ayons [ɛjʒ(z)]	avons	4. nous eussions [ysjʒ(z)]	eûmes
5. vous ayez [ɛje(z)]	avez	5. vous eussiez [ysje(z)]	eûtes
6. ils aient [ɛ(t)]	ont	6. ils eussent [ys(t)]	eurent

PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE	IND. (A)	PAST SUBJUNCTIVE	IND. (C)
1. je sois	suis	1. je fusse [fys]	fus
2. tu sois	es	2. tu fusses [fys]	fus
3. on soit	est	3. on fût [fy(t)]	fut
4. nous soyons	sommes	4. nous fussions [fysjʒ(z)]	fûmes
5. vous soyez	êtes	5. vous fussiez [fysje(z)]	fûtes
6. ils soient	sont	6. ils fussent [fys(t)]	furent

205. Concealed Subjunctives. These forms are called 'subjunctive' both because they differ as *forms* from those in groups *A-E* and because they differ also in function. For example: **Il a soif** = 'He's thirsty,' whereas 'Although he's thirsty' = **Bien qu'il ait soif**. In many other cases (mostly in *dependent* clauses) French requires a subjunctive, but often has no special form to express this mood. For example: **Je parle (Ind.)** = 'I speak,' and **Bien que je parle (Sj.)** = 'Although I speak.' Again, compare **Afin que tu y arrives (Sj.)** = 'In order that you may arrive there,' with **Afin que tu y sois**. The verbs in *-er* have only two special forms for the present subjunctive (**nous parlions, vous parliez**); the forms (**je**) **parle**, (**tu**) **parles**, (**il**) **parle**, and (**ils**) **parlent** may *conceal* subjunctives.

REMARK I. We know that *concealed* subjunctives are such because in the same construction we must always use a special subjunctive *form* whenever

two different forms exist. The analogy of *Il faut qu'elle vienne* (*not vient*) 'She must come' proves that *arrive* is subjunctive in *Il faut qu'elle arrive*. To reverse this reasoning, we cannot conclude from *Il faut qu'elle arrive* that *Il faut qu'elle vient* (or *que nous arrivons*) would be incorrect.

REMARK 2. Few English verbs have more than one special form to express the subjunctive ('If so be . . . , God grant . . .'). A thousand years ago, English had many subjunctive forms, now replaced for the most part by auxiliary verbs or by forms which have always been indicative. Thus French and English differ radically.

206. The Relative Number of Special Subjunctive Forms. In French, as in many other languages, the number of distinctly subjunctive forms varies greatly from verb to verb, and forms often differ for the eye without differing for the ear. Let us set side by side groups from some of the conjugations already considered in the indicative (§§ 107, 187, 191), using groups *A* and *C* for comparison with the subjunctive groups which commonly express, respectively, something present or future and something past. Let the figures 1 to 6 stand for *je, tu, il*, etc. (No single exact translation is possible.)

IND. (A)	SUBJV.	IND. (A)	SUBJV.	IND. (A)	SUBJV.
1. <i>parle</i>	<i>parle</i>	1. <i>dois</i>	<i>doive</i>	1. <i>vends</i>	<i>vende</i>
2. <i>parles</i>	<i>parles</i>	2. <i>dois</i>	<i>doives</i>	2. <i>vends</i>	<i>vendes</i>
3. <i>parle</i>	<i>parle</i>	3. <i>doit</i>	<i>doive</i>	3. <i>vend</i>	<i>vende</i>
4. <i>parlons</i>	<i>parlions</i>	4. <i>devons</i>	<i>devions</i>	4. <i>vendons</i>	<i>vendions</i>
5. <i>parlez</i>	<i>parliez</i>	5. <i>devez</i>	<i>deviez</i>	5. <i>vendez</i>	<i>vendiez</i>
6. <i>parlent</i>	<i>parlent</i>	6. <i>doivent</i>	<i>doivent</i>	6. <i>vendent</i>	<i>vendent</i>

QUERY. How many special *forms* has the subjunctive in each case?

IND. (C)	SUBJV.	IND. (C)	SUBJV.	IND. (C)	SUBJV.
1. <i>parlai</i>	<i>parlasse</i>	1. <i>dus</i>	<i>dusse</i>	1. <i>vendis</i>	<i>vendisse</i>
2. <i>parlas</i>	<i>parlasses</i>	2. <i>dus</i>	<i>dusses</i>	2. <i>vendis</i>	<i>vendisses</i>
3. <i>parla</i>	<i>parlât</i>	3. <i>dut</i>	<i>dût</i>	3. <i>vendit</i>	<i>vendît</i>
4. <i>parlâmes</i>	<i>parlassions</i>	4. <i>dûmes</i>	<i>dussions</i>	4. <i>vendîmes</i>	<i>vendissions</i>
5. <i>parlâtes</i>	<i>parlassiez</i>	5. <i>dûtes</i>	<i>dussiez</i>	5. <i>vendîtes</i>	<i>vendissiez</i>
6. <i>parlerent</i>	<i>parlassent</i>	6. <i>durent</i>	<i>dussent</i>	6. <i>vendirent</i>	<i>vendissent</i>

QUERIES. Why no italics in this case? How does *parla* differ from *parlât*, *dut* from *dût*, and *vendit* from *vendît*? How many special forms in each case?

207. The many verbs exemplified by **finir** (§ 132) differ by only one form in their two subjunctive groups: present **finisse**; past **finît**. The four types of conjugation exemplified by **parler**, **devoir**, **vendre**, and **finir** have therefore the following inflectional endings:

Parler ('Pres. Sj.'): -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent. (*Living inflectional endings, living subjunctive: L. S.*)

('Past Sj.'): -asse, -asses, -ât, -ussions, -ussiez, -ussent. (*In books; obsolete or obsolescent subjunctive: O. S.*)

Devoir ('Pres. Sj.'): oiv-e, oiv-es, oiv-e, ev-ions, ev-iez, oiv-ent. (*L. S.*)

('Past Sj.'): -usse, -usses, -ût, -ussions, -ussiez, -ussent. (*O. S.*)

Vendre ('Pres. Sj.'): d-e, d-es, d-e, d-ions, d-iez, d-ent. (*L. S.*)

('Past Sj.'): -isse, -isses, -ît, -issions, -issiez, -issent. (*O. S.*)

Finir ('Pres. Sj.'): -isse, -isses, -isse, -issions, -issiez, -issent. (*L. S.*)

('Past Sj.'): -isse, -isses, -ît, -issions, -issiez, -issent. (*O. S.*)

208. **Subjunctive Forms requiring Special Classification.** For the present tense a good many verbs have subjunctive forms which require special classification. The past subjunctive of all French verbs (except **tenir** with **tinsse** and **venir** with **vinssse**) must have one of the four sets of endings just given, no matter whether it fall under a 'regular' or an 'irregular' type of conjugation, and its forms are always indicated by group *C*. Thus: **allai** > **allasse**, **eus** > **eusse**, **pus** > **pusse**, **répondis** > **répondisse**, **dis** ('said') > **disse**, etc.

209. **Literary Usage and Conversation.** In spoken French the simple *past* subjunctive forms are no longer used, even those in -ât, -ût, and -ît being avoided. Therefore all compound groups which would require **j'eusse**, **je fusse**, etc. (twelve forms), are avoided: **j'eusse parlé**, **je fusse venu**, etc., belong to the language of books.

210. **Terminology.** As the '*present* subjunctive' forms are not invariably present in their meaning, and as the '*past* subjunctive' forms are not always past in their meaning, both for brevity and for clearness we shall generally designate the two groups exemplified respectively by **je sois** and **je fusse** (representing all verbs) as the *living subjunctive* forms (*L. S.*) and as the *obsolete* (or *obsolescent*) *subjunctive* forms (*O. S.*), and we shall designate the compound groups

with *L.S. p.p.* and with *O.S. p.p.* Thus: **je sois venu** (or **j'aie parlé**) = *L.S. p.p.*, whereas **je fusse venu** (or **j'eusse parlé**) = *O.S. p.p.*

NOTE. Names which both indicate the four possible groups of forms and at the same time attempt to define their *tense-values* or *functions* are (1) Present Subjunctive [**sois**]; (2) Imperfect Subjunctive or Past Subjunctive [**fusse**]; (3) Past Subjunctive or Present Perfect Subjunctive [**sois venu**]; and (4) Pluperfect Subjunctive or Past Perfect Subjunctive [**fusse venu**].

Evidently, these supposedly defining names are neither wholly clear nor wholly consistent as mere designations of forms. Whichever are used, one should always state whether one is referring to a *form* or to a *tense-value* or function.

211. Functions of the Subjunctive Forms. The subjunctive is primarily a subordinate mood required or expected in certain kinds of dependent clauses; but it cannot be defined as a whole. Its commonest functions, and its tense-values, will be considered in detail in §§ 212-238.

EXERCISES

(Forms and Pronunciation)

I. Write out in full, setting them side by side (as in §§ 204 and 206), the most closely related *simple* indicative and subjunctive forms of **essayer** and **travailler** (§ 158), of **étudier** (§ 159), of **commencer** and **manger** (§ 160), of **mener**, **acheter**, and **appeler** (§ 162), of **vouloir** (§§ 202, with Note, and 206 or 207), of **répondre** (§ 206). Pronounce them in connection with reasonable complements.

II. Write out the compound subjunctive forms of **aller** and **parler** (cf. § 209) and pronounce them with reasonable complements.

III. *Oral.* Exercises with **faut**, **fallait**, etc.

TRENTE-CINQUIÈME LEÇON

THE FUNCTIONS (SYNTAX) OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

212. Efficient and Inefficient Subjunctives: Whenever the subjunctive *must* be used (as after **avant que** 'before'), it is merely part of a grammatical mechanism which works in only one way and is therefore incapable of clearly differentiating various possible meanings. Whenever we may choose between the subjunctive and the indicative, the conditional *E*, or some other verb-form, we may also choose between two or more different shades of thought, or at least between two or more different styles. Thus:

INDICATIVE

Qui cherchez-vous ?

SUBJUNCTIVE

Je cherche quelqu'un qui sait le russe.

Je cherche quelqu'un qui sache le russe.

I'm looking for someone [known to me] who can speak Russian.

I'm looking for someone [where is such a man?] who can speak Russian.

REMARK. Here the possibility of choosing the mood enables the (French) speaker to express clearly either of two obviously different thoughts. Observe how ambiguous our English is in this case. Why is it ambiguous?

NOTE. The possibility of choosing between two different styles may be exemplified by **Il faut qu'il parte** 'He must go' (colloquial) and **Il lui faut partir** (same meaning, but not colloquial).

Inasmuch as English and French differ so widely in respect to the subjunctive, mere translation (especially from French to English) often fails to enlighten us. The translations offered for most of the following examples must therefore be considered in connection with the statements of rules and principles which accompany those examples.

213. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN MAIN CLAUSES

a. Examples with *que*:

Qu'elle se taise ! (Ind. tait.) 1 Let her be silent !

Qu'ils le fassent ! (Ind. font.) 2 Let them do it !

NOTE. ~~The *que* clearly implies that some word expressing a wish is understood.~~ **Je veux qu'elle se taise** (**qu'ils le fassent**) is simply more

explicit. **Que je m'en aille**, 'Let me be going,' could once be preceded by **Je veux** (i.e. **Je veux que je m'en aille**), or the like; a subjunctive now gives way to an infinitive when there is no change of person: **Je veux que tu t'en ailles** *but* **Je veux m'en aller**.

On **avoir**, **être**, **pouvoir**, **savoir**, and **vouloir** in imperative or hortative constructions, see § 202. .

Stock Phrases, Mostly Archaic (§ 122, Notes)

b. Examples without que :

Dieu vous bénisse! (Ind. bénit.)	3	God bless you!
S'en aille qui voudra! (Ind. va.)	4	Let anyone go who will!

c. Note also: 1. **A Dieu ne plaise** = 'God forbid.' (Ind. plaît.)—2. **Adviene que pourra** = 'Happen what may.' (Ind. advient; see § 208.)—3. **Coûte que coûte** = 'Cost what it may' *or* 'Whatever it may cost.' (Ind. coûte; see § 206.)—4. **Fussions-nous plus heureux** = 'Would we were happier!' (Ind., e.g., **Si nous étions . . .**)—5. **Le ciel soit loué** = 'Heaven be praised!' (Ind. est.)—6. **Plût à Dieu** = 'Would to God.' (From **plaire**.)—7. **Sauve qui peut!** (i.e., in full, **Se sauve qui peut!**) = 'Every man look out for himself!' (Ind. sauve.)—8. **Soit** [swat] = 'So be it,' 'Granted,' *or* 'All right.'

d. Repeated **soit . . . soit** [swa] means 'either . . . or,' 'whether . . . or,' and requires a subjunctive if verbs are added: **Soit que vous veniez à Paris, soit que vous restiez à Rome** = 'Whether you come to Paris or stay in Rome.' (Ind. venez, restez.)

e. **Qui vive?** ('Who goes there?'), a military term, abbreviates the obsolete call **Y a-t-il âme qui vive?** (ind. vit, from **vivre**), literally 'Is there a soul who lives?' Original form (same meaning), **A il âme qui vive?**

f. **Je ne sache (rien, pas)**, a softened form of **Je ne sais (rien, pas)**, meaning 'I am not aware of anything . . .', 'I am not aware that . . .' (with **pas que**), is due perhaps to the analogy of phrases such as **Il n'y a rien que je sache . . .** 'There is nothing so far as I am aware' (also a softened statement); but its origin is obscure.

g. Occasionally a subjunctive in a main clause has a half-imperative, half-conditional sense:

Vienne le printemps (et) nous pourrions nous revoir. (Ind. vient.)	5	Let spring come and we shall be able to see each other again.
Ayez patience et je vous aiderai.	6	Be patient and I'll help you.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

A. IN NOUN CLAUSES¹

214. In *noun clauses* (always introduced by **que**) French usually requires a subjunctive if the main clause expresses any of the states of mind mentioned in the following sections.

215. **Emotions.** Various *feelings* (slight and strong emotions), such as *surprise, pleasure, approval, willingness, desire*, and their contraries :

Je m'étonne (je suis heureux, 1 I'm astonished (I am pleased,
je veux bien) qu'elle le dise, et je I'm quite willing) that she should
regrette (je désire) que tout le say it, and I regret (I desire) that
monde soit de son avis (ne soit everyone should be of her opinion
pas de son avis). (should not be of her opinion).

Je m'intéresse à ce qu'il réus- 2 I am interested in seeing him
sisse très prochainement, mais je succeed at a very ~~early date~~, but
tiens à ce que personne ne sache am anxious nobody should know
ce qu'il veut faire. what he wishes to do.

Quel dommage qu'il y aille ! 3 What a pity (that) he goes there!

a. Similar examples, in which the meaning of the main clause should be carefully noted: 4. J'aimerais mieux que personne n'en sache rien 'I should prefer that nobody know anything about it.'—5. Donc, vous consentez à ce que nous le fassions ? 'Then you consent to our doing it?'—6. Je comprends [= Je ne m'étonne pas] que vous soyez un peu effaré 'I can understand your being a bit scared.'—7. J'offre qu'on fasse examiner mes comptes 'I offer to let my accounts be examined.'—8. Il n'est pas rare que j'apprenne une nouvelle par eux, mais il est sans exemple qu'ils en aient appris une par moi 'It not infrequently happens [It is not at all strange] that I learn a bit of news through them, but it is unprecedented [amazing] that they should have learned one through me.' Etc.

b. **The Subjunctive by Attraction.** A relative pronoun referring to the subject of a subjunctive usually requires a subjunctive (by *attraction*):

J'aimerais mieux que ce soit toi 9 I should prefer that *you* should
qui le dise. (Ind. dis.) (be the person to) say it.

¹ Clauses equivalent to a noun (or demonstrative pronoun). Compare J'aime ces gens (. . . cela) with J'aime qu'on soit franc = 'I like people to be frank.'

EXERCISES ON §§ 204-215

I. 1. When we are traveling in some foreign country (**pays étranger**) we often regret that we have never learned a language which everyone is speaking round about us. 2. What a pity that one should know only (**ne + vb. + que**) one language. 3. How we regret, sometimes, that nobody ever made us (*L. S. + forcé à*) study at least one foreign language (. . . **étrangère**)! 4. For sometimes we *have* to (**il faut bien que**) make mistakes! 5. If we open our mouths (**la . . .**) we cannot avoid them. 6. Or, on the other hand, we must be silent (**tais-**, *reflex.*) when we should like to say something. 7. Therefore, cost what it may, I'm going to learn French, at least, and there are a lot of other things that my father would like to have me know (would like that I should know).

II. 1. He is interested in seeing me succeed (§ 215, *ex. 2*) as soon as possible, and evidently he wishes *me* (§ 215, *ex. 9*) to make all the efforts (*m.*). 2. He does not want me to waste (**perdre**) time and I do not want him to be dissatisfied with (**mécontent de**) me. 3. Heaven forbid! (§ 213, *c.*) 4. I should like to have him say, 'That boy is working!' 5. It not infrequently happens (§ 215, *ex. 8*) that fathers are obliged to say something very different (**tout autre chose**). 6. Are you astonished that so many students are unable to realize (§ 190, *E*) that? 7. They prefer, perhaps, that their fathers should be the ones to work (§ 215, *ex. 9*, and § 206).

III. 1. Evidently, if we are anxious that nobody should take us (**prend or prenne?**) for dunces, we must 'dig.' 2. We must *wish* (**vouloir**) to do extremely well everything that may (**pouvoir**, *D*) be useful to somebody. 3. Granted! But, you know, *some* people are not of that opinion. 4. They say (**disent**), 'Why work?' or they think it, and whether they are right or wrong (§ 213, *d*, or *simply with que . . . ou que*), their opinion enjoys a great vogue (*same, f.*).

IV. Questionnaire et exercice oral.

TRENTE-SIXIÈME LEÇON

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES (CONTINUED). *CRAINdre*

216. Fear and Negation. Expressions of fear require special attention because of the negatives that may occur with them.

Examples with Group A of craindre [krɛ:dr] ¹

1. Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas. I fear he will not come.
2. Tu crains qu'il (ne) les perde. You fear that he'll lose them.
3. Craint-elle que nous y allions? Does she fear we shall go there?
4. Craignons-nous qu'il n'agisse pas? Do we fear that he won't act?
5. Vous ne craignez pas qu'il s'en aille? Don't you fear that he'll leave?
6. Ne craignent-ils pas qu'on ne fasse rien? Don't they fear that nothing will be done?

Sounds: [krɛ(z)], [krɛ(t)], [krɛ:pɔ(z)], [krɛ:pe(z)], [krɛ:p(t)].

217. Form of the Negative; Summary. If the main clause is interrogative or negative (exs. 3-6), the noun clause must contain both **ne** and a reinforcing negative, or no negative; otherwise (exs. 1 and 2) the noun clause must contain **ne . . . pas** (*personne* etc.) when a negative possibility is feared (ex. 1), and may or may not contain **ne alone** if a positive act is feared (ex. 2).

NOTE. Normally reinforced by **pas** (*point*), **jamais**, **plus**, **rien**, **aucun**, etc., **ne** is sometimes almost meaningless (ex. 2), but is seldom omitted when a verb is truly negated.

218. The Expression of Futurity. Obviously, the 'present subjunctive' (less ambiguously, the simple living subjunctive) can express

¹ Like *craindre* (above and p. 176) are conjugated some thirty verbs in *-aindre*, *-eindre*, or *-oindre*; more, therefore, than follow the type *recevoir* (§ 188). Some of the most frequent (to be learned) are—

contraindre 'compel' (with *à*); *atteindre* 'reach,' 'attain' (if by efforts, with *à*); *ceindre* 'gird'; *éteindre* 'extinguish'; *étreindre* 'clasp'; *feindre* 'feign' (*de* + infn.); *joindre* and *rejoindre*, 'join,' 'rejoin'; *peindre* 'paint'; *plaindre* 'pity' (with *se plaindre de* 'complain of' and *se plaindre que* 'complain that'); and *teindre* 'stain,' 'dye.'

Those in *-oindre* have [wɛ] before *n*; elsewhere [wa].

futurity (exs. 1-6). It may also express present possibilities: **Je crains qu'il ne soit malade** would mean, normally, 'I fear he is ill.'

REMARK. Futurity might be expressed thus: **Je crains qu'il n'aille** (or possibly **qu'il aille**) **être malade** 'I fear he's going to be ill'; *not* by . . . **ne sera malade**. Except occasionally in folk-speech (**le français du peuple**), *all* expressions of fear require the subjunctive in noun clauses.

219. Groups *B-E* of *craindre* will further illustrate the subjunctive.

B: **je craignais** [krɛːpɛ] etc. Note that the inflectional *i* of **craignons** and **craigniez** is usually merged in the **gn** [ɲ]; so that **craignons** usually sounds like **craignons** and **craigniez** like **craignez**.

Nous craignons qu'il n'éteigne 1 We feared (were fearing) he
la lumière. (Colloquial usage.) would put out the light.

Vous craigniez qu'il n'éteignît 2 You feared (were afraid) he
la lumière. (Literary usage.) would put out the light.

C: **je craignis** etc. See § 132, *C*.

D: **je craindrai** etc. Example: **Elle craindra de le faire** 'She will be afraid to do it.' No change of subject; hence (generally) the infinitive.

E: **je craindrais** etc.

Si je ne le connaissais pas si bien, 3 If I didn't know him so well, I
je craindrais qu'il ne le fasse pas. should fear he wouldn't do it.

In literary usage, rather **qu'il ne le fit pas**. (Here a **ferait**, or possibly a **fera**, underlies the subjunctive form.)

L. S.: **je craigne, tu craignes, il craigne, nous craignons** [krɛːpɔ̃], **vous craigniez** [krɛːpɛ], **ils craignent**.

O. S.: **je craignisse** etc. See § 207.

Plût à Dieu que nous ne craignis- 4 Would to God we feared noth-
sions rien. ing.

Imperative (Impv.): **Ne le crains pas. Ne craignons rien. Craignez-les !**

Gerund (Ger.): **en le craignant** '(by, in, through) fearing it,' etc.

Present participle (Pr. part.): **craignant** 'fearing' (without **en**):

Craignant qu'il ne me contrai- 5 Fearing he might (lest he should)
gnît à lui obéir, j'essayai . . . compel me to obey him, I tried . . .

Past participle (P. p. or p. p.): **craint-s, crainte-s.**

Elle avait craint qu'il ne s'en 6 She had feared he would com-
plaignît trop. plain too much about it.

220. Avoir peur (que, de), '(to) be afraid (that, of),' possibly more used than *craindre*, likewise requires the subjunctive in *que*-clauses; likewise *de peur que* and (less colloquially) *de crainte que*, 'for fear that,' 'lest.'

221. The Effect of Changing Subjects. Expressions of fear, like the expressions listed in § 215, require a subjunctive clause in nearly all cases where there is a change of subject, unless *voir*, or some like infinitive, is inserted. Thus:

Je craignais qu'il ne mourût. Or: **Je craignais de le voir mourir.**

(Either means 'I feared he would die.' Such a *voir* ['see'] is often purely figurative. Other devices are used in order to avoid the obsolete subjunctive forms. Here *meure* would be colloquial.)

REMARK. English allows verbal nouns in *-ing* after expressions of fear: 'I feared their spending too much money' = **J'avais peur qu'ils ne dépensent** (bookishly **dépensassent**) **trop d'argent.**

222. Expressions of Necessity etc. Words or clauses expressing various degrees of *necessity*, *advisability*, *fitness*, and the like, or their contraries, require the subjunctive in a *que*-clause:

Il aurait fallu que tu sois levé	1	You would have had to be up
de très bonne heure.		very early.
C'est assez que je te suive.	2	It's enough that I should follow
(Ind. suis.)		you.
Il vaut mieux que ça finisse.	3	It's better that should end.
Je ne mérite pas que vous me	4	I don't deserve to be talked to
parliez comme ça.		by you like that.

a. After *falloir* (*il faut* etc.), and similar verbs or verb phrases, an infinitive is preferable when no stress is laid on the person concerned: **Il faut partir** = 'I (you, we, they, she, he) must be going.' Again, **Il faut le payer** = 'He must be paid.' But a noun (or stressed pronoun), if used, requires the subjunctive: **Il faut que mon frère voie ça** 'My brother must see that.'

b. A subjunctive is preferable when otherwise there would be an indirect object: **Il faut qu'il parte** ('He must leave'), rather than **Il lui faut partir.**

c. The subjunctive must be used when a personal subject is followed by a personal pronoun: **Il faut qu'il le lise** ('He must read it'), *not* **Il lui faut le lire**. Again, **Il faut qu'il se défende** ('He must defend himself') is living French; **Il lui faut se défendre** is not.

EXERCISES

(Write out in full. IV is in review)

I. In § 216 substitute all group *B* of **craindre**; then, for complements, use the following, with a *L. S.* and an *O. S.* in each case:

1. that you would not complain about it. 2. that we should lose them. 3. that he (you, they) would remain there. 4. that you (they, he) would not pity us. 5. that I (we) should leave. 6. lest we (you, she) should never meet them.

II. Where possible, change the number (only) of each verb in the six examples (1-6) in § 219; also, of the examples in § 222. In § 221 substitute the singular of **avoir peur** (*B* and *B p.p.*), and use (**il**) **meure**, (**nous**) **mourions**, (**vous**) **mouriez**, and (**ils**) **meurent**, as well as **mourusse** etc.

III. Substitute *C* or *B p.p.* (**Il fallut**, **Il avait fallu**, etc.) in § 222, and illustrate purely literary usage in the *que*-clause. (Note **suisse** etc., and **lusse** etc. for **lire**.)

IV. 1. You have noticed (§ 188, IV), perhaps, that at the end of a lesson there is often almost a stampede (**un sauve-qui-peut**). 2. 'What luck he didn't continue (*L. S. p.p.*) another hour!' 3. One can easily understand their being glad (§ 215, *ex. 6*), some of these boys. 4. We do not like to be made to work (**qu'on nous**) when we are bored. God forbid! 5. We all of us prefer people to be frank, happen what may! 6. But why is it strange that so few of us know (how to) speak French?


TRENTÉ-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES (CONTINUED). *PARTIR*

223. Mental Reservations. Expressions of positive knowledge make a following *que*-clause indicative; but their antonyms, expressing various degrees of *denial*, *doubt*, etc., generally require a subjunctive in the *que*-clause. Contrasted examples:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Je dis (sais) qu'il a tort. I say (know) that he is wrong.	1	Je ne dis pas qu'il ait tort. I don't say that he is wrong. (Perhaps he isn't.)
Tu crois que nous avons peur. You believe we're afraid.	2	Crois-tu que nous ayons peur? Do you believe we're afraid?
Vous n'ignoriez pas (= Vous saviez) que j'étais parti. You were aware that I had gone away.	3	Vous ignoriez (= Vous ne saviez pas) que je fusse parti. You didn't know that I had gone away. (Perhaps I hadn't.)
Il se rappelle qu'elle lui en a parlé. He remembers that she has spoken to him about it.	4	Il ne se rappelle pas qu'elle lui en ait parlé. He doesn't remember her having spoken to him about it. (Has she?)
J'affirme que cette vente a eu lieu. I affirm that that sale has taken (took) place.	5	Je nie que cette vente ait eu lieu. I deny that that sale has taken (took) place.

NOTE. The subjunctive of rejected reason may be exemplified by 6 and 7:

Elle s'est aperçue de cela. She has noticed that.	6	Non pas qu'elle s'en aperçoive. Not that she notices it.
Si nous ne venons pas,  If we don't come,	7	ce n'est pas que ça nous déplaie. it isn't because we dislike that.

REMARK. After various verbs etc. falling under this head (§ 223), colloquial French tends to allow an indicative, especially when the *que*-clause may easily state a fact. Translate:

Il ne supposait pas que je vous répéterais cela. (So, also, in literary French now; but formerly *répétasse*, or *allasse répéter*, would have been possible in either style, colloquial or formal.)—**Je ne savais pas que tu avais du monde** ('company'), *but obviously you have*.—**Ignorest-tu que je suis malade?** *I am!*—**Crois-tu qu'il ne m'en a pas fallu du courage?** *It did take (has taken) courage on my part.*

QUERY. Why a subjunctive *que*-clause in the following? Translate:

A présent, elle dort (§ 225. *a*). **Non, je ne crois pas qu'elle dorme.**—**Il n'est pas prouvé que tu aies ce droit.**—**Tout cela ne fait pas que j'aie cent mille francs.** (Cf. *C'est ce qui fait que*, or *Voilà pourquoi, j'ai cent mille francs.*)—**Qui vous dit que je veuille partir?**

a. Initial (or Introductory) *que*-clauses. These require the subjunctive even when there is no doubt as to the reality of some state or act: **Que vous ayez dit cela, c'est bien clair** = 'That you (have) said that is very clear'; *but C'est bien clair que vous avez dit cela.*

b. Sembler *que*. Even without *ne . . . pas* we find **il semble** (*semblait* etc.) + *que* generally followed by a subjunctive, unless some indirect object gives *sembler* a more positive tone. Hence, **Il semble que cela leur déplaît** (or *déplait*) 'It seems that that displeases them'; *but Il lui semble* [note *lui*] *que cela leur déplaît.*

c. Paraître *que*. Expressing less doubt than *il semble* etc., *il paraît* (*paraissait* etc.), except when negative or interrogative, is followed by an indicative. Hence, **Il semble que ce soit vrai**, *but Il paraît que c'est vrai*, *but*, again, **Il ne paraît pas que ce soit vrai.**

d. Indirect Questions. Whether introduced by an interrogative word, as *où, qui, quel*, etc., or by *si* = 'whether,' the *que*-clause is indicative: **Sais-tu où elle est?** 'Do you know where she is?'—**Je me demande qui vient et quel est son but.** 'I wonder who's coming and what his purpose is.'—**Le ferait-il?** 'Would he do it?'—**Je ne savais pas s'il en serait capable.** 'I didn't know whether he would be capable of it.'

e. The Type *Qui crois-tu que je sois* (or *suis*)? 'Who do you think I am?' The verb following the conjunction (*que*) will be subjunctive or not (*A-E*) according to the general tendencies of the inverted form (*crois-tu, penses-tu, crains-tu*, etc.). The question seems double. Examples for study:

1. **Qui penses-tu que nous ayons** (perhaps *avons*) *vu*? 2. **Où penses-tu que nous l'avons** (perhaps *avons*) *vu*? 3. **Que crois-tu qu'il ait** (perhaps *a*)? Etc.

224. *The Type partir* [parti:r] '(to) depart,' etc.

(je, tu, il, etc., to be supplied as needed) *

A	L. S.	B	C	O. S.
1. pars [pa:r]	parte [part]	partais	partis	partisse
2. pars [pa:r]	partes [part]	[parte]	[parti]	[partis]
3. part [pa:r]	parte [part]	etc.	etc.	etc.
4. partons [partɔ̃]	partions [partjɔ̃]			
5. partez [parte]	partiez [partje]	See §§ 132 and 207; then		
6. partent [part]	partent [part]	complete B, C, and O. S.		

D: je partirai etc. *E*: je partirais etc. Complete *D* and *E*.*Impv.*: pars, partons, partez. (See 2, 4, 5, of group *A*.)*Ger.*: en partant '(on, in, by, through, while) going away.' Vbl. adj. not used.*P.p.*: parti-s, partie-s. Example: être parti 'to have gone away.'225. Like *partir* (of which all the forms should be learned now) are conjugated —

a. dormir, '(to) sleep.' Examples: *J'ai bien dormi* (note adv.). *Je dors bien* (note adv.). *Elle dort comme une souche* ('like a log'). *Nous ne dormons que d'un œil* ('with one eye open').

Derivative: *endormir* '(to) put to sleep'; *s'endormir* = 'go to sleep,' 'fall asleep.'

In *la Belle au bois dormant* 'the Sleeping Beauty' the verbal adjective (*dormant*) appears to agree with *bois* ('wood'), but is really the old form of the feminine: *eau dormante* 'still water' shows the modern feminine.

b. mentir, '(to) lie,' 'tell lies.' Example: *Elle en a menti* ('about it').

Derivative: *démentir* '(to) give the lie to,' '(to) belie' (with accus.).

Vbl. adj. not used: 'a lying woman' = *une femme qui ment*, or *une femme mensongère*.

c. se repentir, '(to) repent.' Example: *Elle s'en est repentie*, 'She has repented of it,' 'is sorry about it,' etc.

d. sentir, '(to) feel' (perceive by touching, or figuratively), 'smell,' etc. Examples: *Je ne le sais pas, je le sens* 'I don't know it, I feel it.' *Sentez ces fleurs* 'Smell these flowers.' *Elles sentent bon* 'They smell

good.' *Ouvre les fenêtres, ça sent le renfermé* 'Open the windows, there's a stuffy smell.' *Sens-tu la beauté de ces vers ?* 'Do you feel the beauty of these verses?' *Je ne me sens pas bien* 'I feel ill.'

Derivative: *consentir* (à) '(to) consent (to).

e. *servir*, '(to) serve.' Examples: *Servez le dîner* 'Serve dinner.' *Il les sert loyalement* 'He serves them faithfully.' *Ça lui avait servi de leçon* 'That had been a lesson to him.' *Je me sers de cela* 'I make use of that.'

f. *sortir*, '(to) go out,' 'come out'; transitively, '(to) take out' etc. Examples: *Ne sors pas* 'Don't go out.' *Elle est sortie* 'She's gone out.' *Il n'a pas sorti ma malle* 'He hasn't brought out my trunk.'

g. *bouillir* [bujɪ:r], '(to) boil,' intrans.; '(to) boil,' trans., = *faire bouillir*. More or less irregular because group *A* has *bous*, *bous*, *bout*, along with *bouillons*, *bouillez*, *bouillent*.

GENERAL NOTE on the type *partir*. The typical forms *dors*, *mens*, *sers*, and *sors* have lost the consonant heard before *-ir*. Also *dort* etc. In 1 *A*, inversion (e.g. *pars-je*) is avoided.

EXERCISES

I. Using *je ne crois pas*, *croit-on*, and *ne croyez pas*, illustrate the whole *L. S.* of *mentir*.

II. Model: 'I deny that he serves me well' ('badly' etc.).

Vary this by using all *A* of *nier* and all six forms of *servir*.

III. Model: 'That she should have fallen asleep, that is what I can't understand.'

Vary this by using all six forms of each verb, with *L. S. p. p.*

IV. 'Not that I don't fall asleep myself (*moi-même*).' All six forms.

V. (*Oral.*) Exercises with *se rappeler*, negatively and interrogatively, with suitable subjunctive complements to be found in § 225.

VI. (*Oral.*) With *A* of *dire* (*dis*, *dis*, *dit*, *disons*, *dites*, *disent*) supply complements containing subjunctive forms of *se repentir* and *sentir*.

VII. (*Oral.*) Develop the illustrations on page 180.

TRENTE-HUITIÈME LEÇON

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED)

B. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES¹

226. The Subjunctive in Descriptive Relative Clauses. The verb of descriptive relative clauses is usually subjunctive when we deny or doubt the reality of something, or have in mind some unfulfilled ideal. Hence the descriptive subjunctive clause seldom states a fact, but usually expresses characterization without positive, matter-of-fact identification.

a. After *negations* :

Je n'ai aucun livre qui vaille 1 I have no book (that is) worth
celui-ci. (Ind. qui vaut.) as much as this.

Positively, J'ai plusieurs livres qui valent (ind.) celui-ci.

Il n'y a qu'une chose à laquelle 2 There is only one thing that I
je tiens — mon nom. (Ind. je cling to (really care about) — my
tiens.) name.

Positively, Il y a beaucoup de choses auxquelles je tiens.

Des visiteurs? Pas un qui 3 Visitors? Not one who comes
viens pour autre chose que voler for any other purpose but to steal
ou mentir. (Ind. vient.) or lie.

b. After expressions of *idealizing volition*, or the like :

Cherchons un endroit où il y ait 4 Let us look for a place where
moins de monde. (Ind. a.) there are (N.B.) fewer people.

Je choisirai une compagne qui 5 I shall choose a helpmate in
ait ces qualités. whom I may find those qualities.

c. After *conditions* (generally *si*-clauses):

S'il existe une école qui vous 6 If there exists a school that
apprenne moins, montrez-la-moi. teaches one less, show it to me.

¹ Clauses equivalent to a descriptive adjective. Compare J'ai besoin d'un homme qui puisse achever ce travail 'I need a man [whoever he may be] who can finish this work' with J'ai besoin d'un homme compétent (capable d'achever ce travail). Or equivalent to a limiting adjective; see § 227, a.

Quand même tu pourrais trouver 7 Even if you could find someone
quelqu'un qui eût eu cette expé- who had had that experience, how
rience, comment pourrait-il réussir? could he succeed?

In example 7, *aurait* would imply that such a person might be found.

d. After questions :

Savez-vous quelqu'un qui puisse 8 Do you know of anyone who
achever ce travail? can finish this work?

Que pourrais-tu me dire que je 9 What could you tell that I don't
ne sache déjà? know already?

EXERCISES

(Bearing especially upon § 226)

I. 1. Where is the book that contains (*contient? contient-elle?*) no ideas that we haven't met already, somewhere? 2. Show me a book that I can read with pleasure and that will teach me something at the same time. 3. I need one (*Il m'en faut un*) in which there shall be something that I haven't seen in too many other books, things that all my friends don't know, things that may have the charm of novelty (*le charme de la nouveauté*) for them as well as for me. 4. Have you such a book in your library, something you like greatly?

II. 1. Yes, here is one that will please you. 2. It contains no pictures (*pas d'images, f.*), none that is worth much (*grand'chose*), but it is worth much more than all the rest, although (*quoique + subjunctive*) they are numerous (*nombreux*).

III. 1. What is it? 2. *Les Essais de Montaigne*. 3. You haven't read these Essays? 4. Then you must read them (*je lise etc.*). 5. If you like men to be frank, you will like Montaigne. 6. I am not aware (§ 213, *f.*) that any writer (*écrivain*) is deeper (. . . *profond*). 7. I wonder (*se demander*) whether we can find (*D*) some other fine work (*bel ouvrage*) that you haven't read? 8. I have a good many visitors, and not one who comes to (*pour*) steal! but I fear that some of them are not very eager (*n'avoir + grande envie*) to give back what they have borrowed. 9. It is said (*use On*) that books are friends that never deceive; I am not sure that that is true of all my other friends. 10. I must choose my visitors more carefully (*avec plus de prudence*), for if there is anything I really care about it is my books.

227. The Effect of Superlatives. After *superlatives* a relative clause is almost invariably subjunctive, unless the relative clause merely identifies, without any element of emotion :

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| C'est l'homme le plus délicat qu'il y ait à Paris. | 1 | He is the most tactful man (that there is) in Paris. |
| Voilà le plus beau paysage qu'on puisse contempler. | 2 | That is the finest landscape that one can behold. |
| Nous avons fait le moins qu'on puisse faire. | 3 | We have done the least that one can do. |

But, De ces trois enfants, c'était le plus laid que nous avions aimé le mieux 'Of those three children, it was the plainest that we had liked best.'

a. The Effect of Limiting Adjectives. After the *limiting adjectives* premier, dernier, seul, and unique an adjective clause is usually subjunctive, owing to the reservation (or, sometimes, to a certain element of wonder) which these four words here express :

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| Voilà le premier homme qui m'ait compris ! | 4 | There is the first man who has understood me ! |
| Jean n'est ni le premier ni le dernier qui ait fait ces recherches, mais il est la seule personne que tout le monde veuille louer. | 5 | John is neither the first nor the last who has made these investigations, but he is the only person whom everyone is willing to praise. |
| Les frères Wright sont les premiers qui aient su fabriquer un aéroplane praticable. | 6 | The Wright brothers are the first who found out how to make a workable aëroplane. |
| Michot est le seul homme du parti qui jouisse de la confiance des cantons ruraux. | 7 | Michot is the only man in the party who enjoys the confidence of the country districts. |

In example 7, *jouit* (ind.) would make *parti* the antecedent of *qui*.

NOTE 1. As for § 227, *a*, the indicative (especially in *A* and *B* and *A p. p.*) is likely to occur when the relative clause is to have a positive tone; and *D*, *E*, *D p. p.*, and *E p. p.* may be required when futurity or the conditional situation would otherwise be obscured. Examine and translate the following examples: 1. Vous rappelez-vous la première fois que nous nous sommes rencontrés? 2. Depuis huit ans que nous sommes mariés ('During eight years that we've been married'), c'est la première fois que nous nous quittons. 3. J'ai fait la seule chose qu'il ne fallait pas faire. 4. Et lui . . . c'était le seul homme que j'aimais. 5. Épouse qui tu

veux, . . . épouse qui tu aimes, . . . voilà la seule loi que je comprends. (Here *comprene* might have been expected, for the speaker means to *characterize* the law.) 6. Jacques est le seul critique qui sera, or serait, à même ('in a position') de nous éclaircir sans aucune réserve.

NOTE 2. *Ne . . . que* ('only') has the same effect as *seul*: *Il n'y a que moi qui le sache* (*not sait*) 'I am the only one who knows it.'

REMARK on *que je sache* 'so far as I am aware.' That the *que* of this locution is really the accusative relative pronoun is shown, e.g., by *C'en est le meilleur* ('That is the best of them'), *que je sache*; but this fact is obscured in e.g. *Il n'est pas venu, que je sache*. (See § 213, *f*.) Positive assertion is similarly attenuated in *autant que je sache* (same meaning), *autant qu'il m'en souvienn*e (ind. *souvient*) 'so far as I remember,' etc.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE (EXERCICE SUPPLÉMENTAIRE)

I. 1. French children¹ learn (*apprennent*) French with more or less ease (*facilité*)² because they hear it spoken (*l'entendent parler*) every day. 2. It is almost the only language that most French children are in a position to learn! 3. They repeat what they hear, modifying it (*tout en le modifiant*) according to what they wish to say. 4. Thus, little by little (*peu à peu*), they attain (*atteindre à*) perfection, or the mistakes that they make become less numerous (*nombreuses*). 5. They have learned to speak almost as they have learned to walk (*marcher*), but the lesson has lasted (*durer*) longer.

II. 1. Do you think that the case is the same for us (§ 157, *line 12*) when we are learning (*apprenons*) French? 2. Do we not waste a good deal of time if we try to learn it without rules? 3. If you are learning some game, how do you know whether such and such a thing is allowed (*permis-e*)?

III. 1. What are the rules given in the first lesson in (*de*) French that you ever studied? 2. Is this the most difficult lesson (*adj. last*) that we have had, or one of the easiest? 3. Have you done the most that you can do? (*L.S.*) 4. If one does not learn (*apprendre*) well the only subjects that one has chosen, what happens?

¹ Les petits Français.

TRENTE-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

INDEFINITE RELATIVES: *QUI QUE CE SOIT* ETC.
THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

228. *Qui que . . . , quoi que . . . , quel que . . . ,* etc., followed by a subjunctive, express what is technically called *concession of indifference*, for the speaker is or seems to be indifferent as to the exact identity of something. Examples:

Qui que vous soyez, sortez.	1	Whoever you are (may be), go out.
Qui que ce soit qui le fasse, il le regrettera amèrement.	2	Whoever (it may be that) does it, he will regret it bitterly.
Quoi que ce soit que vous cherchiez, vous vous égarez.	3	Whatever (it may be that) you're looking for, you're going astray.
Quoi que devienne une femme, il vaut mieux qu'elle soit instruite.	4	Whatever a woman may become, it is better for her to be educated.
Quelle que fût son ambition, elle échoua complètement.	5	Whatever his ambition was, it failed utterly.

REMARKS. (a) When 'anybody' or 'whoever' is equivalent to '(all) those who or whom,' or to 'he who,' 'him who,' use (*tous*) *ceux qui*, (*tous*) *ceux que*, *celui qui*, *celui que*, etc., with an indicative or conditional. Note also *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*, 'whatever,' and *quiconque* (§ 176).

(b) *Qui que*, *quoi que*, and *quel que* are usually followed by subjunctive forms of *être* or *devenir*, and thus paraphrased *quoi que* cannot be mistaken for *quoique* meaning 'although'; but *qui que vous cherchiez*, or *quoi que vous fassiez* 'whatever you (may) do,' would be clear.

(c) *Quel* (variable) + *que* requires a subjunctive form of *être* (ex. 5); *quelque-s* occurs, colloquially and otherwise, before nouns (*Quelque-s amis que vous ayez* 'Whatever friend-s you may have'), but is not colloquial before adjectives (*Quelque odieuses que fussent ces mesures* 'However odious these measures were.') Compare *Quelle que soit son ambition* with *Quelle ambition qu'il ait*.

(d) In examples 2 and 3, the verb of a relative clause is subjunctive by *attraction* and thus continues the vagueness of the preceding clause.

(e) *Qui que ce soit* often = *personne*, and *quoi que ce soit* often = *rien*: *Je ne ferai cela pour qui que ce soit* 'I will not do that for anyone'; *Je ne*

me soucie de quoi que ce soit 'I don't worry (concern myself) about anything.' (Note that **pas** is here omitted.)

(f) **Où que**, 'wherever,' 'whithersoever,' and **d'où que** 'from wherever,' similarly require a subjunctive: **Où que j'aille, je ne t'oublierai pas** 'Wherever I (may) go, I shall not forget you'; **Il acceptera cet argent d'où qu'il vienne** 'He will accept that money, wherever it comes from.' (These subjunctive clauses are adverbial, but **que j'aille** and **qu'il vienne** have an adjective force.)

(g) **Si** + adjective + subjunctive is both frequent and colloquial: **Si brève que soit cette page, elle est trois fois trop longue** 'Brief though that page may be (*or is*), it is three times too long'; also **si brève soit-elle, without que**. (Cf. *c.*) Note also **si** + adverb + subjunctive: **Je ne subirai aucune contrainte, de si haut qu'elle vienne** 'I will not submit to any compulsion, from however far up it may come.'

(h) **Tout** (variable) + adjective + subjunctive concedes a possibility: **Toute sottise qu'elle paraisse, elle vous comprend fort bien** 'Silly though she may appear, she understands you very well.' The indicative, if used, concedes a fact: **Toute sottise qu'elle est**, etc.

(i) **Pour peu que** ('however little'), adverbial, requires the subjunctive.

EXERCISE I

1. I should like you to know (**que vous sachiez**) something with regard to (**au sujet de**) our Angélique. 2. Whatever may be the reasons that led her father and mother to give her this name, she is worthy of it (**en . . . digne**). 3. We do not deny what is evident: she is rather ugly; but, however ugly she may be, she has several qualities that we call *rare*. 4. Little though (*Rem. i*) we may please her at times (**parfois**), she never gets angry (**s'empporter**). 5. And whatever wealth (**richesse, f.**) she may have seen elsewhere, she does not complain that our house is (*Sj.*) too small or that we haven't enough furniture. 6. Simple though our tastes (**goûts, m.**) may be (*Rem. c, Rem. g*), she does not criticize them (**critiquer**). 7. If we have visitors, whoever they may be, she never denies that we are at home. 8. That, perhaps, is a defect. 9. Wherever we go, we never fear that Angélique may have departed during our absence (**absence, f.**). 10. She never worries about anything or (**ni**) anybody, whatever her thoughts may be or whatever ambitions she may have. 11. Ugly though she is, we do not wish to lose her.

C. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES¹

229. Concession. A concessive clause *concedes a fact or possibility* that might naturally be expected to keep our main clause from being or from becoming true. Such *que*-clauses nearly always require the subjunctive (cf. § 228, *h*). Examples :

Bien qu'il mente, on le croit.	1	Although he lies, he is believed.
Elle n'est pas très vieille, quoiqu'elle en ait l'air.	2	She is not very old, although she looks so.

REMARK. Especially when truly initial (*Quoique*), *quoique* is not so colloquial as *bien que* (*not bienque!*). On *quoi que*, see § 228, *b*.

NOTE 1. Although certain grammarians declare such usage wrong, non-subjunctive forms occasionally follow *quoique* and *bien que*: *C'est bien dit, mon chéri, quoique j'aimerais bien à te voir une fois à bout de patience* 'Quite so, deary, though I'd like to see you just once at the end of your patience.' (*Le Typhon*, I, 8.)

NOTE 2. *Encore que* 'even though' requires the subjunctive; likewise, usually, *malgré que* 'in spite of the fact that'; *nonobstant que* 'notwithstanding that' requires the subjunctive, but is rare.

a. A subjunctive clause may express a more or less vague hypothesis (supposition) as well as concession :

Que la calomnie soit vraie ou fausse, vous en voyez l'effet ce soir.	3	Whether the libel be true or false, you see the effect of it this evening.
--	---	--

b. A concessive clause may suggest a cause :

Soit qu'il fût malade, soit qu'il fût retenu par des affaires, il ne put pas venir.	4	Whether he was ill or was detained by business matters, he could not come.
---	---	--

QUERIES. What is expressed by the following subjunctive? *Tu joues un jeu tant soit peu cruel* 'The game you are playing is just a bit cruel'; or by this? *Quoi qu'il en soit, je pars demain* 'Whatever the truth may be, I leave to-morrow'; or by this? *Quoi qu'il leur arrivât, ils ne canaient jamais* 'Whatever happened to them, they never showed the white feather.'

¹ An adverb or adverbial phrase could be substituted for any of the subjunctive clauses in §§ 229-230. The *que*-clauses in § 228 resemble adjectives.

Quoi que ce soit qu'il y ait dans votre vie, dites-le moi = 'Whatever may be going wrong in your life, tell me what it is'; why two subjunctives?

Are the following subjunctive clauses adverbial?—**Mettons qu'ils m'aient aidé, qu'est-ce que cela lui fait?** Let us suppose that they have helped me, what is that to him? **Il se peut que tout le monde ait tort, je m'en fiche.** It may be that everyone is wrong, I don't care a rap.

230. Provisos. **Pourvu que** 'provided (that),' **à moins que** 'unless,' **au cas que** (bookish) 'in case' (but *not au cas où*), and various other phrases of like value, require the subjunctive. Examples:

Je vous confierai mon secret, 1 I'll entrust my secret to you, **pourvu que vous promettiez de n'en parler à qui que ce soit.** 1 provided you promise not to speak of it to *anyone*.

A moins que vous ne me juriez cela, pas un mot! 2 Unless you swear that to me, not one word!

Au cas que vous partiez, il faudra m'en avertir. 3 In case you go away, you must let me know about it.

a. The Subjunctive of Added Condition. To avoid repeating **et si** ('and if') a subjunctive clause is often used: **S'il pleut, et que vous ne puissiez pas sortir, que ferons-nous?** 'If it rains, and you can't go out, what shall we do?'

EXERCISE II

I. 1. Although we have received all our parcels (**paquets, m.**), they contain nothing that we need. 2. In spite of the fact that I have telephoned twice, I get (**recevoir**) no answer that I can understand. 3. Unless I receive a message (**une dépêche**) before seven o'clock, I shall have to remain here, although I wish to go with you. 4. It may be that my friends don't know where I am; whatever the truth may be, I regret that they haven't been prompt. 5. Whether they are detained by business or have not received my invitation, I cannot wait. 6. In case you can see them, I wish you to tell them where I shall be. 7. What they are doing seems to me just a bit annoying. 8. I'm not angry (**en colère**), though I should like to tell them frankly what I think.

II. Where possible, change the person or number of each subjunctive form in § 228 (exs. 1-5) and §§ 229-230 (the numbered examples).

QUARANTIÈME LEÇON

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES (CONTINUED): CLAUSES OF PURPOSE
AND RESULT, OF TIME AND MANNER

231. When *clauses of purpose* cannot be expressed by an infinitive, they must be expressed by a subjunctive clause. Examples:

Je le dis pour que tu le saches, 1	I say it in order that you may know it, — to inform you.
Embrasse-moi que je m'en aille. 2	Kiss me and then I can go.
Agissez de sorte que personne n'ait à se plaindre. 3	Act in such wise (so) that nobody may (shall) have to complain.

NOTE 1. *Pour que* (ex. 1) is more colloquial than *afin que*. Besides these we find *en sorte que*, *de manière (façon) à ce que*, etc. Example 2 (with a simple *que*) is allowed by its *imperative*; such clauses usually express a wish (cf. § 215).

NOTE 2. Purpose cannot always be clearly distinguished from result (ex. 3).

232. When *clauses of result* cannot be expressed by an infinitive, they contain the indicative if the result is regarded as a reality; the subjunctive if it seems merely likely, or if the main clause is negative or interrogative or expresses any form of proviso. Contrasting examples:

Jacques était si (tellement) naïf 1 qu'il gobait tout.	Jacques n'était pas si (tellement) naïf qu'il ne s'exprimât très bien parfois.
James was so simple-minded that he would swallow anything.	J. wasn't so simple but that he expressed himself very well sometimes.
Ces gens ont tant de toupet que 2 rien ne les fera hésiter.	Sont-ils si (tellement) effrontés que rien ne les fasse hésiter?
Those folks have so much cheek nothing will make them hesitate.	Are they so brazen that nothing makes them hesitate?

NOTE. In example 2 (right column), *ferait* or *fera* might replace *fasse* if the conditional mood or the future tense were desired. Test this and translate your result.

a. When **pour que** is required, as after **assez**, **trop**, and certain other expressions, the subjunctive must be used, even though the **que**-clause may state a reality. Examples :

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| Il y avait assez de fond (d'eau) | 3 | There was enough water for the |
| pour que le bateau pût partir. | | boat to be able to sail. |
| Elle a été trop bonne pour que | 4 | She has been too kind for us to |
| nous puissions l'oublier. | | be able to forget her. |
| Les chances sont pour que je | 5 | The chances are that I shall go |
| m'en aille demain. | | away to-morrow. |

REMARK. Standard English expresses *purpose* with *may* and *might* after *in order that*, and commonly after *so that*; but expresses *result* with *can* and *could*. Compare 'He had hidden a file, so that he might escape' with 'He had hidden a file, so that he could escape' (and *did* escape).

b. Subjunctives of purpose and result are sometimes akin to what we may call the prospective subjunctive, which, like the subjunctive of purpose, often implies a desire. Example :

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Attends (jusqu'à ce) qu'il vienne. | 6 | Wait till he comes (for him to come). |
|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|

233. The Subjunctive in Clauses of Time. **Après que**, 'after,' is invariably followed by an indicative; **avant que**, 'before,' invariably by a subjunctive. Example :

Je le vis après qu'il eut quitté sa maison mais avant qu'il arrivât au pont = I saw him after he had left his house, but before he reached the bridge.

a. **En attendant que**, 'until,' requires the subjunctive; likewise (generally) **s'attendre à ce que**, '(to) look forward to . . . ing':

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| Je m'attends à ce qu'il fasse | 1 | I'm expecting him to do some- |
| quelque sottise. | | thing silly. |
| En attendant qu'il la fasse, ne | 2 | Until he does it, let's not get |
| nous emportons pas. | | excited. |

b. **Jusqu'à ce que** is commonly followed by an indicative when the event is past and no idea of purpose is present; otherwise by a subjunctive. Examples :

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| Ils voulaient y rester jusqu'à ce | 3 | They wished to remain there |
| que nos études fussent achevées. | | until our studies were (?) finished. |

Notre bon Azor resta jusqu'à ce que ces insectes se montrèrent. 4 Our good Rover stayed until those insects appeared.

REMARKS. A purely external fact; hence **montrèrent** instead of **montrassent**. In colloquial French the subjunctive is frequently avoided by the use of **jusqu'au moment où** 'until the moment when,' **jusqu'à l'époque où** 'until the time when,' etc. *The French use jusqu'à ce que much less often than we use 'until.'* See page 78, IV, and § 378, a.

c. **Avant que . . . ne** (without **pas**) is allowable when the main clause is affirmative. In meaning it differs little, if at all, from a simple **avant que**:

Faites ça avant qu'il (ne) soit trop tard. 5 Do that before it's too late.

234. The Subjunctive in Clauses of Manner and Contrast. **Sans que**, **loin que**, and **au lieu que** require the subjunctive. Examples:

Il avale tout sans que cela le rende plus gras. 1 He swallows everything without that making him fatter.

Ma jeunesse s'était passée sans que je m'en aperçoive. 2 My youth had passed without my being aware of it.

Loin que ce soit lui qui ait dit ça, c'est toi qui l'as dit. 3 Far from its being he who said that, it was you.

Au lieu qu'il y en ait deux, il y en a au moins cent. 4 Instead of there being two of them, there are at least a hundred.

REMARK. In literary or in spoken French, **sans que** may be replaced by **que . . . ne** if the main clause is negative: **Je ne sortais jamais qu'il ne m'arrivât quelque chose** = 'I never went out without something happening to me, or but something happened to me.'

EXERCISES

Replace with correct forms the infinitives in italics

I. Bien que nous *entendre* dire très souvent que telle personne 1
 parle « parfaitement » six ou sept langues, parfois cinquante-six
 ou cinquante-sept — le nombre varie de deux à cent, — et quoiqu'il 3
 y *avoir* beaucoup de gens à qui de telles assertions ne paraissent
 pas du tout étranges, pour peu que nous *pouvoir* (§ 202) et *vouloir* 5
 (*voul-*) les examiner, nous apprendrons qu'elles sont presque toutes
 exagérées ou fausses. Mais nous n'aurons nous-mêmes aucun 7

moyen de savoir à quel point elles sont exagérées ou fausses, à moins que nous ne *savoir* « parfaitement », nous aussi! la langue 9
ou les langues dont il *s'agit*.

II. Il y a des millions de braves gens qui gobent tout ce qu'on 11
leur raconte sans que cela les *rende* plus intelligents. *Être que*
les légendes leur *faire* plaisir, comme légendes, *être* qu'ils *n'avoit* 13
pas l'habitude de questionner quiconque *avoir* l'air d'être bien
renseigné, instruit, ils acceptent les légendes et les répètent, 15
tout en leur donnant (*simply 'giving them'*) quelque forme nou-
velle; en sorte que, au lieu qu'il y *avoit* une seule version d'une 17
croyance quelconque, il y en *avoit* des centaines. Pourvu que
cette croyance *avoir* tant *être* peu de charme, elle ne manquera 19
pas de se répandre.

III. Quoi qu'il en *être* de cela, on peut dire des langues ce 21
qu'on peut dire de tout autre sujet d'étude: Personne n'a jamais
réussi à en apprendre complètement aucune, et cependant, à condi- 23
tion qu'on y *mettre* (*met?* ou *mette?*) de la bonne volonté ('shows
provis willingness') et qu'on *savoir* profiter de tous les talents qu'on pos- 25
sède, on arrivera peut-être à employer « correctement » une petite
partie du français ou de quelque autre langue étrangère. Si petite 27
que *être* cette partie, elle augmentera la joie de vivre. Travaillons
donc, avant qu'il *être* trop tard, et jusqu'à ce que nous ne *trouver* 29
plus rien à apprendre. En attendant, il se peut que nous *rencon-*
trer quelqu'un qui *savoir* « parfaitement » six ou soixante langues. 31

IV. *Traduisez*: 1. Come here and I'll tell you what I've seen
(§ 231). 2. Is there any (**Existe-t-il un**) problem so difficult that
no one can solve it (*résoudre*)? 3. Is there water enough for the
boat to be able to sail? 4. Do you never see X but that he tells
you something strange? 5. Does he talk in such a manner that
everyone can (could, will be able to) understand him? 6. Can you
wait till my work is finished? 7. Are there books enough for every-
one to have two? (*Use en.*) 8. Are these phrases too difficult for you
to be able to translate them?

QUARANTE ET UNIÈME LEÇON

THE PAST SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONS. TENSE-VALUES
OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

235. Conditions. In purely literary French, a past condition contrary to fact (§ 95) may have a pluperfect subjunctive in either clause or in both. Examples:

PURELY LITERARY USAGE	COLLOQUIAL OR LITERARY
S'ils fussent venus, nous eussions pu les voir.	S'ils étaient venus, nous aurions pu les voir.

English for either: If they had come, we could have seen them.

Si vous eussiez cédé, tout eût été perdu.	Si vous aviez cédé, tout aurait été perdu.
--	---

English for either: If you had yielded, everything would have been lost.

NOTE 1. In reality, the subjunctive *forms eussions (pu) and eût (été perdu)* are not less conditional in *mood* than are *aurions (pu) and aurait (été perdu)*; likewise, *fussent (venus) and eussiez (cédé)* express the same fundamental idea as do *étaient (venus) and aviez (cédé)*. The difference is one of style.

NOTE 2. A past condition contrary to fact may take this form: **Je lui eusse offert un Raphaël qu'il n'eût pas été plus heureux** 'Even had I offered him a Raphael he would not have been happier.' (Cf. § 95, *b*, and § 98.)

NOTE 3. Very often, one of the two clauses is not expressed, or is concealed: **Gobseck enleva l'enfant comme si ç'eût été une plume**; that is, **G. enleva l'enfant comme il l'aurait enlevé si cet enfant avait été une plume**: 'G. lifted the child out of his way as if it had been a feather'; that is, 'G. lifted the child as (he would have lifted it) if it had been a feather.'

Observe also **Elle eût voulu s'occuper à autre chose** 'She would have liked to busy herself with something else' (if that had been possible). Again, **Sa maison et lui se ressemblaient. Vous eussiez dit l'huître et son rocher.** 'His house and he resembled each other. You would have said [if you had been asked for such comparison]: the oyster and its rock.' Again, **Elles allaient me recevoir avec plus de respect que si j'eusse été leur propre père**; that is, **Si j'avais été leur propre père** etc. — but here we should have to distort the second clause excessively.

cond.
cond.

236. Without *si*, but inverted, a simple past subjunctive form may express a condition contrary to probability or (occasionally) contrary to fact :

Mais, intentassiez-vous un procès, But, should you start a lawsuit,
l'issue en serait plus que douteuse. the outcome of it would be more
 than dubious.

Colloquially, **Mais, quand même vous intenteriez . . .** (§ 97), or **Même si vous intentiez . . .**, etc. Cf. § 235, Note 2.

237. **Tense-values of the Subjunctive Forms.** Whereas the indicative has ten different groups of forms¹ to mark the time (tense) of an act or state (§§ 107-112), the subjunctive has only four. Therefore the subjunctive forms either cannot express *tense* so clearly as the indicative, or their tense-values must be determined from the context. This fact is particularly evident in *spoken* French, for in spoken French all forms of the past subjunctive in *-asse, -isse, -usse*, etc., have ceased to be used.

a. In literary usage, the 'present' subjunctive forms must cover the tense-values of the present indicative (*A*) and of the future indicative (*D*). Thus **Je crains qu'il ne le fasse pas** may mean *either* 'I fear he is not doing it' *or* 'I fear he will not do it.' See § 218, Remark, and note. **Je craignais qu'il ne fût malade** = 'I feared he was ill,' as compared with **Je craignais qu'il n'allât être malade** = 'I feared he would be ill.'

b. Again, the 'present perfect' subjunctive must cover the future perfect indicative (*D p.p.*) as well as the present perfect indicative (*A p.p.*). Compare **Je pense qu'il est (sera) arrivé à temps**, 'I think he has (will have) arrived in time,' with **Je crains qu'il ne soit pas arrivé à temps**, which *might* mean 'I fear he will not have arrived in time' as well as 'I fear he has not arrived in time.'

c. The simple 'past' subjunctive forms must cover the indicative and conditional groups *B, C*, and sometimes *E*. **Quoiqu'ils s'exprimassent bien** may mean *either* 'Although they were expressing themselves well' (*ils s'exprimaient bien*) *or* 'Although [*at a definite moment*] they expressed themselves well' (*ils s'exprimèrent bien*); and **Je ne ferais (or ferai) rien qui pût leur nuire**, 'I would not (*or* will not) do anything that might harm them,' would make *pût* stand for *pourrait*.

¹ Eleven, if we count the 'compound past anterior' (§ 111).

d. The pluperfect subjunctive forms (*j'eusse parlé*) must cover the pluperfect group *B p.p.* (*j'avais parlé*), possibly the group *C p.p.* (*j'eus parlé*¹), and the group *E p.p.*, or past conditional (*j'aurais parlé*). *Je nie qu'il l'eût dit* might mean *either* 'I deny that he had said it' (*l'avait dit*) or 'I deny that he would have said it' (*l'aurait dit*).

238. Wherever a subjunctive construction is required, purely literary French generally acts according to the correspondences indicated in § 237, *a-d*; whereas all unaffected conversation, familiar letters, and the like, allow only the forms indicated as living (§§ 207, 209-210), or substitute, in some cases, an indicative or conditional form; that is, every form belonging to the groups in *-asse, -isse, -usse, etc.*,² is excluded. Therefore, in spoken French, we find either the 'present' subjunctive (e.g. *nous ayons, nous soyons*), or the 'present perfect' (e.g. *nous ayons fait, nous soyons venus*), or a non-subjunctive construction. The following examples show how the dying forms may occur in supposedly realistic plays etc., and how they may be mixed with living forms:

Je voudrais que vous le vissiez. 1 I should like you to see him
(See ex. 2.) (. . . *that you should see him*).

So speaks the orderly, Theillard, in *L'Émigré*, by Paul Bourget, Act III, sc. 1. A moment later (ex. 2) he is represented as saying what such a person would naturally say; also all other persons, unless the subjunctive were avoided:

Je voudrais que vous le voyiez. 2 I should like you to see him.
J'aimerais mieux que son père 3 I would rather his father were
fût riche et que nous n'ayons [for rich and that we never had (should
n'eussions)] jamais d'ennuis. never have) any vexations.
Si l'on venait frapper à cette 4 If anyone should come and
porte, et que je sente [for *sentisse*] knock at that door, and I felt I
qu'il me faut [*N.B.*] *répondre,* ought to respond, I should become
je deviendrais nerveuse. — nervous.

(Example 4 from *Adrienne Lecouvreur*, by Sarah Bernhardt, Act I, sc. 6.)

¹ The subjunctive very seldom stands for this group, and it might properly be disregarded.

² Including *vinisse* (*venir*) and all other exceptional forms.

Pour bien vous répondre, il faudrait que j'aie [for j'eusse] pu comparer. 5 In order to give you a good answer I should have had to compare.

(A. Capus, *La Veine*, I, 3)

Je voulais que ce soit toi qui le dises. 6 I wanted *you* to say it.

(In purely literary French, *que ce fût toi qui le disses.*)

J'avais peur qu'on ne vous l'ait pas dit assez tôt [for l'eût etc.]. 7 I was afraid they hadn't told you soon enough.

EXERCISES

I. Wherever possible, change the subject (person and number) and the tense of every verb-form in §§ 233-238 (examples).

In the following exercise doubtful forms are indicated. Use the literary verb-form as well as the living form wherever either is possible.

II. 1. We feared (*B*) that you would arrive too late, or that you would be unable to come. 2. Although the others would have been able to come, we shouldn't have been able to wait for them. 3. We were expecting them to arrive here before three o'clock. 4. I fear that our friends may have been detained by business matters. 5. In order to give them a good answer we should have had to compare all their letters with all ours. 6. If anyone comes, and you feel (*L. S.*) I ought to see him, please knock at my door. 7. I would rather *you* knocked (*L. S.*) than the servant (*simply que ce soit . . .*). 8. Although I have never met that lady, I must wait for her. 9. If she had written (*two ways*) two days earlier, I shouldn't have felt (*se sentir*) so nervous (*f.*). 10. Should she start a lawsuit, what would the outcome of it be?

(Vary your translation of these sentences by changing the person and number of the verbs wherever such changes will make reasonable groups.)

III. Make a table to display the correspondences stated in §§ 237-238.

QUARANTE-DEUXIÈME LEÇON

THE INFINITIVE

239. The French *infinitive* (*l'infinitif*) is a *verbal noun* ending in -er, -ir, -oir, or -re (as in **parler, finir, avoir, être**). It corresponds closely both to our simple stem-infinitive, with or without 'to,' as in 'I can swim,' 'I like to swim,' and to our gerund in *-ing*, as in 'I-love swimming,' 'I am fond of swimming.' Infinitive forms used as pure nouns have the same limitations as pure nouns; hence, **mon devoir** 'my duty,' **mes devoirs** 'my duties,' but *not* **mon devoir parler** for **mon devoir de parler**; for **mon** makes **devoir** a common noun. Cf. **sans devoir parler** 'without having to speak.'

240. **The Pure Infinitive.** This term describes any infinitive not preceded by a meaningless **à** or **de**; that is, an **à** or **de** employed merely as a grammatical link, like 'to' in 'I wish to go' (cf. I will go'). In **Je commence à parler** 'I begin to speak,' or in **Je refuse de répondre** 'I refuse to reply,' **à** and **de** have lost whatever meaning they may once have had, whereas in **Cela me porte à croire** 'That leads me to believe,' or in **Je m'abstiens de parler** 'I refrain from speaking,' both **à** and **de** are easily understood, and the infinitives following them may be called *pure* infinitives; however, '*pure*' is commonly applied to an infinitive which *no* preposition precedes, as in **Mentir serait honteux, je n'aimerais pas mentir** 'To lie would be shameful, I shouldn't like to lie,' **Elle est censée être riche** 'She's supposed to be rich,' etc.

REMARK. Formerly, almost any infinitive could be treated syntactically like other non-verbal nouns (e.g. **chien**), and a few have kept this capacity as well as their more clearly verbal functions; **un bon dîner** 'a good dinner,' **au revoir** 'good-by,' **cet être** 'that being,' **les êtres humains** 'human beings,' **les parlars parisiens** 'Parisian speech-types,' etc.

241. **Prepositional Infinitives.** The infinitive may follow the simple prepositions **à, de, par, pour, sans, entre,** and **après**; but after **par, entre,** and **après**, its use is limited.

a. An infinitive may follow **par** only after **commencer** or its antonym **finir** :

J'avais commencé par travailler, 1 I had begun by working,
j'ai fini par ne rien faire. ended by doing nothing.

b. **Entre** occasionally appears in comparisons :

Il m'a donné à choisir entre m'en 2 He has given me my choice
aller de la maison ou accepter une between going away from home
condition qui est le reniement de and accepting a condition which
ma foi. amounts to a denial of my faith.

(Bourget, *Un Divorce*, III, 8)

c. **Après** occurs only before **avoir** or **être** + a past participle :

Après avoir parlé, après être 3 After speaking (having spoken),
sortie, elle . . . after coming out (having come
out), she . . .

REMARKS. The compound must really express a past tense ; **après être décidé** would therefore be wrong, though **après s'être décidée, elle . . .** would be right, for it would mean 'after deciding, she . . .' **Après boire**, 'after drinking,' as in **chansons après boire**, is an archaism (§ 122, Notes), because we cannot say, e.g., **après manger**.

d. **A (à), de, pour, and sans** may precede any infinitive with which they make a combination allowed by the context :

Je m'applique à étudier, je com- 4 I am applying myself to study-
mence à apprendre. (ing), I am beginning to learn.

Tu parles de partir, je te prie 5 You talk of leaving, I ask you
de rester. to remain.

Cela va sans dire. 6 That goes without saying (is
obvious).

Il faut manger pour vivre, et 7 We should eat to live, and not
non pas vivre pour manger. live to eat.

Vous passez pour devoir de l'ar- 8 You are supposed to owe money
gent à tout le monde. to everybody.

NOTE 1. All other prepositions (**avant, avec, contre, dans, derrière**, etc.) are absolutely ruled out. Hence, **avant de partir** 'before going away,' **avant de m'être convaincu** 'before having convinced myself,' etc. (This **de** is a mere link, as in example 5, before **rester** ; note **à** in example 4.)

NOTE 2. Various prepositional compounds end in *à* or *de*: *de façon à montrer* 'in such a way as to show,' *jusqu'à mourir* 'to-the point of dying,' *afin de marcher* 'in order to walk,' *près de tomber* 'near falling,' *à moins de les persuader* 'unless I (someone) should persuade them,' *faute de croire* 'through not believing,' etc.

242. **Person, Number, and Tense.** The infinitive is wholly non-committal as to person and number, and whatever tense-value it may have is derived from an adjoining past participle (*avoir dit* = 'to have said'), a finite verb, or some other word:

Tout avoir et tout perdre!	1	To have everything and to lose it all!
Ne rien faire! Quelle façon de s'enrichir!	2	To do nothing! What a way to get rich!
Tu ne lui en veux pas? — Lui en vouloir? Non.	3	You don't bear her a grudge? — Bear her a grudge? No.
Et dire qu'elle n'est plus là!	4	And to think that she's no longer there!

QUERY. In examples 3 and 4 why have *vouloir* and *dire* a present value?

a. By combining *avoir* or *être* with a suitable past participle we get what is called the *past* (or *perfect*) *infinitive*:

Je vous remercie d'être venu et d'avoir amené vos amis.	5	I thank you for having come and for having brought your friends.
--	---	--

REMARK. When not thus compounded (ex. 5), a complementary infinitive represents an untermi-nated action or state as occurring after or during the time expressed by the preceding verb. In *Je veux* (*voulais, voulus, voudrai, voudrais, avais voulu, aurais voulu*) *partir* (*meaning?*) what is it that indicates the tense? Also in *J'aimais à lire*?

QUESTIONNAIRE. *Comment traduit-on en anglais les phrases suivantes?* 1. Je viendrai déjeuner chez vous. 2. Nous viendrons vous trouver à la gare de Vincennes, comme c'est là que tu vas descendre. 3. Moi, avoir de l'or? 4. Comment jeter un pont sur cet abîme? 5. Que penser de cette lettre? et que répondre? 6. Que faire? 7. Après m'être ennuyé tellement là-bas, je n'avais aucune envie d'y retourner. 8. A partir d'aujourd'hui, je veux rester chez moi. 9. Ne m'invite plus à venir chez toi.

EXERCISE

Helen to Juliet. *Hélène à Juliette*

Dear Juliet,

1

A few weeks ago we invited Jeanne to come and spend (*à venir passer*) two or three days with us (*chez . . .*). In order to arrive in time for luncheon (*déjeuner, m.*), she would have had to leave at noon. We had given her her choice between alighting at Paris-Reuilly and going all the way to (*jusqu'à*) the Vincennes station. Before leaving Créteil, she was to send us a telegram. After sending the telegram, she missed her train, through not knowing when it left Créteil, and she forgot to (*de*) say which station we were to come to. So that (*Si bien que*) we had to go twice to each station, and, of course, unless one has (§ 241) at least a hundred eyes, the chances are that one can never find the person that one is looking for. That goes without saying. But to waste so much time! Bear her a grudge? No, we don't bear her a grudge. But after telling everyone that luncheon would be ready (*prêt*) at two o'clock! I had begun to believe that she would never come. Unless one explains everything, one never knows what is going to happen.

3

5

7

9

11

13

15

17

After running about (*couru; avoir couru*) so much I was almost dying, and I am supposed to be so strong (*vigoureuse*)! I shouldn't like to say that I lost (*L. S. p.p.*) patience, for I didn't lose patience, but I wish that Jeanne had not missed (*O. S. p.p.*) her train and that she had arrived at the hour when (§ 120) we expected her to come (*s'attendre à la voir venir*). This leads me to think that if one begins by misunderstanding (*mal comprendre*) one ends by being annoyed! After to-day, I shall refrain (*m'abstiendrai*) from inviting anyone, unless I know (§§ 230 and 241) that there will be no difficulties. I refuse to believe that it was (*soit*) I who was (*L. S. p.p.*) wrong this time, but to think that everything went so badly! I thank you for having been so kind, and for having written as soon as you had received (*A 2 p.p.*) my letter (*or aussitôt après avoir reçu ma lettre*).

19

21

23

25

27

29

31

33

. . . Hélène

QUARANTE-TROISIÈME LEÇON

VOICE OF THE INFINITIVE. VOIX DE L'INFINITIF

243. When the past participle of a transitive verb follows être or avoir été we have a group called the *passive infinitive*: être vu-s (vue-s) '(to) be seen'; avoir été dit-s (dite-s) '(to) have been said.'

NOTE. Avoid confounding passive constructions with, say, être venu-s (venue-s) '(to) have come,' and with reflexive or reciprocal constructions; e.g., sans s'être assis 'without having sat down.'

244. After verbs of causation, perception, and the like, French employs a simple infinitive in constructions which are never passive, however we may have to translate them. Examples :

D'abord, je fais trotter ma jument 1 First, I make my mare trot,
 then I have her run.
 ment, puis je la fais courir.

Here ma jument and la are direct objects of je fais, but subjects of trotter and courir. Note their positions. Both infinitives are intransitive.

Si je faisais bâtir une maison, 2 If I had a house built, I should
 je la ferais meubler par X. have (get) it furnished by X.

Here une maison and la (note their positions) are the direct objects of bâtir and meubler, which, in their turn, are the direct objects of faisais and ferais; par, from the Latin *per*, means primarily 'through,' as through the agency of X (any agent). To make the construction of the second clause perfectly evident, we may rearrange it (theoretically) thus: je ferais meubler la (une maison) par X. The pronoun (la) is to be construed precisely like the noun for which it stands (une maison), even though it precedes ferais.

J'ai fait comprendre à mon ami 3 I've made my friend understand
 qu'il a tort. that he's wrong.

Here à mon ami contains the indirect noun object (mon ami), for which we could substitute lui (dative): Je lui ai fait comprendre qu'il a tort.

Je la laisse chanter. 4 I let her sing (I let it be sung).

Here la can refer (a) to a singer, or (b) to a song (une chanson). If to a singer, chanter is intransitive and la is its subject; if to a song, chanter is transitive and la is its direct object.

J'avais vu blesser mes amis, je 5 I had seen my friends wounded,
 les avais vu tuer. I had seen them killed.

Note **vu**. In each case, its object is an infinitive; **mes amis** is the direct object of **bless**er, and **les** is the direct object of **tuer**.

J'avais entendu parler de cette 6 I had heard this person spoken
 personne par le pauvre Goriot. of by poor Goriot (*or*, had heard
 of . . . through . . .).

Elle s'était fait pardonner toutes 7 She had had all her mistakes for-
 ses fautes, et elle leur avait fait given her, and had had all theirs for-
 pardonner les leurs. given them (them forgiven theirs).

Vary these seven examples by changing their subjects, objects, and tenses; also by using other infinitives, as **étriller** '(to) curry,' **atteler** '(to) harness,' **peindre** '(to) paint,' **lire** '(to) read,' **écrire** '(to) write,' etc.

REMARK. It is the lack of a truly passive infinitive construction after verbs of causation and the like that leads to the ambiguity of perfectly idiomatic constructions such as these: **C'est ce que je fais expliquer à Jean, oui, c'est ce que je lui fais expliquer**, which can mean either (*a*) 'That is what I am having explained to John; yes, that is what I'm having explained to him,' *or* (*b*) 'That is what I am having explained by John; yes, that is what I'm having him explain.' Again, **Je leur ai entendu chanter cette chanson** may mean either (*a*) 'I've heard them sing that song,' *or* (*b*) 'I've heard that song sung to them.' Note that ambiguity may be avoided by using **par**. See example 6 and § 270.

a. The Type **On lui (le) fait avouer son crime** = 'They make him admit his crime.'

1. With **faire** (also with **laisser**, **entendre**, and **voir**), a dative (here **lui**), rather than an accusative (as **le**), is used if the agent whose act and its direct object are both mentioned, and **On le lui fait avouer** (two personal pronouns) typifies the only correct form.

2. If the subject of an infinitive having a direct object cannot be an unstressed accusative (**me**, **te**, **le**, etc.), or an unstressed dative, i.e. a *true* dative (**me**, **te**, **lui**, etc.), it must be preceded by **à** or **par**:

On a fait chanter cela par (à) 8 They've had that sung by Paul
 Paul Plançon. Paul Plançon.

QUERY. Why no **à** or **par** in **On a fait (or entendu) chanter Paul Plançon**?

245. *The Pure Infinitive as Subject, or as Predicate Nominative*

Voir, c'est croire.	1	Seeing is believing.
Le dire maintenant, ce serait tout gâcher.	2	To say it now(, that) would be to spoil everything.

The two infinitives (**voir . . . croire** and **dire . . . gâcher**) are linked in each case by a form of **être**.

REMARK. Occasionally an initial infinitive used as a logical subject is preceded by a meaningless **de** (merely a 'sign of the infinitive'): . . . **de vous voir là, si brusquement, ça m'a été une telle émotion, un tel choc!** = '. . . to see you there, so abruptly, was for me such an emotion, such a shock.' — (*Cher Maître*, Act II, sc. 3.)

a. When the subject infinitive is not initial, it requires the linking preposition **de**. (See § 255.)

NOTE. After **C'est** (**Ce serait** etc.) a predicate noun or adjective is often followed by **que** (§ 129) before **de** + infinitive: **Ce serait une bêtise que de mentir** 'It would be a blunder to lie.' **C'est être** requires this **que**: **C'est être bien crédule que de croire cela** 'It requires great credulity to believe that.' (So after **Ce serait** etc.)

b. A pure infinitive follows **sembler** and **paraître** '(to) seem,' **être censé** (**jugé, réputé, supposé**), **se trouver** '(to) happen (to),' all forms of **falloir, valoir autant, and valoir mieux**. Examples, to be varied:

Il me semble (paraît) avoir lu cela.	3	It seems (appears) to me (strikes me) I've read that.
Elle semblait avoir compris.	4	She seemed to have understood.
Vous paraissez être pressé.	5	You seem to be in a hurry.
Ce banquier est censé (jugé, réputé) être bien riche.	6	This banker is thought (taken, reputed) to be very rich.
Je me trouve avoir deux sous.	7	I happen to have two sous.
Il faudrait voir ça.	8	You (We, etc.) should see that.
Autant vaut ne rien dire.	9	One might as well say nothing.
Il vaut mieux tout avouer.	10	It's better to confess everything.

NOTE. In a good many cases, English past participles + 'to' + infinitive do not correspond to a French past participle + pure infinitive. Thus, **On dit (sait) qu'elle triche** (not **Elle est dite** or **sue tricher**) corresponds to 'She is said (known) to cheat.'

246. *The Pure Infinitive as Direct Object or Complement*

The pure infinitive follows many verbs as a direct object or as a complement which may be otherwise regarded. Most of these verbs express mental acts and states. Examples, to be varied :

J'espère te voir aux courses.	1	I hope to see you at the races.
On y voit courir de beaux chevaux.	2	You can see (some) fine horses race there.
Je crois pouvoir (veux) venir, mais je ne saurais rester longtemps.	3	I believe I can (I wish to) come, but I really can't stay long.
Tu comptes y arriver à temps ?	4	You count on arriving in time?

Likewise after *penser* (cf. ex. 4), *devoir* 'must' etc. (§§ 187, 206-207), *oser* 'dare,' *appeler* (5. *J'appelle ça être généreux* 'I call that being generous'), *rappeler* (6. *Vous rappelez-vous l'avoir dit?* 'Do you remember having said it?'), *entendre* (7. *J'entends chanter* 'I hear [someone] singing'), and *ne faire que* :

Il ne fait que rire (§ 247).	8	He only laughs.
------------------------------	---	-----------------

EXERCISE ON §§ 244-246

1. When you have a house built, are you going to have it furnished by X? 2. No, I've had explained to him, and I think I've made him understand, that I cannot find the money. 3. Besides (*D'ailleurs*), he would make me pay too much (*adv. + infin.*), and I shouldn't dare to trust the work to a man of his age. 4. It is better to wait; it would be just as well to wait, don't you think so (*p. 70, V*)? 5. Later, I could count on having all the money I shall need. 6. I believe I've found a pretty site (*emplacement, m.*) that I can make still prettier. 7. I have heard of a banker who is supposed to be very reasonable. 8. No, I prefer to wait. 9. Now, I am only enjoying (*ex. 8*) my plans. 10. I see them change every day. 11. To risk anything would be useless. 12. You've heard my wife say what she would like to do. 13. She has me explain my ideas when I happen to have any (*simply en avoir*), and I have her explain hers. 14. If I talk to her of my banker, she only laughs. 15. She seems to believe that he doesn't exist. 16. Seeing is believing, says she.

QUARANTE-QUATRIÈME LEÇON

PURE INFINITIVES AND PREPOSITIONAL INFINITIVES (CONTINUED)

247. **Some Variations and Distinctions.** All infinitives were originally pure, and a good many have remained so in certain constructions which must be learned; of the prepositions it is *à* and *de* that fluctuate most markedly and require the finest distinctions.

a. Aimer. *J'aime chanter* 'I like to sing' (whereas 'I like singing' = *J'aime le chant, J'aime entendre chanter*), exemplifies both the oldest and the most modern use in the case of this verb; but in some locutions (set phrases) *aimer à* is required, as in *J'aime à croire* 'I like to believe.'

In *J'aimerais mieux rester fille que d'épouser un homme comme lui* 'I'd rather remain unmarried than (to) marry a man like him,' the first infinitive must be pure after *aimer + mieux*; but note *que de* before *épouser*.

✓ Except as noted above, the conditional of *aimer* (group *E*) requires a pure infinitive.

b. Désirer is occasionally found with a *de*-infinitive.

c. Commencer à differs from *commencer de* only by being more colloquial.

d. Continuer à is felt to express habit or persistence more plainly than does *continuer de*.

e. Je lui demande à parler = 'I ask him to let me speak'; *je lui demande de parler* = 'I ask him to speak.'

f. Forcer à may imply even physical compulsion; not so *forcer de*; but *être forcé*, also *être obligé*, *must* have *de* before an infinitive.

g. When *devoir* has an indirect object, its infinitive requires *de*: *Je lui dois de m'avoir aidé* 'I am indebted to him for having helped me.'

h. Ne faire que + a pure infinitive corresponds to English 'only' + a finite verb: *Je ne fais que flâner* 'I only loaf,' 'I'm only loafing.' Cf. *i*.

i. Ne faire que de + infinitive is occasionally used instead of *venir de + infinitive*: *Elle ne fait que de sortir* 'She has just gone out.' Cf. *h*.

REMARK. Distinctions, or mere fluctuations, might be illustrated with various other verbs. In reading French, underscore interesting examples.

248. Verbs of Saying and the like. Some such verbs may take a pure infinitive, usually when there is no change of subject :

Tu m'as dit l'adorer.	1	You told me you adored him.
Je déclare avoir reçu . . .	2	I acknowledge having received . . .
Il jure n'avoir rien dit.	3	He swears he has said nothing.
Voilà une chose qu'on lui persuade être fausse.	4	That is a thing which they persuade (convince) him is false.

But (with *de*) : Il jure de leur obéir ('He swears to obey them,' he *promises*); likewise, On le persuade de le faire ('They persuade him to do it'), etc.

249.

La Grammaire

PREFATORY NOTE. The following passage illustrates several frequent uses of the infinitive; also it distinguishes between the clear and accepted scientific conceptions of 'grammar' and inconsistent, confusing popular *misconceptions* of 'grammar.' The author, Gaston Paris, amplifies our Introduction (§ 1). We are not forced to agree with everything that he says.

« La grammaire est l'art de parler et d'écrire correctement. » Telle 1
est la définition qu'on trouve en tête¹ de la plupart de nos gram-
maires dites² classiques. Elle paraît simple et claire; pour peu qu'on 3
veille s'en rendre un compte exact,³ elle est singulièrement difficile
à comprendre. Que veut-on dire par « parler »? Que veut-on dire 5
par « écrire »? Et surtout que veut-on dire par « correctement »?


Le mot « parler » comprend⁴ des séries de faits très divers: il 7
embrasse [*a*] la prononciation, [*b*] le choix des mots dont on se
sert, [*c*] les formes variées dont ils sont susceptibles, et [*d*] la 9
façon de les grouper en propositions [*i.e.*, *clauses*] et en phrases
[*i.e.*, *sentences*]. C'est ce qu'on appelle, en termes scientifiques, 11
[*a*] l'orthoépïe, [*b*] la lexicologie, [*c*] la morphologie et [*d*] la
syntaxe. De ces quatre parties essentielles de l'art de parler une 13
langue, les grammaires françaises négligent presque absolument
la première [*i.e.* l'orthoépïe, la prononciation], laissent la seconde 15
[*i.e.* la lexicologie] aux dictionnaires, confondent pour la troisième
[*i.e.* la morphologie] les règles de l'orthographe avec celles de 17
l'émission vocale, et ne traitent, en général fort imparfaitement,
que de la quatrième [*i.e.* la syntaxe]. Quelques auteurs de gram- 19
maires « historiques »⁵ ont innové en faisant appel⁶ à la science

étymologique, et nous ont renseignés plus ou moins exactement 21
 sur les transformations par lesquelles ont passé, depuis des siècles,⁷
 les sons dont se compose notre langue et les flexions [*i.e.* les 23
 désinences 'the inflectional endings'] qui modifient nos noms et
 nos verbes. C'est un objet de connaissance⁸ assurément très 25
 intéressant, mais qui n'a rien à faire avec l'art de parler le français
 actuel [*i.e.* le français de notre époque, le français vivant]. Cet 27
 art, qui par définition ne doit s'attacher qu'aux phénomènes réelle-
 ment vocaux,⁹ au langage émis par la bouche et perçu par l'oreille, 29
 n'est réellement enseigné que pour la syntaxe, où il se confond
 avec l'art d'écrire. 31

Le mot « écrire » a trois sens bien distincts, suivant qu'il¹⁰
 désigne la façon de tracer les caractères (calligraphie), le rapport¹¹ 33
 de ces caractères aux phonèmes [*i.e.*, word-sounds] qu'ils ex-
 priment (orthographe), l'emploi du langage quand on l'écrit au 35
 lieu de le parler (cet emploi, qui comprend le vocabulaire, la
 morphologie et la syntaxe, ne diffère que par certains détails de 37
 celui du langage parlé), enfin le style ou l'appropriation¹² de la
forme à l'idée. La calligraphie est en dehors de¹⁸ la grammaire ; 39
 la stylistique relève de¹⁴ la rhétorique. Reste l'orthographe,¹⁶
 qui fait avec la morphologie et la syntaxe le seul objet de nos 41
 grammaires, dont elle ne devrait être qu'un appendice,¹⁶ car c'est
 un accident presque négligeable dans la physiologie d'une langue 43
 que¹⁷ la façon dont les phonèmes en¹⁸ sont reproduits par l'écri-
 ture : écrivez le grec¹⁹ ou le français en sténographie, ils ne reste- 45
 ront pas moins le grec et le français. Donner à l'orthographe
 l'importance qu'elle a dans nos livres d'enseignement, c'est comme 47
 si, pour faire connaître un homme vivant, on s'occupait surtout
 de son portrait, que dis-je ? du portrait de son trisaïeul,²⁰ habillé 49
 du costume de son temps.

GASTON PARIS, in his preface to the *Grammaire raisonnée* of L. Clédat

NOTES. 1. 'at the beginning,' 'as a heading.' 2. 'called.' 3. Freely,
 'if we will just scrutinize it a bit'; **pour peu que** commonly means **pourvu**
que (§ 230), but with an added limitation (cf. § 228, *i*). 4. 'comprises.'
 5. Historical grammars describe and explain how languages have developed,
 thus relating the *history* of their *sounds*, their *forms* (morphology), their
syntax, the growth and decline of *meanings*, etc. A knowledge of Latin

and of Old French enables us to deal more scientifically with the problems of living French; however, one may be wholly ignorant of both Latin and Old French, yet be able to write and speak French as well as the best! Note lines 25-27. 6. 'by appealing.' 7. 'in the course of centuries.' 8. 'knowledge.' 9. See § 136. 10. 'according to whether'; see *sivre*. 11. 'relation.' 12. 'fitting.' 13. 'outside of.' 14. 'belongs to the domain of.' 15. A few verbs may thus begin an affirmation. Translate: 'This leaves spelling.' 16. 'appendix.' 17. This *que* acts as a grammatical 'A TRADUIRE

1. We are indebted to Gaston Paris for having shown us why the classical definition of 'grammar' is worthless. 2. That definition merely *confuses* what he makes (*rendre*) clear. 3. I like to believe that those who read (*D*) this passage will not forget it, for it enables us to (*permet de, met à même de*) avoid many errors, which, without having read it, we might continue to make. 4. Unless we have begun to learn a language very early (*de très bonne heure*), and unless we have heard it spoken very often, almost every day, we shall not be able to say that we know it without ever having studied it. 5. We are obliged to learn rules, whether (*que*) we ever learn (*Si*) to make use of them correctly or not (*non*). 6. I recall (*se rappeler*) having met several persons who thought they knew French perfectly without the slightest knowledge of the rules; they believed they had learned it according to the 'natural method' (*naturelle last*). 7. I asked them to explain what that meant. 8. Their answer showed that they were only deceiving themselves. 9. Do you find foreign languages easy to learn? 10. How do you say, in French, and in two ways, 'It is better to be able to speak and write a language correctly without knowing its rules (*use en + infin.*) than to know all its rules without being able to make use of them' (*s'en servir*)? 11. How shall we say 'That boy did nothing but loaf'? or 'We would rather forget something than learn nothing'? or 'They've just gone out (*font, viennent*)? or 'It is easy to be wrong'?

QUARANTE-CINQUIÈME LEÇON

THE PURE INFINITIVE (CONTINUED). THE INFINITIVE
WITH *A* OR *DE*

250. A pure infinitive follows various intransitive verbs of motion, but **pour** is required when purpose is emphasized (as in example 3).

Allons voir les bateaux.	1	Let's go and see the boats.
Tu vas être malade.	2	You're going to be ill.
But, Pourquoi ira-t-elle ? Elle ira pour se montrer.	3	Why will she go? She'll go in order to show herself.

In example 1 the idea of purpose is extremely faint; in example 2 (here **aller** is purely figurative) it is wholly absent; in example 3 **pour** clearly makes **se montrer** express a motive. The following examples belong with example 1 :

4. **Descendez voir si le courrier est-venu** = Go down and see whether the mail has come. 5. **Claire est montée mettre sa robe neuve** = Claire has gone up (stairs) to put on her new gown. 6. **Nous rentrerons dîner à sept heures précises** = We shall come home to dinner at exactly seven o'clock. 7. **Viens nous chercher demain matin** = Come for us to-morrow morning. 8. **Je suis sortie faire quelques commissions** = I've gone out on some errands.

Vary these eight examples by changing the person and number of the main verb, and, when possible, its tense.

QUERY. Why are only groups *A* and *B* of **aller** (*je vais* etc., *j'allais* etc.) allowed for the figurative use of **aller** exemplified by **Tu vas être malade**?

a. **Aller trouver** (*chercher* etc.), **venir trouver** (*voir* etc.), are sometimes treated as compounds, especially when both verbs are infinitives. Hence, **pour l'aller chercher** = 'to go and get him' ('look him up') etc., instead of **pour aller le chercher**, and even **Je l'allai chercher chez lui** = 'I went to look him up at his house,' or **Il me venait voir tous les jours** = 'He would come to see me every day'; but **J'allai le chercher** (colloquially, **Je suis allé le chercher**) and **Il venait me voir** (*trouver*) illustrate living usage.

b. **Envoyer**, transitive (though its personal object need not be expressed), takes a pure infinitive: **M^{me} B. m'envoie vous dire d'aller la trouver à la**

d. Often, or oftener, **de** is a mere link :

1. **Avez-vous bientôt achevé de nous raser?** Haven't you bored us almost enough? 2. **Dites-leur de travailler.** Tell them to work. 3. **Obtenez de lui de s'en aller.** Get him to go away. 4. **Persuadons-le de se taire.** Let's persuade him to say nothing. 5. **On fera bien de garder ce secret.** We shall do well to keep that secret.

Note particularly the tenses of the idiom in example 1 of *c*. Write three variants of the examples in each paragraph (six variants); or make six fresh examples with **blâmer de** ('blame for'), **flatter de** ('flatter on'), **décourager de** ('discourage from'), all with the accusative; or with **pardonner de** ('forgive for'), **parler de**, **reprocher de** ('reproach for'), all with the dative.

252. *An Infinitive with à after avoir and être*

Here the infinitive may express an aim, a duty to be performed, or the like.

a. Examples for **avoir** (personal and impersonal):

1. **J'ai à lui parler.** I have something to say to him. 2. **Il n'aura pas à se plaindre de moi.** He will have no cause to complain of me. 3. **Il n'y a pas à sortir de là.** There's no way out of that. 4. **Il y a à parier que tu seras battu.** It's a safe bet that you'll be beaten. (Or **Il y a gros à parier que . . .** The odds are heavy that . . .) 5. **Messieurs, qu'y a-t-il à redire?** Gentlemen, what objections are there?

b. Example with **être** :

C'est-à-dire que tout cela serait à refaire. That is (to say), all that would have to be done over.

Using the idiomatic arrangements in *a* and *b*, make six new combinations.

REVIEW

I. Having varied the examples in §§ 250-252 as indicated, show to what extent and how the infinitive, pure and prepositional, is exemplified in §§ 157, 161, and 249.

II. Deriving your vocabulary from §§ 193 and 201, make a reasonable sentence illustrating one verb taken from each paragraph of §§ 250-252.

QUARANTE-SIXIÈME LEÇON

THE INFINITIVE WITH *A* (CONTINUED)

253. An infinitive with *à* may occur in various capacities :

a. Adverbially (but resembling a noun) in *à boire* etc., thus :

(Donnez-nous) *à boire, s'il vous* 1 (Give us) a drink, please.
plait.

Nous leur portons à manger. 2 We bring them something to eat.

Similarly, *Ont-ils à manger et à boire* = 'Have they something to eat and drink?' (These are ellipses.)

b. With the force of a pure adverb or adverbial clause :

Élise chante à ravir, mais elle 3 Eliza sings entrancingly, but
est maigre à faire peur. she's frightfully thin.

A tout prendre, cela vaut mieux. 4 All things considered (On the
whole), that is better.

Tu ne gagnerais rien à attendre. 5 You'd gain nothing by ~~waiting.~~

Rien qu'à y penser, on se sent 6 Simply to think about it, one
défaillir. feels oneself grow faint.

Similarly, *être fou* (*f. folle*) *à lier* '(to) be raving mad' (*lier* = 'bind'),
s'éreinter à ne rien faire '(to) get fagged doing nothing,' etc.

c. After certain nouns, adjectives, etc., in phrases expressing
imaginary direction, situation, etc. :

Quel zèle à les servir! 7 What zeal in serving them!

Fais attention à leur dire bon- 8 Mind you say good day to them.
jour.

9. After numerals : *Nous serons quatre à jouer au tennis* = 'There will
be four of us playing tennis.' *Tu seras la première à sortir* = 'You will be
the first to go out.'

10. After *seul* : *Elles sont (les) seules à nous aider* = 'They are the only
ones to help us (are alone in helping us).' Likewise after *unanime* : *Nous*
étions unanimes à les louer = 'We were unanimous in praising them.'
Likewise after *long, longue* : *Comme elle est longue à venir!* = 'How long
she is in coming!'

d. With a clearly adjective force :

Voilà une histoire à dormir 11 That story is deadly dull. (*Dull
debout. enough to put one asleep standing.*)

Le duc est un homme à com- 12 The duke is a man to commit
mettre des crimes. (capable of committing) crimes.

FOR TRANSLATION

1. What are we going to do now? 2. What do you want to do?
3. Give me a drink; then we'll go and play tennis, unless you prefer
to remain here. 4. How many of us will there be playing? 5. There
will be four of us, I believe; but that remains to be seen (. . . voir,
not . . . être vu). 6. We can't be sure of that before getting (*arriver*)
to the club. 7. Shall we start (*two ways*) at once? 8. No, I have a
letter to write, but I shan't need more than (*de*) five minutes to
finish it. 9. You can go now; or perhaps you would rather wait.
10. By the bye (*A propos*), do you happen to know Louise Cauchois?
She's frightfully plain, but she knows how to handle a racket and
she likes to win. 11. Mind you don't annoy her by acting (*en agis-
sant*) as if she were only learning. 12. She might feel (*reflex.*) hurt
(*blessé*), and, all things considered, that is a thing to avoid. 13. If
you wish to ~~make~~ a good impression (*omit une*), you won't gain
anything by being too gentle (*doux*)! 14. *Au revoir*. I'll be there
waiting for you (*là à . . . infin.*).

254. La Réforme de l'Orthographe

. (Note carefully all infinitives and all new words. If necessary, consult the
vocabularies at the end of the book.)

Quant à la fixation d'une orthographe nationale, elle devrait 1
être confiée à une commission peu nombreuse, composée de
philologues et de gens pratiques,¹ et qui en très peu de temps 3
pourrait doter² le pays d'un instrument commode, simple et bien
approprié à cette besogne si importante, et aujourd'hui si inutile- 5
ment compliquée, de la représentation des mots de la langue par
l'écriture. Mais peut-être pour faire comprendre à tous l'utilité et 7
la possibilité d'une telle mesure faudrait-il⁸ une révolution aussi
profonde que celle qui a permis, il y a un siècle, de substituer le 9

système métrique aux mille variétés de poids et de mesures usitées dans la vieille France. Car il ne faut pas se dissimuler qu'une réforme de l'orthographe n'est pas une petite affaire, ni une simple question d'école.⁴ 11 13

Qu'on songe⁵ seulement à ces trois conséquences, qu'elle amènerait d'autant plus complètement qu'elle⁶ serait plus radicale et plus brusquement imposée : tous les livres antérieurs seraient condamnés ; au bout de vingt ans, ces livres seraient pour nos enfants aussi difficiles à lire que les livres du xvi^e siècle le⁷ sont pour nous ; — tous les dictionnaires seraient à refaire, et avec eux tous les classements par ordre alphabétique qui, établis souvent après de longs travaux,⁸ servent de base aux recherches les plus diverses ; — les noms propres,⁹ étant de par la loi immuables¹⁰ dans leur forme, prendraient bientôt les prononciations les plus singulières.¹¹ Et je ne parle pas de la perturbation qu'une orthographe nouvelle apporterait à toutes les habitudes, du temps qu'il faudrait perdre à se défaire de celle qu'on a si péniblement acquise,¹² du trouble¹³ qui en¹⁴ résulterait dans toutes les relations qui ont pour moyen l'écriture. 17 19 21 23 25 27

Il n'est pas impossible, sans doute, par de sages tempéraments¹⁵ et des transitions bien ménagées, d'atténuer beaucoup ces inconvénients ; mais ils sont incontestables, et les réformateurs qui n'en tiennent pas compte ferment les yeux aux plus grands obstacles qui s'opposent à leurs desseins. La crainte qu'ils inspirent, jointe à l'attachement routinier¹⁶ pour ce qui existe et à un respect qui est ici superstitieux pour l'Académie française, empêchera sans doute aucune réforme méthodique tant que notre société subsistera telle qu'elle est. 29 31 33 35 37

Le plus sage¹⁷ est donc peut-être, pour le moment, de se résigner, ou de se borner, comme le fait¹⁸ M. Clédât, à demander un peu de tolérance et de liberté. C'est en marchant dans cette voie, avec courage et avec mesure, qu'on préparera peu à peu l'opinion publique à accueillir une législation nouvelle, dont elle ne voit pour le moment que les périls et les difficultés, sans en bien comprendre les bienfaits. 39 41 43

GASTON PARIS, in his preface to the *Grammaire raisonnée* of L. Clédât. See §§ 4-5 and § 157, page 123.

NOTES. 1. Business men and the like. 2. 'endow' *or* 'furnish . . . with.' 3. Inverted after the adverb **peut-être**. 4. 'academic matter.' 5. A concealed subjunctive, hortative; see §§ 194, 205, and 213. 6. 'the more completely in proportion as . . . ' 7. This **le** stands for **difficiles à lire**; English requires no pronoun, merely 'are.' 8. See § 143. 9. 'proper names,' such as **la Saône** [so:n], **Gaston Paris** [pari:s], a man, **Paris** [pari], a city, etc. 10. 'by (virtue of the) law, unchangeable.' 11. See note 9. 12. P.p. of **acquérir**. 13. 'turmoil.' 14. 'therefrom' (from what?). 15. 'middle courses.' 16. Cf. **routine**; also **route** and our English form 'rut.' 17. 'The wisest course.' 18. 'as does'; here **le fait** stands for **se borne**.

QUERIES. How many and what pure infinitives does the above passage contain? Which of the prepositional infinitives require **à** or **de** merely as a link? Does this passage exemplify any infinitives not yet explained?

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE

(Almost every sentence may first be a question)

1. I cannot go with you (. . . **accompagner**). 2. I must stay here. 3. There are too many things to be done (to do). 4. Do not try to dissuade me. 5. Nothing could make me leave this house. 6. For the time being the wisest course, perhaps, is to be resigned (**me . . .**), or to limit myself, as you do (**faites**) sometimes, to asking for a little liberty! 7. Yes, my friend, I insist on (**insister pour**) being alone. 8. Even without knowing how you intend to (**se proposer de**) amuse yourselves (you expect to amuse yourselves, no doubt), I can assure you that my work will prevent me from leaving. 9. In order to finish it, must you give up (**renoncer à**) seeing your friends? 10. Yes, I must even give up seeing my friends. 11. Don't you think you can (*infin. construction*) enjoy yourselves (§ 132) without me? 12. What am I (**devoir**) to say? 13. I will ask you to tell everybody that I'm too busy (**occupé à**) studying to be able to go out, that my work obliges me to stay at home, that I am not free to (**de**) do what I wish. 14. You wish me to offer them your excuses? 15. Yes, be so good as to tell them that I—you will not fail to say something agreeable. 16. You will have no difficulty in making (**à + infin.**) them all understand why I have had to remain at home. 17. You will have only to substitute your ideas for mine.

à propos de :

QUARANTE-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

THE INFINITIVE WITH *DE*. MISCELLANEOUS NOTES

255. The Infinitive as a 'Logical Subject.' Employed as a 'suspended logical subject,' the infinitive requires *de*, as follows:

a. After an initial clause containing an adjective and introduced by *il* ('it') or by *ce*:

Il est nécessaire d'agir.	1	It is necessary to act.
Ce serait impoli de partir.	2	It would be impolite to go away.

REMARK. Here *Il* and *Ce* are impersonal (provisional) subjects. When the initial subject is personal (*il, elle, tu, etc.*) the following infinitive is objective and its *de* is no longer a mere 'sign of the infinitive':

Il (Elle) est très aimable d'écrire,	3	He (She) is very kind to write,
or d'avoir écrit.		or to have written.

NOTE. When *il* might mean *either* 'he' or 'it,' *ce* is preferable.

b. After an initial clause containing merely an impersonal verb introduced by *il* 'it,' *ça*, or *cela* (and here the verb is no longer from *être* or from *devenir, paraître, sembler*):

Il leur répugne de potiner.	4	It is distasteful to them to gossip.
Il lui plairait de se taire.	5	It would please him to say nothing.
Cela (Ça) fait du bien de voir ses vieux amis.	6	It does one good to see one's old friends.

REMARKS. Usage does not allow *all* impersonal verbs to be introduced by *ça* or *cela*. For example: *Il lui arriva de tousser* 'He happened to cough,' *Il importe d'être exact* 'It's important to be accurate,' *Comme il leur tardait de te revoir!* 'How keen they were to see you again!' Verbs-phrases, like *Ça fait du bien*, require *ça* or *cela*. Popularly, *ça* and *cela* precede forms of *être* etc. in some cases: *C'est (Cela est) bon d'avoir des amis*; but here the demonstrative value of *cela* (*ça*) is apparent. In *Il s'agissait de trouver l'or* 'It was a question of finding the gold,' *de* is not a mere link but has a prepositional value (nearly 'concerning').

: a

c. After **C'est** (*sera* etc.) à moi, or any like phrase with à, either **de** or à (now usually **de**) may precede the suspended subject infinitive :

C'est à toi de (à) jouer. 7 It's your turn to play.

d. After an initial clause containing a noun, usually modified :

Son bonheur est d'obéir. 8 His happiness is to obey.

Mon grand défaut, c'est d'être trop franc (f. franche). 9 My great fault is that I am too frank (*or, is being too frank*).

C'est une faiblesse (que) d'aimer tout le monde. 10 It is a weakness to like everybody.

NOTE. As to **C'est être bien crédule que de croire cela**, see § 245, *a*, Note.

256. De + infinitive after various suitable nouns and adjectives.

Examples, to be varied :

As-tu peur de sortir ?	1	Are you afraid to go out?
Tu as l'aplomb de le nier !	2	You have the cheek to deny it!
Il a l'air de faire une nuit superbe.	3	It looks like a superb night.
Vous avez tort de vous fâcher.	4	You are wrong to get angry.
Le temps de dire deux mots.	5	Just time for a word or two.
Es-tu sûr de réussir ?	6	Are you sure of succeeding?
Vous êtes libres de le croire.	7	You are free to believe it.
Elle est capable de mentir.	8	She's capable of lying.
Heureux de vous voir !	9	Happy to see you !
Je suis ravi d'avoir pu venir.	10	I'm delighted to have been able to come.

REMARKS. 1. In phrases such as **l'art d'écrire** 'the art of writing,' **de** is hardly more than an appositional link, as in **la ville de Paris** 'the city of Paris.' 2. In a sentence such as **Je n'ai qu'un désir au monde : te rendre heureuse** 'I have only one desire in the world : to make you happy,' usage requires a pure infinitive, which is truly appositive; the insertion of **c'est** would entail that of **de** : **c'est de te rendre heureuse**. 3. In e.g. **Ces défauts sont encore plus vilains d'être cachés** 'These defects are still uglier through being concealed,' **de** clearly indicates a source. 4. To avoid the possible ambiguity of, say, **Il est gentil de dîner en ville** 'It (He) is nice to dine out,' one might say, **C'est gentil à lui** ('of him'), etc.

NOTE. Occasionally, **de + infinitive** follows a quantitative pronoun : **J'ai assez de souffrir** 'I have enough of suffering' ('I have suffered enough').

257. The Historical Infinitive. Archaically (therefore sometimes in jest), an infinitive with *de* is employed now and then instead of a finite verb (*A, B, C*, etc.) describing a vivid consequent activity:

Et grenouilles de se plaindre. And the frogs complained.

REMARK. The subject must be a noun or stressed pronoun and must differ from that immediately preceding. English seems to have no equivalent.

MISCELLANEOUS NOTES

258. From positive statements as to the French infinitive English-speaking students should turn to certain common *errors to be avoided*:

a. French allows **Je veux y aller** for 'I wish to go there'; but 'I wish you to go there' requires a subjunctive: **Je veux que vous y alliez**. Why?

b. English often employs an adjectival infinitive phrase to express purpose when there is a change of agent: 'I'm looking for a man to carry on my work.' Not so French, but, for example, **Je cherche un homme qui sache (puisse) continuer mon travail**, or some other non-infinitive group.

c. With its very flexible gerund in *-ing*, English allows many constructions which French could not render with an infinitive or with a form in *-ant*. Examples, to be varied:

1. 'I went away without their seeing me' = **Je suis parti (bookishly, je partis) sans qu'ils me voient (bookishly, vissent)**. 2. 'You deny his having listened' = **Vous niez qu'il ait écouté**. 3. 'I profit by your having told them the truth' = **Je profite de ce que vous leur avez dit la vérité**. 4. 'We have no objections to her doing that' = **Nous n'avons pas d'objections à ce qu'elle fasse cela**. 5. 'You are astonished at my refusing to reply' = **Vous vous étonnez que je refuse (que j'aie refusé) de répondre**. 6. 'We insist on your leaving Paris' = **Nous insistons pour que vous quittiez Paris**.

NOTE. Our gerund in *-ing* is compared later with the French gerund in *-ant* (§§ 260 ff.).

d. Certain verbs of perception, as *sentir* and *voir*, may have an accusative object which is also the *subject* of a following pure infinitive: **Je vous sentais souffrir** 'I felt you suffer'; and the pure infinitive may have an object too: **Je vous sentais m'aimer** 'I felt you love me (*better*, I felt you loved me)'; but French usage would not tolerate, e.g., **Vous les comprenez le vouloir**, for 'You understand them to desire it,' simply because the syntax of **Je vous sentais m'aimer** has not been extended.

259. *Position of the Infinitive with a Noun as its Subject*

When a noun is both the object of a verb of perception and the subject of an infinitive, the noun usually comes last: **J'entends crier la bonne** 'I hear the servant shout,' though the emphasis is sometimes shifted, thus: **J'entends la bonne crier**. Or the infinitive may be shifted to precede an adverb: **Je vois mon ami courir à toutes jambes** 'I see my friend run at top speed.' Or the infinitive may have immediately to precede a direct object of its own: **Nous voyons le lieutenant donner ses ordres** 'We see the lieutenant give his orders.'

EXERCISE

(Based chiefly on examples in §§ 239-257)

Dear John,

1

It would be very nice of you to come and spend a few days with us. I insist on your coming. Do I hear you say 'I accept'?

3

We have here just now (*à l'heure qu'il est*) a gentleman who cannot forget his business. He seems to be bored (*s'ennuyer*). Just to look at him (§ 253, *b*), I feel myself become sad. I'm forced to avoid him, though I don't like to seem impolite. I'm looking for a man to make him laugh, and you are that man.

5

7

Do you remember having met our friend (*f.*), Jeanne Brisson? Undoubtedly she would be delighted to see you. You would do well to take the first train to-morrow morning. Why wait? Jeanne has only one desire: to live in Rouen. Somebody must have told her that you live there.

9

11

13

Are you afraid to leave your work? Are you too busy making money? I can't believe it. I don't doubt that you are free to do what you please. You won't have the cheek to deny it, I'm sure (*use en*).

15

17

As you are supposed to like boats, it would be very impolite of you to refuse to see mine (*sg.*). I am keen to hear you say what you think about it. It has always been distasteful to me to gossip, especially when I am more or less involved, but I can tell you that that little boat has changed everything. . . . You will let me continue this. . . .

21

23

QUARANTE-HUITIÈME LEÇON

VERB-FORMS IN *-ANT*: ADJECTIVE, PARTICIPLE, GERUND

260. Nearly every French verb has a form ending in *-ant* (*parler, parlant; finir, finissant; être, étant; etc.*). When variable, this form is a verbal adjective; when invariable, a present participle or gerund.

a. Formation. This is usually indicated by group *B* (imperfect, past descriptive): *je pouvais, pouvant* ('being able'); irregular forms, as *ayant* 'having' or *sachant* 'knowing' (from *savoir*), must be learned outright. (No preposition but *en* may precede a form in *-ant*.)

b. In several verbs the verbal adjective differs from the present participle and gerund not only by being inflected (like non-verbal adjectives) but in its stem. Thus, for example, the verbal adjective of *savoir* is *savant*; its present participle and gerund are *sachant, en sachant*. Examples: (*en*) *sachant cela* '(by) knowing that'; but *une méthode savante* 'a skillful method,' *des chiens savants* 'performing dogs,' *un grand savant* 'a great scholar,' etc. The verbal adjective of *pouvoir* is *puissant* 'powerful.' Generally, the verbal adjective differs in *form* from the present participle and gerund only in that it can and must be inflected to indicate number and gender.

c. The verbal adjective often implies motion or activity: *des yeux perçants* 'piercing eyes,' *une feuille tombante* 'a falling leaf,' *cette ravissante jeune fille* 'that entrancing young lady'; it never expresses an effective act. Hence we cannot say *une feuille tombante de sa branche* (for *tombant*), nor *une lettre annonçante son départ* (for *annonçant*).

The French verbal adjective usually corresponds to an English adjective which can be put before a noun: une balle volante 'a flying ball,' *des projets charmants* 'delightful plans.'

d. The present participle differs from the verbal adjective by being invariable and by being capable of having an object or other closely connected complement: *les ponts joignant l'île et les quais* 'the bridges

joining the island and the embankments,' **une femme sachant l'anglais** 'a woman knowing English,' **des hommes voulant travailler** 'men wishing to work,' **une feuille tombant lentement** 'a leaf falling slowly,' etc.

e. The present participle differs from the gerund by never being a noun. The gerund is always a noun, always requires **en**, always occurs in an adverbial clause, and is seldom followed by a past participle (**ayant dit**, not **en ayant dit**; **étant venu**, not **en étant venu**). (Other important distinctions will now be considered.)

261. *Examples contrasting the Participle and Gerund*

PARTICIPLE

1. Expressing an additional and apparently contemporaneous circumstance:

Je sortis, laissant la comtesse assise auprès du lit de son mari et pleurant à chaudes larmes.

I went out, leaving the countess seated by her husband's bed and weeping bitterly.

(Here **laissant** describes an act closely allied with that expressed by **Je sortis**; hence the participle **laissant** rather than **et je laissai**. Further, **laissant** does not emphasize *how* the speaker went out, nor *when*. Compare **assise**, f. sg., with **pleurant**, inv. Note that **laissant** belongs to **je**.)

2. The present participle often describes an act preceding another act:

Quittant Paris après déjeuner tu arriveras (or arriverais) au Havre à six heures.

Leaving Paris . . . (See 2 a, noting 'By,' and add comma after 'lunch.')

GERUND (with **en**)

1 a. Expressing time (obviously contemporaneous), with an idea expressed by English 'in' and 'by':

On ne fait jamais de mal en disant la vérité.

One never does harm by (or in) telling the truth.

1 b. Merely stating within or during what act some other act occurs, that is, *when*:

En me promenant j'étudie les visages.

On my walks I study faces.

(The *act* signified after **en** is usually something *wherein* something else occurs; but see the example in 2 a.)

2 a. So does the gerund:

En quittant Paris (etc. as in 2).

By leaving Paris after lunch you will (or would) arrive at Havre at six o'clock.

(**En** adds the idea of means, of a proviso.)

~~incorrect~~: mon cruel acte en lisant un à surpris:
Uo Katar

PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND

225

3. By putting the invariable forms **ayant** and **étant** before suitable past participles we get compound (past) participles, expressing clearly antecedent acts. Thus :

Ayant dit cela elle sortit.

Having said that, she went out.

Étant arrivée vers minuit elle se coucha tout de suite.

Having arrived about midnight, she went to bed at once.

Ayant prévu ce danger vous pouvez l'éviter.

Having foreseen that danger, you were in a position to avoid it.

(For this **pouviez** we might substitute **pouvez**, **pourrez**, **pourriez**, **auriez pu**, and other forms; **ayant prévu** would still describe an antecedent act.)

After **ayant** + a past participle, or **étant** + a past participle, the finite verb, whatever its tense, naturally often describes a result.)

4. Following a noun (or pronoun) and nearly equivalent to an infinitive, or to a relative pronoun + a finite verb :

Je vois la pluie tombant partout.

I see the rain falling everywhere.

(Here **tomber**, or **qui tombe**, would have a similar meaning. In English, a relative pronoun could not be used unless we were specifying.)

Compare this **tombant** with the **pleurant** in 1, noting that the **pleurant** could not be changed to **pleurer** or **qui pleurait**.)

4 a. The gerund regularly belongs to the nearest subject (usually nominative):

With a subject nominative: **Je l'ai rencontrée en descendant la rue.**

I met her as I was coming down the street.

With a subject accusative only in clear cases: **Il avait vu sa fille haleter en joignant ses mains suppliantes.**

He had seen his daughter gasp for breath, with her hands joined in entreaty.

(Here **haleter** justifies the use of **en joignant**.)

5. Describing an additional and subsequent circumstance, the present participle is frequent:

Il ouvrit sa bouche, révélant toutes ses dents.

He opened his mouth, [thus] revealing all his teeth.

(Here the cause, **Il ouvrit sa bouche**, is not emphasized as such. Before **révélant** an **en** would make nonsense — test it! The gerund may express cause; it cannot express result. We could say **En ouvrant sa bouche il révéla toutes ses dents**.)

VARIOUS EXERCISES

NOTE. In some of the following sentences, all to be translated, either an infinitive or a form in **-ant** is allowable, whereas in others there is no alternative.

I. 1. By putting into French all the following sentences we can learn to avoid a certain number of mistakes. 2. For example, when we say, 'I see a leaf falling (*or* fall),' we may employ either (**soit**) a form in **-ant** or (**soit**) an infinitive; but how shall we say, 'a falling leaf' or 'falling leaves'? Are the two groups of words that we have just finished writing correct? 3. Now, having seen how French expresses those ideas, let us translate these: 'This afternoon, as I was coming (on coming) home, I saw a dog dragging a cart (**une charrette**). Being very small, he could not go very fast. He was panting hard, but he never stopped unless he had some good reason for stopping. Whenever he met (*two ways*) other dogs, he would swerve (**se détourner**) a bit, but without having the look of wishing to avoid them. 4. If I were a dog, I should not like to spend all the best hours dragging (*infin.*) a cart, and I should not like to be a performing dog. 5. Being what I am, and having what I have, I think that there may be some chance of my becoming (*Sj.*) a man of affairs, of many affairs, I hope.

II. Vary each of the classified examples under § 261 by using other verbs, other subjects, and other objects when possible. Discover, by experimenting, whether any changes of word-order would be allowable. In each example, test the effect of adding or omitting **en**. See whether you can reword any of the examples so as to express approximately the same idea without using a form in **-ant**.

III. Classify the forms in **-ant** exemplified in §§ 33, 52, 70, and 85.

IV. Illustrate the forms in **-ant** for **venir**, **prendre**, **rendre**, **bondir**, **sentir**, **ouvrir**, and **craindre** in seven reasonable sentences.

1122es

QUARANTE-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

PARTICIPLE AND GERUND (CONCLUDED)

262. PARTICIPLE

6. Expressing cause (no emphasis on time):

Connaissant vos idées, je tiens à vous mettre en garde contre ce penchant.

Knowing your ideas, I feel bound to put you on guard against this inclination.

Similarly (with the participle): **Il relut la lettre deux fois, croyant à une erreur de sa vision** 'He reread the letter twice, believing he had not seen aright.'

(Here we could not use **en croyant**, for it would seem to express an activity necessarily *during which* **il relut la lettre**; substitute **en passant devant l'église**.)

Again, **Je n'en savais rien, ne m'occupant jamais de ses affaires** 'I knew nothing about it, never busying myself with his affairs.'

(Here we might substitute **ne m'étant jamais occupé de ses affaires** 'never having busied myself with his affairs.' But this would give another tense-value to the participle, here compound.)

7. The present participle (simple or compound) often occurs in suspended or absolute clauses:

L'argent manquant, que pouvez-vous donc faire ?

Son père l'ayant complètement gâté, ce garçon ne vaudra jamais rien.

GERUND (with **en**)

6 a. Expressing cause and marking the time (actions practically simultaneous):

En la voyant seule, je n'ai pas hésité à lui parler.

On seeing her alone, I did not hesitate to speak to her.

Money failing, pray what can you do ?

His father having completely spoiled him, that boy will never amount to anything.

8. The gerund is a noun-object of **en**, and no clause in which it occurs can be truly 'suspended.' In sentences such as **Mon sang bouillonne en y pensant** 'My blood boils as I think of it,' or **L'appétit vient en mangeant** 'Eating brings appetite' ('Appetite comes as one eats'), **en y pensant** and **en mangeant** mean respectively 'in (the act of) thinking about it' and 'in (the

act of) eating.' But the gerund ordinarily expresses an additional activity of the nearest subject; hence such examples are regarded as showing license.

9. Describing manner (with no implication that the manner is a means). Time simultaneous:

Elle revient, courant à toute vitesse.

She comes back, running with all possible speed.

10. Describing manner, with the implication that it is also a means:

Courant très vite vous arriverez à temps.

Running very fast you will arrive on time.

11. The gerund emphatically stresses both manner and means (clearly answering the questions 'How?' and 'Whereby?'):

On vit en travaillant, on ne s'enrichit qu'en faisant travailler.

9 a. As opposite, but more emphatically answering the question 'How?' Time simultaneous:

Elle revient en courant.

She comes running back.

(Cf. **Elle revient lentement.**)

10 a. As opposite; but the gerund readily either precedes or follows the main clause:

En courant très vite etc., or

Vous arriverez à temps en courant etc.

12. The participle and gerund are both employed to express concession:

Oui, je fais cela sachant (or en sachant, or tout en sachant) ce qui en résultera.

Yes, I do that knowing (knowing full well, or even though I know) what will come of it.

(Equivalent to **Oui, je fais cela, bien que je sache ce qui en résultera.** In **tout en sachant**, concessive, **tout** emphasizes the concession; it may be inserted to mark continuity: **Tout en causant, nous voyons s'éloigner la côte** 'All the while we were chatting we saw the coast recede.')

13. The participle (occasionally the gerund) is sometimes allied with various forms of **aller** (used either figuratively or literally) to express a continuous or progressive activity:

Leur nombre va croissant.

Their number keeps growing.

L'aède allait chantant des héros.

The bard went singing of the heroes.

263. A General Observation. The fact that our English verb-forms in *-ing* have many markedly different functions gives rise to frequent

errors when we are beginning French. Therefore note again that such forms correspond (1) sometimes to a French adjective, (2) sometimes to a present participle or gerund, (3) sometimes to an infinitive, as in *être (occupé) à lire*, (4) sometimes to modifiable nouns, as *l'impression des livres* 'the printing of books,' etc.

In 'the flying ball,' 'flying' is a pure adjective (though verbal); in 'a ball flying so fast,' or in 'a boy flying a kite,' it is a participle; in 'by flying away' or 'the art of flying' it is a gerund (substantive); in 'his flying so far' it may be called a gerund or strongly verbal substantive, etc.

These facts should be helpful to English-speaking students of French.

264. *Miscellaneous Notes on the Forms in -ant*

1. French has a good many *doublets* (twin words) which keep the *e* of the Latin present participles or adjectives in *-ens, -entis*, from which they have been borrowed: *différent* 'different,' *différant* (inv.) 'differing'; etc.

2. Like many non-verbal adjectives, adjectives in *-ant* often serve as nouns: *les savants* (no feminine) 'the scholars'; *une débutante* 'a débutante'; *des commençant(e)s* 'beginners'; *un(e) clairvoyant(e)*; etc.

3. Our progressive tense-forms, exemplified by 'He is (was, will be, has been, will have been, would have been, had been) fishing,' originally contained the preposition 'on,' which became 'a' (still used in 'to go a fishing'), then disappeared. Such forms must not be mistranslated by forms of *être* + forms in *-ant*. French allows e.g. *Il est occupé à pêcher or Il est en train de pêcher, not Il est pêchant*. Cf. § 251, *a*, example 3.

In expressions such as *Je suis souffrant(e)* 'I'm not very well,' or *Nous sommes bien portant(e)s* 'We're well' (*Nous nous portons bien*), both forms in *-ant* are purely adjectival. We may say *Elle chante* 'She is singing,' but *not Elle est chantante*. 'She is enchanting' = *Elle est enchantante*, but 'She is enchanting us' = *Elle nous enchante*.

4. The verbal adjective is sometimes qualified by a prepositional phrase: *Régine, palpitante de joie, . . .* 'Régine, palpitating for joy' (a stage direction); but here *palpitante* describes a frame of mind, a state, rather than a genuine action; we could not say e.g. *Régine, sautante de joie, . . .*, for the *-ant* form of *sauter* 'jump,' 'leap,' would have too literal a sense.

If *sourire* = '(to) smile,' what would be the distinction between *Isabelle, souriant, . . .*, and *Isabelle, souriante, . . .*?

EXERCISE

Explain why most of the following sentences are incorrect, and make all necessary corrections.

1. Croyant^{dit} avoir raison, nous ne demanderons pardon à personne.
2. On ne fait jamais de mal disant ce qu'on pense.
3. Savant qu'il ne viendrait pas, je suis rentré chez moi.
4. J'avais insisté sur son venant avant huit heures.
5. N'aviez-vous pas reçu une lettre annonçant son départ?
6. En ayant vu tant de fois combien cet homme est incertain, quelle raison avez-vous pour croyant qu'il tiendra jamais ses promesses?
7. J'ai commencé en pensant qu'il ne me tromperait jamais, je finirai par savoir qu'il me trompera toujours.
8. C'est là un individu qui vit par tromper tout le monde.
9. Sans trompant au moins quelqu'un, comment donc peut-on s'enrichir?
10. Je n'aime pas les hommes qui sont toujours parlant de leurs affaires, et quand je suis causant avec un ami je n'aime pas étant interrompu.
11. A bien des égards, je suis différent de beaucoup de gens.
12. Personne ne s'enrichit pêchant, mais pêchant me divertit énormément.
13. Quand je suis pêchant tous mes chagrins disparaissent.
14. Quand je suis souffrant d'une de ces crampes qui me torturent de temps en temps, je n'ai qu'à passer quelques heures en regardant la surface de l'eau, m'attendant à ce que les poissons se décident à mordre.
15. Avez-vous jamais vu sourire un poisson? Non? Alors, je me permets de vous dire que c'est là un phénomène des plus intéressants et des plus rares.
16. On dit, n'est-ce pas? qu'une femme est souriante, mais, si elle sourit, littéralement, on dit tout simplement — qu'elle sourit.
17. De même, on parle de paysages souriants, etc.
18. Il y a plusieurs savants qui sont essayant de prouver que les chevaux sourient, non pas en faisant un léger mouvement des lèvres, comme les chiens, mais par un mouvement des oreilles.
19. Tout en admettant la valeur de cette hypothèse, je dois avouer que je trouve la mienne plus attrayante ['attractive'].
20. En sachant combien vous vous intéressez aux grandes énigmes de la science, je vous en reparlerai un de ces jours.
21. C'est en s'appliquant aux grands problèmes, monsieur, qu'on arrive aux grands honneurs.

CINQUANTIÈME LEÇON

7255-

THE VARIATIONS OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE

265. The past participles of strictly impersonal verbs (as *falloir*), or of verbs that require à before a noun-object (as *nuire*), are invariable; other past participles usually have four different endings (*vu, vue, vus, vues*). Which of these we must use depends upon the character of the thought to be expressed.

a. Employed adjectivally, a past participle must agree in gender and in number with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs:

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| La langue écrite diffère beaucoup de la langue parlée. | 1 | The written language differs greatly from the spoken language. |
| Cette prétendue marquise n'a pas un rouge liard. | 2 | That alleged marchioness hasn't a red cent. |
| Ainsi comprise, cette théorie aura quelque valeur. | 3 | Thus understood, this theory will have some value. |
| Elle les regarda, stupéfaite. | 4 | She looked at them, astounded. |

b. Likewise in the predicate:

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| Sont-ils déjà levés ? | 5 | Are they already up (out of bed)? |
| Je trouve ma maison détruite. | 6 | I find my house destroyed. |

c. A participle modifying nouns (or pronouns) of different numbers or different genders usually takes the masculine plural form if either of the modified words is masculine:

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| Je trouve la maison et le garage détruits. | 7 | I find the house and the shed (or garage) destroyed. |
| La maison et le garage avaient été détruits. | 8 | The house and the shed (garage) had been destroyed. |

However, if a feminine happens immediately to precede the participle, the participle is likely to be made feminine:

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pathelin . . . est composé avec proportion; il se développe avec une verve, un entrain, une gaieté soutenues. | 9 | Pathelin . . . is well proportioned; its plot is developed with a well-maintained raciness; go, and gaiety. |
|---|---|---|

REMARK. In such a case (ex. 9), an *audibly* feminine past participle (as *comprises*) might have been avoided, or the order of the three nouns might have been different. *La maison, le garage et la serre* ('hot-house') *sont détruites* would be less acceptable than the same with *brulées* ('burned'). *La maison et le garage sont détruites* would be ruled out; also *Le garage et la maison sont détruites*. Read, *La maison et le garage sont détruits*.

Past participles behave like ordinary adjectives in this respect. Cf. § 339.

QUERIES. As *plaire* '(to) please' requires à or a dative, why is *Ils sont plus* an incorrect way of translating 'They are pleased'? How would you translate, using *plaire*, 'They (We) were pleased,' 'She was pleased'? The past participle of *nuire*, '(to) harm,' is *nul*. Could this form ever vary? and how would you translate 'She had been harmed by her friends'?

d. Passive constructions must be distinguished from constructions containing the variable past participles of *aller*, *descendre*, *entrer*, *monter*, *sortir*, and other verbs expressing intransitive motion:

<i>Elles seront blessées.</i>	10	<i>Elles seront sorties.</i>
They will be wounded.		They will have gone out.

e. The past participle of any verb which requires *être* in forming its compound groups (cf. d) must agree with the subject:

<i>Ma sœur est née à Caen, elle est morte, il y a trois ans, à Liège.</i>	11.	<i>My sister was born at Caen; she died, three years ago, at Liège.</i>
<i>Après sa mort, je suis allé (allée) à Anvers, puis je suis venu (venue) à Paris.</i>		<i>After her death I went to Antwerp, then (I) came to Paris.</i>

<i>Il est arrivé deux dames qui te connaissent.</i>	12	<i>There have arrived two ladies who know you.</i>
---	----	--

NOTE 1. Here *arrivé* agrees with the initial or so-called 'grammatical subject' (*il*, neuter), not with the suspended or so-called 'logical subject' (*deux dames*).

NOTE 2. The singular verb (*est arrivé*), explained historically, is due to the speaker's uncertainty as to what he is going to add; originally, it was not required.

f. A past participle must agree with the subject of *sembler*, *paraître*, and other verbs akin in meaning to *être*:

<i>Elles avaient semblé (paru) troublées.</i>	13	<i>They had seemed (appeared) disturbed.</i>
---	----	--

g. When used to describe weather conditions, *fait* (past participle) is invariable :

Quelle chaleur (f.) il a fait! 14 How hot it has been!

REMARKS. This rule marks an exception, for we say *Quelle gaffe il a faite!* ('What a break he has made!') *not* *Quelle gaffe il a fait!*

In *Elle est sortie toutes les fois qu'il a plu* ('She has gone out every time that it has rained'), *que* is the relative pronoun but is adverbial, as in *aussi souvent qu'il a plu*.

h. Of the hundreds of past participles that may follow forms of *avoir* in the compound groups, not one is inflected unless it is *preceded* by an accusative object whose condition it describes (§ 268). Hence :

Elles ont perdu une belle occasion. 15 -They've lost a fine chance.

Elle avait couru (not courue). 16 She had run.

Note carefully that the number and gender of the *subject* preceding *avoir*, in any of its forms, have nothing to do with the form of the past participle: *Il a dit, Elle a dit, Nous avons dit*, etc. Note also that the number and gender of any *object* which *follows* the past participle have nothing to do with its form: *Elle a fait sa toilette* 'She has dressed,' *Ils ont pris ma plume* 'They have taken my pen,' etc. Compare *Elle avait couru* 'She had run' with *Elle était accourue* 'She had hastened to the spot': *courir* requires *avoir*; *accourir* requires *être*. Vary the subject or object in each of the sixteen classified examples.

EXERCISE I

266.

Le Chômage

PREFATORY NOTE. In the following passage, adapted from a description by Émile Zola, numerous past participles are to be supplied by the student, as indicated by the infinitives in a different type. Note the forms in *-ant* and the infinitives.

L'ouvrier est dehors, dans la rue. Il a *battre* les trottoirs¹ 1 pendant huit jours, sans pouvoir trouver du travail. Il est *aller* de porte en porte, offrant ses bras, offrant ses mains, s'offrant tout 3 entier² à n'importe quelle besogne,³ à la plus rebutante,⁴ à la plus dure, à la plus mortelle. Toutes les portes se sont *refermer*. 5

Alors, l'ouvrier a ^{offert} offrir de travailler à moitié prix.⁵ Les portes ne se sont pas ^{rouvertes} rouvrir.⁶ Il travaillerait pour rien qu'on ne pourrait 7 le garder [cf. § 98]. C'est le chômage,⁷ le terrible chômage qui sonne le glas des mansardes.⁸ La panique a ^{arrêté} arrêter toutes les 9 industries, et l'argent, l'argent se ^{cache} cacher [use present perfect, *A p. p.*].

Au bout des huit jours, c'est bien ^{fini} finir. L'ouvrier a ^{fait} faire une 11 suprême tentative, et il revient lentement, les mains vides, éreinter ^{éreinté} de misère. La pluie tombe, il marche sous l'averse,⁹ sans la sentir, 13 n'entendant que sa faim, s'arrêtant pour arriver moins vite. Il se ^{penche} pencher [*A p. p.*] sur un parapet de la Seine; les eaux ^{grossissent} grossir 15 [*p. p.* 'swollen'] coulent¹⁰ avec un long bruit Il se penche davan- ^{gras} tage, la coulée colossale passe sous lui, en lui jetant un appel 17 furieux. Puis, il se dit que ce serait lâche,¹¹ et il s'en va.

NOTES. 1. 'trudge the streets' (sidewalks). 2. 'entirely,' 'body and brain' (**tout** adv.). 3. 'job.' 4. 'repellent' (pres. part.? or verbal adj.?). 5. 'for half pay.' 6. **re** + **ouvrir**. 7. 'stoppage of work,' 'closing down'; **chômage** is derived from **chômer** 'stand idle,' 'be out of work,' 'take a day off.' 8. 'toll the knell of the attics' ('garrets'). 9. 'downpour' (**une averse**; **pleuvoir à verse** = 'rain in torrents'). 10. 'flow' (cf. the fem. **la coulée**, line 17). 11. 'cowardly.'

EXERCISE II

1. The workman had not fallen ill, but all the factories (**usines**, *f.*) had been closed. 2. Everyone had been obliged (§ 187) to stand idle, and this stoppage of work had tolled the knell of the poor. 3. At the end of a week the factories had not yet reopened their doors. 4. Worn out with misery, the man had trudged the streets, then had returned, empty-handed. 5. Had he (**si**) thrown himself into the Seine, what would have become of his family? And later, when the factories had been reopened (**on**, *E p. p.*), he would have been needed.

QUERY. With only the English translations before you, can you reproduce all the examples in §§ 265-266, or make fresh combinations?

CINQUANTE ET UNIÈME LEÇON

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED)

TENSE-VALUE AND VOICE

267. a. Tense-Value. Like the infinitive and the verb-forms in **-ant**, the past participle (despite its name) usually gets its tense-value from the immediate context. **Choses vues** 'Things seen,' isolated, expresses completion; but it also expresses present sights, not future sights. **Il fut blessé** ('He was wounded') expresses an act; **Il était blessé**, a state. In **Arrivée de bonne heure, elle put voir ses amis avant leur départ** 'Having arrived early, she was able to see her friends before their departure,' the past participle (*arrivée*) is really past; so in **être venu** 'to have come,' or in **sans s'être vus** 'without having seen one another'; in general, its tense-value is vague.

b. Voice. Originally (in Latin), the past participle was either deponent or passive. It has remained passive (or passively adjectival) in many constructions with **être** and like verbs: **Elle est très aimée** 'She is much liked' (= **On l'aime beaucoup**), **Il fut élu** 'He was elected,' or, adjectivally, **Elle était très âgée** 'She was very aged' (French has no such verb as **âger**; hence we could not say **Elle fut âgée**, nor **Cette vie l'âgea** !)

After **avoir** (and after **être** in reflexive or reciprocal constructions) the past participles of transitive verbs long ago got an active sense; so that in **J'ai écrit une lettre** 'I've written a letter' **une lettre** is the object of **écrit** (or rather of the group **ai écrit**) and not of **ai**, which serves merely to indicate tense.

Variation of the Past Participle after an Object

268. The past participle regularly agrees in gender and in number with a *preceding* accusative object:

Quelle route avais-tu prise ?	1	What route had you taken?
Voici la route que j'avais prise.	2	Here is the route I'd taken.

NOTES. If a personal pronoun of common gender precedes, the participle should be masculine: **Je les ai vus, lui et elle** 'I've seen him and her.' If two or more accusatives of different genders happen to precede a participle whose feminine differs audibly from its masculine, a speaker who has not *planned* his sentence may have to face (or to dodge!) difficulties like those considered in § 265, *c*, and Remark. See § 405.

REMARK. French children, and grown-ups in some cases, fail to follow the rule just exemplified. The little boy who tells the story of *La Dernière Classe* (Daudet) bears witness: **C'était mon-tour de réciter. Que n'aurais-je pas donné pour pouvoir dire tout au long** ['from beginning to end'] **cette fameuse règle des participes, bien haut, bien clair, sans une faute; mais je m'embrouillai** ['I became confused'] **aux premiers mots**, etc. And in her *Désabusée!* ['Undeceived!'] *grand roman passionnel*, Marcel Prévost's schoolgirl authoress, Julie, writes: **Le capitaine Maxime ne s'était pas trompé. L'impression** [*feminine noun*] **qu'il avait produit sur Marguerite . . .** Here Julie's friend Jeanne, to whom she is reading her story, interrupts: **Produite**. Julie: **Quoi? produite?** . . . (Understanding) **Ah! tu as raison**. (She corrects.) Explain why Jeanne was right.

QUERY. Why first **écrit**, then **écrites**, in the following?—**Avez-vous écrit les preuves?** ('Have you written the proofs?') and **Avez-vous les preuves écrites?** ('Have you the written proofs?').

a. Following a dative or genitive, the past participle is neutral:

Je les avais vus (vues) et je leur avais parlé (not parlés). 3 I had seen them and I had spoken to them.

Voilà les aventures (f.) dont nous avons ri (never ris, nor rie, nor rics). 4 Those are the adventures we've been laughing about.

Ces assiettes sont jolies. En avez-vous pris? (not prises). 5 These plates are pretty. Have you taken any of them?

NOTE. But a past participle following **en** may be a substantive (resemble a noun), in which case it will agree with its antecedent: **Je regardai les assiettes, il y en avait trois de cassées (not cassé)** 'I looked at the plates; three of them had been broken.' Likewise, **une de cassée**.

b. When a masculine plural noun or a feminine noun is preceded by certain partitives, such as **combien de** or **que de** 'how much,' 'how many,' **la quantité de**, and the like, the past participle is usually made

to agree with what the speaker feels to be the more important of the preceding words.

Combien de bévues (<i>f.</i>) il a faites! (<i>rather than fait</i>).	6	How many blunders he has made!
Que de choses tu as écrites!	7	How many things you wrote!
La quantité de livres que tu as lus! (<i>rather than lue</i>).	8	What a lot of books you have read!
C'est un tiers des ^{deux} pièces que j'ai apprises.	9	Of the pieces that I have learned, it is one third.
But C'est un tiers des pièces que j'ai apprises.	10	The number of pieces I have learned is one third.

NOTE. A past participle preceded by **combien + en** is neutral: **Des truites!** (*f.*) **Combien en as-tu pris?** 'Some trout! How many have you caught?' Compare this example with **Combien de bévues il a faites!** (above).

QUERY. Why **fait** (not **faites**) in **Combien a-t-il fait de gaffes?** ('How many breaks has he made?')?

c. Preceded by **plus . . . en**, **plus . . . en**, or by **moins . . . en**, **moins . . . en**, etc., a past participle may vary only for the eye.

Quant à ces choses (*f.*), **plus on en a fait** (*not faites*), **plus on en a vendu**. As for those things, the more (of them) we've made, the more (of them) we've sold.

Les peintures? **Plus il en a vues**, **moins il en a admirées**. Paintings? The more he has seen, the fewer he has admired.

In example 11, **fait** cannot be **faites** because **faites** differs both for the eye and for the ear; **admirées** and **vues**, in example 2, *sound* exactly like **admiré** and **vu**. No wonder that French children make mistakes.

d. Various words expressing time, distance, weight, value, or price become more or less adverbial before verbs such as **courir** '(to) run,' **coûter** '(to) cost,' **valoir** '(to) be worth,' etc. Hence:

1. **La distance que tu avais couru** (*rather than courue*) = The distance that you had run, *but* **Les risques que tu avais courus** = The risks that you had run. 2. **Les prix que ces choses ont valu** = The prices that these things have been worth, *but* **Voilà la récompense que tes efforts t'ont value** = There is the reward that your efforts have earned you. 3. **Les dix kilos que cet enfant avait pesé** = The ten kilos that this child had weighed, *but* **Des marchandises qu'il avait pesées** = Wares that he had weighed.

269. A General Observation as to Agreement. For beginners, the most important principles of agreement can be illustrated by the following examples: (1) **La lettre a été écrite** (not écrit) 'The letter has been written,' (2) **Elle est sortie** (not sorti) 'She has gone out,' (3) **Elle a couru** (not courue) 'She has run,' (4) **Elle a écrit sa lettre** (not écrite) 'She has written her letter,' (5) **Voici la lettre qu'elle** (or **il**) **a écrite** (not écrit) 'Here is the letter that she (or he) has written,' (6) **Elles se sont comprises** (not compris) 'They have understood one another,' (7) **Elles se sont écrit quelques lettres** (not écrites) 'They've written one another some letters,' (8) **Voilà les lettres qu'elles** (or **ils**) **se sont écrites** (not écrit).

A COMPREHENSIVE TEST BEARING ON §§ 262-269

1. I have studied the fiftieth lesson and the fifty-first. I believe I have understood them. 2. What mistakes have I made? I have made several mistakes. 3. When you came (*A p.p., four forms*) to see me, why didn't you stay (*A p.p., four forms*)? 4. Why did you go away (*en aller; A p.p., four forms*)? 5. Have you been running? Yes, we have been running. 6. What route did you take to come here? We took the route that seemed (*A p.p.*) the shortest (*court? or courte?*). 7. Every time that you (*tu*) have come here, you have arrived too late. 8. How many of your friends have you met on the way (*en route*)? The impression that you have produced on everybody is that you ought to have started (*partir*) earlier. 9. I was up at seven o'clock, but I had to finish some work for my father. 10. Here are the letter and the book that you gave me. I have read them, but I have not understood them. The more (of them) I've read, the less I've understood. 11. The care that it has taken to understand those alleged rules is wasted (*perdre*). 12. I fear that we have not understood one another. 13. Have you the letters written in French? Where are those that Alfred and John have written to each other? 14. Look at those pretty plates. How many of them have you bought?

CINQUANTE-DEUXIÈME LEÇON

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (CONCLUDED)

270. The past participle varies for the eye, not for the ear, when a preceding accusative is not the object but the subject of a following infinitive :

WITH AN ACCUSATIVE *SUBJECT*
FOR THE INFINITIVE

Je les ai vus (vues) [vy] arriver. 1
I saw them arrive.

NOTE. Not merely verbs of perception (as *écouter*, *entendre*, *voir*, etc.), but also causal verbs (as *laisser* and *faire*), are true to the above statement.

Voilà la femme que nous avons entendue chanter. 2

There is the woman whom we've heard sing (*or* singing).

Again a purely visible (graphic) agreement. We could not link the *s* of *entendues* before, say, *aller*, or before *y aller*.

Leur mère les a envoyés chercher quelque chose. 3

Their mother has sent them to get something.

WITH AN ACCUSATIVE *OBJECT*
FOR THE INFINITIVE

Je les ai vu évincer.
I saw them evicted.

Voici les vers que j'ai entendu chanter.

Here are the verses that I've heard sung.

Leur mère les a envoyé (not envoyés) chercher.

Their mother has sent for them (sent [someone] to get them).

a. Used causally, *fait* (past participle) is invariable for the eye, because the *te* of *faite*, or the *tes* of *faites*, would be audible before *any* infinitive : **faite venir, faites partir**. Hence :

Et cette jeune fille, l'ont-ils fait chanter ? 4

And that young lady, have they had her sing ?

REMARKS. Formerly it was correct to say *faite chanter* ; and *fait* does not constitute an exception, if we consider only spoken French. For the *ear*, all other past participles are really invariable before all pure infinitives under all normal circumstances. Before a vowel, **vu**, **vue**, **vus**, and **vues**, etc., would all sound alike in any case, and *fait* commonly remains [fe] : **Je l'ai fait entrer**.

277. The Type Il avait eu deux pièces jouées au Vaudeville. This means 'He had had two pièces played at the Vaudeville'; but it does not necessarily mean that he had caused them (*faire*) to be played there. **Il avait fait jouer deux pièces au Vaudeville** would mean not only that two pièces of his had been played there, but that he, their author, had caused them to be played there. Our 'have,' 'had,' used causally, is sometimes ambiguous.

FOR TRANSLATION AND PRONUNCIATION

1. Who are the people that I have seen arrive (arriving)? 2. The gentlemen whom we heard announce that they were leaving Paris, and the ladies whom you wished to bring (*amener*) yourselves. We sent for them as soon as we had learned (*A 2 p.p.*) that they had decided (*se décider à*) to stay. 3. Mme.¹ Figeac and her sister! I hadn't forgotten them. 4. No, you couldn't have done that. That isn't good form. Perhaps you have been counted on, but you can tell them that it was a misunderstanding. If you say it well, you will not be laughed at. 5. I have missed a fine chance! 6. Never mind, you are the only one punished. Mme. Figeac has never borne anyone a grudge. Besides, she likes people who have done something, and before she meets you I will tell her that you have had a comedy played at the Chat Noir. 7. Who, pray, is that person talking to our friend Kargou? 8. Ah! they have let him in. Very interesting. He looks as if he had never hurt anyone (has the look of never having done *etc.*); he is a cubist (*cubiste*) and he has made himself known. I've seen him paint (*peindre*). 9. Has he had himself painted? 10. No, but he has just finished something which has been greatly admired. It (*ça*) is called *Le Suicide*. An individual (*individu*) who is much larger than a house—a house that can be seen behind him—has thrown himself from one of the windows. 11. You had that explained to you? 12. Yes, the whole tragedy. The poor man was too large for his house; he couldn't live in it (*y habiter*).

QUERY. Can you make reasonable fresh combinations out of all the examples in §§ 270-277?

¹ In French, *M^{me}* (not *Mme.*); cf., *M^{lle}* (*mademoiselle*), *M^{rs}* or *MM.* (*messieurs*), *C^{ie}* 'Co.,' *Dr* 'Dr.,' *5^e* or *5^{ème}* '5th,' *5^o* '5thly' (Latin *quinto*), etc.

CINQUANTE-TROISIÈME LÉÇON

PERSONAL PRONOUNS¹

278. Stress. Between its stressed and its unstressed personal pronouns English distinguishes clearly for the *ear*. The French forms (except **nous**, **vous**, **elle**, and **elles**) are clearly distinguished both for the ear and for the eye. Examples :

NOT STRESSED		STRESSED
Je pars [ʒə pa:r]. J'entre.	1	Moi, je reste. C'est moi. I shall stay. It's I.
I'm going away. I enter.		
Que dis-je ? [kə di:ʒ].	2	Il est plus jeune que moi. He is younger than I.
What am I saying?		
Je me dis . . . [ʒə m di].	3	Ça ne me plaît pas, à moi. I don't like that.
I say to myself . . .		
Je m'étais dit que . . .	4	Ça ne plaisait qu'à moi. That pleased only me.
I'd said to myself that . . .		

a. The forms **je**, **me**, **te**, and **se** are strictly unstressed forms ; in inversions, **tu** and **il(s)** and **on** may be slightly stressed (§ 281) ; following a verb (imperative) **le** tends to be pronounced [lœ], and **les** is a little more strongly stressed in **Regarde-les** 'Look at them' than in **Je les regarde**. The forms **nous** and **vous** may stand either in markedly unemphatic or markedly emphatic positions ; so **lui** ; whereas **leur** can be (slightly) stressed only as an enclitic : **Dites-le leur** 'Tell them it' ('Say it to them'). The forms **moi**, **toi**, **soi**, and **eux** are essentially stressed forms ; **elle** and **elles** may be either stressed or stressless.

In the four examples given above substitute **tu**, **te**, **toi**, as required. Then, giving careful attention to stress, *both in your French and in your English*, pronounce, translate (*idiomatically!*), and explain the following examples :

1. Tu y vas? 2. Y vas-tu? 3. C'est toi qui ^{comp. all} te trompes. 4. Mais toi, mon amie, tu n'iras pas. 5. On vous aime bien, toi et lui. 6. Vient-il?

¹ For a table showing usual combinations of accusatives and datives, see § 298, p. 263.

Lui, jamais! 7. Elle est ravissante. 8. Elle? je la trouve plutôt ennuyeuse. 9. Que dit-il? Il ne dit rien. 10. Pleut-il? Non, il ne pleut pas. 11. Elle, je l'admire beaucoup, mais lui, je le déteste. 12. Qu'est-ce que tu lui as dit? A lui? je ne lui ai rien dit. 13. Comprends-tu ça? Je le comprends fort bien. 14. Ils s'embêtent. Eux? mais pas du tout. 15. Ce sont eux qui se divertissent, ce n'est pas moi, je vous en assure. 16. J'agis pour moi (pour toi, pour lui, pour vous, pour eux). 17. Qui y avait-il? Il n'y avait que moi (que toi, que lui, qu'elle, qu'elles, qu'eux). 18. Je les voyais pour la première fois, lui aussi bien qu'elle. 19. C'est toi, n'est-ce pas? Oui, c'est moi. 20. Tu sais les mêmes choses que moi (que lui, qu'eux). 21. Faites comme eux (comme moi, comme lui). 22. On pense trop à soi. 23. C'est soi-même qu'on trompe le plus. 24. En parle-t-on? Non, on n'en parle jamais. 25. Elle ne nous plaît pas, ni à moi ni à ma sœur. 26. Je les cherche. Ce sont eux (elles) que je cherche. 27. Il me dit ça. Ce n'est pas à moi qu'il dit ça. 28. Je lui dis ça. Je ne lui dis pas ça, à lui. 29. Ce n'est pas moi qui le dirais. Je le dirais. 30. Dis-leur ça. Dis-leur à eux que... 31. Elle les flatte. Elle ne les flatte pas, eux. 32. Je lui parle à lui. Je lui parle à elle. 33. Je leur parle à elles. Je leur parle à eux. 34. Tu nous verras (voir, group D), elle et moi. 35. Je vous avais vus, toi et elle. 36. Je ne vous avais pas vus, ni toi ni elle. 37. Je suis Français, moi.

279. Elision. Before verb-forms beginning with a vowel, also before **y** and **en** (pronoun or adverb), **je**, **me**, **te**, **le**, **la**, and **se** are regularly elided, for the eye as well as for the ear. Examples (to be pronounced and translated):

1. J'aime ça. 2. J'y vais. 3. J'en parle. 4. M'aimes-tu? 5. Je t'y vois. 6. Je t'en parle. 7. Je t'aime. 8. Je l'ai compris. 9. Je l'ai comprise. 10. Je l'y ai vu. 11. Je l'y ai vue. 12. Je l'en ai convaincu. 13. On l'en a persuadée. 14. On s'oublie. 15. On s'y divertit. 16. On s'en va.

a. Following a verb (necessarily a positive imperative), **me**, **te**, **le**, **la** are elided before **y** and **en**. Examples (to be pronounced and translated):

1. ~~Me~~ t'y (*in living French rather Mets-toi là, meaning 'Put yourself there, 'Stand there'*). 2. Va-t'en! 3. Convainquez-l'en.

b. In consonantal groups which the French find easy to pronounce (mostly before simple consonants), **je** may become [ʒ]: Je dis [ʒ di];

Je crois may become [ʃkrwa]. Note that **dis-je** [di:ʒ] rimes with the noun **tige** 'stem.'

c. In folk-speech, **tu** becomes **t'** in certain familiar groups: **T'es fou** 'You're crazy.' (A phenomenon reproduced by realistic playwrights etc.) Similarly, **vous** may become **v's**, as in **v's avez**.

d. Standing immediately before a consonant (**Il se trompe**), or before a pause (**Que dit-il ?**), **il** is commonly pronounced [i] in colloquial French, even by educated speakers. In realistic novels etc. this [i], for **il**, is often printed **y**. (**I'** would be a better representation.) **Ils** likewise becomes [i], and [iz] before a vowel.

AN ANECDOTE BY THE PHONETICIAN PAUL PASSY

Quand O. Jespersen [a well-known phonetician] était en France, mon frère et moi lui citions des exemples d'abréviations employées en parlant français. Mon père, qui nous écoutait, protestait énergiquement ; il ne voulait pas admettre, notamment [especially], que **il** se prononce [i] devant les consonnes. Comme nous insistions, il finit par s'écrier : **Monsieur Jespersen, ils ne savent pas ce qu'ils disent !** [mœsʝ jɛspɛrsɛn insafpa skidi:z] ; montrant ainsi, bien malgré lui, que nous avons raison.

(Quoted from *Les Sons du français*, § 257 ; slightly adapted.)

e. Following an imperative, **le** and **la** may be elided only before **y** and **en** (adverb or pronoun). Hence, **Montrez-le à Paul** [mɔ̃'trɛ lœ a po] 'Show it to Paul,' etc. Similarly, **les y** [lezɪ] and **les en** [lezɑ̃], but **les à** [le a] etc.

280. Nominative, Dative, Accusative. (Special forms for the dative only **lui** and **leur**, which may also have other functions.)

a. When a noun or pronoun is not the direct or indirect object of a verb, and not the object of a preposition, it is called *nominative*. For example, **il** is a subject nominative in **Il parle**, and **le** is a predicate nominative in **J'étais riche — je ne le suis plus** 'I was rich — I am so ['it, that is, rich] no longer.' Similarly, **lui** is a (stressed) predicate nominative in **C'est lui**.

b. When a verb acts indirectly, its object is called *dative*, unless this object requires a preposition (usually *à*). Thus, in **Je le lui montre** 'I show him it'¹ ('I show it to him'), **le** is accusative, **lui** is dative, a pure dative. For convenience, we may speak of *à lui* in **Je le lui montre à lui** ('I show it to him') as a *prepositional dative*: often *à lui* may be regarded as the stressed form of **lui**, *à eux* as the stressed form of **leur**, etc.

c. When a verb acts directly, its object is called *accusative*: **Vois-tu l'église?** ('Do you see the church?') **Oui, je la vois** ('Yes, I see it').

NOTE. When a noun cannot thus follow a transitive verb (**Vois-tu l'église?**), a pronoun used to represent it cannot be called accusative, but must be a pure dative, or must follow a preposition (usually *à*). But we find that **Je parle à Jean** corresponds to **Je lui parle** (not to **Je parle à lui**), whereas **Je pense à Jean** 'I'm thinking of John' corresponds to **Je pense à lui**. The pronominal construction is therefore more instructive than the noun construction.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. Noting that **nuire** '(to) harm' has in group *A* **je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nuisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent**, and that its past participle (**nuis**) is invariable, translate the following:

1. You have harmed that man. 2. You have harmed that woman.
3. You have harmed her. 4. You are harming her. 5. They are harming him. 6. You say that I harm him. I say that he is harming me. (*Make five more combinations.*)

II. Noting that **le, la, and les** (accusative) follow the datives **me, te, se, nous, and vous**, but precede the datives **lui and leur**, translate the following:

1. I show it to him. 2. I am showing it to her. 3. He shows it to me. 4. They are showing them to us (. . . to us). (*Make five more combinations.*)

¹ American usage differs from British usage by not allowing 'it' (accusative) to precede a dative, as in 'I gave it him.'

CINQUANTE-QUATRIÈME LEÇON

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (CONTINUED)

281. Forms never markedly stressed are **je**, **me**, **tu**, **te**, **il**, **ils**, **on**, and **se**. Hence, **Moi, je le crois** 'I [slight pause] believe it' ('For my part, I believe it') etc., as illustrated already and further on.

REMARK. As enclitics, however, **tu**, **il**, **ils**, and **on** may get sufficient stress to allow them to be rimed with e.g. **reçu**, **subtil**, **subtils**, and (**le**) **son**; but the pronominal part of such rimes would seldom be so vigorously uttered as the riming syllable of the other part. In **Crois-tu?** **Vient-il?** **Parlent-ils?** and **Parle-t-on?** the stress normally falls on the verb rather than on the enclitic pronoun, but is pretty evenly distributed.

a. **Lui** 'he' and **eux** 'they' often precede a verb without being supplemented by **il** and **ils**. Examples: **Mais lui ne venait plus** (or, **Mais lui, il ne venait plus**) 'But he no longer came,' **Eux le croyaient** (or, **Eux, ils le croyaient**) 'They believed it.'

NOTES. In groups such as **mais lui venait** a comma is possible: **mais lui, venait**; and **eux avaient** = [ø ave]. On **moi** without **je**, **toi** without **tu**, etc., see §§ 290, *b*, and 291, *a*.

b. In the commonest types of accusative and dative constructions, emphasis is expressed by using both the unstressed and the stressed form: **Est-ce que je te parle, à toi?** 'Am I talking to you?' (not **Est-ce que je parle à toi**); etc. Note also the type **C'est moi qu'il regarde** 'He is looking at me' (not **Il regarde moi**).

c. The neuter has no stressed form (unless we use **ça** or **cela**) and no dative. Similarly, our neuter 'it' is almost never stressed.

282. **Meanings of the Personal Pronouns.** As nominatives or accusatives, **il**, **le**, **elle**, **la**, **ils** or **elles**, and **les** are regularly used of sexless things, and **il** and **le** are often purely neuter, as in **Il pleut** 'It is raining' or as in **Je le pense** 'I think so' etc.; but the *datives* **lui** and **leur** cannot be truly neuter, and they are seldom applied to sexless things (or to *apparently* sexless things!) unless these are more

or less personified: **Je lui en voulais à cette maison** 'I bore that house a grudge.' After prepositions, **lui, elle, eux,** and **elles** are not commonly applied to sexless things; this is markedly true of **à** and **de**. Thus **à lui** could not stand for, say, **à l'alcool**, unless 'alcohol' were personified; similarly, **de lui** could not stand for **du trou** 'of the hole.' **Je vais à elle** = 'I go to her' (a person); **J'y vais** = 'I go to it' (a thing, e.g. **à la gare** 'to the station'). **Je parle de lui** = 'I speak of him'; **J'en parle** would be required of, say, **un livre**.

REMARK. For 'in it,' 'in them,' neuter, use **là dedans** 'therein,' **dedans** 'inside,' **là** 'there,' or **y**. For 'on it,' 'on them,' neuter, use **là-dessus** 'thereupon.' For 'under it,' 'under them,' neuter, use **là-dessous**. Cf. § 304.

283. Reflexive and Reciprocal Forms. See § 43 and note the following statements:

a. After prepositions, not only **moi, toi, nous,** and **vous** may be reflexive, but also **lui, elle, elles,** and **eux**: **Je travaille pour moi** 'I work for myself,' **Tu parlais de toi** 'You were talking about yourself,' **Il pense trop à lui** 'He thinks too much about himself,' etc., **même** (**mêmes**) being frequently added, often to avoid ambiguity: **Il est injuste envers lui-même** 'He is unfair to himself,' **Elle parle pour elle-même** 'She speaks for herself,' **Elles pensent à elles-mêmes** 'They're thinking of themselves,' etc.

b. As datives or as accusatives, **nous, vous,** and **se** often express reciprocity: **Nous nous sommes rencontrés quelquefois** 'We have met (each other, one another) occasionally,' **Vous vous haïssez, n'est-ce pas?** 'You hate each other (one another), don't you?' **Ils se cherchent** 'They're looking for one another (each other),' etc.

c. If a reciprocal pronoun might otherwise be taken for a reflexive, clearness requires the addition of **l'un(e) l'autre** or **les un(e)s les autres**, with **à** in dative constructions:

Elles se sont plaintes (les unes 1 They've complained; *recipro-*
les autres). *cally,* They've pitied each other.

Elles se le sont rappelés (les 2 They recalled it; *reciprocally,*
unes aux autres). They reminded each other of it.

remembered to each other

284.

On, Y, En

a. On (from the Latin nominative noun *homo* 'man,' 'human being') is a strictly personal pronoun, always proclitic or enclitic and always nominative. Its only reflexive forms are **se** and **soi**, never **lui**. English has no exact equivalent: **On s'amuse tellement** 'One has such a jolly time,' **On le dit** 'They say so,' **On n'entre pas** 'No admittance,' **On est aussi vieux qu'on se croit** 'We are as old as we believe ourselves,' **On pense toujours à soi** 'One is always thinking about oneself,' **On se trompe soi-même** 'We deceive ourselves,' and in a plural sense **On échange des salutations** 'Greetings are exchanged,' or with a reciprocal **se**: **On se voit rarement** 'We (They *etc.*) seldom see one another,' **On s'est réuni à midi** 'The meeting took place at noon.'

b. Y (from the Latin adverb *ibi* 'there') is used where in formal English 'thereto,' 'therein,' etc., might occur. It often serves as a 'personal' pronoun when **à lui**, **à elle**, **à eux**, and **à elles** would be literally personal. See § 282, Remark.

c. En (from the Latin adverb *inde* 'thence') often occurs instead of **de lui**, **d'elle**, **d'eux**, and **d'elles**, as these cannot be freely applied to sexless things. Test-word: 'thereof.' **Y** and **en** are proclitic or enclitic: **J'en parle** (proclitic), **Parlez-en** (enclitic), etc.

REMARK. Other pronouns may be personal, but only those considered in §§ 278–284 are *called* 'personal'—a technical term.

285. General Rule as to Position. Both datives and accusatives *precede* all verb-forms except positive imperatives: **le**, **la**, and **les** precede **lui** and **leur** in all positions, and precede **moi**, **toi**, **nous**, and **vous** after positive imperatives; **y** and **en** must follow datives and accusatives. (The negative particle **ne** always precedes objective pronouns.)

a. Several proclitic or enclitic pronouns may stand together. Examples:

1. Je ne le lui dis jamais.
2. Tu les y trouveras.
3. Vous nous les montrerez.
4. Elle s'en convaincra.
5. Dites-le-nous.
6. Je vous en parlerai.
7. Ne leur en parlez pas.
8. Parlez-nous-en.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Do you see that house? Yes, I see it. 2. Do you know (*see connaitre*, § 460) that lady? No, I don't know her. 3. Have you my books? Have I given them to you? Yes, I have given them to you. Where are they? I should like to know (*savoir*); I have found some good ideas in them. If we find them [the books], will you show them to me? 4. Why did the woman look under her bed? Because she thought that there was a burglar under it. 5. Have you read that novel? Everybody is talking about it. I'll lend it to you. Can you return it (*rendre*) to me to-morrow? My sister wants to talk about it to some of her friends. She would like to explain it to them. She knows the author of it; they have met several times. 6. Where is your club? (*cercle*, *m.*) Near here, but I almost never go to it. When friends come to see me I take (*mener*) them there.

II. (*Use on as much as possible.*) 1. I'm told that you are leaving Paris. We are told many things that aren't going to happen. 2. A man believes himself free. Is he? If we were, what then? 3. When will the meeting take place? At what hour do we leave? 4. If we wish to keep an idea, we repeat it to ourselves. (*Referring to § 281, a, make three fresh combinations.*)

III. (*With special reference to stress.*) 1. Doesn't X like you? Me? No, he detests me, and I detest *him*, too. 2. Will you explain your idea to Mme. F.? Why should I explain it to her (*also*, Why should I explain it to *her*?) 3. You can show me that letter, can't you? Yes, I can show it to you. Can't you show it (*f.*) to *me*? (*Make four more combinations, each containing a strengthened dative as well as an unstressed accusative.*)

IV. Change the person and number of each pronoun in the nine examples in § 284, a.

CINQUANTE-CINQUIÈME LEÇON

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (CONTINUED)

286. A VILLAGE WEDDING (connected examples for comment)¹

Le marié est debout ['standing'] près de sa femme : il est en 1
 jaquette ['long-tailed coat'], elle est tout en blanc. Généralement,
 elle lui donne la main et il la serre timidement. La mariée le 3
 regarde, lui ; elle a confiance en lui, et lui espère en elle. Ils ont
 un air de bonheur naïf pendant que les invités les observent et 5
 leur sourient. Derrière eux, un farceur ['joker'] plaisante et les
 demoisellés ['young ladies'] pincent les lèvres, elles craignent 7
 d'éclater ['burst out laughing'] quand on entendra l'artiste [*the*
village photographer] lâcher le solennel : « Ne bougeons plus ! » 9
 ['Now no one move!']

NOTES. 1. In line 2, *elle* might be slightly stressed, without being reënforced ; so *nous*, *vous*, and *elles*, under like circumstances. Could *il*, line 1, be changed to *lui* ? 2. What is the case of *lui*, line 3 ? and that of the first *lui* in line 4 ? and that of the *lui* in *lui espère* ? Could an *eux espèrent* be correct in some other context ? 3. Which forms stand for both genders ? 4. How does *Ne bougeons plus* differ grammatically from, say, *Puissions-nous arriver* ? 5. How many facts as to the personal pronouns do we find illustrated in this brief passage ?

a. MISTAKES REQUIRING CORRECTION

1. Je les ^{leur} donne la main et ils ^{se} le serrent timidement. 2. Ils me sourient et je souris ^{leur} à eux. 3. Toi ^{tu} as confiance en lui et il, peut-être, a confiance en vous. 4. Le marié regarde sa femme et elle ^{le} regarde ^{lui} lui. 5. Elle lui donne la main. Pourquoi ^{elle} lui la donne-t-elle ? Cela ^{lui} te plaît-il ? 6. Elle était jolie, elle ^{lui} nous avait plu^s (see *plaire*). Leur ^{leur} plaisons-nous, eux ? 7. L'artiste est là. Écoutons ^{lui} lui. Que dit-il aux ^{leur} invités ? Il les dit de ne pas bouger. Ils bougeront ? Ils ^{vous} jamais ! Et tu ? Je ? je attendrai que l'artiste ait fait sa photographie.

Sur bouger.

¹ Quoted from Brunot-Bony.

Moi-même etc.

287. All the stressed forms may be emphasized by adding *même* (if truly plural, *mêmes*); but these compounds differ in their syntax from the corresponding English compounds ('myself' etc.).

a. *Moi-même, toi-même, etc.* seldom occur as accusatives, except in apposition. (*Regardez moi-même*) 'Look at *me*' ('Look at myself'), is possible (note the *positive* imperative), but *Vous regardez moi-même* is not. For forms other than the positive imperative, other styles of emphasis are required. Example: *C'est vous* (or occasionally, *C'est vous-mêmes*) *que vous trompez, pas moi* 'It is yourselves that you are deceiving, not me.'

b. After prepositions, the simple stressed forms suffice except when very strong emphasis is required: *Je parle de moi* commonly means, 'I'm talking about myself' (with slight stress on 'self'); *Je parle de moi-même* must mean, 'I'm talking about myself.'

c. As nominatives, *moi-même, toi-même, etc.*, are almost always appositive: *Fais-le toi-même* 'Do it yourself,' *Et moi-même je suis de cet avis* 'And I myself am of that opinion,' *J'y vais moi-même* 'I'm going there myself.'

288. Forms with Imperatives. *Before* imperatives (necessarily *negative*), only unstressed forms occur. *After* imperatives (necessarily *positive*), we find *moi* and *toi*, but *le, la, les* (not *lui*, unless dative, and not *elle, elles, or eux*). However, *Cherchez-le* 'Look for him' = [ʃɛʀʃɛ lœ̃]. See § 278, *a*.

a. Formerly, *me* and *te* could follow imperatives; hence *Va-t'en* 'Go away,' and *Parle-m'en* 'Talk to me about it'; but *m'en* and *t'en* cannot be enclitic under all circumstances, and *m'y, t'y, l'y* are seldom enclitic in living French; hence *Tu t'y mettras* 'You will stand there,' but *Mets-toi là* 'Stand there,' etc. Before the verb we find no hyphen: *Je vous y chercherai* etc. After the verb we usually find a hyphen or hyphens: *Cherchez-nous-y*.

b. Formerly, when two or more positive imperatives occurred in unbroken succession, the second or last object had to be proclitic. The following example was intended to produce an archaic effect: **Dès qu'il aura franchi le seuil, baïllonnez-le et le liez fortement** 'As soon as he shall have crossed the threshold, gag him and bind him tightly.' (Sardou, *Fédora*, III, 5.)

On imperative constructions, see also §§ 194-203.

289. The Repetition of Proclitic Forms. Examples: **Elle les aide et (elle) les encourage** 'She helps (them) and (she) encourages them.' With a dative: **Elle leur annonce et (elle) leur explique son avis** 'She announces (to them) and (she) explains her opinion to them.' But before a past participle or infinitive the object-pronoun need not be repeated: **Elles les a aidés et encouragés**, and **Elle leur a annoncé et expliqué son avis.**

REMARK. Though *me*, *te*, *nous*, and *vous* may be either dative or accusative, none of them serve simultaneously as both. Hence **Il m'a nui et blessé** must be changed to **Il m'a nui et (il) m'a blessé (or blessée)** 'He has harmed and wounded me.' Cf. **Il leur a nui et il les a blessés (or blessées).**

TEST ON §§ 288-289

1. Look for me. Look for me there. 2. Leave it. Leave it there. Leave it there yourself. 3. Stand there (use *y* with **mettez**). Don't stand there. (use both **mettez** and **met**). 4. Here's an easy-chair. Sit down in it (use **assieds**, *sg.*, and **asseyez**, *pl.*, reflexively). No, don't sit there (**y**). 5. Talk to me about your adventures. Tell me (raconter) the best of them (**en**). 6. Will you aid and encourage me? I have always aided and encouraged you and have never harmed you.

The Strengthening of Simple Unstressed Subjects

290. When only one subject is involved in a given clause, a stressed form is often added to express contrast, but with various effects:

Moi, j'ai mes amis à mon café. 1 As for me, I have my friends
Et toi ? at my café. And you?

Je n'aime pas les chasseurs de grouses, moi.	2	I don't like grouse-hunters. (Note the tone of this emphasis.)
Toi, tu parles ; moi, j'agis.	3	You talk ; I act.
Oui, monsieur, j'ai vu ça, moi qui vous parle.	4	Yes, sir ; I have seen that, even I. (Or the like.)

a. Note again that for **je, tu, il** ('he'), and **ils**, stress must be indicated by the use, and generally by the addition, of **moi, toi, lui, eux**. Examples to be translated idiomatically, and to be noted :

1. Moi, je le connais, ce monsieur. Je ne le connais pas du tout, moi.
2. Toi, tu m'amuses énormément. Tu m'embêtes, toi. 3. Lui, il me dégoûte. Il est très drôle, lui. *Etc.* *lecture*

b. Occasionally, an inserted word or clause may allow **moi** and **toi** to occur without **je** and **tu**. Examples :

Non ! moi seule peux adoucir le mal que ça lui fera. 5 . No, no ! I alone can soften the pain that that will cause him.

Likewise, **Si toi, homme d'honneur, as pu . . .** 'If you, a man of honor, have been able to . . .' Note **seule** and **homme d'honneur** thrust between **moi** and **peux, toi** and **as**. Hence the allowable omission of the unstressed forms. **Moi peux** and **toi as** are impossible. How about **lui** and **eux** without **il** and **ils**?

c. Even though **elle (elles), nous**, and **vous** can be independently stressed (**Elle, pourtant, ne vient pas** 'She, however, isn't coming'), they usually follow the pattern of **je, tu, il, ils**. Hence, **Mais vous, madame, vous avez tort** ('But you, madam, are wrong'), rather than **Mais vous, madame, avez tort**.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE

Before studying further complications, substitute, wherever the context allows, a subject of a different number or different person in each of the examples in §§ 278, a, and 290. For the first singular substitute the second singular, for the second singular substitute the third singular, etc.

CINQUANTE-SIXIÈME LEÇON

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (CONTINUED)

COMPOUND SUBJECTS AND COMPOUND OBJECTS

291. Each member of a compound subject is necessarily stressed; hence the general addition of an inclusive unstressed form:

Toi et eux, vous le croyez.	1	You and they believe it.
Louis et moi, nous disons . . .	2	Louis and I say . . .
Ils le croient, lui et elle.	3	He and she believe it. <i>Etc.</i>

Note why the verb (necessarily plural) is of the first, second, or third person.

QUERIES. How does *Il viendra, lui et sa sœur* ('He will come, he and his sister') differ from *Ils viendront, lui et sa sœur*? Why may *lui et eux, or elle et lui, or elle et ses sœurs*, and the like, occur without an inclusive *ils or elles*? Why is *Écoutez, toi et elle* ('Listen, you and she') correct?

a. Occasionally the inclusive form is omitted, especially when one member of the compound subject is not a personal pronoun:

1. *Le cardinal et moi connaissons cette histoire* = The cardinal and I know that story. 2. *Nos hôtes et moi sommes des camarades de toujours* = Our guests and I have always been comrades. 3. *Votre ami et vous (or Ton ami et toi) m'avez attiré dans un piège* = Your friend and you have led me into a snare. 4. *Je suppose que tu veux éviter tout désagrément dont toi, puis Léontine, pourriez avoir à souffrir* = I suppose that you wish to avoid any unpleasant circumstance by which you, then Léontine, might have to suffer.

Insert in each of these five examples the possible inclusive form.

b. In colloquial French *ni . . . ni* generally occur with a deferred (appositive) pair of subjects: *Ils ne viendront pas, ni lui ni elle* 'Neither he nor she will come.' *Ni lui ni elle (no ils) ne viendront (pl. vb.)* is correct.

Translate the following in two ways: 1. Neither you nor he will come. 2. Neither she nor they (*use eux*) will come. 3. Neither they nor I will come.

Ni elle ni moi ne viendront pas.
Elle et moi ne viendront pas.

So **Tu l'aimes plus que tu ne m'aimes** (*La Loi de l'homme*, III, 5) means 'You love *her* more than you love *me*,' not 'You *love* her more than you *love* me.' In **J'ai votre parole** 'I have your word,' **Vous l'avez** 'You have it,' **avez** is logically stressed; but in **Je lui déplais comme elle me déplaît** 'She dislikes *me* just as I dislike *her*' (*La Petite Chocolatière*, III, 4), it is **-plais** and **-plaît**, both having the same sound, that get all the stress.

REMARK. To change, say, **Je l'aime beaucoup plus qu'il ne m'aime** to **Moi, je l'aime, lui, beaucoup plus que lui ne m'aime, moi** (similarly the other examples) would be to write, or to speak, French that is neither written nor spoken.

294. Non-pronominal Proclitics. Only **y** and **en** (as pronouns or as *adverbs*) and the negative particle **ne** (**n'**) can be inserted with the various unstressed forms (**Je ne lui parle pas**, **Tu nè me le montres pas**, **Vous ne m'y trouverez jamais**, **Elle ne leur en dira rien**, etc.). Hence **Il, cependant** ('He, however') is incorrect, though **Elle, cependant** needs no second **elle**. But even after the independent forms (**lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles**) such insertions of stressed adverbs or conjunctions are very limited.

REMARK. The old legal locution **Je, soussigné, . . .** ('I, the undersigned, . . .') takes us back to a time when the rules of stress were much freer and more 'logical' than they are now.

EXERCISE II

Where possible, translate the following in two or more ways.

1. I hope that you haven't forgotten either me or my brother.
2. We often think of you (*use à*), of you all, and you must think of us.
3. I sometimes meet J., but he always seems to be thinking about something else.
4. I don't dislike him, and he doesn't dislike me, but he seems to avoid me, and I, perhaps, avoid him.
5. If you see Pierre or Alice tell him, or her, that I hope that they soon will have returned (*revenir*).
6. I, the undersigned, declare . . .

CINQUANTE-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (CONTINUED)

ACCUSATIVE? DATIVE? OR *à* + COMPLEMENT?

295. Some French verbs may have only an accusative object (**Il les ennuie**); others, only a dative (**Il leur plaît**, but **Il plaît à tous**); others, only *à* + complement (**Il pense à eux**, or **Il pense à tous**); many may have either an accusative or a dative object, or both at once (**Je lui pardonne** 'I forgive him'; **Je le pardonne** 'I forgive it'; **Je le lui pardonne** 'I forgive him it').

REMARK. Evidently, the syntax of each French verb must be learned from observation. In general, French verbs are transitive when their English equivalents are transitive, etc. No *safe* comprehensive rule is possible.

a. In English very few verbs may take two non-prepositional objects; we may say 'Show me the house' but not 'Indicate me the house,' 'Tell me that' but not 'Say me that.' French employs the dative far more freely—with scores of verbs, and in various senses:

b. Dative of the Indirect Object (Idea: *to* somebody, or the like):

Prêtez-moi cela. Je vous le prêterai si vous (me) promettez de me le rendre.	1	Lend me that. I will lend it to you if you promise (me) to return it to me.
---	----------	---

So with **donner**, **expliquer**, **montrer**, and scores of other verbs.

c. Dative of Reference or Concern, with Verbs of Separation (Idea: *from* somebody, or the like):

Son argent? Elle ne le lui emprunte pas, elle le lui vole.	2	His money? She doesn't borrow it from him; she steals it (from him).
---	----------	--

So with **acheter**, **emporter**, **enlever**, **prendre**, and many other verbs.

d. Dative of Reference or Concern, in Place of a Possessive:

On lui trancha la tête.	3	They cut off his (<i>or</i> her) head.
Ça leur améliore l'ouïe.	4	That improves their hearing.

This construction is general in the case of words such as (1e) *bras* 'arm,' (1a) *jambe* 'leg,' and all other parts of obviously animate things (animals or persons); also in speaking of the mental faculties: *l'esprit* 'the mind,' *la conscience* 'the conscience (*or* consciousness),' etc. See Definite Article, § 329.

e. Simple Dative of Reference (Idea: *to* somebody):

Cela leur semble faux, cela leur 5 That seems to them false, they
déplait. don't like it.

It is the *nature* of some verbs to take the dative. Formerly, *obéir* and *pardonner* could have an accusative object of the person; hence *Elle sera obéie* (as if *obéir* were still transitive) etc. (Cf. *Je lui obéis*.)

f. Dative of Attribution:

D'une voix que je lui connais, 6 In a voice which I know as his,
il répondit . . . he replied . . .

g. Dative of Favor and the Confidential Dative:

Regardez-moi cette fille-là. De 7 Do look at that girl. What
quoi a-t-elle l'air ? does she suggest?

Ravier est amusant. Il vous 8 Ravier is amusing. He'll take off
imitera n'importe quel acteur. any actor for you (*not stressed!*).

Il vous prend sa cognée, il vous 9 See! He takes his hatchet, he
tranche la bête. chops the animal in two.

Here the narrator takes someone into his confidence, makes him a witness.

h. Dative or Accusative, but with Different Meanings:

Elle le battait. 10 She was beating him.

But, Le cœur lui (me) battait 11 His (Her, My) heart was beating
fortement. violently.

Je les pesais. 12 I was weighing them.

But, L'oisiveté lui pesait. 13 Idleness was weighing upon
him.

i. Dative representing the Terminus of an Intransitive Verb of Motion, used Figuratively:

Cette robe lui va à merveille. 14 That gown becomes her finely.

Cette idée leur est venue tout à 15 That idea came to them all of
coup. a sudden.

Adieu, mon enfant, tu nous re- 16 Good-by, my child, we shall
viendras un de ces jours. have you back one of these days.

In all such cases the motion is either wholly figurative or so attenuated as to seem so. Compare *Les larmes me (lui) viennent* ('Tears come to me,' '. . . him') with *Ernest vient à moi et me dit . . .* ('Ernest comes to me and says . . .').

296. Datives and Forms with à (à moi, à toi, à lui, etc.). We may observe a few typical verbs and adjectives :

a. Note *Cette maison lui appartient* 'That house belongs to him' (or 'to *him*') contrasting with *Cette maison est à lui* 'That house belongs to him' (or 'to *him*'). Note also *Prenez garde à lui* 'Mind what he's doing,' '. . . saying.' Many verb-noun phrases require *à moi, à toi, etc.* Yet *Ça lui fait plaisir* 'That *pleases* him.'

No safe comprehensive rule is possible. Observe !

b. Likewise with a given adjective : shall we use a pure dative? or *à moi, à toi, etc.*? or neither?

Before *agréable, désagréable, cher* 'dear to the affections', *(dangereux,)* *égal = indifférent, facile, difficile, fidèle, loyal, déloyal, possible, impossible, utile, inutile,* and many other adjectives implying advantage, disadvantage, etc., we generally find a pure dative. But 'She's kind to him' = *Elle est bonne pour lui, not Elle lui est bonne.*

Adjectives expressing various dispositions commonly require *pour moi, envers eux, avec toi,* etc. Hence *Elle est généreuse envers moi* 'She is generous to me,' *not Elle m'est généreuse.* Yet *Je leur en suis reconnaissant* 'I am grateful to them for it,' *not à eux.*

REMARK. Good dictionaries occasionally show what syntax is required with this or that noun or adjective. Long lists cannot be given here.

297. The Type *un ami à moi, son cousin à elle.* These, and like groups, either mean 'of mine' etc. (*Un ami à moi le dit = 'A friend of mine says so'*), or they must be used to avoid ambiguity, or for emphasis :

<i>Il lui parle de ses cousins à lui,</i>	1	He talks to her about his [or
<i>et elle lui parle des siens à elle.</i>		<i>his]</i> cousins, and she talks to him
		about hers.

Note that *son, sa, ses,* may mean either 'his' or 'her,' just as *le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes,* may mean either 'his' or 'hers.' Note also

that **mon, ton, son, ma, ta, sa,** and **ses** are never normally stressed; they are proclitic forms. See example 2. (Note **le sien à lui, le sien à elle,** etc.)

Non ! tu es mon cousin à moi ! 2 No, you are *my* cousin !

REMARK. Groups such as **un ami à moi** (= 'a friend of mine') do not necessarily express the same idea as **un de mes amis**. A person who says **une cousine à moi** may have only one **cousine**. 'An aunt of John's' = **une tante à Jean**.

NOTE. 'I am the master of them all' = **Je suis leur maître à tous**.

VARIOUS EXERCISES

(To be written)

I. Except where the context forbids, change the person or number, or both, of each of the datives in the sixteen numbered examples in § 295.

II. In **Il faut qu'il parle** a subjunctive is *concealed*. What concealed datives occur in § 295, or in the variants which you have just written? How can we discover whether, in **Mon maître me tient chaud** (§ 44, line 1), **me** is an accusative or a dative?

III. *Using datives, translate:* 1. He had stolen all that money from her, and he gave her back only half of it. 2. She would have lent it to him if he had asked her for it (**le**). 3. If I lent money to anyone and he didn't give it back to me, I should tell him that I had given it to him. 4. Would he be grateful to you for it? No, but **my** money might be useful to him.

IV. *Translate:* 1. Some friends of mine (M. et Mme. Dubois) are having their portraits painted. 2. Hers resembles her, but his doesn't resemble him at all. 3. If I were having *mine* painted, I shouldn't like to have it (that it) resemble me.

V. *Translate:* 1. An aunt of mine (his, hers, yours, ours, theirs) had married an uncle of John's. 2. One of my brothers married a cousin of his; he had only one (*use en*).

CINQUANTE-HUITIÈME LEÇON

COMBINATIONS OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

298. *Table showing Usual Combinations of Accusatives and Datives*

a. *Before the Verb (Proclitic).* Order: Dative + Accusative.

me le	me la	me les	(Occasionally me l'y etc.)
te le	te la	te les	(Occasionally te l'y etc.)
se le	se la	se les	(Occasionally se l'y etc.)
nous le	nous la	noùs les	(Occasionally nous l'y etc.)
vous le	vous la	vous les	(Occasionally vous l'y etc.)

b. *Before the Verb (Proclitic).* Order: Accusative + Dative.

le lui	la lui	les lui	(lui y does not occur)
le leur	la leur	les leur	(le leur y etc. are avoided)

c. *After the Verb (Enclitic).* Usual order: Accusative + Dative.

-le-moi	-la-moi	-les-moi	-le-nous	-la-nous	-les-nous
-le-toi	-la-toi	-les-toi	-le-vous	-la-vous	-les-vous
-le-lui	-la-lui	-les-lui	-le-leur	-la-leur	-les-leur

Combinations with y and en

d. *Before the Verb (Proclitic).*

e. *After the Verb (Enclitic).*

m'en	t'en	s'en	lui en	-m'en	-t'en	-lui-en
m'en	t'en	s'en	l'en	-m'en	-t'en	-l'en
nous en	vous en	s'en	leur en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-leur-en
nous en	vous en	s'en	les en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-les-en
m'y	t'y	s'y		[-m'y]	[-t'y]	
m'y	t'y	s'y	l'y	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	[-l'y]
nous y	vous y	s'y	leur y	-nous-y	-vous-y	[-leur-y]
nous y	vous y	s'y	les y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-les-y

Note why certain forms are duplicated. Dubious forms are in [].

(y en occurs in il y en a etc.; otherwise, seldom.)

(y-en [or y en] might occur: **Portes-y-en** = 'Take some there [thither].')

299. Usage is not consistent. For example, *before* verbs, **le, la, les**, follow pure datives, except **lui** and **leur** (§ 298); hence **me le, te la**, etc.; but, for example, **me, te, nous, vous**, dative, must not precede the accusatives **vous, nous, se, te, me, nor vice versa**; nor can datives and accusatives having the same form (as **me me** etc.) be combined. Study the following examples:

On ne m'a pas présenté à lui.	1	I haven't been presented to him.
Il vous aurait prise à moi.	2	He would have taken you from me.
On t'a adressée à nous.	3	You've been sent to us.
Je me fie à lui (à vous etc.).	4	I trust him (you etc.).

In example 1 we could not use **lui me**, nor **me lui**. In example 2 either **me vous** or **vous me** would be wrong. So **te nous** or **nous te** in example 3, and **me lui** or **lui me**, etc., in example 4.

REMARK. **On se vous arrache** ('People are fighting for your society,' 'You're quite the rage,' or the like) is wholly exceptional; it is due to the analogy of **On se l'arrache** ('Everybody is after him,' or the like), in which we have an allowable combination: **se le**.

RULE. A stressed form with **à (à moi, à toi, etc.)** is required (and a pure dative is ruled out) except as indicated in § 299. (But see § 298.)

300. REMARKS. 1. The enclitic forms, **-le-moi, -le-lui, etc.**, are often written without the second hyphen; also without either hyphen.

2. The form **lui-y** or **lui y** is avoided, possibly because of its sound, which, in rapid speech, would hardly differ from that of **lui**.

3. Living French of all kinds has a fixed series of arrangements for the *proclitic* forms, but **le français du peuple**, folk-speech, is very uncertain as to the arrangement of *enclitics*, and here the literary language also is uncertain in some cases.

4. Thus we find both **le moi** and **moi le**, both **le nous** and **nous le**, etc., as *enclitics*; but only **me le** and **nous le** as *proclitics*. See Remark 5.

4. *Before* the verb, **y** and **en** always *follow* other proclitics (**m'y, m'en, etc.**). (Groups such as **Il m'y en a parlé** 'He spoke to me there about it' are avoided.)

5. *After* the verb, especially in folk-speech, we may hear not only **Laisse-m'y** ('Leave me there'), but also **Laisse-moi-s-y** [les mwazi] and

Laisse-y-moi. M. Léon Clédât, a very observant grammarian, remarks that the plain people are uncertain in the arranging of their enclitics: 'Le peuple dit un peu de toutes façons'; but he adds that 'dans la bonne langue c'est **en** et **y** que l'on place en dernier lieu ['at the end of the group'], aussi bien après le verbe qu'avant: **tirez m'en** ['Get me out of it'], **donne-lui en** ['Give him some; 'Give her some'], **porte-l'y** ['Take it there; i.e. 'Carry it there'], **suivez-nous y** ['Follow us there (thither)'], **mets-t'y** ['Stand there']. But 'la bonne langue' is not necessarily the language actually spoken, and a form like **mets-t'y** is not usual among the educated.

6. In the older grammars, the term *conjunctive forms* is generally used where we use *proclitic* and *enclitic*, and the term *disjunctive* is used where we use *stressed*. *Unstressed* (proclitic or enclitic) and *stressed* are more accurate.

Position of the Proclitics in certain Infinitive Constructions

301. With **devoir** or **pouvoir** or **vouloir**, as auxiliaries, the proclitic pronoun precedes a complementary infinitive: **Je dois (peux, veux) le dire** 'I must (can, will) say it.' The order **Je le dois dire** is archaic. But various verbs of perception (as **écouter**, **entendre**, **voir**, etc.), also **laisser** 'let,' and **faire** 'make,' 'have' (causal), are regularly preceded by proclitics which are objects (or subjects) of following infinitives. Translate and note these examples:

1. Je le vois blesser. (Cf. Je le vois venir.) 2. Je les entends louer [louer = 'praise']. (Cf. Je les entends louer leurs amis.) 3. Elle les a écouté blâmer. (Cf. Elle les a écoutés blâmer leurs amis.) 4. Je le laisse faire par d'autres. (Cf. Je le laisse partir.) 5. Voici ma belle édition de Daudet. Il faut que je la fasse relier [relier = 'bind']. (Cf. Pourquoi me fais-tu sortir?)

REMARK. In **Il se le voit refuser** 'He sees it refused (to) him,' the dative (**se**) and the accusative (**le**) belong with **refuser**, as in **Je le lui refuse** 'I refuse it to him'; they are *not* the objects of **voit**. Likewise, in **Il se laisse tromper** 'He lets himself be deceived' **se** is the direct object of **tromper**.

See the infinitive, § 244.

QUERY. Why is the arrangement of **Il le pourra vaincre** ('He will be able to overcome him') archaic?

a. The complementary infinitive following **écouter**, **entendre**, **voir**, **laisser**, **faire** (causal), etc. may have a reflexive object in this position: **Je les entendais se plaindre** 'I could hear them complaining.' Note also

1. **Tu les verras s'insulter** = You'll see them insult each other. 2. **Vous nous entendez nous contredire** = You hear us contradict one another. 3. **On l'avait fait s'asseoir** (or *simply* **asseoir**) = They had had him (her) sit down.

b. The following examples likewise contain no forbidden groups:

1. **Ça l'aurait fait te répondre** = That would have made him answer you. 2. **Tout cela m'a fait me demander si . . .** = All that has made me wonder whether . . . 3. **Aussi priai-je Huriel de me laisser le [or de me le laisser] bien observer** = So I asked Huriel to let me observe him carefully.

REMARK. 'I had had him show it to her' = **J'avais fait (en sorte) qu'il le lui montrât** (*L. S. montre*), or possibly **Je l'avais fait le lui montrer**; it could *not* be **Je le lui avais fait le montrer**, nor **Je lui** etc.

EXERCISES -

I. Show that you know what enclitics and proclitics can be joined to the positive and negative imperative forms of **se coucher** '(to) lie down,' in connection with both **y** and **là**. Give two examples illustrating **le français du peuple** (see Remarks). Using **fais** and **faites**, translate 'Have it repeated to you'; also, 'Don't let it be repeated to you.'

II. '(To) object to something' = **s'opposer à quelque chose**. Translate, varying it with four different subjects and four different objects, 'Follow us there, if you like; we shall not object.' Use **suis**, **qu'on suive**, **suivez**, **qu'ils suivent**.

III. Using various forms of the positive and negative imperatives of **parler**, **persuader**, and **mener**, illustrate with six different *reasonable* sentences the combinations under § 298, *d*.

IV. By using other tense-groups, other subjects, and other unstressed accusative objects, make other allowable combinations of six of the typical examples under § 299.

CINQUANTE-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

IL AND LE NEUTER

302. French has no special unstressed forms corresponding to 'he' and 'it': **Pleut-il** = 'Is it raining?'; **Lit-il** = 'Is he reading?' However, **il** = 'it' is restricted to certain locutions and to certain constructions.

a. Among these locutions are **Il est vrai** 'It is true' (but **C'est faux** 'It is false'), **Il me semble** (without **que**) 'It seems to me,' **S'il vous plaît** 'If you please,' etc.

REMARK. With various 3d sg. forms of **plaire**, **il** is *required* when there is no reason for using the more emphatic **ça** or **cela**. Note also **falloir**: **Oui, il (le) faut** 'Yes, it's necessary' etc. (without **que**).

b. Among the constructions are these: (1) All with **falloir** and other verbs having only one form (3d sg.) in all moods and tenses, as **s'agir**: **Il s'agit d'argent** 'It's a question of money' etc. Note also —

(2) **Il est (grand) temps** 'It is (high) time' etc., with or without **que** + subjunctive or **de** + infinitive. Also after other adjectival nouns.

(3) Almost always in indicating hours: **Quelle heure est-il? Il est trois heures et demie** 'It's half past three.' So with **tôt** 'early' and **tard** 'late.'

(4) Usually in describing weather phenomena: **Il pleuvait** 'It was raining,' **Il tonne** 'It's thundering,' etc. When no simple verb exists, with **faire**: **Il faisait des éclairs** 'It was lightening,' **Il fait froid (chaud)** 'It's cold' ('hot'), **Il faisait nuit** 'It was dark,' **Il fait soleil** 'It's sunny,' etc.

REMARKS. Colloquially, **ça** is often substituted for this **il**: **Ça pleut, Ça fait bien chaud ici**, etc. But this **ça** localizes the unknown agent somewhat and tends to personify it.

By analogy to **Il fait chaud (sec 'dry'; humide 'wet,' 'moist'; etc.)**, colloquial French has created expressions such as the following, both seriously and in jest: **Qu'il fait soif ici!** = 'What a thirsty place this is!'

(5) Always with **y avoir**, used impersonally (only 3d sg.): **Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?** 'What's the matter?' **Il y a que j'ai une affreuse migraine** 'The matter is that I have a frightful sick-headache.'

REMARK on **Il était autrefois une reine . . .** 'There was once a queen.' As a substitute for **Il y a** etc., the forms **Il est, Il était**, etc. (always 3d sg.),

belong purely to literary French, a difference due, probably, to the fact that *il y a* contains a clash of vowels (*y a*, *y avait*, etc.) not allowed by the stricter schools of modern versifiers; so that *il est*, *il était*, etc., being specially favored by poets, have come to be regarded as poetical in this impersonal construction.

(6) *Il commence à pleuvoir* 'It's beginning to rain.' No matter what auxiliary is used, the impersonal character of *pleuvoir* and like verbs is preserved by the neuter *il*. Hence, e.g., *Il a dû faire très froid ici* 'It must have been very cold here,' *Il va falloir déménager* 'It's going to be necessary to move out,' etc.

(7) *S'il arrive deux dames, faites-les [le] entrer* 'If there arrive two ladies, show them in.' Here *il* (neuter) serves to suspend the plural subject. The verb is always third singular. Other examples: *Il y manquait deux sous* 'There were two sous lacking,' or *Il leur manquait tant de choses* 'They lacked so many things.' *Qu'est-ce qu'il se passe?* 'What is it that's happening?' Answer: *Il se passe des choses très drôles* 'There are happening some very funny things.'

Translate the following idiomatically: *Il devait fatalement arriver ce qui est arrivé*. Also this: *Jamais il ne s'est vu un comédien de cette force* ('power'). Also this: *De toutes leurs provisions, il ne leur était resté que quelques bouteilles de vin*.

REMARK. In the theatrical style we find, not *Il survient une dame* (for 'There appears upon the scene a lady,' 'Enter a lady') nor *Il entre un monsieur* (for 'Enter a gentleman'), but simply *Survient une dame* or *Surviennent des dames*, *Entre un monsieur*, etc. Also in other styles.

c. The Types *Il est possible de* + infinitive, and *Il est possible que* + a finite verb. Here *il* (neuter) is general, except when it might be taken to mean 'he.' Various adjectives might be used. (§§ 214, 255.)

d. *Il* (neuter) as a resumptive pronoun. Examples:

Comment ça va-t-il? 'How goes it?' *Que se passe-t-il?* 'What is happening?' etc. Here *il* is required. See § 146, Remarks.

303. *Le* (neuter) where English seldom uses 'it.' Save in a few set phrases (in most of which *le* may occur, e.g. *j'espère* 'I hope,' *tu penses* 'you can imagine,' *vous savez* 'you know,' etc.), French generally requires *le* when some sexless antecedent is recalled. Translate and observe all the following examples:

1. Ma place n'est pas ici, vous l'avez dit. 2. Monsieur, j'éprouve pour vous la plus vive sympathie. Vous le sentez? [*Note la, then le.*] 3. La bonne action de votre marquis n'est pas si belle que vous le prétendez. [*Note la, then le; here prétendez = 'claim.'*] 4. Gardez vos illusions, si vous le pouvez. 5. Ce que l'Europe admire, l'Asie le punit [*not 'punishes'!*]. 6. Je te parais heureuse? Je ne le suis pas. 7. Ma présence doit leur sembler étrange, elle ne l'est pas.

REMARK. In examples 6 and 7 (with être), le is required because être is required. When a simple Oui, monsieur, or Non, madame, or the like suffices (*Êtes-vous heureuse? Mais oui!*), le + être is not good French.

a. Examples in which le (neuter) has no clear antecedent:

✓ 1. Il ne le cède à personne 'He takes a second place to none.' 2. Vous l'emporterez sur eux 'You'll beat them' ('leave them behind' in a contest).

b. Examples of elle (nom.) and la in neuter senses (occasional):

1. LE FACTEUR ['postman']. — On trouve étonnant qu'une receveuse des postes ['post-office girl'] joue du piano. — RIRI. — Ça! elle est bonne. ['I like that!' possibly cette histoire.] 2. Ça vous la coupe! ('You can't answer that!' Note Ça vous coupe la réponse.) 3. Que fais-tu? — Je me la coule douce ('I'm taking it easy,' 'loafing').

304. The Stressed Forms with Reference to Sexless or Inanimate Things. When y ('to it,' 'in them,' etc.), en ('of it,' 'of them,' etc.), là-dessus ('on it,' 'on them,' etc.), and other substitutes are not available, sans lui, avec eux, entre elles, and various other prepositional forms are used, but not so freely as we use 'in it,' 'from it,' 'through it,' 'without them,' 'by them,' etc. in like cases. Examples:

1. La vue n'en coûte rien 'It costs nothing to look.' C'est souvent par elle [la vue] qu'on commence. [*Translate this.*] 2. Nous parcourons ensemble votre manuscrit 'We'll peruse your manuscript together.' Je vous promets que je m'occuperai de lui [i.e. de votre manuscrit] et de vous 'I promise you I will give attention to it and to you.' [*Why would en be impossible here, unless we altered as follows? — je m'en occuperai, et je m'occuperai de vous aussi.*] Possibly, the manuscript is personified.

REMARK. But we should not find, e.g., le long de lui for le long du trottoir 'along the sidewalk,' or the like. In this respect French usage is very uncertain. In case of doubt, consult the two vocabularies at the end of this book, both for prepositions and for corresponding adverbs. Also observe!

EXERCISES

I. *Traduisez*: 1. If the weather is fine I never complain, but I don't like storms (**orages**, *m.*). When it rains or blows (**faire du vent**) I seldom go out. 2. Ordinarily, I spend half my time working in my garden; I can't work in it if it has been raining, especially when it has poured. 3. As soon as it begins to rain, if I happen not to be (**ne pas être**) at home, I hurry (**cours**) to the first shelter that I see and stay there. 4. I don't like lightning (**la foudre**); I can say so without shame. A good many people think it beautiful; they are free to admire it if they please (*use ça*). They and I are not of the same opinion. 5. My fear (for it is fear) (**il? or ce?**) may seem ridiculous to you; it doesn't seem so to me, and I am not sure that it is. 6. There are several sorts (**espèces**, *f.*) of courage; perhaps mine is not the best of them; but it is mine. Perhaps (It may be that) yours is not so different from mine as you seem to believe. 7. I have not yet happened to be struck by lightning; but, I repeat, I am afraid of it. 8. Only a year ago, a friend of mine who had taken refuge (**s'abriter**) under a tree (there was no other shelter) was hit. Perhaps it had never occurred to him (. . . **venu à l'esprit**) that trees are to be avoided when there's lightning (*two ways*). He had a narrow escape (**l'a échappé belle**; *cf. manquée belle*), and he's no longer the same man.

II. *Traduisez*: 1. Of his whole fortune, he had only a few francs left. 2. It is high time for me to be going (*use subjunctive*). 3. It must have been very hot here. 4. What time was it when it began to rain? 5. Is it going to be necessary to dine out? There must be something that we can eat. 6. What's the matter? What has happened? There couldn't happen anything but what has happened. If I had foreseen that our servant would be so stupid! You would have foreseen, if you had ever understood her. 7. Albert, if there should arrive (*B*) the two gentlemen that I've spoken of, show them in.

III. (*Oral.*) The adverbial use of **après**, **avant**, **avec**, etc. to avoid **lui**, **eux**, and **elle** or **elles** in neuter senses.

SOIXANTIÈME LEÇON

ON, Y, EN (CONTINUED)

305. L'on (chiefly a literary form) often occurs after *et*, *où*, *si* ('if'), *que*, but not if closely followed by *lui*, *leur*, *le*, *la*, *les*; hence, *et l'on dit cela*, but *et on le dit*, etc. With this reserve, what follows concerns either *l'on* (generally not initial) or *on*.

a. **On** must never be replaced with *il*, *elle*, *ils*, or *elles*: *On dit ce qu'on pense* 'One says what he (one) thinks.'

b. Its only reflexive forms are *se*, *soi*, or *soi-même*; its only possessives are *son*, *sa*, *ses* ('one's'), and *le sien*, *la sienne*, *les siens*, *les siennes*; and its verb is always third singular. On has no non-reflexive accusative or dative; occasionally *vous* is used to supply this lack. Examples:

1. *On croit toujours que sa fille vous ressemble* = One always imagines that one's daughter resembles one. 2. *J'avais froid, . . . comme lorsqu'un poison vous tue* = I was cold, . . . as when a poison is killing you (one). 3. *On sort, on rencontre un créancier, il [le créancier] vous fait une scène, et voilà une journée fichue* = One goes out, one meets a creditor, he makes a scene for you [*that is, for on!*], and there's a day gone to the deuce.

c. **On** may have a plural value, and may even be followed by a plural adjective (including such as *loyaux*). Examples:

1. *On a été de tels amis!* = *virtually* We've been such friends! 2. *On s'entend si bien, nous deux. On est des amis, pas vrai? . . . et puis aussi, on est des frères* = *virtually* We understand each other so well, we two. (*But how can we translate the rest?*) 3. *Quand on sera fatigués, on s'assiéra* = *virtually* When we get tired, we'll sit down.

d. **On** may become feminine: *On a toujours été jeune fille, mais on n'a pas toujours été belle* 'One has always been a young lady (girl), but one hasn't always been beautiful.'

306. Y occasionally implies prepositions other than *à*. Examples:

1. *Ce rôdeur trouva la maison et il y pénétra* = This prowler found the house and he got into it. (*Il pénétra dans la maison.*) 2. *Tu te connais*

en tableaux. — Oui, je m'y connais = You are up in pictures. — Yes, I am.
3. Je compte sur ta tendresse. — Tu y comptes beaucoup trop = I rely upon your affection. — You rely on it far too much.

a. With a few verbs (e.g. **penser** and its synonyms), **y** is very often used instead of **à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles**, standing for persons; and colloquially it may even represent the first and second persons. Examples:

1. Vous n'y pensez pas, à moi! = You don't think of me! (*Miquette et sa mère*, III, 15). **2. Je pensais à vous . . . Ne souriez pas! J'y pense toujours** = I was thinking of you . . . Don't smile! I'm always thinking of you! (*Marquis de Priola*, I, 8).

REMARK. In the speech of the uneducated (**le français du peuple**), **y** is often substituted for the pure dative **lui** (m. or f.): **J'y ai dit . . .** 'I said to him (or her) . . .'

307. For **en** we can almost always substitute **de + a noun or de + a pronoun of the third person**. **En**, pronoun, cannot always be distinguished from **en**, adverb. Study all the following examples, translating those that are left untranslated:

a. Indicating separation (test-words: 'therefrom,' 'thence,' etc.):

1. Quel embarras! Je n'en sortirai plus (*i.e.* de cet embarras). **2. Tu as été à Rouen? J'en reviens** (*i.e.* Je reviens de Rouen). **3. Tout entrain chez lui, rien n'en sortait** (*i.e.* de chez lui).

b. Indicating a source or a cause (test-words: 'thereof,' 'thereby,' 'thereat,' or the like):

1. Personne ne comprenait sa maladie, mais il en mourait. **2. Il existe des devoirs si faciles qu'ils en deviennent séduisants** (*i.e.* ils deviennent séduisants ['enticing'] à cause de leur facilité, or parce qu'ils sont si faciles). **3. Quel toupet! J'en suis resté stupéfait.** ('What cheek! I'm still dumfounded by it.') **4. Blanche rougit, à en avoir les oreilles cramoisies.** ('Blanche blushed so that her ears turned crimson.')

c. Implying **de = 'of,' 'with regard to,'** or the like:

1. A-t-il si peur de la mort? Non, il n'en a pas peur. **2. Ce qu'elle est devenue? Ma foi, je n'en sais rien.** ('What has become of her? Really, I know nothing about it.') **3. Asseyez-vous, je vous en prie.** ('Sit down, I beg you,' or 'please'; *i.e.* Je vous prie de vous asseoir.) **4. Votre**

rapport, j'en suis sûr, est impartial. [*Not simply je suis sûr.*] 5. Sa famille? Je m'en moque de sa famille. ('His family? What do I care about his family?')

REMARK. It is highly characteristic of French to use *y*, *en* (and other unstressed pronouns, as *le* etc.) in this *pleonastic* fashion. Note example 1 in § 306, *a*, and example 5 in § 307, *c*. Note also **Oui, je les connais, ces raseurs** = (word for word) 'Yes, I know them, those deadly bores.'

d. Expressing cause or agency (often when the preposition might be *par*):

1. Quelle jolie idée! J'en suis charmé. *But, when the agent happens to be animate, a living creature, en ('thereby,' 'by him,' etc.) is limited to past participial constructions with a few verbs which, for the most part, express mental activities rather than physical acts:* 2. Il l'aime et il en est aimé. ('He loves her, and he is loved by her.') 3. Et la foule, il en fut suivi jusque chez lui. ('And the crowd, he was followed by it to his own door.')

e. **En** as a partitive pronoun (test-word: 'thereof'):

1. Des enfants? Elle en a douze [*not Elle a douze*] = Children? She has twelve. 2. Né à Paris, j'en connais tous les coins et recoins = Having been born in Paris, I know every nook and corner of it. 3. Quel effort! mais l'affaire en valait la peine [i.e. de l'effort] = What an effort! But the business was worth it [i.e. was worth the pains required by the effort.]

REMARK. Here again (cf. § 307, *c*, Remark) a pleonastic *en*, having no convenient English equivalent, occurs in many locutions, especially in very colloquial French. Examples: 4. **En voulez-vous** [*slight pause*] **des homards**? = Do you want any lobsters? 5. **En voilà** [*slight pause*] **des potins**! = There's gossip, a plenty! 6. **En as-tu** [*slight pause*] **des livres**! = You have some books! 7. **Il en a** [*slight pause*] **un toupet**! = He has a cheek, hasn't he! — (Sometimes the pause is marked by a comma.)

308. Note carefully that French does not tolerate the omission of *en* in partitive sentences referring back to some explicit partitive object:

1. **Vous avez des vaches?** You have some cows? **Non, mais j'en achète.** No, but I'm buying some. *Or, Je vais en acheter deux ou trois.* *Or the antecedent may be singular:* 2. **Où est ta maison?** Where is your house? **Je n'en ai pas, j'en fais construire une.** I haven't any. I'm having one built.

309. French strongly tends to avoid *en* in referring to human beings when a possessive adjective is possible. Hence:

1. *Vois-tu l'église?* Do you see the church? *Je n'en vois que le clocher.* I see only its spire. *But,* 2. *Vois-tu ton ami?* Do you see your friend? *Je ne vois que son chapeau.* I see only his hat.

310. *En* occurs in many idiomatic locutions:

1. *Il en est de vous comme de moi.* We are in the same boat (situation).
2. *Il n'en est rien.* Nothing of the sort (is true). 3. *Quoi qu'il en soit . . .* However that may be. Etc.

EXERCISES

I. (*Use on, y, and en as often as possible.*) 1. One hasn't always as many friends as one would like to have. 2. Do we ever know how many we have? 3. Sometimes we have more than we think, and sometimes, unfortunately, we have less. 4. I can rely upon all mine, whatever happens to me. 5. They can trust me and I am sure that I can trust them. 6. I know men as I know this city; and, having been born here, I know every nook and corner of it. 7. You have confidence! 8. I have had some friends who have disappointed me. 9. They and I part company (*se séparer*); after that, if we meet we say good-day to one another, and that's all. 10. Often, one has been on such friendly terms; there has been such a good understanding. 11. Then one loses one's money, if some other confounded thing doesn't happen to you (*omit pas*), and . . . 12. Then you find that you might have chosen better ones (*en + infin.; no uns!*).

II. 1. The burglar found the house, but couldn't get into it. 2. If he'd got into it, he couldn't have got out (of it). 3. What a pity that one should lose other people's money as well as one's own! 4. One shouldn't borrow one's friends' umbrellas if one won't lend them one's own (*pl.*). 5. If one borrows anything, he should return it. 6. If one sees oneself refused something which belongs to him, he shouldn't make a scene. 7. When one makes scenes, one may lose friends that they (?) would like to keep. 8. It's a pity to lose all one's best friends. 9. When one has only oneself to amuse, one is very much (*bien*) alone. 10. Money! What do I care about it? I have already too much. 11. We're not in the same boat!

SOIXANTE ET UNIÈME LEÇON

THE DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES

311. To continue § 38 and § 46, French has no special single forms corresponding to 'one' and 'a,' 'an': **Jean n'est qu'un enfant** = 'John is only a child'; *but* **Mes enfants? Je n'ai qu'un enfant!** = 'My children? I have only one child!'

But (1) after **pas** and **sans**, **un** and **une** may become clearly numerical; likewise (2) after **de** = 'than' (**plus d'une chose** 'more than one thing') and (3) in **Je n'ai qu'un enfant**, **un** is slightly stressed. (4) It may be reënforsed by **seul**: **un seul enfant** '(just) one child,' **une seule fois** 'once (only).'

312. **Un (une)** is omitted in many locutions which arose before either article was used so much as both are now (Latin had no article):

a. Before a few nouns, subject nominative or direct object :

1. **Pierre qui roule n'amasse pas mousse.** A rolling stone gathers no moss (*proverb*). 2. **Nombre (Quantité) de gens le croient.** A number of (Many) people believe it. 3. **X a fait faillite.** X has gone bankrupt. 4. **Vous leur rendrez visite.** You will pay them a visit. 5. **Trouvez moyen de le persuader.** Contrive to persuade him. 6. **Tu n'as pas idée comme cette pièce est chaude.** You can't imagine how hot that room is. Etc.

b. In the predicate nominative :

1. **C'est toujours bon signe de n'être pas mort.** It's always a good sign not to be dead. 2. **C'est folie que d'aller jusqu'à Lourdes.** It's madness to go as far as Lourdes. 3. **Ce sont choses qui étonnent.** Those are things that astonish one. (But *not*, e.g., **Ce sont faits qui . . .**)

c. Many nouns occur without either article in set phrases beginning with prepositions, especially with **à**, **avec**, **de**, **en**, **par**, and **sans** :

1. **Je me suis renseigné à bonne source.** I got my information at the right place (at a good source). 2. **Ah! ce que j'ai été à dure école!** Oh, haven't I been through a hard school! 3. **Avec (grand) plaisir!** With (great) pleasure! (*So with most abstract nouns.*) 4. **Venez de bonne heure.** Come early. 5. **Sers-lui de guide.** Serve her as (a) guide. 6. **De façon**

(manière) . . . In such a way as . . . 7. **Mettez ça de côté.** Lay that aside. 8. **Descendu de voiture,** . . . Having alighted from a (his, my, etc.) carriage, . . . 9. **En voiture!** (*said by trainmen when a train is about to start*). 10. **So monter en voiture** 'to get into a carriage' (*but not monter en train!*), **dîner en ville** 'to dine out' (*but not être en école; say être à l'école* 'to be in school'). 11. **Par bonheur** 'fortunately.' 12. **Sans loi** 'without (a) law.' Etc.

d. Before various nouns designating types, **en** = 'like a,' 'as a,' etc.:

1. **Il agira en père.** He will act as (a) father. 2. **Elle était vêtue en (belle) servante.** She was dressed as a (handsome) servant. 3. **Conduis-toi en brave homme.** Behave like a good fellow. 4. **Nous vivons en bons amis.** We live as (like) good friends. 5. **Offrez-le-lui en cadeau.** Offer it to him as a gift.

e. Omitted after **comme**, in appositive clauses:

1. **Comme professeur, B. ne vaut pas grand'chose.** As a teacher, B. isn't worth much. 2. **Pendu comme voleur** = hanged as a robber; *but* **pendu comme un voleur** = hanged like a robber.

REMARK. Familiarly before abstract nouns; but here it is not necessarily **un (une)** that is omitted: **Comme génie, X n'est pas remarquable** 'As a genius (*or* In respect to his genius), X is not remarkable.'

313. Initial, and generally in other positions, appositive nouns take no article:

1. **Père de onze enfants, ce bon Martin . . .** As a (*better* As the) father of eleven children, this good Martin . . . 2. **Mais lui, soldat, savait . . .** But he, a soldier, knew . . . 3. **Chose étrange, elle . . .** Strange to say, she . . .

314. When truly predicate, many nouns implying activities or qualities are treated like predicate adjectives:

1. **Je suis peintre (en bâtiments).** I'm a (house-)painter. 2. **En effet, vous n'êtes point homme à vous laisser prendre votre dîner.** In truth, you are not a man (the man) to let your dinner be taken from you.

REMARKS. In the plural, **des** often occurs (**Nous sommes des peintres, or Nous sommes peintres**), especially when the speaker is thinking of a number of persons as individuals not less than as representatives: **Nous sommes des ouvriers** 'We're workmen' (*are of that class*). **Ami** may be either noun or adjective: **Elles sont (très) amies** = 'They're (great) friends,'

or 'They're very friendly (with each other).' When a noun is not adjectival, **un, une, des**, are generally required: **Musset est un vrai poète, un poète qui nous fait honneur** = 'M. is a true poet, a poet who does us honor.'

a. Predicate nouns appositively describing a past state or the result of a transformation take no article:

1. **Je l'avais vu [lorsqu'il était] saute-ruisseau.** I had seen him (when he was) an errand boy. 2. **Il mourut athée.** He died an atheist. 3. **Je vous verrai (grand) avocat.** I shall see you a (great) lawyer.

b. A predicate noun preceded by **ce + être** requires **un, une, des**:

1. **C'est un peintre.** He's a painter. 2. **Ce sont des acteurs.** They're actors. 3. **Et puis il est banquier . . . c'est un banquier! . . .** (*Le Voyage de M. Perrichon*, II, 5.)

REMARK. **C'est chose difficile**, 'It's a difficult thing,' is an archaism; its syntax cannot be generalized. **C'est problème difficile** could not occur.

c. After **y avoir** (impersonal) **un** and **une** are often omitted:

1. **S'il y a moyen.** If there's a way (a means). 2. **Après -ez il y a liaison.** After **-ez** linking takes place.

d. After **ni . . . ni** or an initial **jamais** ('never'), **un** and **une** are often omitted:

1. **Cette phrase n'a ni queue ni tête.** That sentence has neither head nor tail. 2. **Jamais homme (subject nominative) n'avait été plus ivre.** Never had a man been drunker. 3

315. Un, une, occurs in ellipses (mostly emotional) and before various abstract nouns whose English equivalents would usually not contain 'a,' 'an':

1. **J'avais une peur!** Was I *frightened*! 2. **C'est d'un raide!** That's a hard one (to solve). 3. **Elle parle un français exquis.** She speaks (an [?]) exquisite French. 4. **Il jouissait d'une bonne santé.** He was enjoying good health.

EXERCISES

I. Translate, noting everything that concerns either article:

A . . . , nous avions ^{appartenus} comme professeur de français certain 1 M. Guyot, ancien élève ['graduate,' 'alumnus'] de l'une des 7 meilleures universités, dont je ne me rappelle plus le nom. 3

apposition
 Voyageur de nature, et très doué en fait de langues, il savait un tas de choses intéressantes. Comme compétence linguistique, à coup sûr il ne le cédait à personne. Il savait à fond sa langue maternelle — nous en savions certainement moins que lui!

Même lorsqu'il avait affaire à quelque cancre, il trouvait toujours moyen, de façon ou d'autre, de lui faire pénétrer dans la tête pourquoi on doit dire telle chose, pourquoi telle autre est à éviter.

M. Guyot aimait surtout à nous parler d'archaïsmes. Je me souviens qu'un jour, en lisant *Colomba*, roman de Mérimée, on avait rencontré ceci : « . . . exprimant la surprise aussi clairement que chien le peut faire ». « Croyez-vous, nous demanda-t-il, que l'auteur ait oublié de mettre un *un* devant son chien ? Mais pas du tout. Il l'a omis consciemment, ce *un*, et il l'a omis parce que le groupe *aussi clairement que* se trouve être précisément l'un de ceux qui gardent une syntaxe ancienne. *Des mains blanches comme neige*, ou bien *Je le briserai comme verre* — vous voyez bien que ce sont là aussi des façons de parler archaïques. Autrefois, rien n'empêchait de dire également *voler comme mouches* ou *clair comme eau*. Autres temps, autres mœurs. »

II. *Traduisez* : 1. As a teacher, Mr. S. was not worth much ; the one that we have now manages (contrives) to interest even the dunces. 2. Instead of saying that such and such a thing is correct, whereas something else is not, he explains carefully. 3. He manages to interest everyone ; you have no idea how ingenious he is ! 4. Somehow or other, he always seems to know what mistakes we have made. 5. Although he is not a Parisian, they say that he knows French thoroughly. 6. As for competence, he is certainly a good deal more learned than Mr. S. ; and he is as agreeable as a man can be, but he isn't a man to let himself be taken in (*attraper*).

III. *Traduisez* : 1. Are you a painter ? No, sir, I am a lawyer. 2. This man is not a poet, he is a painter. I knew him as an errand boy. 3. Strange to say, I have never read a word, not a single word, of Latin. 4. I advise you to read *Colomba*, a novel by Mérimée. 5. The story that I have just read has neither head nor tail. 6. If it's possible (*use moyen*), you must pay me a visit.

SOIXANTE-DEUXIÈME LEÇON

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

316. To continue § 49, French almost always uses its definite article (*l'article défini*) where English requires 'the,' and in some other cases.

317. The Generic Article (in determinate groups embracing all that the noun can embrace). Additional examples :

1. *La pâtisserie est une branche de l'architecture.* Pastry-making is a branch of architecture. 2. *Rien n'est capital pour le maintien de l'ordre comme de taire le mal.* Nothing is so vital to the maintenance of order as to say nothing about evil. 3. *Comment sont nées les religions ?* How did religions arise ?

REMARKS. (1) Proverbs and other locutions may preserve former syntax: *Noblesse oblige. Que justice soit faite* 'Let justice be done,' or 'Let the law be fulfilled.' (2) After *parler*, *le* is usually omitted: *Il parle (le) français, or Il parle admirablement (le) français, or Il parle (le) français à merveille*, etc.; but usually . . . *bien le . . .* (Cf. §§ 58, 320.)

318. Partitive Groups. After *de* a noun may be understood partitively even though not preceded by a partitive word: *parler d'amour* = '(to) talk of love-making'; *parler de l'amour* = '(to) talk of love' in all its phases.

a. (QUERY.) What value has the article in the following examples (to be translated) ?

1. *Vous avez du temps et de la patience ; si vous aviez de l'argent, rien ne vous manquerait.* 2. *Des jours, des semaines ont passé.* 3. *Un employé était en train de mettre des livres dans des caisses ('boxes').* 4. *J'ai mangé des côtelettes avec des pommes de terre ('potatoes').* 5. *C'est du chinois.* 6. *Ce sont des sottises ('foolish things,' etc.).*

b. (QUERY.) Why no article in the following examples (to be translated) ?

1. *Un employé mettait de gros livres dans d'énormes caisses.* 2. *Il mangeait de bonne viande et buvait de bon vin.*

c. QUERY. When an adjective and a noun have become a compound noun, how is the article affected? Examples:

1. Voici des ^{petits} petits-pains. 2. C'étaient des jeunes filles-françaises.

d. Note again the distinction made in *b* and *c*; then state what has become of this distinction in the following examples:

1. Il y avait beaucoup ^{adjectif et quantif} de bonne/viande et (beaucoup) de petits/pains.
2. Je ne vois pas de ^{adjectif} jeunes/filles.

e. Expressions such as **jouer du Chopin** '(to) play some Chopin' and **lire du Molière** '(to) read some Molière' follow the analogy of **manger du pain**.

Note how this partitive construction has been extended in very colloquial speech:

1. **Il avait chassé du tigre.** He had hunted tiger. [Cf. **Il avait tué du gibier** = He had killed some game.] 2. **C'est un dîner sérieux, avec du ministre** [= 'cabinet-minister'; substitute **du potage**], **du directeur de journal** [= 'managing editor'; substitute **du rosbif**], **du grand docteur** [= 'leading medical man'; substitute **de la fine champagne** = 'brandy-cordial'].

f. Colloquial French and **le français du peuple** (often the same thing) tend to use **du, de la, des**, even when a non-compounding adjective precedes the noun:

1. **Elle avait des petits amis** = She had some little friends = **Elle avait de petits amis**. 2. **Voilà du bon vin** = There is some good wine = **Voilà de bon vin**.

319. De (truly prepositional) + noun without the article.

a. After many verbs we find an adverbial group consisting of **de + noun** and expressing source, cause, material, instrument:

1. **Je meurs de faim et de fatigue.** I'm dying of hunger and fatigue. (*But La faim et la fatigue me tuent.* Hunger and fatigue are killing me.)
2. **Elle rougirait de honte.** She would blush for shame. (*But La honte la ferait rougir.* Shame would make her blush.)

REMARK. In most such cases the noun following **de** is not determinate (definite or all-inclusive) but more or less partitive, as in **parler d'amour**, cf. **parler de l'amour**. Inasmuch as we find e.g. **employer des outils** '(to) employ tools,' we might expect 'logically' to find **se servir de des outils**

'(to) make use of tools'; but such groups do not occur. Many verbs show the construction exemplified by **mourir de faim** etc.

b. When **de** = 'concerning,' 'in regard to,' the article is general before nouns embracing anything in its entirety: **Nous parlons de l'électricité** 'We are talking of electricity' (in its many manifestations).

REMARK. Here again, if the noun is more or less indeterminate (not all-inclusive, not clearly specific), the article is usually omitted: **Je me suis trompé de nom** 'I got the wrong name' ('I made a mistake as to names,' 'as to the name').

c. When **de** betokens separation ('from'), the noun may be determinate, as in **un mot emprunté du grec** 'a word borrowed from (the) Greek'; but usually no article occurs. Note **se passer de vin** '(to) get along without wine' (all wine), **sortir de table** '(to) rise from table' (often a particular table), etc.

REMARK. Such groups, illustrating a usage once universal, are numerous; but the modern tendency is different. Note **sortir du collège** '(to) leave school,' **emprunter de certains amis, . . . de quelques amis** '(to) borrow from friends' (not **emprunter d'amis**), **arracher de ma (sa, cette) tranquillité** '(to) snatch from my (his, that) tranquillity' (not **arracher de tranquillité**), **tomber du lit** '(to) fall out of bed' (cf. **descendre de voiture**), etc.

d. After certain adverbs a noun may be determinate *or* vague:

J'habitais loin des villes, près de tribus sauvages = I was living far from [all] cities, near wild tribes.

e. After numerous adjectives requiring **de** before a noun complement the article is omitted, as in English, unless the noun is determinate:

1. **La bouteille est pleine de poison, du poison que tu y as mis.** The bottle is full of poison, of the poison that you put in it. 2. **Elle était ravissante de verve et de jeunesse.** She was entrancing through [because of her] sprightliness and youth.

f. Adjectival complements of nouns that imply partition contain no article unless they are made specific:

Un verre de vin 'a glass of wine,' **un kilo de pommes** 'a kilo of apples,' **une dizaine de bougies** 'about ten wax candles,' etc.

Note also this type: une table de chêne 'an oak table,' une espèce d'animal 'a sort of animal,' trois jours de marche 'a three-day walk,' etc.

Note how old usage and the modern tendency clash in the following: Le ciel de la nuit [article], par les beaux mois d'été [no article], devenait une espèce de carte = The night sky, in the fine summer months, became a kind of map.

g. Similarly, all quantitative pronouns, positive or negative, and nearly all quantitative nouns (as in f):

Assez (beaucoup, peu, trop) de bonté = Enough (much, little, too much) kindness etc.; but note la plupart des gens = most people, and note the adverb bien in bien des gens = many people (cf. bien bon = very good).

h. Old and Modern Groups. Further Remarks. Le Palais de Justice, a name given to the main Law Courts of Paris, contrasts with (le) Palais de la Paix '(the) Palace of Peace' at the Hague, and this with juge de paix 'justice of the peace.' So le ministre de la guerre 'the minister for war' contrasts with un conseil de guerre 'a council of war.' Which of these illustrate the modern tendency?

EXERCISES

I. Traduisez: 1. Painting is an art and war is an art. But, in speaking of war, most people say that it is a science. 2. The sciences are exact. In many respects war is exact, but it is not truly a science: it makes use of science. (Use both se sert and emploie.) 3. The study of languages resembles that of biology (biologie, f.), for in each case we study forms that have been born and that have died, or that will die. 4. All forms are changing every day, and all studies are constantly changing. 5. Upon leaving school I decided (A p.p.) to become a philologist (philologue). 6. Philology (philologie) never made anybody rich (enrichir), but money isn't everything. If one has enough to live on (de quoi . . .), one can get along without wealth (la richesse; N.B.). 7. I am studying French and other languages. 8. I speak French and I can read German. 9. Many of the books that I have to read are devoid (dépourvu) of interest; others are full of good ideas.

II. Variations of the examples in §§ 311-319.

SOIXANTE-TROISIÈME LEÇON

THE ARTICLES (CONTINUED)

320. Omission of the Article after certain Transitive Verbs. Examples :

J'ai froid, j'ai faim, j'ai soif,	1	I'm cold, hungry, thirsty, afraid,
j'ai peur, j'ai besoin de secours.		I need help.
Ayez courage, ayez bon espoir.	2	Have courage, be quite hopeful.
J'ai la fièvre [<i>N.B.</i>], oh! comme	3.	I have the [?] fever. Oh, how
la tête me fait mal!		my head hurts!

Note also **avoir tort (raison)** '(to) be wrong (right)'; **demander pardon, donner avis**, '(to) give notice'; **faire fausse route**, '(to) go astray,' 'take the wrong course'; **fausser compagnie à quelqu'un** '(to) give one the slip'; **fermer boutique** '(to) shut up shop'; **prendre congé** '(to) take leave'; etc.

REMARK. Many such locutions might be quoted (especially with **avoir** and **faire**). Whether in daily use or not, they all show archaic syntax, for we cannot say e.g. **aimer attention**, nor **souffrir douleur**, nor **éviter chaud** etc. Such groups are relics of a grammatical life now extinct.

NOTE. Sometimes French uses the simple definite article where we might expect some other modifier, as in **faire la paix** '(to) make peace,' **garder le lit** '(to) stay in bed,' **être au lit** '(to) be in bed,' **ne pas avoir le sou** '(to) be penniless,' **cracher le sang (or du sang)** '(to) spit blood,' **arrêter quelqu'un du geste** '(to) stop some one with a gesture,' etc.

321. Omission of the Article after en. Nearly all the many locutions containing en arose before the article had gained its present ascendancy; hence en is almost never followed by le, la, les; whereas **dans**, a truly living preposition, always takes the article (definite or indefinite), or some other adjectival modifier, before all common nouns.

Hence **dîner en ville** '(to) dine out,' and **aller de ville en ville** '(to) go from town to town'; hence **voyager en pays lointains** '(to) travel in distant countries,' but **voyager dans des pays lointains**.

On voit un arc-en-ciel 'One sees a rainbow,' but **On voit des étoiles dans le ciel** 'One sees stars in the sky.' Similarly, **en mer** 'at sea' and **en France** 'in France' are old groups, and, like **un conte en l'air** 'an idle tale,'

they take us back to a time when *en* could occur freely *without* the article and was sometimes used *with* it. In non-figurative language we should generally find *dans l'air*: 'the birds in the air' *les oiseaux dans l'air*, not *les oiseaux en l'air*.

a. En pleine campagne ('out in the country' etc.), *en pleine mer* ('well out at sea'), *en plein moyen âge* ('in the heart of the Middle Ages'), etc., show a living construction frequent with *plein*, but they contrast with *à la campagne* ('in the country'), *au moyen âge* ('in the Middle Ages'), etc.

b. After certain verbs the noun object of *en* requires no article :

Sa richesse consiste en moutons. 1 His wealth consists in sheep.

Tournez ça en sens inverse. 2 Turn that in the opposite direction.

Veillez mettre cela en musique. 3 Be so good as to set that to music.

Elle fut changée (transformée) 4 She was turned into a fairy.
en fée.

c. Before many abstract singular nouns describing a condition :

(*Agir*) *en silence*, (*être*) *en vacances* ('... holiday' etc.), (*vivre*) *en paix*, etc.

d. Before concrete nouns, singular or plural, naming a substance :

Une montre en or (*or d'or*) 'a gold watch,' *dix mille francs en or* 'ten thousand francs in gold' (cf. *un louis d'or* 'a gold louis,' *a coin*), etc.

NOTE. The use of *en* and *de* without the article before names of countries is considered in §§ 332-337.

322. Omission of *le, la, les*, after *à, avec*, and other prepositions.

Usage varies ; in some cases omission is exceptional (archaic groups), in others not.

a. After *à*. Old (exceptional) syntax is exemplified by *condamné à mort* 'condemned to death'; living syntax by *condamné à l'exil* ('exile'). Note also —

1. *Je vais à confesse* 'I go to confession,' *but Je vais à la messe* 'I go to mass.' 2. *Je reste à bord du bateau* 'I remain on board the boat,' *but au bord de la rivière* 'on the bank of the stream.' 3. *Voici des verres à vin* 'Here are some wine-glasses,' *but un pot au lait* (*or un pot à lait*) 'a milk-pitcher,' or, in Britain, 'a milk-jug'; in La Fontaine's fable, 'milk-pail.'

REMARKS. **Un homme à idées** 'a man of ideas' is a modern group, but patterned after many phrases made long ago; so too **un monsieur à redingote** 'a gentleman in a frock-coat'; **une femme aux cheveux noirs** 'a woman with black hair,' and like groups, must have the article, because **une femme à cheveux** is not possible. We can say **un chapeau à plumes** 'a hat with feathers,' because **plumes** is here indeterminate (vague, partitive). **Une boîte aux lettres**, 'a letter-box,' 'post-box,' disagrees with **un chapeau à plumes**, but follows the analogy (pattern) of **la boîte aux lettres**. Cf. § 331.

b. After **avec**. Generally no article before singular abstract indeterminate nouns: **avec plaisir** (never **avec du plaisir**) 'with pleasure' etc.

REMARK. Never **avec du plaisir** because usage allows no alteration of the set phrase **avec plaisir**; but **avec de la prudence** is possible *if* we mean 'with a certain amount of prudence.' **Avec viande** (for 'with meat') is excluded because **viande** (**la viande**) is something concrete; **avec plaisirs** cannot occur because plurals are barred; **vieille dame avec enfants** ('old lady with children'), or **chambre avec bain** ('room with bath') is French 'telegraphese.'

c. After **après** ('after'), **avant** ('before,' *in time*), **contre** ('against'), and **devant** ('before,' *in space*), omission of the article is rare; after **dans** it is never omitted except before names of persons or towns. For **outre**, **pour**, **sauf**, **sous**, **sur**, and **à travers**, note the following exceptional groups (mostly *archaisms*):

Outre-mer 'over sea(s),' **outre tombe**, **d'outre-tombe**, '(from) beyond the tomb,' **pour affaires pressantes** 'for (upon) urgent business,' **un laissé-pour-compte** 'a misfit,' **sauf correction** 'with allowance for possible errors,' **sous condition** 'upon [*not* 'under'] condition,' **sous main** 'underhandedly,' **sous terre** 'underground,' **mettre sur papier** '(to) set down in writing,' **Bar-sur-Aube** 'Bar-on-Aube' (a town on the river Aube), **à travers champs** 'across country,' etc.

d. For **par** note the old group **apprendre par cœur** '(to) learn by heart,' and the typical new group **apprendre par l'étude** '(to) learn through study.'

Compare **découvrir par hasard** '(to) discover by chance' (indeterminate) with **attribuer au hasard** '(to) attribute to chance' (in all its possible phases). This distinction is not consistently carried out: **ouvrir au hasard** = '(to) open at random.'

e. After **sans** the indefinite article usually becomes emphatically numerical: **sans un (seul) ami** 'without even one friend' (§ 311). The definite article usually makes the noun determinate:

1. **Sans argent, sans pain, sans amis, peut-on être heureux?** Without money, without bread, without friends, can one be happy? *But Sans la science, la société redeviendrait barbare.* But for science [in all its phases] society would become barbarous again. 2. **Sans la lune, il n'y aurait pas de marée.** But for the moon, there would be no tides. *But C'était une nuit sans lune.* It was a moonless night. *Study also the following:* 3. **Peux-tu faire ça sans qu'il y ait d'erreur or d'erreurs, or (popularly) des erreurs?** Can you do that without there being a mistake? or . . . mistakes? *Similarly, sans perdre de temps or (popularly) sans perdre du temps.*

f. After **de** nouns without either article are numerous: **d'abord** 'at first,' **de concert** 'jointly,' etc.

EXERCISES

I. Vary and combine the examples in §§ 317-319.

II. *Traduisez:* 1. Le Gros and I had gone from town to town without finding work, and one evening he slipped away from me. 2. If he had taken leave like a gentleman (. . . **galant homme**), I might have regretted his departure, but I don't like men who act underhandedly. 3. Le Gros had told me that at Bar-on-Aube he had an uncle who would be able to make use of us. That uncle ceased to interest me. 4. After a two-hour walk across-country and on roads where I met nobody, I arrived at (**dans**) a village where everyone seemed to be in bed. But, luckily, the inn (**auberge, f.**) had not yet closed (*reflex.*). So I entered and asked for a room — not 'a room with bath'! simply a room. 5. I was hungry, very hungry (*simply très faim*), and I must have looked like a tramp (**chemineau**), but they (*not ils*) showed me a room and gave me something to eat, good chops with potatoes. I ate a good deal, for I was almost starving (*no adv.*). 6. To pay for that meal, **also** for the room and my breakfast the next morning (**le lendemain matin**), I had three francs left. That was all. What was I going to tell these good people?

au lieu
de
quel

SOIXANTE-QUATRIÈME LEÇON

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (CONTINUED)

323. The Definite Article before Names of Persons. Family names (*les noms de famille*) containing *le* or *la* + adjective have ceased to be variable in ordinary usage. Hence **Madeleine Leroux** and **Pierre Larousse**; also **Je parle de Le Sage** (not **Je parle Du Sage**); also **aux Le Sage, une Le Sage**, etc.

REMARKS. Formerly in borrowing Italian family names the French followed Italian usage (and their own) by using the article: **l'Arioste** (*Italian* *l'Ariosto*), **le Tasse** (*Italian* *il Tasso*). The French (not the Italians) now apply *la* only to foreign actresses or other foreign feminine celebrities (**la Duse** = Eleonora Duse), or occasionally to French women of the lower classes (e.g. **la Grivotte** 'the Grivotte woman,' 'the Grivotte girl,' in Zola's *Lourdes*); to men seldom, and only in a derogatory sense.

NOTE on **aux Le Sage**. Family-names usually take no pluralizing *s* except when standing for types: **les Le Sages** = 'men like Le Sage.' Such an *s* is always silent and is sometimes omitted.

a. Baptismal names take *le* or *la* when modified by a descriptive adjective, but not if vocative, nor necessarily in verbless ejaculations. Examples:

La petite Alice riait 'Little Alice was laughing,' *but* **Pauvre Alice!** '[My] Poor Alice!' *or* 'Poor Alice! (I am sorry for her).'

324. Before Titles. **Saint** and **sainte**, meaning 'Saint,' also **frère** and **sœur** meaning 'brother' ('friar') and 'sister' (of charity), commonly take no article; other titles require it unless vocative. Examples:

De saint Pierre 'of St. Peter,' **pour frère Thomas** 'for Brother Thomas,' **avec sœur Marie-des-Anges** 'with Sister Mary of the Angels,' **le capitaine Dreyfus** 'Captain Dreyfus,' **le père Goriot** 'old man Goriot,' **la mère Sauvage** 'old Mrs. Sauvage' *or the like*; also **le pape Léon XIII** 'Pope Leo XIII,' **l'ingénieur Eiffel** 'the engineer Eiffel,' **le professeur Joseph Bédier** 'Prof. Joseph Bédier,' etc.

REMARKS. Vocatively, a military subordinate would say **Oui, mon capitaine**, or **Non, mon général**, but simply **Non, sergent**, or **Oui, caporal**. An

ecclesiastic would usually be addressed with **mon père**, or **monsieur le curé** (*a parish priest*). Note **Entrez, docteur** (*to a physician*), or, more formally, **Entrez, monsieur le docteur**.

Monsieur le comte ('count') and **Madame la comtesse** ('countess'), and the like, are generally extremely formal, or ironical, or servile. A simple **monsieur** or **madame** or **mademoiselle** is usually safe! However, politeness usually requires **Et comment va madame votre mère?** ('And how is Mrs. —?') or the like; less formally, . . . **madame** (etc.) + family name.

325. Before Names of Cities. Exceptional cases:

La Haye the Hague (*Dutch* Den Haag = 'the Enclosure'); **le Havre**, **au Havre**, Havre, to Havre (= 'the Harbor'); **le Caire**, **du Caire**, Cairo, of Cairo (*Arabic*). **La Rochelle** means 'the Little Rock'; **la Nouvelle-Orléans**, New Orleans, is thus distinguished from *old* Orleans (simply **Orléans**, **à Orléans**), just as **l'ancienne Florence**, in Tuscany, is distinguished from **la Florence moderne**.

REMARK. **Port-Vendres** (*Latin* Portus Veneris = 'Venus's Harbor'), **Neuchâtel** (*Latin* Novum Castellum = 'New Castle'), etc., were named long before the article came to be used with such groups.

326. Before Common Nouns in Familiar Direct Address. Examples:

Hé! le vieux, viens donc ici 'Heigh there, old gentleman (old man, uncle, etc.), just come here!' **Dis donc, l'ami!** 'Hello there, friend!' ('Look here, friend,' etc.). **Holà! la mère!** 'Hold on, old lady!'

REMARK. Familiarly, relatives and friends are spoken of as **l'oncle Pierre** etc., where we say 'Uncle Peter,' or 'my uncle Peter,' etc.

327. The Article in Locutions involving Dates and Numbers. Here usage is extremely inconsistent, and sometimes uncertain.

a. Among expressions indicating *the time when*, note the omission of the article before the names of the months and various holidays: **après août** [u] 'after August,' **avant juillet** [zujije] 'before July,' **en mars** [mars] 'in March' *or* **au mois de mars** 'in the month of March,' **à Pâques** 'at Easter,' **vers Noël** 'toward Christmas,' etc. Also as subject or as direct object: **Avril était venu** 'April had come,' **Voici janvier** 'Here is January.'

b. **En hiver** and **en été** ('in winter,' 'in summer'), indeterminate, contrast with **dans l'hiver de 1916** [diznø̄sãse:z] and **dans l'été dont je parle**. However, **dans l'automne** [otøn] is *often* no more precise than **en automne**; similarly 'in the autumn' or 'in autumn.' Before **printemps** (*Latin* *primum tempus*) the article must be used: **au printemps** 'in (the) spring,' or **dans le printemps**, never **en printemps**. As subjects, or as direct objects, these four nouns require the article.

c. Before names of epochs the article is required, unless they are preceded by **plein** (*pleine*). Hence **dans la Renaissance** *but* **en pleine Renaissance** ('in the very midst of the Renaissance'). 'In antiquity' = **dans l'antiquité** rather than **en antiquité**, and of course we find **dans la haute antiquité** ('in early antiquity').

REMARKS. Various days consecrated by the Roman Catholic Church are designated with **la**. Examples: **la Saint-Michel** 'Michaelmas,' **la Saint-Jean** 'Midsummer,' **la Toussaint** (originally **la tous saints**) 'All Saints' Day,' **la Noël** 'Christmas Day,' etc. The explanation of this **la** before masculine nouns is that in Old French we find e.g. **la fête saint Jean et la** [= 'that'] **saint Pierre**, the second **la** being a demonstrative pronoun, while **saint Jean** and **saint Pierre** are possessive forms (nominative **sains Jeans** and **sains Pierres**). Cf. **le Quatorze Juillet** (anniversary of the fall of the Bastille).

d. In many cases, **le jour** ('in the daytime'), **la nuit** ('at night'), **le matin** ('in the morning,' 'mornings,') and **le soir** ('in the evening,' 'evenings'), vaguely indicate *the time when* and are adverbs; likewise days indicated by numbers. Examples:

Vas-y le matin = Go there in the morning (*any morning*). **Je ne sors jamais le soir** = I never go out in the evening. **Nous partons le six mars** = We leave on the sixth of March.

e. For the days of the week, note these distinctions:

1. **J'y vais dimanche (prochain)** = I go there (next) Sunday, *but* **J'y vais le dimanche** = I go there Sundays. 2. **Je suis venu lundi dernier** = I came last Monday, *but* **Ne venez que le jeudi (or les jeudis)** = Come only on Thursdays.

NOTE. In twofold dates **le mardi vingt-sept juin** ('Tuesday, June 27') is considered better French (better syntax) than **mardi le vingt-sept juin**.

f. For the hours note *les*, even before *une* :

1. A six heures = at six o'clock, *but sur les six (heures)* = about six (o'clock). 2. Viens à midi ou sur les une [le yn] = Come at noon or about one. 3. Huit heures viennent de sonner = Eight o'clock has just struck, *but J'entends sonner les huit* [le uit] = I hear eight o'clock striking.

EXERCISES

I. *Translate* : 1. Molière interests me more than Dante (*baptismal name*) or Ariosto. 2. I've read some Dante, but always in translations (*use dans*). 3. I know so little Italian! and the little that I know [of it] must be full of mistakes. 4. I have just bought two or three books about modern Florence. 5. Do you know Professor Villari's history of the friar Savonarola (-le)? 6. Our friend Peter (*two ways*) praises it and Dr. Bianchi says that it is the only book that he can recommend. 7. That's what you said, Doctor, wasn't it? 8. By the way, what is the best hour to hear mass (*article*)? 9. Go next Sunday, to Saint John's (*simply à Saint-J.*). 10. Go [there] about seven o'clock. 11. It's better to go in the morning than in the afternoon. 12. What do *you* think, baron? 13. Really, I have no ideas on that subject. 14. I never go out mornings before eleven o'clock. 15. If I hear seven o'clock strike, it's always in the evening. 16. Besides, you know, I was born in Florence.

II. *Translate* : 1. In summer I am almost always at the Hague; in winter I go sometimes to Nice, sometimes to Pau. 2. Last winter I got to (*aller jusqu'à*) Cairo. 3. In the spring, less often in the autumn, I visit friends in Orleans. 4. No, I have never had a chance to see New Orleans, but I can imagine that it is not at all like our city. 5. You want me to tell you what is the best season for Paris. 6. Well, March is not a good month: it rains too much, and *some* days it is very cold. 7. The last week of April, all May (*mai*), and most of June—in a word, spring and the beginning of summer (*article*)—that is the best season for Paris.

III. (*Oral.*) Variations of the examples in §§ 323-327.

SOIXANTE-CINQUIÈME LEÇON

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (CONTINUED)

328. In Weights, Measures, etc. In expressions of price, our 'a' ('an') and 'per' are represented in French by *le* or *la* (usually without *à*), by *par*, etc., commonly thus :

1. *Ces œufs se vendent deux francs la douzaine.* These eggs sell at two francs a dozen. 2. *On achète ces roses un dollar (la) pièce.* These roses are bought at a dollar apiece. 3. *Combien le verre?* How much a glass? *Cinq sous.* Five sous. 4. *Si vous prenez ces chevaux, vous me les payerez mille francs chacun (familiarily chaque).* If you take those horses, you'll pay me a thousand francs for each. 5. *Vingt sous le mètre.* Twenty sous a meter.

NOTE. *Un* must not be put before *cent* or *mille*: 'a hundred days' = *cent jours*; 'a thousand times' = *mille fois*.

a. After *par* employed before *jour*, *nuit*, *tête*, *leçon*, *heure*, *minute*, *seconde* [*sægõ:d* or *zgõ:d*] (and most other words not used, as above, in buying and selling), the article is omitted: *par an* = 'yearly,' 'a year,' etc. (*par jour* = 'a day,' 'daily,' *not* 'by day'; 'by day' = *le jour*).

b. Vehicles are engaged à *l'heure* 'by the hour,' *pour toute l'après-midi* 'for the whole afternoon,' etc.

329. Before words designating Parts or Functions of Animate Bodies. Here French employs the article far more than does English. Various constructions occur.

a. The subject alone may suffice to indicate the possessor :

<i>Il met la main sur la poitrine.</i>	1	He lays his hand on his breast.
<i>Tu fronces le sourcil, tu as du reproche au bout des lèvres, tu lèves la main pour protester.</i>	2	You frown, you have a bit of reproach on the tip of your tongue, you raise your hand to protest.
<i>Il avait les ongles en deuil.</i>	3	His nails were in mourning.

REMARK. *Il clignota de l'œil gauche* ('He winked his left eye') is clear; but descriptive adjectives commonly entail the use of a possessive: *Il met la main sur sa poitrine blessée* ('... his wounded breast').

b. Likewise (cf. *a*) in absolute clauses :

<p>Armand y entra, ce jour-là, les yeux baissés, le front lourd, le cœur plein d'angoisse. Il s'élança vers sa mère, les bras tendus, les mains tremblantes, avec un regard qui demandait pardon. (After Coppée.)</p>	<p>4 Armand came in, that day, with eyes cast down, a heavy forehead, his heart full of anguish. He rushed toward his mother with outstretched arms, his hands trembling, and with a look that asked for forgiveness.</p>
--	--

NOTE. Various other common nouns may occur in absolute clauses: **Thibaut, le chapeau sur la tête, la canne à la main, entre, suivi du valet** ('Thibaut, his hat on, stick in hand, enters, followed by the valet'). Again (*translate*), **Il sortirait de là blanc comme neige et avec de l'argent dans la poche. But Il avait le chapeau sur la tête** etc. would hardly be French, and 'I raise my glass' = **Je lève mon verre, not . . . le verre.**

c. Especially when ambiguity might arise, the possessive adjective is likely to be used, and often must be used, as in English :

<p>Ta joue est comme celle d'un enfant.</p>	<p>5 Your cheek is like a child's.</p>
--	---

d. The examples in *a* illustrate a strong tendency rather than an absolute and comprehensive rule; we may find first the article and then a possessive, or simply possessives :

<p>Mettant la main sur ses yeux, elle . . ., or La tête appuyée sur sa main, il demeura immobile.</p>	<p>6 Laying her hand over her eyes, she . . ., or His head resting on his hand, he remained motionless.</p>
<p>Ouvrez vos yeux ! Voulez-vous ouvrir vos yeux ?</p>	<p>7 Open your eyes ! Will you open your eyes ?</p>

A moment later the same speaker says **Ouvrez les yeux !** (*L'Enchantement*, I, I.)

e. The dative constructions noted in § 295, *d*, etc. do not admit possessives :

<p>Je me mordis les lèvres.</p>	<p>8 I bit my lips.</p>
<p>Quelques larmes lui vinrent aux yeux, il me serra la main.</p>	<p>9 Some tears came into his eyes, he clasped my hand.</p>

REMARK. As **voir**, for example, cannot take such a dative, we of course find **Ah ! vous avez vu ses bras** ('Oh ! you have seen his arms !'), **not vous lui avez vu** etc.

330. General Observation. In some cases there is only one way; in others there may be two, with or without a distinction, and there might be a good reason for choosing one style rather than the other. For example: **Elle lui donne la main** is literal; **sa main** would mean in betrothal or marriage.

331. The Types à l'anglaise, à la Napoléon, etc. Such groups (frequent) abbreviate **à la mode anglaise** 'in the English fashion,' **à la mode Napoléon** 'in the Napoleon(ic) style,' etc. (**Napoléon** taking here the after-position almost always taken by nouns used as adjectives).

REMARKS. In e.g. **une dame aux cheveux roux** 'a lady with reddish-brown hair,' **à** keeps an old meaning ('with') not allowed in general; but note the numberless culinary terms made with **à la, au, and aux**, as **champignons à la sauce . . .** 'mushrooms with . . . sauce,' **une sandwich au jambon** 'a ham sandwich,' **une tarte aux cerises** 'a cherry tart,' etc. In **une tarte aux cerises** no particular cherries are thought of, but this and like groups are patterned after groups in which the article really points to something, as in **la dame aux camélias** 'the lady with the camellias,' those that the speaker has in mind. Cf. § 322, *a*, Remarks.

EXERCISES

I. 1. I sell my roses at ten francs a dozen. 2. Eggs sell at two sous apiece. 3. How much does beer sell for? Three sous a glass, sir. 4. You sell dogs? Five or six a day. I'll sell you this one for a hundred francs. I'll pay you fifty for him. No, sir. That's a performing dog, I've charged him (**faire payer**) a franc a lesson. A hundred francs or I keep him! 5. Driver (**Cocher**), how much do you charge for your carriage? 6. If you take it by the hour, five francs; if you want it for the whole day (**journée**), forty francs. That's not dear.

II. Wherein does the syntax of **une tarte aux cerises** differ from that of **un chapeau à plumes**? Explain **un café au lait**. Wherein, if at all, does the syntax of **un marché au blé** 'a grain-market' differ from that of **des sardines à l'huile**?

III. Most of the following examples (all to be studied) could not be changed by substituting a dative construction, or a possessive

adjective, etc.; others which might have either a dative or a possessive (sometimes with a difference of meaning) are marked with [?]; bad constructions or mistakes, marked with [!], should be corrected.

1. As-tu quelque crime sur la conscience? 2. Ta conscience te punit? 3. Je pense à la (ma) conscience. 4. Pourquoi froncez-vous votre [!] sourcil? 5. Pourquoi sondez-vous (sonder = 'probe') mes yeux de la sorte? 6. Ouvrez les yeux, fermez le cœur [!], suivez votre caprice. 7. Jetez-moi maintenant vos générosités à la tête! 8. Je lave mes mains. 9. Je me lave les mains. 10. Je m'en lave les mains (= Je n'en suis pas responsable). 11. Tu perds¹ l'esprit (*here esprit* = 'mind'). 12. Tu perds ton esprit (*here esprit* = 'wit'). 13. Il porte l'épée (épée = 'sword') = Il est soldat. 14. Il a perdu son épée. 15. Il quitte l'épée = Il quitte l'armée. 16. Il aime la vie. 17. Il défendra sa vie. 18. Avez-vous mal à la tête? 19. Oui, j'ai mal à ma [!] tête, et les oreilles me bourdonnent (bourdonner = 'sing' or 'buzz'). 20. Tu as ta [!] bouche trop pleine pour parler. 21. On prend le blessé par ses [!] épaules et par ses [!] pieds, on le couche sur son [!] dos, on (lui) panse (panse = 'dress') ses blessures. 22. Il avait brûlé ses mains [?] affreusement. 23. Il s'était brûlé ses mains et ses pieds [!]. 24. Ses joues [lui] devenaient [!] bleues. 25. Les yeux lui s'étaient [!] fermés. 26. Je m'étais blessé au genou. 27. Je me sentais les jambes [?] trop faibles pour bouger de là.

IV. 1. I have no crime on my conscience. 2. Why do you frown at me (*dative*)? 3. You are losing your mind. 4. I don't like that business, I have washed my hands of it. 5. You lose your money because you lose your head. 6. Have you (Has she) a headache? 7. No, but my (her) ears are singing. 8. The doctors (*here médecins*) took the wounded soldier by his arms and legs, laid him on his back, and dressed his wound (*dative + sa; why correct?*). 9. A shell (*obus* [œn oby], *m.*) had carried off his left arm.

V. (*Oral.*) Further variations of the examples in §§ 328-331 and in Exercise III.

¹ perdre (§ 445) = both 'lose' and 'waste.'

SOIXANTE-SIXIÈME LEÇON

LE AND LA BEFORE NAMES OF COUNTRIES

La siet li reis qui dulce France tient.

'There sits the king who rules sweet France.'

(*Chanson de Roland*, Cent. XI or XII)

332. The Effect of *de* and *en*. In living French, names of countries are under all circumstances preceded by *la* or by *le*, *unless* we must use *de* or *en*. After these two prepositions, but especially after *de*, we find many variations; and *dans la* or *dans le* must often replace *en*. Furthermore, masculine names have not the same syntax as feminine names, nor old names as modern names, and in some cases even an educated Frenchman would be in doubt as to the proper form.

333. Feminine Names. Before feminines, *de* alone suffices in old groups or in new groups patterned after them; *la* must be inserted in most other cases. Contrasts:

OLDER SYNTAX		MODERN TENDENCY
Le roi (la reine) de France.	1	Les origines de la France.
The king (the queen) of France.		The origins of France.
Les fleuves de France.	2	Les industries de la France.
The rivers of France.		The industries of France.
Les États-Unis d'Amérique.	3	Les divers états de l'Europe.
The United States of America.		The various states of Europe.
L'histoire de France.	4	L'histoire de l'Angleterre.
The history of France.		The history of England.
Mes amis d'Angleterre.	5	Les amis de l'Angleterre.
My English friends.		The friends of England.
Je reviens d'Italie.	6	Je parle de l'Italie.
I am back from Italy.		I am speaking of Italy.

NOTE 1. When usage is certain *for a Frenchman*, as in examples 1-6, a foreigner must either learn long lists of nouns, verbs, etc., which *require* the article after *de*, or he must rely upon statements as to tendencies.

NOTE 2. Examples 5 happen to express different meanings, *d'Angleterre* indicating a source, *de l'Angleterre* an object; but after *l'histoire* (exs. 4)

no difference in meaning results; *l'histoire littéraire de la France* (a fixed group) merely exemplifies the modern tendency.

NOTE 3. In his *Jésus-Christ en Flandre*, H. de Balzac writes *les côtes de Flandre* ('the coasts of Flanders'); two pages later, *les côtes de la Flandre*. No difference in meaning; so *les côtes de* makes the article optional. After *les héros* we may put simply *de Bretagne* ('Brittany'), *de France*, or *de la Bretagne, de la France*; but we *must* say *les héros de l'Inde* ('India'), *de la Chine*, and *l'empereur de la Chine*. Again, *une poule d'Inde* (i.e. *une dinde* = 'a hen-turkey') is an old group; almost all other groups require *de l'Inde*: hence *les chemins de fer* ('railways') *de l'Inde*; but either *de la* or simply *de* is correct in speaking of the railways of Brittany, China, Normandy, etc. Again, a geographer would say *les vins de la* if he were thinking of other products of France, Spain, Burgundy, etc.; a wine-taster, or any other person not thinking about other products, would say simply *les vins de Bourgogne, le vin de Champagne*, etc.

NOTE 4. In a word, *la* tends to follow *de* in most groups (noun + fem. name) having a modern tone, especially in markedly technical descriptions. The modern groups greatly outnumber the fixed old groups.

REMARK. Say *le président de la République (française)*; never . . . *de France*.

a. After Adjectives and Adverbs. Use *la*: *fier de la France* 'proud of France,' *loin de l'Espagne* 'far from Spain.'

b. After certain familiar Verbs expressing Intransitive Motion. Here *la* is not required: *venir d'Afrique* '(to) come from Africa,' *chasser de France* '(to) drive out of France,' etc.; also *être de retour d'Italie* '(to) be back from Italy'; but *partir* and *sortir* allow either construction. After most such verbs, and whenever *de* has the force of 'concerning' etc. (not 'from,' 'out of'), *la* is required: *disparaître de la . . .* '(to) disappear from,' *fuir de la . . .* '(to) flee from,' *s'approcher de la . . .* '(to) near,' etc. And in all cases *de l'Inde*.

c. Qualified Names. Except occasional compounds such as *Basse-Normandie* 'Lower Normandy,' qualified names require the article, feminine or masculine, after *all* prepositions: *une belle fille de Basse-Normandie* 'a handsome girl from Lower Normandy,' but *de la belle France, de la France de notre époque*, etc.

334. De ('of,' 'from,' 'out of,' and the like) before **Masculine Names**. Here the article (**le**) occurs in all but a few old combinations and a very few modern groups patterned after them. Examples :

1. **Le roi de Danemark** (de Portugal *or* du Portugal, de Dahomey *or* du Dahomey), *but* 2. **l'empereur du Japon** ('Japan'); cf. **l'empereur de la Chine**. 3. **le duc de Berry** (one of the old divisions of France, and an old title), *but* **les limites du Berry**. 4. **le comte de Poitou** (same remark), *but* **les fleuves du Poitou**. 5. **les truffes** ('truffles') **de Périgord**, *or, occasionally, les truffes du Périgord*.

a. After verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, only **du** or **de l'** is allowed.

335. En or dans la before **Feminine Names**. For 'in,' 'into,' and 'to,' **en** suffices before unqualified names : **être en Allemagne** ('Germany'), **aller en Suède** '(to) go to Sweden,' etc.; however, always **dans l'Inde**.

a. Feminine names of departments (**les départements**) require **dans la** : **dans la Dordogne** etc.

NOTE. A few old double names have the older syntax : **en Saône-et-Loire** (i.e. **dans le département de Saône-et-Loire**). Note also **en Vaucluse** (as a department).

336. Other Fluctuations. Before masculine names of countries, 'in,' 'into,' and 'to' are represented by **dans le, dans l', au, à l'**, and by **en** in certain old groups and in a few modern groups patterned after them. Great inconsistency prevails. Study the following passages, consulting, if necessary, a geography.

EXERCISES

337. Dans, en et à devant les noms de pays masculins

I. Est-ce que le nom que nous voulons employer commence 1 par une voyelle, ou par une consonne? S'agit-il de quelque pays bien connu? ou bien d'un pays lointain, comme l'Afghanistan, 3 l'Uruguay [yrygè], le Chili, le Mexique ou le Pérou? Le verbe dont on se sert exprime-t-il le mouvement (en anglais, 'to,' 5 'into')? ou bien exprime-t-il le repos (en anglais, 'in')? Peut-on employer soit, *dans le*, soit *en*, parfois même *au* ou *à l'*, sans 7 aucune distinction de sens? Faisons quelques expériences!

II. Une préposition suivant le verbe *naître* ('be born') exprime 9
le repos : devant Afghanistan ou Anjou on mettrait *dans l'*, ou
en sans *l'* ; devant Brésil, Canada, Chili, Mexique (non pas la 11
ville !), Poitou ou Portugal, mettons *au* ou *dans le* ; devant Congo
ou Dahomey, ne mettons que *au* ; devant Danemark, on a le 13
choix de *au*, *en* ou *dans le* — c'est un embarras de richesses !

III. On a affaire à quelque verbe ou à quelque groupe (verbe 15
et préposition, substantif et préposition) exprimant le mouvement
(en anglais, 'to,' 'into'). Devant les noms masculins commençant 17
par une voyelle, que trouve-t-on pour traduire 'go to'? Devant
Afghanistan et Anjou, *en* ou *dans l'* ; devant Brésil etc., *au* ou *dans* 19
le ; devant Danemark et Poitou, *au*, *en* ou *dans le*. On veut dire en
français 'go into' ; mettons toujours *dans le* ou *dans l'*. 'A jour- 21
ney to' doit se traduire par 'un voyage *au*, ou *à l'*' ; 'a journey
in' se traduirait presque toujours par 'un voyage *dans le* ou *dans* 23
l'' ; cependant, devant beaucoup de noms on pourrait mettre *en*
(Anjou, Berry, Brésil, Canada, etc.), mais devant Afghanistan 25
seulement *en*, et devant Congo seulement *dans le*.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. *Translate.* 1. I was born in America, . . . in North America
(du Nord), . . . in the United States (*use à*). 2. In summer I travel
in England or in France ; I have never been in Portugal, nor in
Spain, nor in Dahomey ! 3. A journey in Africa, in Mexico, or in
the Congo would cost too much ; I would rather make a journey
to Japan. 4. I like France, France is surely a beautiful country ;
and in all France what is more delightful than Normandy ? 5. If
I go to Europe this summer, I shall spend half my time in old
(vieille) Normandy ; the rest traveling in Poitou and Anjou, perhaps
also in Périgord. I like Périgord truffles (*f.*) ! *Truffes !*

II. Make ten more short, reasonable sentences, using various
names and constructions that occur in this lesson.

SOIXANTE-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

THE VARIABILITY AND SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

338. Various Types. The most regular types of adjectives are exemplified by **malade** (two forms) and by **noir** (four). Here follows a brief summary of the most important 'irregular' types.

a. Adjectives in **-er** have, for their feminine, **-ère**: **premier, première; amer** [ame:r] 'bitter,' **amère** [ame:r].

b. Adjectives in **-f** change to **-ve**: **vif** 'lively' etc., *f.* **vive**.

c. Adjectives in **-x** change to **-se**: **jaloux** 'jealous,' *f.* **jalouse**.

d. Verbal adjectives in **-eur** change to **-euse**: **flatteur** 'flattering,' *f.* **flatteuse**. Not so the non-verbal adjective: **meilleur**, *f.* **meilleure**.

e. Adjectives in **-el, -eil, -ien, -et, -ot, -on**, and a good many in **-s**, double the consonant before the silent **e** of the feminine:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃]	ancienne [ɑ̃sjɛ̃n]	gros [ɡʁo]	grosse [ɡʁo:s]
former, old, ancient		big, bulky, pregnant, etc.	
bon [bɔ̃]	bonne [bɔ̃n]	pareil [paʁe:j]	pareille [paʁe:j]
good, kind, etc.		like, alike, such a, etc.	
coquet [kɔkɛ]	coquette [kɔkɛt]	sot [so]	sotte [sɔt]
pretty, smart, fetching, etc.		silly	
épais [epɛ]	épaisse [epɛs]	quel [kɛl]	quelle [kɛl]
thick, dense, etc.		which, what, what a	
gras [ɡʁɑ]	grasse [ɡʁɑ:s]	tel [tɛl]	telle [tɛl]
fat, greasy, etc.		such, such a, such and such (a)	

REMARKS. The pronunciations here indicated are subject to further variations. One of the few adjectives in **-ot** is **vieillot** 'old-looking' (prematurely old). The frequent adjectives **discret, complet, inquiet** ('uneasy'), and two or three others like them, have the feminine in **-ète**.

f. Besides having an irregular feminine, the everyday adjectives **beau, nouveau, and vieux** have a special form before a masculine singular *noun* beginning with a vowel.

Examples: **un beau tapis** 'a handsome carpet,' but **un bel hiver** 'a fine winter,' f. **belle**; **un vieux palais** 'an old palace,' but **un vieil ami** [vjejami] 'an old friend' (a friend of long standing), f. **vielle**; **le Nouveau Testament** 'the New Testament,' but **le nouvel an** 'the new year,' f. **nouvelle**.

REMARK. **Fol** (belonging with **fou, folle**, 'mad,' 'crazy') and **mol** (belonging with **mou, molle**, 'soft' etc.) are both virtually obsolete. Note **un fol espoir** 'a mad hope.'

g. Nearly all the everyday adjectives in **-al** have **-aux** in the masculine plural: **brutal, brutaux**, 'brutal,' etc. Cf. § 136, *a*.

NOTE. But the masculine plural of the following either is in **-als** or is avoided: **automnal** 'autumnal,' **fatal** 'fatal,' **frugal** 'frugal,' **glacial** 'icy,' 'glacial,' **nasal** 'nasal,' **naval** 'naval,' etc. Cf. § 136.

h. The feminine forms of the following should be noted:

bénin [benɛ̃], **bénigne** [beniːɲ], 'kindly'; **blanc** [blɑ̃], **blanche** [blɑ̃ːʃ], 'white'; **doux** [du], **douce** [duː(ː)s], 'sweet,' 'gentle,' 'soft'; **faux** [fo], **fausse** [foː(ː)s], 'false,' 'wrong,' etc.; **frais** [frɛ̃], **fraîche** [frɛː(ː)ʃ], 'fresh,' 'cool,' etc.; **franc, franche**, 'frank' etc.; **gentil** [ʒɑ̃ti, or ʒɑ̃tij before a vowel in linking], **gentille** [ʒɑ̃tij], 'nice,' 'pleasing,' etc.; **long** [lɔ̃], **longue** [lɔ̃ːg], 'long'; **malin** [malɛ̃], **maligne** [maliːɲ], 'mischievous,' 'shrewd,' etc.; **sec** [sek], **sèche** [sɛː(ː)ʃ], 'dry,' 'lean,' etc.

NOTE. Many other irregularities occur; these are frequent types.

339. The Agreement of Adjectives. When an adjective whose forms differ for the *car* belongs to unlike nouns (fem. + masc., or masc. + fem., or pl. + sg., or sg. + pl., etc.), jarring or ambiguous adjective forms must be avoided.

a. When there is a verb between the nouns and their adjective, or a pause (no matter how slight), use the masculine plural; thus, **Son chapeau et sa robe, verts** [f. **verte-s**] **et ornés de perles, . . .** ('Her hat and her gown, green and adorned with pearls, . . .'), or **Son chapeau et sa robe sont verts** ('Her hat and her gown are green'). But note *c*.

b. When there is no pause nor inserted verb, the adjective must not end in **-aux** (sg. in **-al**) unless both nouns are masculine. Avoid, e.g., **d'un courage et d'une foi** (or **d'une foi et d'un courage**) **loyaux** (for 'of a loyal courage and [a loyal] faith,' or 'of a loyal faith and [a loyal] courage'). But **Il portait les ornements et le sceptre royal** (not **royaux**) is allowed, even

though **ornements** is plural. Likewise **un courage et une foi nouvelle** ('a new courage and [a new] faith') is allowed, the second noun being singular; but **un courage et une foi nouveaux** would jar, and is not allowed.

c. The last noun should be masculine, unless the adjective varies according to gender, like **blanc, blanche**. Avoid, e.g., both **un chapeau et une robe blanche** (if ambiguous) and **une robe et un chapeau blanc**.

REMARK. A *writer* can plan his group; a speaker cannot, but will generally avoid by linguistic instinct a jarring or ambiguous group.

340. Adjectives as Substantives. In its power to make a substantive (noun) of almost any adjective—a mechanical power—French is greatly superior to English, which can make no distinction of gender, seldom of number, and must generally add a noun, or a clumsy pronoun, 'one,' 'ones,' etc. Examples:

1. **quelques statues de saints et de saintes** = (?). 2. **un heureux** = a happy . . . (?). 3. **une heureuse** = a happy . . . (?). 4. **quel abruti!** = what a low-down . . . (?). 5. **quelques-unes de belles** = some lovely ones.

a. Note especially substantive adjectives following **de**: **En voici trois de bons (de bonnes)** 'Here are three good ones,' **Elle n'a rien de sot** 'There's nothing silly about her,' etc.

REMARK. Likewise, **un de bon (une de bonne)** 'a good one'; but **de** does not habitually occur after **un** and **une**, nor is the meaning quite the same, the **de**-group (**un de . . . , une de . . .**) making **un, une**, more clearly numerical.

NOTE. After nouns, this type of **de**-complement is considered bad French: omit **de** from e.g. **J'ai un jour (de) libre** 'I have a day off' (free).

QUERY. Is **Il y a plus urgent** (= 'There is something more urgent') exceptional? Note **Il n'y a rien d'urgent**.

EXERCISES

I. Study and explain (or at least *note*) the following examples:

1. Cette chambre sent le renfermé ('close,' 'stuffy'). 2. Jacqueline m'en a raconté de belles (*probably histoires*) sur votre compte ('about you'). 3. Ces fleurs sentent bon. 4. Quel drôle de type! (cf. **un type si drôle**). Ah! ces braves poilus. 5. Cette sottise de cuisinière ('cook') oublie tout. 6. Combien cette chatte (cf. **chat**) aime ses petits! 7. Je lis les *Lettres d'une inconnue*. 8. Cette Jeannine!

C'est de la pose! Elle adore faire son intéressante. 9. Lorsque cette petite bête ('creature') a peur elle fait la morte ('plays [she is, he is] dead'). 10. Alors, elle reprend de plus belle ('Then she begins again, harder than ever'). 11. Elle en fait encore des siennes ('She is up to her old tricks [again]'). 12. De ('At first') purement locale, cette idée devient universelle. 13. Ce que votre projet a de bon, c'est qu'il peut se réaliser. 14. Si sot qu'il soit, ce roman a ceci de bon: il me divertit.

II. 1. What a pretty house! It wasn't very old, and it was too small for a family like ours, but everything in it seemed so fresh and so clean! 2. If I lived in such a house I should soon become very lazy (*m. and f.*). 3. What a delightful garden! and full of beautiful flowers which smelled so good! As soon as you have a day off, you must go to see it. 4. There is nothing remarkable about the dining-room except that it is furnished in the English style, whereas all the other rooms (*pièces, f.*) are as French as possible. 5. The only thing I remember having seen in the drawing-room was a white cat who had taken possession of a certain easy-chair with two of her kittens. 6. The library? Charming! Mine always smells a bit stuffy, probably because it is old and because (*simply que*) everything in it is old. There is nothing old about this, except a certain number of old books that our friend X and his wife seem to be very proud of. 7. Does X read them? I don't believe it; but there is this good thing about X: he doesn't play the scholar (I, 9).

III. 1. Are these engravings (*la gravure*) old or modern? 2. Very old; I have no modern ones. 3. Here is one by (*de*) Nanteuil, very fresh, and extremely valuable.

IV. 1. I feel uneasy (*m. and f.*). 2. What a fetching little person! 3. Your idea isn't too flattering. 4. How thick the leaves are! 5. A bitter pill (*pilule, f.*)! 6. Are you jealous? (*Three forms.*) 7. Your cat isn't as fat as her kittens. 8. Let's be discreet! (*Two forms.*) 9. Be frank, but avoid seeming brutal (*pl., m. and f.*). 10. If you're asked for reasons, don't give false ones (*use en*). 11. French has four nasal sounds. (*Adj. last.*) 12. Life is sweet, but short. Would it were ten times longer!

qu'elle fait.

Quelle petite coquette
comme
Blat au ciel
" à Dieu

SOIXANTE-HUITIÈME LEÇON

THE POSITION OF DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES

341. Definition. Adjectives which answer the questions 'of what kind?' or 'in what condition?' may be classed as *descriptive*: *un bel arbre* 'a fine tree,' *un arbre tombé* 'a fallen tree.'

REMARK. The type may be extended: *un manche à balai* 'a broom-handle,' *une chaîne d'or* 'a gold chain,' *une bonne d'enfants* 'a nurse-maid,' *coiffeur pour dame* (or *dames*) 'ladies' hairdresser,' *l'affaire Clémenceau* 'the Clémenceau case,' *des meubles empire* 'Empire furniture,' *une femme à plaindre* 'a woman to be pitied,' *un homme comme il faut* 'a proper sort of man,' *une chose qui étonne* 'an astonishing thing,' etc.; however, save a few nouns (§ 349, *h*, end), such forms invariably follow.

342. General Observation. Whether a given descriptive adjective should precede or follow a given noun, may depend, when the speaker can choose, upon whether the noun or the adjective is the logical distinguisher, the classifying word; upon the necessity of preserving the order *adjective + noun* for one meaning, but *noun + adjective* for another (in accordance with inconsistent traditions); etc. Occasionally, euphony decides.

343. Logical Distinguishers. 'A logical distinguisher marks out, from the specimens in question of a class named by the noun, the sub-class which the speaker has in mind; an emotional attribution serves to indicate, with reference to these specimens, the speaker's favorable or unfavorable impression; the specimens are adjudged satisfactory or noteworthy or faultless, unsatisfactory or insignificant or defective.'¹

344. Noun + Adjective. Many descriptive adjectives are always felt to be essentially *logical distinguishers*, and, as such, invariably *follow*, the after-position (with stress) being markedly characteristic

¹ E. C. Armstrong, *The French Shifts in Adjective Position* etc., p. 1 ff.

of logical distinguishers. For example, **anglais, financier, ivre, malade: une ville anglaise** 'an English city,' **la question financière** 'the financial question,' **un commis ivre** 'a drunken clerk,' **trois enfants malades** 'three sick children.'

COMMENTS. In **une ville anglaise** the adjective expresses a permanent attribute; in **un commis ivre**, a passing attribute; but in every case a logical distinguisher lessens the comprehensiveness of the noun, and that is its primary function. In **le pauvre malade** ('the poor sick [man etc.]') the adjective expresses pity (an unfavorable impression); in **le malade pauvre** the adjective (still **pauvre**) becomes a logical distinguisher, for it classifies **le malade** as lacking money; here the emotional idea is incidental, not essential.

REMARK. In scientific language we should find more adjectives in the after-position than in the fore-position; in a novel, a play, or in everyday speech, adjectives in the fore-position abound. Scientific language is less emotional than is everyday speech.

QUERY. Why does the adjective come after the noun in the following examples? **la stratégie navale, un projet militaire, le parti républicain, un mur mitoyen** ('a partition wall'), **le règne animal et le règne végétal** ('the animal kingdom and the vegetable kingdom'), **notre pain quotidien** ('our daily bread'), **des vertues bourgeoises** ('homely virtues'), **une église médiévale** ('a medieval church'), **la main gauche, le bras droit, une pierre spongieuse** ('a spongy stone'), **le côté méridional** ('the south side'), etc.

345. Adjective + Noun. An adjective whose value as a logical distinguisher is slight or null tends to precede. When we say **Jean est un brave homme** 'John is a good fellow,' our primary intention is to commend rather than to classify. Now shift **brave**, and we at once decrease its *area of significance* and thus increase its efficiency as a logical distinguisher, for now it means 'brave,' and bravery is merely one of many manifestations of goodness. In **la blanche neige** 'the white snow,' **blanche** has no value as a logical distinguisher; in **une automobile blanche**, on the contrary, it is purely a logical distinguisher, an adjective expressing *color*. Without losing its fundamental meaning, this **blanche** is made, merely by shifting it, to perform two essentially different functions.

346. Identifying Power. In living groups (groups in which a shift of position is possible) a given adjective usually gains identifying power by being shifted from the fore-position to the after-position: **la catholique Espagne** (all Spain is Catholic), but **l'Irlande catholique** because part of Ireland is Protestant.

347. Fundamental Changes of Meaning. Occasionally such shifts are accompanied by a marked change in the fundamental meaning of the adjective: **ma propre chambre** = 'my own room,' **une chambre propre** = 'a clean room'; **cette chère maison** = 'that dear (beloved) house,' **unè maison chère** = 'a costly house'; **un triste livre** = 'a sorry (deplorable, but maybe very amusing) book,' **un livre triste** = 'a sad book.'

348. Traditional Fore-position. For certain descriptive adjectives the fore-position has been generalized, and they keep it even when a logical distinction is intended. Note particularly the following, of which some occasionally take the after-position:

beau, bon, court 'short,' **gentil** 'nice,' **grand** 'tall,' 'great,' **gros** (f. *grosse*) 'big,' **jeune, joli** 'pretty,' **long, mauvais** 'bad' in any sense, **meilleur, moindre** 'less,' 'least,' **petit** 'small,' 'little,' **pire** 'worse,' 'worst,' **sot** (f. *sotte*) 'silly,' **vieux** (f. *vieille*) 'old,' and **vilain** 'ugly' to look at, 'ill-behaved.'

Example: **Quel chapeau voulez-vous?** 'Which hat do you want?'—**Mon grand chapeau** 'My *big* hat.'

REMARKS. Compare **Mon grand chapeau** 'my *big* hat' with **Je porterai mon chapeau mou** 'I shall wear my *soft* hat.' **Mou, mol**, f. *molle*, usually appears as a logical distinguisher, but in **ces mous coussins** 'these soft cushions' what is it? Hardly more than an underline! **Beau** and **bon** (especially **bon**) resist the after-position still more strongly than does **joli**. Note **les belles-lettres** ('belles-lettres,' *artistic literature*) as contrasted with commercial or scientific writing etc.; also **le beau côté des choses** ('the *pleasing* side of things') as contrasted with **leur côté laid** ('their ugly side'); also **le bon bout du bâton** ('the right end of the stick') as contrasted with its **mauvais bout** ('wrong end') etc. Other striking inconsistencies abound. Thus **jeune** is marked as a logical distinguisher in e.g. **Fromont jeune et Risler aîné** ('Fromont Jr. and Risler Sr.,' a novel by Daudet); so **vieux** in **le**

Palais-Vieux ('the Old Palace'; Italian *il Palazzo Vecchio*, in Florence); but usually both **jeune** and **vieux** precede: **une jeune fille** = 'a young lady'; **une vieille fille** = 'an old maid.'

a. Compounds. In some cases the adjective has been welded to the noun which it follows, making a pure noun with a special meaning: **bonhomme** ('fellow' etc.) cannot be altered to **homme bon**, for this group is not used, though **homme très bon** 'very good man' is allowable; nor is **un meilleur mot** ('a better word') the comparative degree of **un bon mot** ('a witticism').

Similarly, **gentilhomme** (pl. **gentilshommes**) = 'nobleman,' but **une gentille femme** = 'a nice woman'; **beau-père** (pl. **beaux-pères**) and **belle-mère** (pl. **belles-mères**), 'father-in-law,' 'stepfather,' and 'mother-in-law,' 'step-mother,' but **une belle cousine** = 'a lovely cousin.' Such compounds must be used with caution!

EXERCISES

I. 1. What a naughty little boy! 2. A short journey in southern France. 3. Some big books on useless subjects. 4. A big blunder. 5. Some nice little children. 6. A *silly* man. 7. A very good fellow (*not bonhomme*)! 8. A queer (*drôle de*) fellow, this old painter! 9. A queer old maid! 10. Old stories about French cities. 11. The best reason in (*de*) the world. 12. Without the slightest excuse. 13. A silly *excuse*!

II. 1. A good man, a very excellent man, Mr. de B. 2. This French nobleman, with an English wife and two pretty little daughters, has taken (*louer*) a fine old house near ours, on (*de*) the southern side of the street. 3. Mr. de B. has a magnificent blue motor-car, so he must be rich; but the poor man has a mother-in-law who sometimes keeps him from seeing the pleasing side of things. 4. What an annoying situation! but we can't all hold the right end of the stick.

III. Make ten more very brief reasonable groups, using only the adjectives listed in § 338.

SOIXANTE-NEUVIÈME LEÇON

THE POSITION OF DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES (CONCLUDED).

349. Noun + Adjective. Certain types of descriptive adjectives which must follow the noun, and others which tend to, may be noticed :

a. All those specifying race, nationality, and the like :

un type juif 'a Jewish type,' **la langue arabe** 'Arabic,' **une réfugiée belge** 'a Belgian refugee,' **la vie parisienne** 'Parisian life.'

b. Nearly all those specifying political, social, industrial, or religious affinities, and the like :

le parti anticlérical 'the anticlerical party,' **la Société protectrice des animaux** 'the S.P.C.A.,' **l'Église anglicane** 'the Anglican church.'

c. Adjectives specifying color except when obvious (but often even then) or figurative :

le Mont-Blanc 'Mount Blanc' etc.; *but* **une noire tristesse** 'an utter sadness' and **les vertes campagnes du Poitou** 'the green fields of Poitou.'

REMARK. The proverb **bonnet blanc, blanc bonnet**, a chiasmus (a-b-b-a) meaning 'six of one or half a dozen of the other,' **le blanc-manger** (a kind of dessert), and other like groups, come down from a time when such adjectives could easily precede.

NOTE. In **une robe gris foncé** 'a dark gray dress,' **gris** is a noun; cf. **une robe grise**.

d. Most adjectives specifying shape; but **court** 'short,' **long** 'long,' **étroit** 'narrow,' and **large** 'wide,' often precede (also **rond** 'round'), especially when we get groups such as **dé longs doigts tordus** 'long, crooked fingers.' Both **bas** 'low' and **haut** 'high' are very uncertain.

e. Most adjectives specifying physical states :

propre 'clean,' **malpropre** 'untidy'; but compare **un homme sale** 'a dirty man' (*literally dirty*) with **un sale caractère** (*figuratively dirty*).

f. Past participles (§ 273) of living and dead verbs :

une porte ouverte 'an open door,' **ses doigts crochus** 'her hooked fingers,' **une voix aiguë** 'a shrill voice,' etc.; but note various *old or emotional groups*: **ce rusé compère** 'that crafty fellow,' **leur satané charabia** 'their deuced gibberish,' **le Sacré Collège** 'the Sacred College' (R.C.C.).

g. Verb-forms in **-ant** (§ 260) often precede when not used as logical distinguishers :

cette intrigante affaire 'that puzzling business,' *but* **un thé dansant** 'a *thé dansant*,' and **des étoiles filantes** 'shooting stars.'

h. Used adjectivally, nouns almost always (clauses always) follow ; also **bien** :

le boulevard Haussmann [osman] 'Haussmann Boulevard,' **au point de vue métier** 'from the vocation point of view,' **une bonne bourgeoise très pot-au-feu** 'a good bourgeoise of the stay-at-home (very plain) sort,' **une porte-cochère** 'a porte-cochère,' **la flotte ennemie** (note *-ie*) 'the enemy fleet,' **un bras de squelette** 'a skeleton arm' or 'an arm of a skeleton,' **une femme très bien** 'a good-looking woman,' etc. But note the exceptional formation of e.g. **la maîtresse ancre** 'the sheet anchor,' adjectival noun first.

350. Sundry Causes of the After-position. Various influences tend to make all kinds of descriptive adjectives follow ; e.g. the insertion of adverbs, or a close dependence of the adjective on whatever follows.

a. An adverb is inserted. Contrasting examples :

un bel enfant 'a beautiful child,' **un enfant vraiment beau** ; **une mauvaise voix** 'a bad voice,' **une voix si mauvaise** ; **une jolie femme** 'a pretty woman,' **une femme plus jolie que Clarisse** 'a prettier woman than Clarice,' or (often better) 'a woman prettier than Clarice,' etc.

REMARK. The adverbs **assez** 'rather,' **aussi** 'so,' **bien** 'very,' **moins**, **plus**, **si** 'so,' **tout** 'quite,' 'wholly' (variable: **tout joli-s**, **tout élégante** or **toute élégante**, **toute seule**, sometimes **toutes seules**, etc.), **fort** 'very,' **très**, and a few others, commonly let an essentially prepositive adjective remain in the fore-position ; but note **une femme** (**jadis** 'once,' **parfois** 'sometimes,' **peu** 'not very,' **presque** 'almost,' **remarquablement** 'remarkably,' **souvent** 'often,' **toujours** 'always') **jolie**, and other examples.

QUERIES. Why **une faute telle que la mienne**? Why **une poussière aveuglante** ('a blinding dust'), *but* **une aveuglante poussière d'or**?

b. Note the invariable position of the adjective after **avoir l'air**.

Example: **Elle a l'air fou** (*or folle*) 'She looks crazy.'

c. Note likewise the fixed type **avoir le (la, les) + noun + adjective** :

Elle a les mains petites, les yeux grands, l'esprit étroit, la mémoire courte. She has small hands, big eyes, a narrow mind, a short memory. *But Elle a de beaux yeux, etc. Elle a les yeux mauvais* = She has wicked eyes; **Elle a de mauvais yeux** = She has bad (inefficient) eyes.

Many other such distinctions might be noted.

d. In an absolute construction, the adjective follows :

rester bouche béante '(to) stand gaping,' **aller les pieds nus** (*or nu-pieds* without *les*) '(to) go barefoot,' **la tête basse** 'head down,' etc.

e. Comparatives and superlatives commonly make essentially prepositive adjectives follow :

la plus petite maison or la maison la plus petite ; **mon meilleur ami or mon ami le meilleur.**

351.

A Summary

a. A few descriptive adjectives, whatever their value, usually precede or must precede. See § 348.

b. Descriptive adjectives which do not clearly *classify* easily precede (and are for the most part lightly stressed, i.e. *proclitic*).

c. Compounds (as **bonhomme, bonshommes, usually derogatory** ; **bon mot, bons mots**, 'witticism-s' ; **petit pain, petits pains**, 'roll-s' ; etc.) may be regarded as pure nouns. In French the *second* element gets the stress, or the stress is evenly distributed.

d. Certain adjectives, many of which may be grouped in 'families,' are essentially logical distinguishers, and, as such, habitually or always follow.

e. Various influences, as is commonly the case in English, make even essentially prepositive adjectives follow.

f. Ever since French has existed, and in its earliest known form (Latin), usage has fluctuated, often inexplicably. Hence hundreds of conventional (fixed) groups in which a given noun now precedes a given adjective, now follows it, according to the meaning which the speaker intends to convey. Here, whether following or preceding, the adjective may be a logical distinguisher: **une fausse clef** is a key used illegitimately, **une clef fausse** is 'a wrong key,' etc. No safe comprehensive rule can be stated for such cases.

g. We may add that by its frequent power to put a given adjective in either position French can make many distinctions usually not recognized in written English, and commonly disregarded in spoken English, though our lightly stressed adjective often corresponds to a French prepositive adjective, and though our heavily stressed adjective almost always corresponds to a French adjective in the after-position.

EXERCISES

I. From Lessons LXVIII and LXIX (§§ 341-349), or from any preceding, or from the selection below, derive examples to illustrate *a-g* of § 349, at least two for each paragraph. Vary each example, when possible, by way of experiment.

II. Read aloud, with great care as to stress, the following passage; then comment on the form and position of each adjective, whether descriptive or not. Where possible, insert or substitute other adjectives.

352.

Un Bel Âne¹

Quelle bête admirable ! Il avait presque la taille² d'un mulet,³ 1
 et son poil⁴ long, soyeux,⁵ était noir comme l'aile lustrée⁶ des 3
 corbeaux.⁷ Ses oreilles droites,⁸ semées⁹ de petites taches gri- 3
 sâtes,¹⁰ retombaient gracieuses le long des mâchoires¹¹ et du 5
 col.¹² Ses yeux bruns étaient magnifiques. Ses dents régulières 5
 avaient un émail éclatant.¹³

Quelquefois il filait comme un trait¹⁴ à travers les arbres du 7
 verger,¹⁵ et, parvenu sur la roche¹⁶ nue du plateau, il prenait des 9
 attitudes grotesques, faisait des mines¹⁷ singulières, dressait ses 9
 oreilles, les baissait avec lenteur, pareilles à deux pistolets qui 11
 viseraient le même but¹⁸; en repartait au galop pour nous re- 11
 joindre, tout penaud¹⁹ et tout essoufflé.

(FERDINAND FABRE, quoted by Brunot and Bony)

NOTES. 1. donkey. 2. size. 3. mule. 4. coat. 5. silky. 6. glossy.
 7. ravens. 8. *Here* straight. 9. sprinkled. 10. grayish spots. 11. jaws.
 12. neck. 13. brilliant enamel. 14. would speed like a dart (would dart).
 15. orchard. 16. rock. 17. expressions (of countenance). 18. target.
 19. abashed.

SOIXANTE-DIXIÈME LEÇON

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS¹

353. Formation. With few exceptions, the French ordinals (note the first words over each of our seventy-seven lessons) can be derived from the corresponding cardinal, or vice versa. Thus **deux** gives **deuxième** [døːzjɛm], **trente** gives **trentième** (**trent** + **ième**), etc.

Real or Apparent Exceptions. For **un** (**une**), note **premier** (**première**); **unième** occurs only in **vingt et unième** etc. with **et** before it, and as a denominator. This **et** is omitted in **quatre-vingt-unième** (81st); cf. *a*.

Neuvième (9th) keeps the older pronunciation of **neuf**, still heard in **neuf hommes**.

Quatre-vingts (80) loses its **s** in **quatre-vingtième** (80th) and in other compounds. (Compare **quatre-vingts** with 'fourscore').

Cinq (5) gives **cinquième** because **q** without **u** is almost unknown (**coq**, **cinq**).

EXERCISE

Write the ordinals of **quatre-vingt-onze** (91), of **cent** (100), of **mille** (1000). Write the cardinals of **dix-neuvième** (19th), of **quatre-vingt-quatorzième** (94th), of **cent-unième** (101st). See *a*.

a. Groups with et. The conjunction **et** [e] occurs in all cases before **un** (**une**, **unième**) up to **quatre-vingts**; hence **vingt et un** (**une**) 21, **trente et unième**, etc. A hyphen (**un trait d'union**) occurs in nearly all compounds (not containing **et**) except when **deux**, **trois**, **dix-neuf**, etc. multiply **cent** (100), **mille** (1000), etc.

REMARK. These arbitrary rules as to the hyphen will be done away with only when the hyphen (wholly useless) is dropped, as usually happens now in **cent un-e** (101), **cent deux** (102), etc. Cf. **trente-deux** etc.

b. Variability. Except **un** (with **une**), **vingt** (with **vingts**), and **cent** (with **cents**), the cardinals are invariable. The ordinals vary in **premier**

¹ A cardinal number, or numeral, answers the question 'How many?' an ordinal, 'Which?' French exceptions will be noted.

(with *première*), in *second* (with *seconde*), and in *dernier* (with *dernière*). All the ordinals may have a plural: *les premières minutes* etc.

NOTE. *Million* and *milliard* (1000 millions) are pure nouns. *Cent* and *mille* can be preceded by *un* only when *cent* = *centaine* = 'a hundred odd' ('about a hundred'), or 'hundredweight,' and when *mille* = 'mile.' Hence, '100 men' = *cent hommes*; '1000 men' = *mille hommes*. Note also *deux cents hommes* *but* *deux mille hommes*, etc.

EXERCISE

Write out in full in French: 8, 10, 12, 16, 19, 23, 31, 34, 40, 41, 46, 50, 51, 60, 62, 70, 71, 80, 81 (*no s*), 90, 91, 100 children, 101 men, 101 women, 3000 times, 18 miles, 1,000,000 francs (*use de*).

354. Pronunciation. Some important variations must be noted.

a. Linking or elision seldom occurs before *onze* or *onzième*, and before *huit* only in compounds. Hence *le onze*, *du onzième*, *le huit*, etc., but *dix-huit* = [dizɥi(t)].

REMARK. This is because, in counting aloud, all other numbers begin with a consonant, except *un*, which may likewise give *le un* in counting.

b. The *x* of *soixante* = *ss* [s], but note [z] in *sixième* and *dixième*. *Deux* = [dø], or [døz] if linked: *deux chiens* [dø ʃɛ̃], but *deux amis* [døzami]. *Six* and *dix* are [si] and [di], except before vowels: [siːzami, diːzɔ̃m]; and in dates or before pauses they are [sis] and [dis]. Note also [disset] = 17 and [diznoɛf] = 19. Pronounce *le six mai* ('May') and *le dix avril* ('April').

c. Formerly, all the forms exemplified by *dix-sept* etc. contained *et* (still kept in *vingt et un* etc.). This original *et* still affects 22 (*vingt-deux*) to 29 (*vingt-neuf*) inclusive: 22 = [vɛ̃tdø], 23 = [vɛ̃t-rwa], 24 = [vɛ̃tkatr], 25 = [vɛ̃tsɛ̃k], etc.; otherwise *vingt* = [vɛ̃], except before closely following vowels. In *quatre-vingt-* (81-99), *vingt* always = [vɛ̃], 1-19 having been added to *quatre-vingt(s)*, not to *quatre-vingt et*. (By assimilation, *vingt-deux* may become [vɛ̃ndø]).

d. *Second* (*seconde*) = [sɛgɔ̃ (sɛgɔ̃:d)] or [zgɔ̃ (zgɔ̃:d)]. Linked, *second* has [t].

REMARK. **Second-e** is preferred to **deuxième** when only two things are thought of. One or the other, not *either*, must be used in various set phrases.

e. For **cinq**, note [k] before vowels and pauses, also in dates (**le cinq mai** = [lə sɛk mɛ]); among the uneducated, **cinq** may be [sɛk] in nearly all positions.

Compare **ces cinq martyrs** ('five martyrs') with **ces saints martyrs** ('holy martyrs'). Pronounce **ces cinq homards**.

f. For **sept**, note [sɛt] before vowels, before pauses, and in dates; also among the uneducated in nearly all positions. Pronounce **sept ânes** and **le sept mars** [mars]; note **sept fois** = [sɛ fwa], and **sept hiboux** ('owls') = [sɛ ibu].

QUERY. What might **Je viendrai à sept heures** be taken to mean? How could this possible ambiguity be avoided?

g. For **huit**, note [ɥit] in linking, in dates, and before pauses. Pronounce **Nous sommes huit** ('There are eight of us').

h. For **neuf**, note **neuf fois** = [nø fwa], **neuf hiboux** = [nø ibu], **à neuf heures** = [a nøvœ:r], **sur les neuf** ('about 9 o'clock') = [syʀ lɛ nœf], **le neuf août** ('August') = [lə nœf u], *not* [lə nœfu].

REMARK. In folk-speech, **neuf** commonly = [nœf] in nearly all cases.

355. Position. In most cases, both the cardinals and the ordinals precede nouns, and a cardinal precedes an ordinal: **la première douzaine** 'the first dozen,' **les cinq premiers chapitres** 'the first five (or five first) chapters'; also **les sept meilleurs auteurs** 'the seven best (or best seven) authors,' etc. There are important exceptions.

a. Meaning 'primary,' **premier** follows: **ma raison première**. Also in titles: **François premier** 'Francis I,' **tome premier** 'volume one.'

NOTE. *But* **le premier tome** where we should say 'the first volume' etc.

b. With **le dernier jeudi du mois** ('the last Thursday of the month') compare **jeudi dernier**, adv. ('last Thursday,' 'Thursday last'). Note also **l'an dernier** (or **l'année dernière**) et **cette année-ci** ('last year and this year'), and compare **ma raison dernière** ('my *final* reason') with **le jugement dernier** ('the Last [and most important] Judgment').

c. Beginning with **deux**, cardinals are used in titles of rulers (**Henri deux** 'Henry II' etc.) and follow; so in counting pages etc., as in English: (**la**) **page un** (*not une*) 'page one,' **chapitre trois** 'chapter three,' etc.; but **la première page** etc., as in English.

NOTE. In dating by days, French requires **le premier** (*janvier* etc.), *but le deux* (*janvier*), *le trois* (*février*), etc. **Je pars le onze août** (*no prep.*) 'I leave on the eleventh of August.'

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. Pronounce all your French with great care:

1. January has thirty-one days. 2. January is the first month in (**de**) the year (**année**). 3. The second month is February; February is the shortest month (*adj. last*) in the whole year, for it has only twenty-eight days; however, leap-year (**l'année bissextile**) gives us twenty-nine. 4. A year may have three hundred and sixty-five days (*here no s in cent*), but leap-year has one more (**de plus**); that makes three hundred and sixty-six. 5. A week contains (**comprend**) seven days; however, in French we say 'eight days' because we count one day twice. 6. The first day in the week we call [it] Monday; the second is called Tuesday; what names do we give to the third, the fourth, the fifth, the sixth, and the last? 7. A day contains twenty-four hours; an hour contains sixty minutes. 8. What time is it? about eight o'clock? No, it is almost nine [o'clock].

II. *Likewise*: 1. Charles I, Henry IV, Henry VIII, Charles IX. 2. Vol. I, chap. 10, [at] pp. 1 and 2. 3. August 10, February 20, last Sunday, the last three hours before midnight. 4. There will be three (four, five, nine) of us. 5. I shall come first, my sisters will be the last to arrive. 6. Could you come at seven? or at eight? Not at eight; at that hour I'm too busy.

¹ Sur la prononciation des noms de nombre (sujet que nous avons dû résumer très brièvement), voir Ph. Martinon, *Comment on prononce le français*.

SOIXANTE ET ONZIÈME LEÇON

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS (CONCLUDED)

356. Idioms Expressing Dates and Hours. Study the following expressions of dates and hours, noting the presence or absence of prepositions. (To be read carefully aloud.)

EXERCISE I

a. *Dates: Typical Idioms*

1. En quelle année sommes-nous? Nous sommes en 1918 [en dix-neuf cent dix-huit],¹ . . . en 1923 [en dix-neuf cent vingt-trois], etc.
 2. Je suis venu à Paris en 1900 [*read* dix-neuf cents], j'y suis, donc, depuis longtemps, et il y a belle lurette ('quite a bit of time') que je n'ai pas revu ma ville natale.
 3. Mon âge? J'ai à peu près quarante-neuf ans.
 4. Dans un an et quelques mois, j'aurai passé la cinquantaine.
 5. Moi, j'approche de ma cinquante-huitième année: je suis né en 1860 [en dix-huit cent soixante], le vendredi 20 avril, si je ne me trompe.
 6. Quel quantième [*i.e.* du mois] sommes-nous aujourd'hui? (Le combien sommes-nous? Quel jour sommes-nous?)
 7. Nous sommes le treize mars. (C'est aujourd'hui le treize. Nous avons le treize.)
 8. Dans quel mois sommes-nous? En mai. Le combien? Le dix-huit.
 9. Quel jour est-ce? C'est dimanche.
 10. Comme le temps passe! Voilà plus d'un an que je suis ici, et je n'ai presque rien achevé.
 11. Combien de temps faut-il compter pour arriver à la gare Saint-Lazare?
 12. A pied, une heure et quart; dans un bon taxi, à peine vingt minutes.
 13. Bon. Je n'ai rendez-vous qu'à quatre heures et demie, et il en est à peine trois.
 14. Trois heures déjà! Je pars pour Trouville dans une heure. J'y arrive à huit heures environ (à huit heures du soir, le soir à huit heures).
 15. Mon train quitte Paris tous les samedis soir [*N.B.*] et y rentre tous les lundis matin [*N.B.*]
 16. Tous les trois ou quatre jours, ce train-là arrive neuf ou dix minutes en retard (a neuf ou dix minutes de retard), mais il n'arrive jamais après onze heures moins le quart ou onze heures.

¹ Moins souvent, on entend dire: « en mil neuf cent dix-huit » etc.

EXERCISE II

b.

The Hours: Typical Idioms

1. Quelle heure est-il? (. . . avez-vous, s'il vous plaît? *etc.*) 2. A ma montre, monsieur, il est cinq heures et une minute (sept heures une, six heures et demie, neuf heures vingt-huit, onze heures vingt-neuf et trente secondes, deux heures moins vingt-sept, midi juste, minuit précis, quatre heures précises, deux heures tapant, *etc.*) 3. L'horloge ('clock') de la gare marque la demie (midi et quart, minuit moins un quart). 4. Je suis rentré ce matin à trois heures et demie passées. 5. Je reçois de neuf à onze le mercredi et le vendredi. 6. Nous dînons à huit heures, quand ce n'est pas huit heures et demie. (*Note the reason for using ce.*) 7. Trois heures viennent de sonner. 8. Minuit vient de sonner. 9. Il est plus de onze heures (de minuit). 10. Ma montre avance de dix minutes (est en retard, retarde de onze minutes), il doit être environ (à peu près, près de) cinq heures dix. 11. Il est tout au plus neuf heures.

EXERCISE III

I. Be prepared to read aloud the first series of examples (1-16), adding *one* to each number wherever possible. (Note that **douze heures** is not '12 o'clock' (**midi** or **minuit**), but '12 hours.')

II. A good way to learn to tell the time of day in French is to draw a dial (**un cadran**, **un cadran d'horloge**, **un cadran de montre**), preferably on a blackboard (**tableau noir**), and 'move' the hands by erasing and remaking them.

357. Numeral Nouns. Any of the many forms in **-ième** may follow **un**, **deux**, *etc.* Note also **une (la) moitié** 'half,' **un tiers** (= **un troisième**, **une troisième partie**) 'a third,' **deux tiers** 'two thirds,' **un quart** 'a fourth,' and **le tout** (or, more arithmetically, **le total**) 'the whole'; also, arithmetically, **un demi** 'a half,' **deux demis**, *etc.* $\frac{9}{101}$ = **neuf centunièmes** [*nœf, sātynjem*].

a. The multiplicatives most used are **(le) double (de)**, **(le) triple (de)**, **(le) quadruple (de)**, and other forms in **-uple**. (Also used as adjectives.)

b. Frequent collectives are **une paire** (d'amis, de gants) 'a couple (of friends),' 'a pair (of gloves),' **une huitaine** 'about eight,' etc.:

une dizaine [di'zɛn] some ten

une douzaine a dozen

une quinzaine about fifteen

une vingtaine a score, about twenty

une trentaine about thirty

une quarantaine about forty

une cinquantaine about fifty

une soixantaine about sixty

une centaine about a hundred

Also

un millier about a thousand

un milliard 1000 million(s)

NOTE. As nouns, all these may have a plural and they require **de** before a complement: **des milliers de soldats** 'thousands of soldiers.'

358. Numeral Adverbs. Note **premièrement** (fem. adj. + **ment**) 'first,' 'in the first place,' **deuxièmement** 'secondly,' etc.

359. Addition (*l'addition*, f.), **Subtraction** (*la soustraction* = [sustraksjɔ̃]), **Multiplication** (*la multiplication*), and **Division** (*la division*). Translate and study the following idiomatic statements, noting which would actually be made *aloud* by a demonstrator. 1, 2, etc., to 0 (**zéro**, m.) are called (les) **chiffres** (m.); their names (**un**, **deux**, etc.) are (les) **noms de nombre**; a serial number is not **un nombre** but **un numéro**. 'Units' = (les) **unités**; 'tens' = **dizaines**; 'hundreds' = **centaines**; 'thousands' = **milliers**.

a. L'addition est une opération qui consiste à trouver la somme de deux ou de plusieurs nombres. Soit à additionner 378 et 25,469.

25,469 (Parlé.) Huit et neuf font dix-sept. [Je] Pose sept et [je] retiens un. Sept et six font treize. Treize et un de retenu font quatorze. Trois et quatre et un de retenu font huit. Rien à retenir. Résultat: vingt-cinq mille huit cent quarante-sept.

$$\begin{array}{r} 25,469 \\ 378 \\ \hline 25,847 \end{array}$$

b. Soustraction. La soustraction est l'opération qui consiste à retrancher un nombre d'un autre de même espèce. Le résultat se nomme *reste*, ou *différence*. Soustrayons 509 de 1,208.

1,208 (Parlé.) Huit moins neuf ne va pas. [J']Emprunte un. Dix-huit moins neuf reste neuf. Ôte zéro de neuf, neuf. Cinq de onze (reste) six. Reste: six cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1,208 \\ 509 \\ \hline 699 \end{array}$$

c. Multiplication. On écrit le multiplicateur sous le multiplicande, en plaçant les unités de même espèce dans la même colonne verticale. On multiplie le multiplicande par chaque chiffre du multiplicateur, en plaçant chaque *produit partiel* de façon que son premier chiffre à droite soit sous le chiffre du multiplicateur qui l'a formé. On fait la somme de tous les produits partiels. Soit à multiplier 987 par 31. (Ce sont les facteurs.)

987	(Parlé.) Une fois neuf cent quatre-vingt-sept (fait), . . . Trois
× 31	fois sept (font) vingt et un. Pose un et retiens deux. Trois fois
987	huit (font) vingt-quatre. Vingt-six. Pose six et retiens deux.
2961	Trois fois neuf (font) vingt-sept. Vingt-sept et deux de retenu,
30,597	vingt-neuf. Résultat: trente mille cinq cent quatre-vingt-dix-sept.

d. Division. Termes: (le) dividende, (le) diviseur, (le) quotient (prononcé [kɔsjā]), divisé par, reste. Soit à diviser 469 par 6.

469	6	(Parlé.) En quarante-six combien de fois six? Ça va
42	78.1666	sept fois. Six fois sept font quarante-deux. Deux de six,
49		reste quatre. J'abaisse neuf. En quarante-neuf? huit fois.
48		Ça fait quarante-huit. Huit de neuf, reste un. Je mets le
1.0		point pour les décimales, j'ajoute zéro au reste. En dix
6		combien de fois six? une fois. Six de dix, reste quatre.
40		J'ajoute un autre zéro. Six en quarante vont six fois. Six
		fois six font trente-six, et cætera. Quotient: 78.166+.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

I. Noting that in fractional numbers (**nombres fractionnaires**) the numerator (**le numérateur**) must be a cardinal, and the denominator (**le dénominateur**) an ordinal, read aloud: $\frac{6}{8}$ $1\frac{9}{10}$ $10\frac{8}{10}$

II. Following the models in § 358, add 368 and 435; subtract 98 from 235; multiply 708 by 34; divide 538 by 72.

SOIXANTE-DOUZIÈME LEÇON

ADVERBS

360. Definition and Functions. In general, simple adverbs and adverbial groups are single words or phrases which in a few cases ask, and in many cases answer, questions as to manner, place, time, etc., or which serve to affirm, to deny, or to express doubt, measure, degree, quantity, etc. They may stand alone, or may circumstantiate a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, — sometimes even a noun: *une presqu'île* 'a peninsula.'

REMARKS. We cannot always be sure whether a given word *is* an adverb. Thus *cependant* ('however') often resembles a conjunction, and *loin* may resemble an adjective. *Elle est très bien, mieux que sa sœur* ('She's very good-looking, better-looking than her sister') seems to make *bien* and *mieux* adjectives. What is *chaud* in *Il fait (très) chaud*? Again, compare *manger peu* with *manger peu de pain*, or with *manger un peu de pain*.

Many words which in one context are nouns etc. are adverbs in another, and vice versa, e.g. *dimanche* ('Sunday') etc.

361. Formation. Many adverbs end in **-ment** (*lente-ment* = 'slow-ly'); other types, simple or composite, have an almost endless variety of forms.¹

Nearly all the adverbs in **-ment** were formed by adding this relic of the Latin ablative *mente* (= 'with . . . mind') to the feminine singular of a given adjective: *fou, folle, follement* 'madly,' *sec, sèche, sèchement* 'dryly,' 'curtly,' etc.

REMARK. This suffix **-ment** is still alive, as is proved by *chicment* ('stylishly' etc.), for *chic* (noun and adj.) is a very modern word.

a. A few adverbs in **-ment** contradict, or seem to contradict, the rule.

¹ The *Dictionnaire général* (preface, pp. 285–288) lists a hundred or more forms, a very incomplete list of the forms in everyday use, especially if we count adverbial phrases.

The following, and others like them, show contraction; they have lost an [ə] which had become silent more than four centuries ago:

absolument (cf. <i>-ue</i>) absolutely	infiniment (cf. <i>-ie</i>) infinitely
aveuglément (cf. <i>-ée</i>) blindly	crûment (cf. <i>-ue</i>) crudely
carrément (cf. <i>-ée</i>) squarely	dûment (cf. <i>-ue</i>) duly
décidément (cf. <i>-ée</i>) decidedly	poliment (cf. <i>-ie</i>) politely
hardiment (cf. <i>-ie</i>) boldly	vraiment (cf. <i>vraie</i>) truly

Note that the lost *e* [ə] is recorded by a *^* on **crûment** etc., but not consistently elsewhere. Again, we find **gaïment** ('gayly') *or* **gaïement**, but neither **vraïement** nor **vraiment**.

Some forms whose origin is more or less doubtful are

confusément confusedly	immensément immensely
diffusément long-windedly	profondément profoundly
énormément hugely	uniformément uniformly

The adjective forms for these are **confus-e**, **diffus-e**, **énorme**, **immense**, **profond-e**, and **uniforme**. They seem to have followed the pattern exemplified by **aveuglément** (above). Note **impunément** ('with impunity'), instead of which we should expect **impuni(e)ment**, and note the vulgar form **aucunément**, properly **aucunement** ('in no wise').

Instead of **méchamment** ('maliciously' etc.) we should expect a form **méchamment** (from **méchant**). But forms of this type go back to a time when the adjectives which begin them had no special feminine. Hence

constamment constantly	prudemment cautiously
diligemment diligently	vailleamment valiantly
plaisamment in fun	etc.; all with [amā]

NOTE. Bear in mind that most of the adverbs now in use were formed centuries ago; therefore they often indicate a feminine now obsolete.

362. Miscellaneous Examples. Here follow some of the many forms that French adverbs may take. Study all aloud (*à haute voix*); then vary them orally.

1. Vous parlez trop bas (trop haut). 2. Tenez ces choses plus haut (moins haut, plus bas). 3. Parle très fort, pour qu'on puisse t'entendre. 4. Vous chantez fort bien. Bravo! 5. Ce monsieur chante faux. 6. Sa voix sonne creux ('hollow'). 7. Le fait-il exprès ('on purpose')? 8. S'il chantait juste, je lui en serais bien reconnaissant. 9. Il n'a peut-être pas visé assez haut, ou bien son père ne lui aura pas donné assez d'argent

pour compléter ses cours. 10. Ça coûte gros, les leçons de musique, et il faut travailler ferme! ('hard'). 11. Moi, si les choses ne se vendent pas très bon marché ('cheap'), je ne les achète pas. 12. Je n'aime pas les choses que j'ai payées trop cher. 13. Je ne suis pas riche, vous savez. 14. Au contraire, il me semble que je vis (*see vivre*) au jour le jour ('from hand to mouth'). 15. Bon an mal an ('year in and year out,' 'good years and bad'), je réalise deux ou trois mille francs. C'est peu!

363. The Variability of tout as an Adverb. Study the following examples in which **tout** precedes a consonant (**confus** 'upset,' 'abashed'), an 'aspirate h' (**honteux** 'ashamed'), and a vowel (**étonné** 'astonished,' for which **heureux** 'happy' might be substituted without any difficulty).

Il est {
 tout confus [tu kɔ̃fy]
 tout honteux [tu ɔ̃tø]
 tout étonné [tutetɔ̃ne]

Ils sont {
 tout confus [tu kɔ̃fy]
 tout honteux [tu ɔ̃tø]
 tout étonnés [tutetɔ̃ne]

Elle est {
 toute confuse [tut kɔ̃fyz]
 toute honteuse [tut ɔ̃tøz]. *Not* [tutɔ̃tøz]
 toute étonnée [tutetɔ̃ne]

Also tout étonnée [tutetɔ̃ne]

Elles sont {
 toutes confuses [tut kɔ̃fyz]
 toutes honteuses [tut ɔ̃tøz]
 tout étonnées [tutetɔ̃ne]

For the masculine, the *written* form is always **tout**, but the *sound* varies; for the feminine, the *written form* varies, but its *sound* remains [tut]; but note how [t] is linked in **tout étonnées**.

QUERIES. Might any of these combinations be ambiguous? Why no **tous**?

364. Other Variable Adverbial Adjectives.

a. The compound **nouveau riche** (pl. **nouveaux riches**) has no feminine. But note **nouveau venu** ('new-comer'), *f.* **nouvelle venue**.

b. In the plural, **une porte grande ouverte** [grãduvert], 'a wide-open door,' varies only for the *eye*: **grandes ouvertes** = [grãduvert], as in the singular. So **une fleur fraîche éclosée**, 'a fresh blossom.'

EXERCISES

I. Form the adverbs of the adjectives in § 338 (except *quel*).

II. The adverbs of *bref* (f. *brève*) and of *gentil* (f. *gentille*) are *brèvement* and *gentiment*. How explain these two forms?

III. (*Tout*) *bonnement* (almost always with *tout*) = 'simply': *Elle est tout bonnement folle* = ? How translate 'well done'? And what is the adverb used instead of *mauvaisement* (no such form)?

IV. Instead of *charmamment* or *charmantement* (forms which *might* have been derived from the verbal adjective *charmant*, but do not exist), we find *d'une façon (manière) charmante*. However, we find *couramment* ('currently' etc.) from the verbal adjective *courant*. Can adverbs in *-ment* be formed at will from *any* verbal adjective?

V. In § 363, for *Il est* substitute *Il va*; for *Elle est* substitute *Elle va*; for *Ils sont* and *Elles sont* substitute *Ils vont* and *Elles vont*. Show the accompanying variations of *tout seul*.

Keeping *Il est* etc., show the variations of *tout* with *blanc*, *hideux* ('aspirate h'; means 'hideous'), and *heureux*.

VI. 1. Speak lower (louder, faster, slower, as slowly as you can). 2. Don't talk so fast; the faster¹ you talk (*order: adv., pron., vb., adv.*), the harder it is to understand you. 3. If we sing, let's not sing out of tune. 4. When one sings badly, the less one sings, the happier everyone will be. 5. Since I have been in Paris (*vb. group A*), I've had some ten music lessons, two a week. 6. They cost me a good deal, more than (*de*) twenty-five francs a lesson. 7. Am I paying too much? Not at all! 8. We're not rich; 15,000 francs a year at the very most (*use tout*). That doesn't allow me to live like a prince, but I'm enjoying myself hugely. 9. My father tells me to work hard and to aim high. 10. There are a good many things that he says in fun; not that, *par exemple*! 11. You know X? Well, he's wasting his time. 12. He is simply crazy, that boy, and I've told him so squarely.

¹ No *le* (§ 56); here 'the' is an adverb of degree.

SOIXANTE-TREIZIÈME LEÇON

ADVERBS IN NEGATION

365. **Non** is the stressed form of **ne** (once **nen**), but **non** and **ne** are seldom if ever interchangeable. **Non** is an independent form, always clearly negative; **ne** is strictly proclitic and occurs only with verb-forms, with all verb-forms except past participles; its negative force is sometimes so slight that it *may* be omitted.

366. Study the following examples of **non** :

a. 1. Vous viendrez ? **Non**, monsieur. 2. Tu as fait ça ? **Mais non** ! 3. Je vous dérange ? *Emphatically* : **Non pas**. 4. Drame ou non, ça me plait. 5. Cela se peut. Je ne dis pas non. 6. **Non, non**, dites la vérité. 7. Me trompez-vous ? Oui ? ou non ? 8. Répondez par oui ou par non. 9. Est-ce, oui ou non, ce que vous vouliez savoir ?

b. Elliptically, after que : 1. Les uns disent que non, les autres disent que oui ; moi, je dis que oui et que non. 2. Vous l'avouez donc ? *Reply* : **Que non** !

c. Before an adverb or adverbial phrase. 1. Venez à trois heures, et non [nɔ̃] avant. 2. Allez à gauche et non à droite. 3. Non loin de . . . 4. **Non seulement . . . mais encore . . .** ('but also'). 5. Non (pas) de lui, **mais de moi**. 6. Non moins de trois. *More colloquially* : Pas moins de trois. Note Pas plus de trois. Pas plus que moi (*not non plus que moi*).

d. Before adjectives : 1. Non content ('satisfied') de sa part, il . . . 2. Les lettres non-initiales [nɔ̃ inisjal]. 3. Une manière nonchalante. 4. Il est riche ? Non pas riche mais aisé, or (*more colloquially*) Pas riche mais aisé. (Note also peu 'un-', 'not very,' as in peu convaincant, peu flatteur, etc.)

e. Before a past participle : 1. Il a été tué ? (Non) pas tué, mais gravement blessé. Or, Tué ? non, mais . . . 2. Une maison non meublée ('an unfurnished house'), *but* une maison inoccupée.

f. Before a noun or noun-clause : 1. Non (pas) Geneviève mais Pierre. *More colloquially* : Pas Geneviève mais Pierre. 2. Ce non-paiement 'this non-payment.' 3. Non (pas) qu'il le dise, mais il le pense.

g. Before pronouns: 1. (Non) pas lui! (*Or after: Tout passe. Moi non.*) 2. Je les ai, mais non pas ceux que vous croyez. 3. Non, pas ça!

h. Before a que-clause (cf. f): 1. Non (pas) qu'il le dise, *but only Pas que je sache* ('Not that I'm aware [of]'), *not Non que je sache.*

367. Ne. As a weakened negative, *ne* usually has to be escorted by a second negative or so-called negative. The negative escort may be an adverb, an adjective, a pronoun, a pronominal noun, or a pronominal adverb (cf. §§ 370–381). Note particularly

pas, point (*more emphatic than pas, but usually not colloquial*), *guère* (*hardly colloquial*), *plus, jamais, de ma vie* (*absolutely jamais de la vie!*), *que* ('than,' 'except'), *ni, ni . . . ni, aucunement, nullement;* *also aucun-e, nul-le;* *also personne, rien, qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit, etc.*

368. The Syntax of ne. Except in extremely colloquial or plebeian French (*le français du peuple*), *ne* must occur in every clause or sentence containing a finite verb (*je parle*), an infinitive (*parler*), imperative (*parle*), or non-adjectival *-ant* form (*parlant*), that we desire to negative, whatever other negative or so-called negative is added. But note the following statements.

Ne alone. *Without* reënforcing complements, *ne* occurs as follows (all examples to be studied):

a. After expressions of fear lest something *may occur* (cf. §§ 216–217):

1. Je crains (J'ai peur) qu'elle ne nous mente. 2. De peur qu'il ne les insulte. Etc. *Colloquially, this ne is often omitted:* 3. Nous craignons qu'ils s'en aillent.

NOTE. But *prendre garde que* requires *ne* (*without pas*): *Prenez garde qu'on ne vous suive* 'Take care you are not followed,' 'Be wary lest someone follow you.'

b. Similarly, after *empêcher* '(to) hinder,' 'prevent,' *éviter* '(to) avoid,' and certain expressions of doubt, in subjunctive clauses: .

1. *Empêchez qu'on (ne) sorte.* 2. *Évitons qu'il (ne) leur nuise.* 3. *Je ne doute pas (N. B.) que cela (ne) réussisse.* Etc.

c. Similarly, after *Il s'en faut* etc. :

1. *Il s'en est fallu de bien peu qu'il ne soit tombé dans la mer* 'He came within an inch of falling into the sea.' *Here ne is required. But*
 2. *Il s'en faut de beaucoup qu'elle soit aussi belle qu'on dit* 'She's very far from being as good-looking as people say.' 3. *Peu s'en faut qu'il ne mente* 'He's within an inch of telling a lie.' *Here general.*

d. After *à moins que* 'unless,' and commonly after *avant que* 'before':

1. *Oui, à moins que tu ne mentes.* 2. *Venez vite! avant que la baleine (ne) disparaisse!*

e. When two actions are compared by means of two verbs :

Il chante mieux qu'il ne parle 'He sings better than he speaks.'

REMARK. The language here blends two ideas, the one positive, the other negative: *Il chante bien*, thinks the speaker, *but Il ne parle pas aussi bien qu'il chante*. Hence, *Il chante mieux qu'il ne parle*.

f. In *que*-clauses containing a true present perfect (*A p.p.*) or a pluperfect (*B p.p.*) after statements as to time-intervals :

1. *Il y a un siècle que je ne t'ai (pas) vu* 'It's a century since I saw you'; *more literally*, There exists a century during which *etc.* 2. *Voilà vingt ans que vous ne vous étiez même (pas) parlé.*

g. With various forms of certain verbs, as *cesser* '(to) cease,' *oser* '(to) dare,' *pouvoir* '(to) be able,' *savoir* '(to) know,' etc.:

1. *Il ne cesse de . . .* 2. *Mais tu n'oserais!* 3. *Je ne puis venir.* 4. *Je ne sais si . . .* 5. *Je ne saurais vous le dire* 'I really couldn't tell you.' *Note the following, never with pas: je ne sais quel . . ., je ne sais qui . . ., je ne sais quoi de . . .* (see §§ 152 and 155, c).

h. Note these exclamative or exclamative-interrogative groups :

1. *Qui ne le dit!* 'Everybody says so!' 2. *Que ne l'avoues-tu, alors?* 'Why *don't* you admit it then?' See § 154.

i. Note *si ce n'est* 'unless it is,' especially in the *second* of two clauses; also the old locution *si je ne me trompe* 'if I mistake not':

1. *A qui le dirai-je, si ce n'est à toi?* 2. *Si je ne me trompe, vous . . .*

j. **Ne** occurs alone in negative relative clauses of characteristic (§§ 226, *d*, and 232) following a negative or interrogative main clause:

1. **Je ne connais personne qui ne le dise** ('who doesn't say so'). 2. **Il n'y en a pas un qui ne le fasse** ('but does it,' or 'who doesn't do it'). 3. **Que pourra-t-il faire que tu ne puisses le faire mille fois mieux** ('that you can't do . . .')? 4. **Quel parti pourrons-nous prendre qui ne nous soit encore plus dangereux** ('What course can we take that will not be . . .')?

k. **Ne** occurs alone in many exceptional locutions (archaisms):

1. **N'importe!** 'No matter!' **N'importe qui . . .** etc. 2. **A Dieu ne plaise!** 'God forbid!' Etc. (*Really not different from other examples already quoted.*)

369. In **le français du peuple**, negation is commonly expressed without **ne**, the whole burden of the negation being borne by **pas**, **rien**, etc. Note —

Poussez donc pas comme ça!	1	Don't push like that!
T'inquiète pas, mon garçon.	2	Don't worry, my boy.
Ai-je pas bien fait?	3	Haven't I done well?
Je peux pas le lire, j'ai pas mes lunettes.	4	I can't read it, I haven't got my spectacles.
Ça sert à rien.	5	That's no use.
J'étais qu'un gosse, je vous connaissais pas.	6	I was only a kid, I didn't know you.

EXERCISES

I. Review the examples of negatives on pp. 78-79, 81, 119, 137, 179-180.

II. Explain the various negatives in the continuous passages on pp. 123, 157-158, 230.

III. Exemplify **non** and **si** ('yes') in ten brief reasonable combinations suggested by the examples in § 366, *a-h*.

IV. Exemplify **ne . . . plus** and **ne . . . jamais** with the imperative of (**y**) **aller**.

archaic, for we get the group *ne . . . pas . . . rien*; we could not say *Tu n'as pas peur de rien*. (c) Everyday usage is exemplified by *de ne pas y* or *de ne pas en* + infin. (d) Note the group *ne . . . ne pas* in e.g. *Il ne peut ne pas l'avouer* 'He cannot help admitting it.'

c. **The Group *pas que personne* (or *rien*).** Occasionally *pas* precedes a *que*-clause containing *personne* 'anybody' or *rien* 'anything,' pronouns which originally were not negative:

Il ne faut pas que personne 10 It would be wrong for anyone to
accapare la peine ni la gloire. monopolize the trouble or the glory.

NOTE. Here the *que*-clause is treated as if the main clause were not negated. Similarly, *Je ne crois pas qu'il en sache rien* ('I don't believe he knows anything about it') instead of *Je crois qu'il n'en sait rien*. Compare these groups with those in *b* (above).

d. ***Pas* before Indeterminate Complements.** *Pas* may be followed by *du, de la, de l',* or *des* ('some,' 'any,' etc.) when it merely reënforces *ne* and therefore is not quantitative:

Ce n'est pas du vin, c'est du 11 This isn't wine, it's vinegar.
vinaigre.

Ne te forge pas des idées trop 12 Don't get too gloomy ideas.
noires.

NOTE. If in *N'y a-t-il pas de témoins?* 'Are there no witnesses?' we change *de* to *des*, we do so because we feel sure there *are* witnesses; the form with *de* may be answered naturally either with a *Si (Mais oui)* or with a *Non*.

e. ***Pas* in Cumulative Groups.** Here *pas* may be held for the last clause:

Ne discutons, ne creusons, ne 13 Let's not argue, not probe each
nous heurtons pas davantage. other, not clash any further.

f. **The Omission of *ne* in Verbless Groups.** Colloquial examples:

J'ai passé des moments pas 14 I've spent some moments that
drôles. (Cf. *peu drôles.*) were not a bit funny.

C'est un(e) pas grand'chose. 15 He (She) doesn't amount to
much.

A du plaisir gâché, je préfère 16 To spoiled pleasure, I prefer no
pas de plaisir du tout. pleasure at all.

NOTE 1. **Pas mal de**, 'a good deal,' 'a good many,' is treated like **beaucoup**: **Je me suis donné pas mal de peine** = 'I've taken a good deal of pains (trouble)'; likewise before a plural. Observe that the verb is not negated.

NOTE 2. **J'ai les fusils, pas autre chose** ('I have the guns, nothing else') is either literary or colloquial.

NOTE 3. Very colloquially, **pas** may stand for **n'est-ce pas?** (in folk-speech, often **est-ce pas?**): **Il est rigolo, pas?** 'He's funny, eh?'

g. Pas with Adverbs of Degree. The adverbs of degree (or quantity) **si** 'so,' generally **aussi** 'so,' 'as,' **moins** 'less,' **plus** 'more,' **tant** 'so much,' 'so many,' **autant** 'so much,' 'as much,' 'so many,' 'as many,' **tellement** 'so,' 'so much,' 'so many,' and **beaucoup** 'much' etc. are preceded by **pas**; seldom if ever by **point** (§ 371).

NOTE. **Pas** never occurs in immediate conjunction with **aucun**, **rien**, **jamais**, **personne**, nor with any other adverb, adjective, or pronoun which may be negative when it stands alone.

371. Point. Except in various set phrases (as **n'est-ce pas? pas que je sache** 'not that I'm aware' etc.), including most verbless phrases (as **Non, pas moi**), **point** may generally be substituted for **pas**; but **point** is usually more emphatic than **pas** and, in general, is either somewhat bookish or dialectal: in speaking, an educated Parisian could hardly use **point** without affectation; a provincial (townsman or peasant) could. Examples:

Je n'ai point froid, dit-il, pas 1 'I'm not at all cold,' said he.
de feu! pas de feu! 'No fire! no fire!'

Je n'y vais pas ce soir, et je 2 I'm not going there this evening,
n'y vais point. and I never go there (don't go there at all).

Brument dit: La tête y est 3 Brument said, 'Her *head* ain't
point, ça compte. under; that [her head] counts.'

(Maupassant, *Une Vente*. Brument is a Norman peasant.)

NOTES. **Point du tout** is perhaps intended to be stronger than **pas du tout**, but is usually not colloquial. In, for example, **Avant la guerre, il était peu ou point connu** 'Before the war, he was little known or unknown,' we have a set phrase: **peu ou point**; we could not omit **peu** without inserting **ne**: **il n'était point connu**.

372. Guère. An occasional (and sometimes uncolloquial) equivalent of *pas beaucoup* etc. Examples :

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| Les avez-vous vus souvent? —
Guère. | 1 | Have you met them often? —
Hardly ever. (Almost never.) |
| L'on ne trouve guère d'ingrats
tant qu'on est en état de faire du
bien. | 2 | One finds hardly ever an ingrate
so long as one is in a position to
do favors. |
| L'émulation et la jalousie ne
se rencontrent guère qu'entre per-
sonnes du même art. | 3 | Emulation and jealousy are
scarcely to be met save among
persons engaged in the same art. |

EXERCISES

I. *Free Composition.* Using either the vocabulary in §§ 370–372 or other words, write in French, to illustrate freshly each paragraph of § 370, a letter, an anecdote, a personal experience, or whatever you please; about 300 words.

II. Show to what extent you can negative (in prose variations) the following verses from *Le Bon Roi Dagobert* :

- | | | |
|---|----|--|
| Le bon roi Dagobert
Avait sa culotte à l'envers. | 1 | Le bon roi Dagobert
Chassait dans la plaine d'Anvers; |
| Le grand saint Éloi
Lui dit: « O mon roi! | 3 | Le grand saint Éloi
Lui dit: « O mon roi! |
| Votre Majesté
Est mal culottée. | 5 | Votre Majesté
Est bien essouffée. |
| — C'est vrai, lui dit le roi,
Je vais la remettre à l'endroit. » | 7 | — C'est vrai, lui dit le roi,
Un lapin courait après moi. » |
| Le bon roi Dagobert
Fut mettre son bel habit vert. | 9 | Le bon roi Dagobert
Voulait s'embarquer sur la mer. |
| Le grand saint Éloi
Lui dit: « O mon roi! | 11 | Le grand saint Éloi
Lui dit: « O mon roi! |
| Votre habit paré
Au coude est percé. | 13 | Votre Majesté
Se fera noyer. |
| — C'est vrai, lui dit le roi,
Le tien est bon, prête-le-moi. » | 15 | — C'est vrai, lui dit le roi,
On pourra crier: Le roi boit! » |

SOIXANTE-QUINZIÈME LEÇON

NEGATION (CONTINUED)

373. **Jamais** usually means 'never,' but in questions (without **ne**), after **si** (without **ne**), and in some other cases, it may have its older (positive) meaning 'ever'; whether we render **jamais** by 'never' or by 'ever' often depends upon our choice of English. Analyzed examples:

N'y allez-vous jamais? — Non, 1 Don't you ever (Do you never)
jamais. (Presque jamais.) go there? — No, never. (Almost never.)

NOTE 1. In verbless statements, **ne** is not used (§ 368). See examples 1 and 2.

Je n'ai jamais (eu) d'ennuis. — 2 I have never (had) any vex-
Jamais d'ennuis? Quelle chance! ations. — Never any vexations?
What luck!

NOTE 2. Here, without the article (**des**), **jamais** follows the analogy of **pas** in, for example, **Je n'ai pas d'ennuis**.

Jamais tu ne sauras gagner de 3 You will never know how to
l'argent. make (any) money.

NOTE 3. Here (cf. ex. 2) **jamais** is not treated as a partitive, but serves merely to reënforce emphatically the negating of **sauras**. Unlike English, French does not invert the verb when **jamais** precedes **ne**: 'Never had she been happier' = **Jamais elle n'avait été plus heureuse**. See *a* (below).

Il ne dit jamais rien, rien de 4 He never says anything, any-
vraiment utile. thing really useful.

NOTE 4. Here the thought is not thrice negated: **jamais** and **rien** may in this case be interpreted correctly as meaning 'at any time' and 'anything.' Originally, neither was negative (cf. § 380). See example 5.

Vous n'entendrez plus jamais 5 You will (shall) never hear of
parler de moi. (See ex. 4.) me again (any more).

NOTE 5. Here **jamais** is more emphatic than **plus**; but, whether the order is **plus jamais** or **jamais plus**, the true emphasis may depend upon which word gets the heavier stress.

Vous irez ? — Jamais de la vie ! 6 You'll go there? — Not if I know it! (Not by a jugful! *or the like.*)
(Not **y irez** ; see § 163, Note 3.)

NOTE 6. We find also **de mémoire d'homme** and a few other phrases employed as grammatical equivalents of **jamais**. Example: **De mémoire d'homme il n'y avait eu tant de neige** 'Time out of mind there had not been so much snow.'

As-tu jamais vu tant de monde ? 7 Have you ever seen so many people?

Si jamais vous le rencontrez, 8 If ever you meet him (If you
dites-lui ça. ever meet him), tell him that.

NOTE 7. Here we have (ex. 7) a positive question without **ne** and (ex. 8) a **si**-clause without **ne**.

Qu'il disparaisse à tout jamais ! 9 Let him disappear for good!

NOTE 8. Here **jamais** is a positive noun. In **au grand jamais !** ('never by any chance!' *or the like*) **jamais** is likewise a noun, but negative.

a. Position. **Jamais** follows forms in **-ant** (**n'en parlant jamais**), but may either precede or follow infinitives and past participles; usually it precedes.

374. Rien (Latin *rem* 'thing') may mean 'nothing,' or may have its original positive sense 'anything,' 'something.' With **que** (adverb), it may mean 'merely.' We shall consider here certain facts not already dealt with adequately (§§ 90, 186, and elsewhere).

a. Meanings. The usual meanings of **rien**, also facts regarding its position, can be studied in the following examples, of which only those that may not be clear are translated :

1. **Je ne risque rien, absolument rien, rien du tout.** 2. **Qui ne risque rien, n'a rien** 'Nothing venture, nothing have'. 3. **Ne risquant rien, tu ne pourras rien perdre.** 4. **Qu'as-tu donc ?** 'What *is* the matter with you?' — **Je n'ai rien.** 5. **Il pleut. — Ça ne fait rien, j'ai un parapluie.** 6. **Que fais-tu là ? — Rien, rien d'amusant, rien qui puisse t'intéresser, rien dont . . . , rien à quoi . . . , etc.** 7. **Tu n'écris plus rien. — Je n'écris jamais rien.** 8. **Tu ne crois plus à ('in') rien. — Non, je ne puis croire à rien.** 9. **Dieu a créé le monde de rien ('out of nothing'). — Non, Dieu n'a pas créé le monde de rien. (Note the double negation.)** 10. **Dubois ne sait rien**

('anything') de rien ('anything'). 11. On ne fait rien de rien 'You can't make something out of nothing.' (Cf. ex. 9). 12. J'ai eu ça pour rien 'I got that for nothing'. 13. Elle s'amuse à des riens ('with trifles'). 14. Avez-vous jamais rien vu de plus chic? (Cf. § 373, ex. 7.) 15. Si vous trouvez rien (*more usually* quelque chose) d'important, il faudra m'en avertir. (Cf. § 373, ex. 8.) 16. Je ne dis que ça ('only that'), rien que ça ('nothing but that'). 17. Je dis ça, rien d'autre ('nothing else'). 18. Je dis ça, rien de plus ('nothing else,' 'nothing in addition to that').

NOTE. Il parle (parlait etc.) comme si de rien n'était ('He talks quite unconcernedly,' i.e. as if nothing important were involved) exemplifies a familiar locution, but the position of rien is here archaic, for we could not say comme si de rien ne s'agissait ('as if nothing were at stake'), but merely comme s'il ne s'agissait de rien.

b. A Purely Adverbial Use of rien. From groups such as Je dis ça, rien que ça (*a*, ex. 16), rien que has derived the sense 'merely':

Rien qu'à le regarder, on sait 19 Merely (Just) to look at him,
ce qu'il vaut. one knows what he's worth.

NOTE. Similarly, Rien qu'en approchant = 'Merely in approaching.' Note also A vous, rien qu'à vous! 'To you, just to you!' and Dix minutes, rien que dix minutes 'Ten minutes, just ten minutes' (that will be enough).

c. The Position of rien with Infinitives and Past Participles. Rien habitually precedes infinitives and past participles, and may do so even when it has a complement (for example, a prepositional phrase or a relative clause):

Je ne veux rien dire, il vaut 20 I don't wish to say anything,
mieux n'en rien (or ne rien en) dire. it's better to say nothing about it.

NOTE 1. Here rien is a direct object; in Tu continues de (or à) ne rien faire it is still a direct object (of faire); but in Il ne faut jurer de rien ('One must never make pledges,' 'You never can tell,' etc.), rien is the object of de and therefore follows the infinitive.

NOTE 2. In folk-speech, or archaically, a prepositional infinitive with rien sometimes follows a clause containing ne . . . pas. Example: Si je l'ai fait, c'est pour que vous ne m'accusiez pas de rien négliger 'My reason for doing it was to keep you from accusing me of overlooking anything' (*Le Costaud des Épinettes*, II). No style would allow Vous ne voulez pas rien dire (for 'You are unwilling to say anything').

Vous n'avez rien démontré. 21 You haven't proved anything.

NOTE 3. If it has a complement, *rien* may follow the past participle: **Je n'ai vu rien de convaincant** 'I've seen nothing convincing'; however, we may find also **Je n'ai rien vu de convaincant**, or (with *ne . . . que*, 'only,' 'but') **Je n'ai rien vu que de convaincant** 'I've seen nothing that wasn't convincing'. The following examples illustrate three possible styles: (1) **Vous n'avez rien pu lui cacher** 'You haven't been able to hide anything from her', or (2) . . . **pu rien lui cacher**, or (3) . . . **pu lui cacher rien** (i.e. anything whatever, *quòi que ce soit*), but in each case *rien* may be stressed.

d. Rien + a Relative Pronoun ; rien de + Adjective. *Rien* may be followed by *qui*, *que*, *de quoi* (*à quoi* etc.), and by *dont*; or by *de + a 'masculine' (neuter) adjective*: **rien de bon** = 'nothing good.' *Rien* is always neuter:

Rien ne lui est plus cher. 22 Nothing is dearer to him.
Je n'ai rien dit. 23 I've said nothing.

e. 'Nothing that . . .', 'Nobody who(m) . . .', etc. In French it is unusual, and generally incorrect, to let an *initial rien (Rien), personne (Personne)*, or the like, immediately precede a relative clause. We may note a few possible French equivalents:

Nothing (that) he could say 24 **Il aurait beau dire, il ne me convaincrait pas.**
 Nothing that came from them 25 **Rien de ce qui venait de chez eux ne rentrait.**
 Nobody that I know would do 26 **Personne de ma connaissance ne ferait une chose pareille.**

EXERCISES

I. *Free Composition.* Repeat for §§ 371-374 the exercise outlined on page 330 for §§ 370-372.

II. Show how many of the twenty-six numbered examples in §§ 373-374 you can change into negative questions; with non-negative (i.e. positive) answers.

SOIXANTE-SEIZIÈME LEÇON

NEGATION (CONTINUED)

375. Plus. To continue § 90, the group **ne . . . plus** (without **pas**) expresses, not comparison, but the exhaustion of quantities or the cessation of activities and states.

a. Ne . . . plus may or may not be supplemented by **rien** etc. :

Tu ne vas plus à Paris ? — Non, 1 You don't go to Paris any longer?
plus, ou presque plus. — No, no longer, or hardly ever.

Il n'y a plus rien qui m'y 2 There's nothing any longer to
attire. draw me there.

Tu n'as donc pas faim ? — Non, 3 You're not hungry? — No, I
je n'aurai plus jamais faim. shall never be hungry again.

Tu tâcheras de ne plus agacer 4 You will endeavor after this not
personne. to rile anyone.

Essayons de ne plus y penser. 5 Let's try to stop thinking of it.

Je ne pense plus qu'à payer 6 I've ceased to think about any-
mes dettes. thing except paying my debts.

Vous avez *Le Temps*, madame ? 7 Have you *Le Temps*, madam?
— Non, monsieur, il n'en reste plus. — No, sir; there aren't any left.

NOTE 1. Order with **y** and infinitive: note **Essayons de n'y plus penser** (cf. ex. 5). Order with **en** and infinitive: note **ne plus en** as commoner than **n'en plus**.

NOTE 2. Referring to measure, degree, or quantity, and expressing or implying comparison, **plus** need never be misunderstood, for 'Nobody goes there any more [than . . .]' = **Personne n'y va plus souvent** (*or davantage*) etc.

b. Non . . . plus 'either' etc. **Non plus** is used when a negative statement requires a negative supplement, which is thus marked as an added fact:

Tu n'es pas veinard, ni moi 8 You're not lucky; nor am I
non plus. (and I'm not, either).

c. Ni plus ni moins. A single example will suffice:

C'est de la folie, ni plus ni 9 It's sheer madness. (*In some*
moins. *cases, neither more nor less.*)

376. Personne. To continue § 90 and § 186, as a pronoun **personne** cannot be modified (e.g. by *la*, *une*, or other adjectives); it is always singular and is almost always masculine. Supplementary examples:

Personne ne sait plus ce qu'il 1 Nobody any longer knows either
mange ni ce qu'il boit. what he eats or what he drinks.

NOTE 1. Likewise, **Tu ne le sais, ni personne** ('nor does anyone else').

Personne n'a de dettes là-bas. 2 Nobody has any debts there.

NOTE 2. Likewise, **Je n'ai d'obligation à personne** ('to anyone'), without **pas**.

Personne d'autre ne le dit. 3 No one else says so.

NOTE 3. **Personne autre** (like **rien autre**) is obsolete.

Je ne vois personne que lui. 4 I see nobody but him.

NOTE 4. Similarly with no verb: **Qui vois-tu? — Personne que lui.** Cf. § 378.

Oui, sans voir personne. 5 Yes, without seeing anyone.

NOTE 5. Also with **sans que**: 'without anyone seeing me' = **sans que personne me voie** (without **ne**).

Je ne veux voir personne. 6 I don't want to see anyone.

NOTE 6. Similarly after a main verb implying negation: **Tu crains de le dire à personne** 'You fear to say it to anybody' (**à qui que ce soit**).

Je ne sais si tu trouveras per- 7 I don't know whether you will
sonne de plus compétent. find anyone (who is) abler.

Personne le sait-il mieux? 8 Does anyone know it better?

NOTE 7. Like **rien** (§ 374), **personne** was originally a pure noun (not negative) and may still be felt as such in certain combinations: **Vous le savez mieux que personne au monde** 'You know it better than anyone (any person) in the world.' See §§ 170, 173, 175, 312.

Je ne crois pas que personne 9 I don't believe that anyone can
puisse le comprendre. understand it.

NOTE 8. So **rien** etc. in a **que**-clause following **ne . . . pas** (§ 170, ex. 9).

Personne n'est plus belle que 10 Nobody (No other woman) is
Jeanne. (Cf. § 305, *d.*) handsomer than Jane.

377. Ni . . . ni, and ni alone. Ni usually corresponds to 'neither,' 'nor' (possibly to 'or'); but ni is a pure adverb (cf. 'Neither thinks so'). Ni may negative subjects, objects, and verbs, also verbless groups:

Ni ta fille ni ton gendre ne sont venus. 1 Neither your daughter nor your son-in-law has come.

Ni toi ni elle ne les verrez. 2 Neither you nor she will see them.

NOTE 1. When only one of two persons can be affected, the verb is properly singular. Thus two persons seek election to the same office: Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera élu ('Neither will be elected'); if there are two offices, we should expect Ni l'un ni l'autre ne seront élus. Cf. § 291, b.

Nous n'irons pas, ni toi ni moi. 3 Neither of us will go.

NOTE 2. The subjects are made appositive. Cf. examples 1 and 2.

Mon père ni ma mère n'iront. 4 Neither my father nor my mother will go. (Hardly colloquial. Cf. ex. 1.)

Je ne cherche ni toi ni eux. 5 I'm not looking for either you or them. (Two objects.)

On ne sait ni qui vit ni qui meurt. 6 One doesn't know either who is alive or who is dead (. . . is living, etc.).

Je ne sais ni s'il part, ni où il va. 7 I know neither whether he is leaving nor where he is going.

NOTE 3. In examples 6 and 7 the objects negated by ni are clauses.

Joséphine ne veut ni étudier ni s'amuser. (Two infinitive objects.) 8 Josephine is unwilling either to study or to amuse herself.

Je ne l'ai ni dit ni écrit. 9 I've neither said nor written it.

NOTE 4. Example 9 shows ni before past participles. Ni je ne l'ai dit ni je ne l'ai écrit would be more emphatic, but hardly colloquial.

Je ne l'éprouve ni en lisant ni en écrivant. 10 I don't feel it either in reading or in writing.

NOTE 5. In each case, ni precedes an adverbial group. See §§ 261-263.

Je ne veux ni ne peux le croire. 11 I neither wish nor am able to (or I can't and won't) believe it.

NOTE 6. Here ni modifies a finite verb. The second ne may be omitted: Il n'aime ni déteste (or ni ne déteste) cette personne ('He neither likes nor

detests that person'); or, more colloquially, *Il n'aime pas cette personne, non, mais il ne la déteste pas non plus.*

Ne le croyez (pas) ni ne le dites. 12 Neither believe it nor say it.
(Cf. ex. 11 and Note 6.)

NOTE 7. *Ni* (initial) seldom precedes the first of two imperative or finite verbs.

Ni argent ni amis ne lui man- 13 He lacks neither money nor
quent. friends.

NOTE 8. No article is required before indeterminate nouns joined by *ni . . . ni*.

NOTE 9. 'Neither,' as a pronoun, corresponds to *ni l'un(e) ni l'autre* etc. See §§ 178, *b*, and 183; also examples 1, 3, and 4, above.

Il était resté sans père ni mère. 14 He had been left without father
or mother.

a. The English Type 'nor' + Verb + Subject. 'I have never met him, nor do I wish to' typifies a style which idiomatic French would commonly render with the group *et . . . non plus*, or otherwise; seldom by *ni* + subject + verb. Study and develop example 8 in § 375, and examples 1-4, 9 (with Note 4), 11, and Note 6 in § 377.

EXERCISES

I. Test your knowledge of §§ 375-377 by various methods: (1) Read each example aloud, then try to repeat it without looking at the printed text; or (2) have someone read to you the English translation offered for each example, then give the French; or (3) vary each example by changing the subject, object, verb, etc.; or (4) give each example a positive form, and then, without looking at the printed text, restore the negatives.

II. *Free Composition.* Write in French a letter of two or three hundred words telling someone what you cannot do or will not do, and what you do not want him or anyone else to do.

SOIXANTE-DIX-SEPTIÈME LEÇON

NEGATION (CONCLUDED)

378. Ne with que. Type *Tu n'as que ça* 'You have only that.' To continue § 90, this group (*ne* with *que*) is restrictive and is usually exclusive.

a. The *que* of *ne . . . que* must immediately precede the word or the inseparable group (e.g. *à Paris*) or the phrase that it truly restricts, and *que* must be separated from *ne* by a verb (*n'ai que*, *n'ayant que*, *n'avoir que*, etc.):

<i>Cela ne se voit qu'à Paris.</i>	1	You can see that only in Paris.
<i>Cela n'arrive que rarement.</i>	2	That happens only once in a while.
<i>Je ne cherche qu'à partir.</i>	3	I'm merely trying to depart.
<i>Tu ne veux que t'enrichir.</i>	4	Your whole aim is to get rich.
<i>Nous n'irons que si tu le veux.</i>	5	We won't go unless you wish us to.
<i>Ne viens que quand je t'appellerai.</i>	6	Don't come until I call you (<i>possibly</i> unless I call you).
<i>Tout cela n'a rien que de bon.</i>	7	There's nothing about that that isn't good.
<i>Je ne vois personne que vous.</i>	8	I see nobody but you.
<i>Nous n'y allons jamais que le dimanche.</i>	9	We never go there except on Sunday.
<i>Jamais je ne sortais qu'il ne m'arrivât quelque chose de drôle.</i>	10	I never went out but something funny happened to me.

NOTE 1. As *ne* and *que* cannot ordinarily both of them precede a verb (note 'only' in 'She only laughs'), another group must be employed when a verb is to be modified: *ne faire que* (various forms) + infinitive. Example: *Ça ne ferait que te déranger* 'That would only inconvenience you.' See § 247, *h*, and Note 5 (below).

NOTE 2. *Ne faire que de* (various forms) + infinitive emphasizes the immediateness, the great recency, of a past act. Example: *Elle ne fait que d'arriver* 'She has just this moment arrived.' See § 247, *i*, and § 482.

381. La Prose et les Vers ('Prose and Verse')

PREFATORY NOTE. The following dialogue is from *Le Bourgeois gentil-homme* (1670), a comedy by Molière (1622-1673). M. Jourdain, a citizen of small education but considerable wealth, recently acquired, has hired a dancing-master and a teacher of philosophy (learning of various kinds) to fit him for intercourse with the elect. Note particularly the forms of negation.

LE MAÎTRE DE PHILOSOPHIE. — Sont-ce des vers que vous 1
voulez écrire?

M. JOURDAIN. — Non, non, point¹ de vers. 3

LE M. DE P. — Vous ne voulez que de la prose?

M. J. — Non, je ne veux ni prose ni vers. 5

LE M. DE P. — Il faut bien que ce soit l'un ou l'autre.²

M. J. — Pourquoi? 7

LE M. DE P. — Par la raison, Monsieur, qu'il n'y a pour s'ex-
primer que la prose ou les vers. 9

M. J. — Il n'y a que la prose ou les vers?

LE M. DE P. — Oui, Monsieur; tout ce qui n'est point prose 11
est vers, et tout ce qui n'est point vers est prose.

M. J. — Et comme l'on parle,⁸ qu'est-ce que c'est donc que 13
cela?⁴

LE M. DE P. — De la prose. 15

M. J. — Quoi? Quand je dis: « Nicole, apportez-moi mes
pantoufles⁶ et me donnez⁶ mon bonnet de nuit⁷ », c'est de la 17
prose?

LE M. DE P. — Oui, Monsieur. 19

M. J. — Par ma foi!⁸ il y a plus de quarante ans que je dis
de la prose sans que j'en susse rien,⁹ et je vous suis le plus obligé 21
du monde de m'avoir appris cela.

NOTES. 1. See § 371 and § 373, Note 2. 2. Note how *l'un ou l'autre* is allowed (correctly) to stand for *prose* (f. sg.) and for *vers* (m. pl.). Were the antecedents persons instead of sexless things (e.g., *la mère et ses fils*), we should get *l'une ou les autres*, or negatively *ni l'une ni les autres*. 3. 'And the way we talk.' 4. See § 129. 5. 'slippers.' 6. See § 288, *b*. 7. 'night-cap.' 8. 'Upon my word' (archaic). 9. See §§ 209, 234, 237 (*b* and *c*), 238, and 374. Here we might expect the subjunctive to be a true present perfect, expressed by *sans que j'en aie rien su*, but *susse* conceals *savais*.

EXERCISES

I. 1. What have we been studying? prose or verse? 2. Jourdain had not studied either; evidently he did not like verse. 3. As for prose, he had used it for forty years without being at all aware of the fact. 4. So, when the teacher of philosophy asked whether he wished to write prose or verse, he replied, 'Neither.' 5. Yet it had to be one of the two. 6. We can hardly speak without using prose, unless we can speak in verse, and almost nobody can do that (*Fr.*, there is hardly anyone who can do that). 7. When one can't express oneself either in verse or in prose it is difficult, if not impossible, to make oneself understood.

8. Not everybody (**Ce n'est pas** etc.) knows how to write verses, nor does everybody (**et ce n'est pas** etc.) make use of the best prose; only persons who have talent can do that. 9. We have only to look at the newspapers and to listen to conversations (sometimes our own) to learn whether most of us speak well or not. 10. There are people who do nothing but that, and generally they find that no one speaks perfectly except themselves (§ 368, *i*) or someone who no longer exists. 11. As for myself, I have hardly ever written any verse. 12. I find verse difficult — not to say (**pour . . .**) impossible — whereas I should find it (*omit le*) difficult to talk only if I were not allowed (**on with permettre**) to use prose, though mine is not always quite pure. 13. To return to M. Jourdain, many other persons have spoken prose for more than forty years without being in the least degree aware of it.

II. 1. It's only in France that one hears the best French spoken. 2. It's not only in France that you can hear (**entendre parler**) a very pure kind of French. 3. Only the French speak French correctly. 4. Not merely the French (It is not *etc.*) speak correctly. 5. Only I know that. 6. I learned it only this morning. 7. Our friends go out only in the evening. 8. Only the theaters are closed. (*Three different ways.*) 9. What do you find there but fools? 10. It is only by looking that we can find what we like.

PART II

TYPICAL FRENCH VERBS

FUNDAMENTAL FACTS AND PRINCIPLES¹

382. Verbs in Everyday Use. Of the five thousand or more French verbs now in use, the majority are technical, exclusively literary, or rare; but several hundred are employed constantly and generally. This minority happens to include nearly all the types of conjugation found in modern French; §§ 416-482 deal with what seem to be the most important types.

383. Some Essentials. Few English verbs have more than four or five simple living forms (*love, loves, loving, loved; speak, speaks, speaking, spoke, spoken*). Few French verbs have less than thirty; many have forty or more; whatever the verb, the number of its forms varies according to whether we count what we *see* or what we *hear*.

To be able to use any verb correctly throughout, we must know (1) how all its forms are written, (2) their sounds, meanings, and syntax in a given context, (3) which forms, if any, are avoided etc. All these matters have been dealt with in Part I, to which there are specific references in §§ 387-482 and in other sections of Part II. See § 415.

384. The Richest Type of Conjugation: Verbs in -er. This type, called the *first conjugation*, includes more than four thousand verbs. Many of its representatives, as *mener, jeter, céder, rêver* (§ 162), or as *aimer, lier*, etc. (§ 417), have a variable stem (§ 391); but all — at least as *written* — have precisely the same set of inflectional endings (§§ 392, 416), some of which are shared by other types.

¹ Les professeurs qui se servent exclusivement de la « méthode directe » n'auront qu'à résumer en français le contenu des §§ 382-427.

REMARK. The conjugation in *-er* is constantly being enriched by new verbs (as *bluffer*), and is therefore a living type (§§ 385-387, 416-424).

385. Verbs in *-ir*, with *-iss-*; a Living Type. The second rank is held by three hundred or more simple verbs¹ in *-ir* (type *finir*, with *finissons* etc.). Verbs of this type, usually called the *second conjugation*, are wholly regular (§ 389), for their stem-vowel, whatever it may be, normally cannot vary in length or quality, never being stressed in normal speech. Thus *a* is [a] in all forms of *agir* '(to) act,' and *â* is [ɑ] in all forms of *pâlir* '(to) turn pale.'

A few simple verbs are said to have been added to this type in recent times.

386. Less Comprehensive Types. Aside from the two types in *-er* and *-ir* (with *-iss-*), French has none that are capable of growth. All other types have been dead for centuries.

387. The Dead Conjugations. The so-called *third conjugation* (certain verbs in *-oir*)² has only one simple verb, *devoir* '(to) owe,' 'must,' etc. (§§ 187, 465); *apercevoir* '(to) perceive,' *décevoir* '(to) disappoint,' etc., are not simple verbs, but are derivatives of a simple form not found in French.

a. The Type *vendre*. The so-called *fourth conjugation*, exemplified by *vendre* '(to) sell' (§ 206), includes not more than about fourteen simple verbs that are in everyday use; about fifty verbs, if we count derivatives (§ 445).

¹ *Finir* is a simple verb; *définir*, having a prefix (§ 483), is a derivative. Several verbs exist only in derivatives: *descendre*, *se repentir* 'repent,' etc.

² *Le Petit Larousse illustré* (a widely-circulated and very useful encyclopedic dictionary), and many French or English-French grammars, classify thus. The *Dictionnaire général* does not commit itself. L. Clédât, *Grammaire raisonnée* (§ 341), includes under the 'third conjugation' verbs in *-re* or in *-oir*, and non-inchoative verbs in *-ir* (as *partir*). Clédât does not mention a 'fourth' conjugation. (A few grammarians have assigned *devoir* etc. to the 'second' conjugation.)

With only one simple verb to represent it (i.e. *devoir*), and not more than seventeen verbs in all, the so-called 'third conjugation' has no good claim to the third place; and, if we accept the 'fourth,' why not make a *fifth*, a *sixth*, etc.?

b. The Type *partir* '(to) go away' etc. (§§ 224, 435). This type includes not more than ten simple verbs that are often used; it has no *-iss-* (cf. *finir*; § 385).

c. The Type *craindre*; Verbs in *-aindre*, *-eindre*, and *-oindre*. This type includes about ten simple verbs. See §§ 216-219, 458.

REMARK. The terms 'First Conjugation' etc. were inherited from Latin, in which four frequent types are commonly exemplified by *amare* 'love' (1st C.), *monēre* 'warn' (2d C.), *tegēre* 'cover' (3d C.), and *finire* 'end' (4th C.). Thus the usual French enumeration ('first,' 'second,' and 'third' conjugations) agrees only in part with the usual Latin enumeration and is of little value in any case. It is usually clearer to speak of 'the regular verbs in *-er*, or in *-ir*,' or to indicate the conjugation by referring to a *type*, as above.

METHODS OF CLASSIFYING VERBS

388. Classification according to Types. All verbs of the first or the second conjugation, except those with a variable stem (as *acheter* 'buy'), are easy to classify. Given any form, we have only to say 'like *parler*' or 'like *finir*,' these types having, of course, to be known in every part. All other verbs will figure under the heading *dead conjugations*, and most of them may conveniently be called *irregular verbs* (§ 389), not, however, because of their infinitives, but rather because they happen, in some cases, to have a variable stem (§ 391) or inconsistent endings (§ 392) or freakish forms (§ 402), or to be defective (lack certain forms), or to typify comparatively few verbs.¹

¹ To speak of 'Irregular Verbs in *-ir*,' as if all such verbs belonged to the same type, is both useless and misleading; for the infinitive, thus offered as a class-indicator, is often almost the only form that a group of such verbs have in common; also the alphabetical order for verbs in *-re* or in *-oir* may be misleading (a special index of verbs will be found in § 483).

Thus *acquérir* 'acquire' (§ 443) only remotely resembles *courir* 'run' (§ 437); similarly, *battre* 'beat' (§ 444) is more like *vaincre* 'overcome' (§ 446) than like *boire* 'drink' (§ 452), and *lire* 'read' (§ 475) is much less like *mettre* 'put' (§ 447) than like *plaire* 'please' (§ 476). Again, *fuir* 'flee' (§ 456) closely resembles *traire* 'milk' (§ 454), but *tenir* 'hold' (§ 482) differs widely from all other verbs in *-ir* except *venir* 'come' (§ 482, a).

We shall try to group our verbs *with respect to their general resemblances*, and with respect particularly to those sets of forms which help most to construct the whole verb. Our guide is analogy.

389. Regularity. A verb may conveniently be called *regular*¹ when it is complete (not defective), when there is no marked variation in the spelling or the sound of the stem (note **parler** and **finir**), and when its inflectional endings (§ 392) agree throughout with those of the type to which we have agreed to assign it.² To know that a verb is 'regular' is worth while.

REMARK. Complete 'regularity' exists for the eye much oftener than for the ear. See §§ 391-392 and 417-422.

390. Principal Parts. The guiding forms called 'principal parts' are the infinitive (as **parler** or **finir**), the present participle (as **parlant** or **finissant**), the masculine past participle (as **parlé** or **fini**), the first person singular of the present indicative — more briefly, 1 *A* (as **je parle** or **je finis**) —, and the first person singular of the past absolute or past definite — more briefly, 1 *C* (as **je parlai** or **je finis**).

REMARKS. In a good many cases, the five parts thus named do not reveal all the forms of a verb. For example, of **résoudre** 'resolve' (§ 451) we must know **résolvant** (*pr. part.*), **résolu** (*p.p.*), **résous** and **résolvons**, **résolvez**, **résolvent** (1 and 4, 5, or 6 *A*), **résolus** (1 *C*), and **résolve** (1 *L.S.*); of **pouvoir** 'can' etc. (§ 468) we must know **pouvant** (*pr. part.*), **puissant-e** (*vbl. adj.*), **peux(puis)–peuvent** (1-6 *A*), **pus** (1 *C*), **pourrai** (1 *D*), **puisse** (1 *L.S.*), and **pu** (*p.p.*). Etc.

The principal parts enable us to construct a whole verb only when we can learn through them to what type that verb belongs.

NOTES. (a) If we have met a certain verb for the first time, that form (e.g. **chanterent** or **agissant**) may disclose the whole verb, but by no means always. Whether we are analyzing or composing, we must know (1) the stem or stems, and (2) all the inflectional endings which may be attached thereto. (b) In all verbs but a few (e.g. *A* of **être**; i.e. **suis–sont**), the inflectional endings are invariable in all respects (at least for the eye); but which of the three or four sets are we to use?

¹ Autant dire, facile à conjuguer; la phonétique historique nous enseigne que **parler**, par exemple, n'est point un verbe « régulier ».

² Cf. Nitze and Wilkins, *The French Verb*, p. 1.

391. Stems. In most cases the term stem designates that part of a verb¹ which contains the *permanent* meaning of the verb, as the idea of *speech* or *speaking* in every form of *parler* (stem *parl*), and which immediately precedes inflectional endings (§ 392).

a. Many verbs, however, have two, three, even six or seven, stems. Thus *jeter* 'throw,' with *je jette* etc., has two (§ 162); *mettre* 'put,' with *met, mett, mi, mis*, has four, as written (§ 447); *aller* 'go,' with *vais* [*ve or, in verse, possibly ve*], *va, all, vo(nt)* [*vɔ̃*], *aill* [*a:j*], and *ir*, has six or seven stems, some of which are confused with its inflectional endings (§§ 163, 392, 428). And what is the stem of *finir*? for the *is* of (*je*) *finis* is the same *is* that we find in *fin-iss-ons* (§§ 132, 423-424). Similarly, if the stem of *vendre* 'sell' is *vend* [*vā or vā:d*], the form (*il*) *vend* has *no* inflectional ending (§§ 190, 445). *Lier* [*generally lje*] 'bind,' with *je lie* [*li*], *louer* [*generally lwe*] 'praise,' with *je loue* [*lu*], and *tuer* [*generally tje*] 'kill,' with *je tue* [*ty*], have one stem for the eye, two for the ear (§§ 418-422).

• NOTE 1. To be consistent with (*il*) *rompt* '(he) breaks,' in which *p* (part of the stem) is silent, (*il*) *vend* should be written (*il*) *vendt*. Formerly *vend* was written *vent* and *rend* was written *rent* (likewise 3 *A* of all the verbs in *-andre, -endre, and -ondre*). For the ear, *vendre* has two stems [*vā and vā:d*]; for the eye, one: *vend*.

NOTE 2. The *root* of a verb need not be identical with its stem or stems. For example, the root of *valoir* 'be worth' etc. (§ 470) is *val*; its stems are *val, vau, and vaill*. The *stem* is that part to which inflectional endings are attached. We need not concern ourselves with roots.

b. The Type mourir. A variable stem usually varies according to stress; *mourir* 'die,' with *je meurs* [*mœ:r*] but *nous mourons* [*mu'rɔ̃*], *acquérir* 'acquire,' with *j'acquiers* [*akje:r*] but *j'acquerais* [*akèrɛ, nearly akèrɛ*], and many other verbs, exemplify this important principle.

NOTE. Both the length and the quality of the stem-vowel may be changed by a shift of stress. Note the typical alternations in e.g. *aimer* (§ 417), *boire* (§ 452), and *valoir* (§ 470).

¹ Often including a prefix, as in *rouvrir* 'reopen' or in *descendre*.

392. Inflectional Endings. Even including those verbs whose stems (§ 391) are confused (blended) with their inflectional endings, as in **devoir** (§ 465), with (**je**) **du** 'I had to' (past absolute),— here nothing of the stem is left except its **d**,— we need learn only a few sets of endings to understand any form that we may meet, or to compose any form whose stem and type we know.

a. In the present groups— mostly in the indicative (*A*), but also in the subjunctive (*L. S.*)— the inflectional endings vary greatly, especially in certain verbs of the dead conjugations (§§ 387, 425–482). For all other finite forms (groups *B–E* and *O. S.*, i.e. the simple past subjunctive group) they are completely consistent and simple: one form always suffices to indicate all the rest. See §§ 397–399.

NOTE. The phonetic variations of **-ions** and **-iez** will be noted (§ 397).

THE FORMATION OF GROUPS AND OF SINGLE PARTS

393. Infinitives. All infinitives end in **-er**, **-ir**, **-re**,¹ or **-oir**. For the syntax of the infinitive see §§ 239–259.

394. 'Future' and 'Conditional' (or 'Past Future'): Groups *D* and *E* (§ 408). These two groups were originally composed, and may still be composed, by adding to an infinitive either *A* or *B* of **avoir**, less **av-**. Examples: **je parler-ai**, **je finir-ai**, etc. (§ 84); **je parler-ais**, **je finir-ais**, etc. (§ 91). See § 391. The hyphen used here (and further) is introduced purely to help the eye to remember; this hyphen often conflicts with phonetic syllabification.

NOTE 1. Nearly all exceptions to the principle just stated are only apparent. For example, instead of **devrai** we might expect **devoirai** 'owe' (§§ 187, 465) to give **devoirai** etc.; but, if considered historically, **devrai** is not exceptional, for it takes us back to the long-obsolete infinitive **dever**: **devrai** is a contracted form of **deverai**. Two highly irregular sets of forms occur in *D* and *E* of **asseoir** (§ 462).

¹ In folk-speech the endings **-dre** and **-tre** generally lose their **-re**; so that **entendre** 'understand,' 'hear,' becomes **entend'** [ãtã:d] and **battre** 'beat' becomes **bat'** [bat]. The form **fiche** (as in **Tu peux t'en fiche** 'You can let 'em go hang') follows the analogy of a vulgar form in **-tre**.

NOTE 2. Similarly, instead of *serai* (for *D* of *être*) we might expect *étrai* etc., and instead of *courrai* (for *D* of *courir* 'run'), *courirai* etc.; but *courrai* was formed with the older infinitive *courre* (§ 437), and *serai* contains the lost infinitive *ser* (or *essere*, the present Italian form for 'be'); *ferai* (for *D* of *faire*, § 478) shows a weakening of the *fai* of the lost future **fairai*. Nearly all other eccentric formations in groups *D* and *E* are easily explained.¹

NOTE 3. A few verbs have two or even three sets of forms for groups *D* and *E*; for example, *déchoir* (§ 464) and *asseoir* (§ 462). On the other hand, groups *D* and *E* for *comparoir* 'appear' (a legal archaism) are *comparaitrai* etc., from *comparaitre*.¹

NOTE 4. In a few cases, groups *D* and *E* do not exist: *ravoir*, 'get back,' 'recover,' is an isolated form.

NOTE 5. Verbs in *-re* lose their *e*; hence *perdre* 'lose' gives *perdrai* etc.

NOTE 6. Verbs in *-er* add *-erai* (*-erais*) etc. to their *stem*. It matters little whether, in groups *D* and *E*, we regard *-erai* (*-erais*) etc. as their inflectional endings or prefer (*r*)*ai*, (*r*)*ais*, etc.; but see § 391. This statement applies equally well to the type *finir*.

NOTE 7. Whether the so-called *e muet* of the verbs in *-er* is [ə] or silent depends on the phonetic character of the group in which it is found; for *payer* 'pay' we find *pai(e)rai* [pɛrɛ] and *payerai* [pej(ə)rɛ]; for *aimer* 'love' we find *aimerai* [ɛm(ə)rɛ], *aimerions* (with a difficult consonant group) usually = [ɛmər(i)jɔ̃]; cf. *battriez* (§ 444) = [batrɪ(j)ɛ]. Note that *lieraï* (§ 418) = [lire]; so *lirai* from *lire* (§ 475). See § 397, Notes 3 and 5.

NOTE 8. In all the forms exemplified by *parlerai-je* 'shall I speak,' *-ai* becomes [ɛ:ʒ]; hence *parlerai-je* and *parlerais-je* are phonetically identical.²

395. Present Participle or Gerund. The present participle or the gerund (always in *-ant*) can be derived from any form of group *B*:

¹ Unusual formations of groups *D* and *E* are illustrated in §§ 425-426, 428-429, 437-438, 441, 443, 462-471, 478, 482.

² Selon Ph. Martinon, *Comment on prononce le français*, p. 80, '... les futurs [en *-ai*], qui se distinguaient jadis des conditionnels (*aimerai* par *é*, *aimerais* par *è*), ne s'en distinguent plus aujourd'hui que par un effort volontaire, qu'il est inutile de s'imposer. Remarquons pourtant que dans *ai* (*j'ai*) *ai* a gardé la voyelle fermée et que *parlai* se prononce comme *parlé*.'

Quoique M. Martinon se soit cru obligé de représenter les sons du français par l'orthographe ordinaire, tout en la modifiant çà et là, il a pu corriger beaucoup de fautes et combler bien des lacunes du *Dictionnaire phonétique* de Michaelis-Passy et de plusieurs autres dictionnaires.

perd-ais, perd-ant; fin-iss-ais, fin-iss-ant; or group *B* can be formed from it; but **avoir** (§ 425), with **ayant**, gives **avais**, and **savoir** 'know' (§ 469), with **sachant**, gives **savais**. See § 260, *a*.

NOTE. In our paradigms (§§ 416-482) **en** is usually not included.

396. Verbal Adjective. The verbal adjective of all the verbs that have one (§ 260) is almost always like the present participle (§ 395), but is variable: **charmant-e**. For **pouvoir** (§ 468) note **puissant-e** 'powerful'; for **savoir** (§§ 395, 469) note **savant-e** 'learned' (cf. § 260, *b*).

NOTE 1. **Friand-e**, 'dainty,' 'fond of' (**de**), formed like **gourmand-e**, is derived from **frire** (§ 455), but is now independent of that verb.

NOTE 2. **Soi-disant**, 'so-called,' 'alleged,' 'self-styled,' 'would-be' (also 'ostensibly' etc.) is archaic as a form (note **soi**) and is otherwise exceptional, but is in everyday use. It seldom takes **e** or **s**.

397. 'Imperfect' or 'Past Descriptive': Group B (§§ 59-62, 408). Group *B* can be easily formed from the present participle (§§ 260, *a*, and 395): **perdant** gives **perdais** etc. In *B* all verbs have the same inflectional endings: **-ais** [ɛ], **-ais**, **-ait** [ɛ], **-ions** [jɔ̃], **-iez** [je], **-aient** [ɛ].

NOTE 1. In the many verbs typified by **finir** (§§ 132, 423-424) these endings are always preceded by **-iss-** (**finissais**); in reality, **-iss-** belongs to the stem (§ 391).

NOTE 2. *Except in more or less self-conscious speech*, whenever the stem of a verb ends in **gn** [ɲ], in **ill** [j], or in **y** [j], the endings **-ions** and **-iez**, though always written thus, are usually absorbed by the stem. Hence **baignions** and **baigniez** (from **baigner** 'bathe') usually sound like **baignons** [bɛːɲɔ̃] and **baignez** [bɛːɲe]; **cueillions** and **cueilliez** (from **cueillir** 'gather') usually = **cueillons** [kœːjɔ̃] and **cueillez** [kœːje], especially as subjunctives; likewise **voyions** and **voyiez** (§ 463) usually = **voyons** [vwaːjɔ̃] and **voyez** [vwaːje]; etc.¹ See Note 3 and § 158, *a*.

NOTE 3. Joined to **br**, **pr**, **dr**, **tr**, **gr**, **cr**, **vr**, **fr** (or to **bl**, **pl**, etc.), which begin syllables (§ 27), the endings **-ions** and **-iez** become [i(j)ɔ̃] and [i(j)e].

¹ 'Au contraire, les finales verbales **-ions** et **-iez** ajoutent un *yod* [j] aux *ll* mouillées, sans quoi il pourrait y avoir confusion de temps: *nous travaillions* se prononce donc *nous travail-yons*, à côté du présent *trava-yons*.' (Martinon, *Comment on prononce le français*, p. 268.)

Hence *ouvriions* (from *ouvrir* 'open') = [u.vri(j)ɔ̃], etc.¹ See Notes 2 and 4, also § 394, Note 7.

NOTE 4. In the verbs typified by *lier* 'bind' (§ 418), *-ions* and *-iez* are preceded by *i*. Hence a more or less self-conscious effort to distinguish *liions* from *lions* and *liez* from *liez*.² See Notes 2 and 3.

NOTE 5. In group *E* the same phonetic conditions may occur as in group *B*. Compare *voudriions* (4 *E* of *vouloir*, § 471) with *ouvriions* (Note 3). See § 394, Note 7.

NOTE 6. An effort to distinguish between pairs of forms like those in Notes 2 and 4 is more likely to be made for the *tense* ('imperfect indicative,' 'past descriptive') than for the *mood* ('present subjunctive'); the subjunctive is less likely to be misunderstood.

a. Functions of Group B. To what is said in §§ 59–62, 192, and elsewhere, add these facts:

(1) Not only *depuis* but *voilà, il y a (avait)*, also *de longue date* and other expressions, have the effect described in § 192:

<i>Je la connais de longue date.</i>	1	I've known her a long while.
<i>Voilà (il y avait) vingt ans que je le croyais mort.</i>	2	For twenty years I had believed him dead.

REMARKS. In each case English throws the tense one point further back, using the present perfect where French uses the present (*A*), and the pluperfect where French uses the so-called 'imperfect' or 'past descriptive' (*B*). This makes a parallel. In each language, the single verb-form has to express simultaneously two different tense-values, for *connais* reaches into the past as 'have known' reaches into the present, and *croyais* has to include the idea expressed by *avais cru(e)*, while 'had believed' is not purely pluperfect.

(2) Similarly (cf. 1), the verb (*A* or *B*) expresses simultaneously two different tense-values in the following examples:

<i>Qu'est-ce qui vous amène à cette heure-ci ? —</i>	3	What brings you (has brought you) at this hour? —
<i>Je vous apportais le livre dont je vous ai parlé dernièrement.</i>	4	I was bringing you the book of which I spoke to you lately.

¹ Voir Martinon, *Comment on prononce le français*, p. 166.

² 'En fait, on prononce presque *priy-yons* [voir *prier*]; mais le nombre des syllabes n'est pas augmenté pour cela.' (Martinon, p. 119; cf. *ibid.*, p. 189.)

REMARK. By using *apportais* instead of *apporte* or *ai apporté*, the speaker attenuates the *present* character of his act, somewhat as when *voudrais* is used instead of *veux* (cf. § 101), but the act is undeniably present.

(3) Simple *B* forms are often used in the conclusion (apodosis) of a past condition contrary to fact (§ 95, *a* and *b*), as well as in the premise (protasis):

Si j'arrivais un instant plus tard, je manquais mon train. 5 If I had arrived an instant later, I should have missed my train.

REMARKS. Here *arrivais* stands vividly for *étais arrivé*, while *manquais* (used instead of *aurais manqué*, or bookishly *eusse manqué*) is intended to impart a greater tone of reality to the unreal result. Although grammarians have not been accustomed to speak of them as such, the *B* forms so generally employed in the kinds of conditions dealt with in § 95 are not less conditional (modal) than the *E* forms so generally employed in the conclusion. In fact we have seen that under certain circumstances (1) one clause may contain a *B* form, the other an *E* form; (2) that each may contain an *E* form; (3) that either or both may contain an *O.S.* form; etc. See §§ 92-93, 95-99. See also Index, under Conditions. On the subjunctive in past conditions contrary to fact see § 235.

NOTE. Occasionally, instead of a *si*-clause (e.g. *si ce n'était que* 'if it were but') we find inversion: *n'était-ce que* ('were it but'), or the like; but seldom with other verbs than *être*. See §§ 98, Remark, and 236.

(4) To an activity whose tense is really definite (past definite) a more pictorial quality may be given by describing it as *going on*, even though it was virtually instantaneous:

A peine eut-il quitté la tranchée, qu'il tombait foudroyé d'une bombe. 6 Hardly had he left the trench when he fell [I could see him falling] smitten by a bomb.

Similarly, but with less vividness:

Je recevais, la semaine dernière, une lettre * * * 7 I received [*not* 'I was receiving'], last week, a letter . . .

Note also the following examples (from *Mon oncle et mon curé*, chap. II):

Dans la nuit, je rêvai [C] que ma tante, transformée en dragon, luttait contre ['was struggling with'] François I^{er} qui la pourfendait ['was cleaving her' (?)] de sa grande épée. Il me prenait ['was taking' (?)] dans ses bras

et s'envolait ['was flying away' (?)] avec moi, tandis que le curé ['(parish) priest'] nous regardait ['was looking at us' (?)] d'un air désolé ['woeful'] et s'essuyait ['was wiping' (?)] le visage avec son mouchoir * * *. Il le tordait ['was twisting' (?)] ensuite de toutes ses forces, et la sueur en décollait ['the sweat was flowing down from it' (?)] comme s'il l'avait trempé ['soaked it'] dans la rivière.

398. 'Past Definite,' 'Preterit,' 'Past Absolute': Group C (§§ 64-67, 408). For all verbs the only endings possible in this group are —

a. (Type *parler* :) -ai [e], -as [a], -a [a] (with -a-t-il etc.), -âmes [*usually* a(·)m], -âtes [at], -èrent [ɛ:r]. Example: *parlai* etc. (§ 64).

b. (Types *finir*, *perdre*, etc. :) -is [i], -is [i], -it [i] (no ^), -îmes [i(·)m], -îtes [it], -irent [i:r]. Examples: *finis*, *perdis*, *mis*, etc. See § 132 and §§ 430-436, 439-449, 456, 458-459, 461-463, 472-474, 478-479.

NOTE. In some seven simple verbs — *mettre*, *prendre*, *fuir*, *voir*, *dire*, *faire*, and *rire* (§§ 447, 448, 456, 463, 474, 478, 479) — nothing of the stem remains save its initial consonant or consonants. Hence *m-is*, *pr-is*, etc. In *fuir* [fui:r], *ui* [ɥi] is indivisible. For *mettre*, *C* in full gives *mis*, *mis*, *mit*, *mîmes*, *mîtes*, *mirent*. See the next Note.

c. (Types *avoir*, *courir*, *croire*, *être*, etc. :) -us [y], -us [y], -ut [y] (no ^), -ûmes [y(·)m], -ûtes [yt], -urent [y:r]. See § 64 and §§ 425, 437-438, 450-453, 460, 464-471, 475-477.

NOTE. In several verbs almost nothing of the stem remains: of *avoir* only *e* (which is silent), of *être* only *f* (§§ 425-426); of *devoir* only *d* (§ 465). Other examples in §§ 452-453, 460, 466-469, 475-476. For *savoir* (§ 469), *D* in full gives *sus*, *sus*, *sut*, *sûmes*, *sûtes*, *surent*. See the Note under *b* (above).

d. (Only type *tenir* or *venir* :) -ins [ɛ], -ins [ɛ], -int [ɛ] (no ^), -îmes [ɛ:m], -întes [ɛ:t], -inrent [ɛ:r]. Hence *je tins* etc. (§ 482).

NOTE on *a-d*. Those endings that require the circumflex accent would have the same phonetic value without it; in some cases it is misleading.

e. **Functions of Group C.** To what is said in §§ 64-67, and elsewhere, add these facts:

(1) Although all the *C* forms have ceased to be colloquial, French authors occasionally distinguish their meanings from those of the colloquial group *A p. p.* :

Celle [l'influence] de Villon fut considérable dès l'abord et elle n'a pas cessé d'agir. 1 That of Villon was considerable [in his epoch] from the outset, and it has not ceased to act [it is felt even nowadays].
(G. Paris, *Villon*, p. 181)

(2) Custom or repetition may be strongly emphasized by a sudden shift from *C* to *B* :

Tous les soirs, Henriette vint donc prendre des nouvelles d'Armand chez la mère Renouf. Elle y venait après avoir fait sa journée. Car c'est ainsi, pour les pauvres. 2 Every evening Henriette came, therefore, to get news of Armand at old Mrs. Renouf's. She would come there after doing her day's work; for so it is with the poor.
(Coppée, *Henriette*, éd. Lemerre, p. 123)

(3) Perhaps through the influence of Latin, which had no special form to express the present perfect tense (*fuit* = *fut* and *a été*), French authors sometimes use a *C* form to mark an event which really extends into the present, but the effect in example 3 is to make it seem remote :

*** * * c'est la ferveur de l'idéal qui fut le principe de toute ma vie, de toute la tienne.** 3 . . . it was [it is] the fervor of the ideal that was [has been?] the guiding principle of all my life, of all yours.
(*L'Apôtre*, I, vers la fin)

REMARK. Each person is still alive! Compare this: **Telle qu'elle est, tout le monde en raffole** ['is crazy about her']. **D'abord papa, de qui elle fut** ['has always been'] **toujours la préférée.** (M. Prévost, *Pierre et Thérèse*, I, 6.)

NOTE. In e.g. **un brave homme, s'il en fut** ('a good man, if ever there was'), **s'il en fut** is a set phrase; whether it expresses a present perfect idea (if ever such a man has existed), or a past absolute, does not matter.

(4) Occasionally we meet a *C* form where we should have expected the pluperfect (*C p. p.* or *A 2 p. p.*), but the group of events may seem virtually simultaneous :

Quand la porte fut fermée, et que les deux voitures partirent, 4 As soon as the door was [had been?] shut, and the two carriages

Gobseck se leva, se mit à danser . . . left [had left?] **Gobseck rose, fell**
(Balzac, *Gobseck*, ed. by R. T. H., p. 50) to dancing . . .

QUERY. If **Quand** and **que** are omitted, and **et** is omitted or transferred, what results?

399. 'Simple Past Subjunctive': Group O. S. (§§ 204-210, 408). In every case the four sets of endings for this group are clearly indicated by the corresponding sets of group *C* (§ 398), or vice versa. Thus **parla** indicates **parlasse** etc., or **parlassions** indicates the six forms **parlai-parlèrent**.

a. (Type **parler**): **-asse** [as], **-asses**, **-ât** [a] (with ^), **-assions** [asjɔ̃], **-assiez** [asje], **-assent** [as]. Example: **j'aimasse** etc. (§ 417). See § 207 and § 398, *a*.

b. (Types **finir**, **perdre**, etc.): **-isse** [is], **-isses**, **-ît** [i] (with ^), **-issions** [isjɔ̃], **-issiez** [isje], **-issent** [is]. Example: **je perdisse** etc. (§ 445). See § 207 and § 398, *b*.

NOTE. In some cases almost nothing of the stem is left: **je disse** etc. (stem *d*). See the Note in § 398, *b*.

c. (Types **avoir**, **courir**, etc.): **-usse** [ys], **-usses**, **-ût** [y] (with ^), **-ussions** [ysjɔ̃], **-ussiez** [ysje], **-ussent** [ys]. Example: **je résolusse** etc. (§ 451). See § 207 and § 398, *c*.

NOTE. In some cases almost nothing of the stem remains: **je fusse** etc. (§§ 204, 426). In **eusse** etc. *e* is silent. See the Note in § 398, *c*.

d. (Type **tenir** or **venir**): **t-insse** [tɛ:s] (or **v-insse**): **-inssse**, **-inssses**, **-înt** [ɛ̃] (with ^), **-inssions** [ɛ̃:sjɔ̃], **-inssiez** [ɛ̃:sje], **-inssent** [ɛ̃:s]. See § 398, *d*.¹

¹ La langue française est en train de perdre l'imparfait du subjonctif [*O.S.*; § 399], et, du même coup, le plus-que-parfait [*O.S. p.p.*], qui contient un auxiliaire à l'imparfait [*eusse*, *fusse*, etc.]. Quand cette évolution sera accomplie, il n'y aura plus, au subjonctif, que deux temps ['tenses'] pour correspondre aux dix temps de l'indicatif. Déjà, dans la langue courante on remplace constamment l'imparfait du subjonctif par le présent [*L.S.*], et le plus-que-parfait [e.g. *eussions dit*] par le parfait [e.g. *ayons dit*].

.'Ce n'est pas le défaut d'euphonie qui rend peu agréables les formes telles que « je menasse, nous aimissions, vous chantassiez », car un grand nombre de mots nous offrent, sans nous choquer, des consonnances semblables: *embrasse*, *menace*, *compassion*, *cour de cassation*, *embrassiez*, *cuirassier*, etc. * * *

'A ceux qui seraient tentés de nier le discrédit de l'imparfait du subjonctif, la meilleure preuve à en fournir est de faire remarquer qu'il est devenu désagréable à entendre. S'il disparaît, c'est qu'en somme il n'est guère utile. Le

NOTE on *a-d*. The ^ required by *-ât*, *-ît*, *-ût*, and *-int* has no phonetic value: *parlât* sounds like *parla*, *dût* like *dut*, etc.

QUERIES. How many different *written* inflectional endings are there in §§ 398-399? How many *phonetically* different forms?

400. 'Present Indicative': Group A (§ 408). Even for the verbs in *-er*, this group cannot always be formed off-hand (§§ 158, 160, 162, etc.); but the inflectional endings may be summarized for several frequent types, though these endings are sometimes confused with the stem (§ 391).

REMARK. The student will do well to underscore whatever element occurs in *every part* of the following typical groups. Every form should be pronounced carefully.

Group A. Typical Forms for the Indicative

<i>céder</i> 'yield'	<i>agir</i> 'act'	<i>partir</i> 'go away'	<i>recevoir</i> 'receive'	<i>vendre</i> 'sell'	<i>peindre</i> 'paint'
1. <i>cède</i>	1. <i>agis</i>	1. <i>pars</i>	1. <i>reçois</i>	1. <i>vends</i>	1. <i>peins</i>
2. <i>cèdes</i>	2. <i>agis</i>	2. <i>pars</i>	2. <i>reçois</i>	2. <i>vends</i>	2. <i>peins</i>
3. <i>cède</i>	3. <i>agit</i>	3. <i>part</i>	3. <i>reçoit</i>	3. <i>vend</i>	3. <i>peint</i>
4. <i>cédons</i>	4. <i>agissons</i>	4. <i>partons</i>	4. <i>recevons</i>	4. <i>vendons</i>	4. <i>peignons</i>
5. <i>cédez</i>	5. <i>agissez</i>	5. <i>partez</i>	5. <i>recevez</i>	5. <i>vendez</i>	5. <i>peignez</i>
6. <i>cèdent</i>	6. <i>agissent</i>	6. <i>partent</i>	6. <i>reçoivent</i>	6. <i>vendent</i>	6. <i>peignent</i>
§§ 162, <i>f</i> , 384	§§ 132, 385	§§ 224, 387, <i>b</i>	§§ 188, 387	§§ 206, 387, <i>a</i>	§§ 216-219, 387, <i>c</i>

présent du subjonctif équivaut déjà à un futur; il peut équivoloir à un imparfait [*B*] et à un futur dans le passé [*E*] sans plus d'inconvénient. « Je voulais qu'il vienne le lendemain » est aussi clair que « je voulais qu'il vînt ». La langue française ne perdra aucune de ses qualités à cette réduction des temps du subjonctif, . . . » (*Grammaire raisonnée*, § 417.)

Ce que dit M. Clédat est exact sauf dans certains cas où les deux groupes de formes subjonctives que possède le français parlé ne peuvent indiquer aucun « temps » précis sans le secours de quelque forme non-subjonctive. Or, ces cas sont nombreux; par conséquent, en parlant, il faut *éviter* certaines constructions (par exemple, *Bien qu'ils m'écrivissent souvent, je . . .*, = *Ils m'écrivaient souvent, mais . . .*, etc.). Voir la note au bas de la page 63, et §§ 204-210. On voit que M. Clédat donne le nom « temps » aux *formes* subjonctives plutôt qu'à leurs significations ou fonctions.

QUERIES. What has each group in common? What have all six in common? In how many ways can a given form of any group be understood? What changes of sound occur in each stem? and in each set of endings? What effects may linking (§ 29) have on these various forms?

NOTE. Verbs whose stem in *A* ends in [wa or wa] have **-y-ons** and **-y-ez** instead of **-i-ons** and **-i-ez**, whether or not they belong to the type in **-yer** (§ 158). Hence **je crois** but **nous croyons** (§ 453), **il s'assoit** but **vous vous assoyez** (§ 462), **il voit** but **nous voyons** (§ 463), etc.

a. Functions. To what has been said elsewhere, add that verbs of this group can express a true present perfect:

Je reçois à l'instant ta lettre I have just this moment received
d'avant-hier. (Cf. **Il sort à l'instant.**) your letter of day before yesterday.

401. 'Present' Subjunctive: Group *L. S.* (§§ 205-206, 209-210, 408). For the type **céder** (**parler** etc.) we find *two* special forms (4-5 *L. S.*); for the types **agir** (**finir** etc.), **partir**, **recevoir**, **vendre**, and **peindre**, *five* (1-5 *L. S.*), though normally **peignons** sounds like **peignons** and **peigniez** like **peignez** (§§ 219, *B*, and 397, Note 2).

NOTE. In the following table, forms exactly identical with those of the indicative (*A*) are replaced by a dash (cf. § 400).

Group L. S. Typical Special Forms for the Subjunctive.

1. —	1. agisse	1. parte	1. reçoive	1. vende	1. peigne
2. —	2. agisses	2. partes	2. reçoives	2. vendes	2. peignes
3. —	3. agisse	3. parte	3. reçoive	3. vende	3. peigne
4. cédions	4. agissions	4. partions	4. recevions	4. vendions	4. peignons
5. cédiez	5. agissiez	5. partiez	5. receviez	5. vendiez	5. peigniez
6. —	6. —	6. —	6. —	6. —	6. —
§§ 162, <i>f</i> , 206	§§ 391, 399, <i>b</i>	§ 224	§§ 206, 391	§ 206	§§ 219, <i>B</i> , 397, Note 2

REMARK. The Queries under § 400 may be repeated here.

NOTE 1. The dashes indicate concealed subjunctives (§§ 205-206).

NOTE 2. Each of these six groups ends in **-e**, **-es**, **-e**, **-ions** [jɔ̃], **-iez** [je], **-ent**. Nearly every French verb has these endings for its living subjunctive forms (*L. S.*). See § 397, Notes 2-6.

NOTE 3. In general, even in many very irregular verbs, one form of the living subjunctive group suffices to reveal all the rest.

NOTE 4. Verbs in *-yer* (§ 158) follow the type *payer* (§ 419) or *envoyer* (§ 429).

NOTE 5. Whether or not they belong to the type in *-yer*, verbs whose stem ends in [wa or wa] change oi to oy before the stressed endings *-ions* and *-iez*. See, for example, *croire* (§ 453), *asseoir* (§ 462), and *voir* (§ 463). So a few verbs that have ai, as *traire* (§ 454).

NOTE 6. Notwithstanding their *é*, we find a half-open e in syllables preceding the stress; so that *é* is half-open in *cédions* (*cédons*) and *cédiez* (*cédez*), and still more open before a compound consonant (*céderai* = [sedre]) or before r (as in *périsse*).

402. Freakish Forms. Whatever the verb, *any* form of groups *B-E* (*mourais-mouraient*, *mourus-moururent*, *mourrai-mourront*, *mourrais-mourraient*) always suffices to indicate the five others of the same group; also any form of group *C* indicates the whole simple past subjunctive group, *O. S.* (*mourusse* etc.); but group *A* (*meurs*, *mourens*) may have peculiarities even in the *-er* verbs (*jette*, *jetons*), and sometimes has truly freakish forms, as in *aller*, *avoir*, *être*, *faire*, etc. See §§ 160, 162, 167, 425, 426, 478; note § 406.

REMARK. The present subjunctive group of such verbs (*L. S.*) is usually more regular (§ 389), but must often be given throughout, as in *aller*, *avoir*, *être*, etc.

403. Inversions in Groups A-E. Whether a given inversion in groups *A-E* is both literary and colloquial, or purely literary, or questionable, or not allowed under any circumstances, depends largely upon the caprices of usage; however, several noteworthy principles or tendencies can be stated:

a. Forms such as *parlé-je*, for all verbs in *-er* (§ 50, *b*), and for some others (as *cueillé-je*? 'do I pluck?'), are not colloquial.

Certain other inversions of *1 A* (especially of certain monosyllables) are not even bookishly allowable. Thus *ceins-je* (types in §§ 216-219, 458) sounds like *singe* 'monkey'; *mens-je* (types in §§ 224, 435) sounds like *mange*, and *bous-je* (§ 436) sounds like *bouge*, etc.; also *cours-je* (§ 437), *meurs-je* (§§ 167, 438), *pars-je* (§§ 224, 435), *bats-je* (§ 444), and other monosyllables (also certain forms that have two or more syllables) are

banned or avoided. Nevertheless, in a few cases, inversion is frequent and colloquial: **ai-je** (§ 425), **suis-je** (§§ 42, 426; but, if ambiguous, not **suis-je** from *suivre*, § 473), **dis-je** (§ 474), **dois-je** (§ 465), **puis-je** (§ 468), **sais-je** (§ 469), etc. For details see the Summary (below) and §§ 416-482.

b. After various adverbs or adverbial phrases, as **à peine** 'hardly,' **aussi** 'accordingly,' **du moins** 'at least,' **encore** 'still,' 'yet,' etc., we find for *I A* inversions that would not be tolerated in mere interrogation: **Aussi sens-je une profonde émotion** 'So (Accordingly) I feel a deep emotion,' etc.

Summary List of Questionable Inversions (Group A). In group *A*, the following forms either are not used interrogatively, or are highly bookish or rare, or are allowed only in certain locutions. As opinions differ, some of these forms are followed by (?); those that may occur after an adverb, by (*); those that probably never occur, by (!). The sign [?] questions the sign preceding it. For all the verbs here involved (mostly typical in respect to inversion) see § 483. Examples:

agis-je (!), acquiers-je (!), vais-je (?,*), assieds-je (!), assois-je (!), bats-je (!), bénis-je (*), finis-je *etc.* (*), bois-je (*), bous-je (!), ceins-je (!), clôs-je (!), conduis-je (*[?]), connais-je (?,*), couds-je (!), cours-je (*[?]), crains-je (*[?]), crois-je (*), crois-je (!), cuis-je (!), déçois-je (*[?]), déchois-je (!), descends-je (*[?]), dois-je (*,?), dors-je (!), écris-je (*[?]), fais-je (*,?), feins-je (!), fends-je (!), finis-je (*as above*), fonds-je (!), fuis-je (!), geins-je (!), hais-je (*[?]), joins-je (!), lis-je (*[?]), mens-je (!), mets-je (*), mords-je (!), mouds-je (!), meurs-je (!), meus-je (!), nuis-je (!), parais-je (*[?]), pars-je (!), peins-je (!), pends-je (!), perds-je (!), plains-je (*[?]), plais-je (*[?]), peux-je (!), prends-je (*), reçois-je (*), rends-je (!), répands-je (*[?]), repens-je (!), résous-je (*[?]), ris-je (!), romps-je (*[?]), sens-je (*), sers-je (!), sors-je (!), suis-je *from suivre* (*[?]), tais-je (*), teins-je (!), tends-je (!), tiens-je (*[?]), tonds-je (!), tords-je (!), vaincs-je (!) *but* vins-je (*), vaux-je (*[?]), vends-je (!), viens-je (*), vêts-je (!), *but* vais-je *is allowed*, vis-je *from vivre* (*[?]), vois-je (*) *and* que vois-je (?), veux-je (*[?]), etc.

NOTE. In case of doubt, use **est-ce que** or a rising inflection.

c. The types **aime-t-il** (**aime-t-on**, **aime-t-elle**), **va-t-il**, etc., are colloquial (§ 50), but **vainc-on** (**vainc-il**, **vainc-elle**), like **vaincs-je**, is banned, and **il vainc un** = [il vɛ œ̃], without [k]. Note that **coûte-t-il** = [kutətɪl], and that **vendent-ils** = [vɑ̃:dətɪl], while **partent-ils** = [partətɪl]; these three examples are typical.

d. In group *C* inversion is necessarily bookish (§ 65), but occurs freely in all forms, with a *t*-glide in 3 *C*: **parla-t-il** etc.

e. In groups *B*, *D*, and *E* all forms may be inverted freely in all styles, though **est-ce que** (**je disais, je dirai**, etc.) represents a frequent type.

f. In questions, whatever the verb, **est-ce que** (hardly more than an audible initial ' ? ') enables the speaker or writer to avoid ill-sounding or otherwise undesirable inversions, and is commonly used in any question that may be answered with **oui** or **non** (§ 40).

g. Inversions usually result in a phonetic change; compare **je dis** [ʒ(ə)di] with **dis-je** [di:ʒ], **je dirai** [e] with **dirai-je** [e:ʒ], **on chante** with **chante-t-on** [ʃɑ:tətɔ̃], etc., or **on bat** [ɔ̃ ba] with **bat-il** [batil].

404. Imperative Forms. In nearly all verbs (but note the type **parle-s**; § 194, *a*), these forms are identical with the corresponding present indicative forms (less ambiguously, with the corresponding forms of group *A*).

Five, even six forms may be called imperative; but the first and third singular (**que je m'en aille, qu'elle s'en aille**) and the third plural, if included, are always subjunctive, whether concealed (**qu'ils le chantent**) or expressed by a special form (**qu'elles s'en aillent**), must generally be preceded by **que**, and are hortative rather than imperative. See §§ 194-196, 200, 202, 213.

On the infinitive as an imperative see § 250, *f*.

a. Five verbs (**avoir, être, pouvoir, savoir, and vouloir**) use the subjunctive imperatively or hortatively. See § 202.

b. Only when the verb is subjunctive (obvious or concealed) is the subject, if **je, tu**, etc. (eight forms: **je-ils**), expressed: **pars, partons, partez**. See §§ 194-202.

NOTE. The forms **vois-tu** and **voyez-vous**, used parenthetically, survive from a period when the subject of an imperative was occasionally expressed.

c. A few verbs have no imperative; for example, **valoir** (§ 470).

405. Past Participles: their Forms (Cf. §§ 265-277). All forms that do *not* add **é, i, or u** to a stem (§ 391) are called strong forms. Thus **fait-e** (from **faire**, § 478) is a strong form. Weak forms, far

more numerous, are exemplified by **parlé-e** (**parl-é**), **fini-e** (**fin-i**), and **rendu-e** (**rend-u**). See § 408, *a*.

NOTE. In §§ 416-482 the plural forms are not given. If only one form is given, the past participle in question is invariable (e.g. **été** 'been,' **plu** 'rained,' etc.).

a. Difficult Questions of Agreement (Cf. §§ 268-269, and 427, *a*). If the feminine of a past participle differs audibly from its masculine (as in **faire**, with **fait** and **faite**), and the related group consists of two or more accusative objects of different genders, with which should the participle agree? A rule often given is that the masculine should prevail (a rule supposed to cover *all* past participles). A writer can easily plan to avoid jarring or ambiguous groups; a speaker often cannot. Study the following examples and comments:

Quelles lettres et quels livres 1 What letters and what books
a-t-il pris ? has he taken?

REMARK 1. Here **pris** (m.) does not jar on the ear, for it happens to be well removed from **lettres** (f.) and it very closely follows **livres** (m.). But suppose a speaker happened to think of **livres** first; if so, he would get (or would have to dodge) the jarring group **Quels livres et quelles lettres a-t-il prises ?**—jarring because the feminine form, covering both nouns, is made to predominate, a privilege habitually reserved for the masculine so-called inclusive form.

Voici les livres et les lettres 2 Here are the books and letters
qu'il a — pris? or prises? that he took. (*English has no difficulty to face.*)

REMARK 2. Here, again, **prises** would not be correct if it were intended to cover both nouns, and **lettres qu'il a pris** would make a jarring group.

REMARK 3. Either the speaker will happen to arrange his antecedents conveniently, as in example 1, or he will make a mistake, or somehow he will contrive to dodge the difficulty.

REMARK 4. A difference in number (**Quel livre et quelles lettres . . .**, or **Voici le livre et les lettres**) would, of itself, create no difficulty in speech, but in writing we might encounter an obstacle, if the participle has four graphically different forms, as has **faire**.

REMARK 5. Uneducated persons (and sometimes others) occasionally let a masculine past participle follow a feminine accusative (a noun or **que**).

This is a mistake, but a 'mistake' which can often be found in Old French literature of many kinds, both in prose and in verse (*fait* for *faite* or *faites* or *faits*).

REMARK 6. The difficulties considered above are like those considered in § 339.

406. How to Identify Irregular or Freakish Forms. When the source of any odd form is not obvious, its first letter or letters will often indicate the verb to which it belongs. Thus *fis* hints at an irregular verb beginning with *f*, and *plut* suggests a verb beginning with *pl*. As the number of simple verbs that have very irregular or freakish forms hardly exceeds seventy, the search need not last long. See the list of prefixes and of verbs in § 483.

Wholly freakish forms, as *va* or *vont* (from *aller*), cannot be found thus, and must be looked for in the French-English Vocabulary or among the forms in *italics* in the Special Index (§ 483).

407. Completeness. If considered in connection with §§ 382-408, our tables (§§ 414, 416-483) contain, we hope, no obscure instructions for completing abbreviated forms or groups. To give in full all the possible forms and sounds of any verb would be far beyond our scope.

408. Abbreviations. All forms whose *names* are neither uncertain nor confusing are designated by obvious abbreviations, as in *a* (just below); otherwise capital letters are used, as in *b* (just below).

a. Abbreviated Names. *Inf.* = Infinitive. *Ger.* = Gerund. *Pr. part.* = Present participle. *Vbl. adj.* = Verbal adjective. *Impv.* = Imperative. *P. p.* = Past participle.

NOTE. Although the name 'past participle' is generally inaccurate as a description of functions (§ 267), *p. p.* is not only a universally accepted but a clear and simple identifier of forms.

b. Single Identifying Letters. The letters *A, B, C, D, E*, designate the five six-form verb-groups respectively identified by, say, *suis-sont* (group *A*), *avais-avaient* (group *B*), *parlai-parlèrent* (group *C*), *aimerai-aimeront* (group *D*), *finirais-finiraient* (group *E*). *L.S.* (Living Subjunctive) stands for the group of forms exemplified by *sois-soient*, etc.; *O.S.*

(Obsolete or Obsolescent Subjunctive), for the group exemplified by *fusse-fussent*, etc., whatever the verb or its endings.

Compound forms are designated by *A p.p.*, *B p.p.*, etc., thus: *je suis venu* = 1 *A p.p.* of *venir*, whatever the tense-value may be, and *vous auriez parlé* = 5 *E p.p.* of *parler*, whatever the tense-value or modal value may be.

See pages xiv-xv and §§ 61, 65, 72, 103, 107-112, and 210.

NOTE. 1 = *je*; 2 = *tu*; 3 = *il, elle, on*, etc.; 4 = *nous (nous autres)*; 5 = *vous (vous autres)*; 6 = *ils, elles*, etc. Hence 3 *E* of *falloir* (§ 470) is *il faudrait*, and *nous avions parlé* is 4 *B p.p.* of *parler*. 1 *A* and 1 *C* of *dire* (§ 474) happen to give the same form (*je dis* = 'I say' or 'I said').

409. **Sounds.** §§ 1-32 concern all the verbs in §§ 35-381 and §§ 414-482; however, the pronunciation of certain guiding forms is usually indicated. Variant pronunciations, due to shifts of stress, to inversion, to linking, etc., are phonetically consistent and can be included only in a few typical cases (as, e.g., in §§ 423, 425, 478).

REMARK. In learning the verbs or any other forms of a language whose sounds are known, the ear should be trained not less than the eye. See § 413. Hearing and sight have each their particular kind of memory, and the two kinds combined are more than twice as retentive as is either alone.

410. **Forms.** The formation of the French verbs is treated in detail in §§ 384-482. If these statements are mastered, it should be easy to complete any group not given in full. See also 'Verbs (Formation),' in the Index.

411. **Syntax.** The necessity of choosing between *je m'assieds* and *je m'assois* (§ 462) raises a question of forms (§ 410)-or of style. That the object of *plaire* (§ 476) must follow *à* or be a pure dative (*leur plaire*, hence *plaire à tous*) and precede or follow; that *venir parler* means one thing, while *venir de parler* means another, and *venir à parler* means still another ('happen to speak'),—are questions of syntax: how a given form is to be used, what construction is required. See § 1 and § 383, also 'Verbs (Syntax),' in the Index.

412. **Meanings.** A given form may be capable of various meanings besides the *constant* meaning, or meanings, expressed by its stem (§ 391). Meanings characteristic of particular moods or tenses

(commonly indicated by the inflectional ending; or, if not, by the context) have been studied in detail. See especially § 40, examples; §§ 59-60, 61, *a*; §§ 62-63, 65, 67, 71, 76, 84, 86-89, 91-102, 104-112, 163-169, 187, 194-196, 202, 205, 209-216, 218-223, 226-253, 255-257, 260-263, 265, 267, 274-278; also 383.

413. Exercises. Like all other forms, verbs should be learned in some way that will enable one to understand immediately a given form or be able to use the right form readily in a given reasonable context. **Je tire, tu tires, il tire** (or sometimes *je tire, tu tires, il tire*!) is merely a classroom formula (however convenient and useful for verifying) or a joke. Natural groups (as **Y vas-tu?** and **J'y vais**) may be both simple and brief.

REMARKS. (*a*) Paradigms exist for reference, not to be learned by rote. (*b*) To 'know' a verb is to be able to write or pronounce any form of it, instantaneously, correctly (§ 32), in some natural combination. (*c*) Almost anyone can learn to say **j'aime, tu aimes**, etc. without many serious errors; **Les aimez-vous? — Non, nous les détestons** makes the exercise more difficult but more useful. (*d*) Skill can be attained by conjugating *naturally*, with proclitic and enclitic subjects and objects (§§ 278-281, 283-285, 289, 291-295, 299-302, 403); before consonants and vowels (§ 29); with or without negatives (§§ 365-381), with inversions (§ 403); in groups requiring subjunctives (§§ 204-238) or infinitives (§§ 239-259); etc. (*e*) The principles of verb-formation can be studied interestingly and instructively by making comparative tables — for example, in order to discover wherein **coudre** (§ 449) differs from **moudre** (§ 450), how a whole group of forms may change their sounds if inverted, etc. (*f*) The verbs that are used most should be learned first.

414. Tables (§§ 416-482, also § 400). Our tables include the most frequent forms of conjugation, presented as important types (§ 388); they do *not* show how every verb in the French language should be written and pronounced.

415. Indices. An alphabetical list of verbs, containing infinitives and odd forms (in italics), follows § 482. See also the General Index (pp. 473-480), under 'Verbs.'

TABLES OF TYPICAL VERBS: THEIR FORMS AND THEIR SOUNDS

(For a statement of fundamental principles see §§ 382-412)

Types of the Living Conjugations (§§ 384-385)

Parler, aimer, lier, payer, peigner, veiller, etc.

416. Parler (§§ 107-110, 206-207) is completely regular (§ 389). § 408 shows how to identify all its forms without risk of confusion (cf. pp. xvi-xvii) and with great brevity.

417. Aimer [ε'me, sometimes nearly e(·)mē], 'love,' 'like,' etc., shows phonetic variations of the stem-vowel, according to stress (§ 25); stressed, ai = [ε:]; unstressed, ai = [ε(·)] or [e(·)] (§ 389). Its written forms correspond exactly to those of **parler** (§ 416).

418. Lier [lje; in verse lie or lije], 'bind,' 'link,' etc., is conjugated for the *eye* like **parler** (§ 416), but not for the *ear*: the stem-vowel (i) is in hiatus (§ 11, b, and § 27) with the vowel of all stressed endings, as in **liant**, **liez**, and **lions**. On **lierai** see § 394, Note 7, and apply the same phonetic principle to (je) **créerai** [kre(·)re] 'I shall create,' to (je) **louerai** [lu(·)re] 'I shall praise,' or to any other *D* or *E* form in which the endings -erai, -erai, etc. are preceded by a vowel. As to **liions** and **liez** see § 397, Note 4.

a. **Louer** [lwe; in verse luwe], 'praise' etc., and **tuer** [tʉe], 'kill,' typifying numerous verbs, have two *phonetic* stems (§ 391): [lu and luw], [ty and tʉ]. Cf. **lier** (§ 418).

419. Payer [pε:je or pe:je], 'pay,' typifying numerous verbs in -yer, keeps its *ÿ* as [j] before a, ez, i, and o (§ 418), hence **payant** [pe:jā] etc., but has ai [ε] or sometimes ay [ε(j)] before its silent e. For other details see § 158 and § 397, Note 2.

420. Peigner [pe:pe], 'comb,' typifying numerous verbs in -gner, follows exactly, as *written*, the type **parler** (§ 416). In *D* and *E* we find **peignerai(s)** etc. = [pe:p(ə)re, pe:p(ə)re] etc. On **peignons** and **peigniez** see § 397, Note 2.

421. *Veiller* [vɛːje], 'lie awake' etc., typifying numerous verbs in *-iller* [je], follows exactly, as *written*, the type *parler* (§ 416). In *D* and *E*, *veillerai* = [vɛːj(ə)RE], etc. On *veillions* and *veilliez* see § 397, Note 2. Cf. §§ 419 and 420.

422. For the types *commencer* (with ç) and *manger* (with ge for [ʒ]) see § 160; for the types *mener*, *jeter*, *appeler*, *céder*, and *rêver* see § 162. *Épousseter* [epuste] 'dust' (commonly written *épouster*), and (se) *décolleter* [dekolte] 'wear (put on) a low-necked gown,' are pronounced throughout, colloquially, as if their infinitives were regularly *épouster* and *décolter* (cf. § 162, *e*). For the types *aller* and *envoyer* see §§ 428 and 429.

423. The Type *finir*, Exemplifying many Verbs with *-iss-*. *Finir* [finiːR], 'finish,' is completely regular (§ 389). Here (cf. §§ 131-132 and 206-207) some of its finite non-subjunctive forms are given inverted.

Impv. as in *A* (§ 404): *finis*, *finissez* (also *finissons*). See § 405.

A: *finis-je* [finiːʒ] (§ 403), *finis-tu* [finity], *finit-on* [finitɔ̃], etc. (§ 400).
B: *finissais-je* [finiseːʒ] etc. (§ 397). *C*: *finis-je* etc. (§§ 398, *b*, 403, *a-b*).
L.S. (never inverted): *je finisse* etc. (§ 401). *O.S.* (never inverted): *je finisse* etc. (§ 399, *b*).

NOTE. I *A* (*je finis*), exemplifying many verbs in *-ir* (with *-iss-*), seldom becomes *finis-je* in colloquial interrogation (cf. § 403, *a-b*).

QUERY. In which forms of groups *A-E* does inversion, or linking, produce marked phonetic changes?

424. The Type *Il s'agit* . . . (§ 132, *d*, and § 302). Meaning '(to) act,' *agir* (intr.) lacks the forms *agie* and *agies* (§ 405). As an impersonal and purely reflexive verb, it occurs only with *se*. See § 427, *a*.

a. Verbes pronominaux. Whether purely reflexive (as *s'agir*) or purely reciprocal (as *se chamailler* 'wrangle'), verbs that cannot be used without *se* (*me* etc.) are called by French grammarians 'pronominal verbs.'

NOTE. It is important to distinguish between purely reflexive (or purely reciprocal) verbs and verbs that may occur without *se* etc. Like *s'agir* (impersonal), *s'enfuir* (§ 456), for example, is 'pronominal,' whereas *battre* (§ 444) is only incidentally pronominal.

QUERY. How many forms has *s'agir* less than *finir* (§ 423)?

The Dead Conjugations (§ 387)

NOTE. Compound tense-forms properly must include those formed with *venir de* + infinitive (§ 482, Remark) and with *ne faire que de* + infinitive (§ 247, *i*), and certain other groups which express special differentiations of past activities or past states. The groups habitually used to supplement the simple forms (groups *A-E*, *L.S.*, and *O.S.*, including the types *ayant parlé* 'having spoken,' *étant venu* 'having come,' *s'étant chamaillés* 'having wrangled,' *après s'être pardonné* 'after forgiving each other,' etc.) are formed with *avoir* and *être*. Hence these two verbs are given here. As a type, *avoir* most closely resembles *savoir* (§ 469); *être* is an isolated type.

425. *Avoir* [avwa:r], 'have,' 'get,' etc. (See §§ 108, 110, 202, *a*, and 204, also Index, under *avoir*.) A good many of the inflectional endings of *avoir* are not clear, having become confused with the stem or stems (§§ 391-392). The original stem, *av* (Latin *habēre* > *abēre* > *avēre*), appears only in group *B* (*avais* etc.) and in 4-5 *A* (*avons* and *avez*).

In *D* and *E* we find *au* (formerly *av*); see §§ 84, 91, 394. In *L.S.* (§ 202, *a*, and § 204) we find *ai* [ɛ] and *ay* [ej]. In *C* and *O.S.* (§ 398, *c*, and § 399, *c*), all that remains of *av* is a silent *e* (*eu-* instead of *u-*, and *euss-* instead of *uss-*); likewise *eu* (*p.p.*) instead of *u*; compare *eu* [y] 'had' with *vu* [vy] 'seen,' and see § 405. On *ai-je* [ɛ:ʒ] see § 403, *a*. As to the general character of *avoir* see §§ 402-406.

QUERIES. What value has *y* in *ayant* (§ 27, Remarks, § 419)? What inflectional endings are concealed by *yons* in *ayons* and *yez* in *ayez*? How much of *habent* (the earliest known form of *ont*) remains in *ont*?

NOTE 1. An archaic form, with archaic syntax (cf. § 260, *c-d*), is exemplified by the legal term *les ayants cause* (or *les ayants droit*), meaning 'assigns': *ses héritiers et ayant cause* 'his heirs and assigns,' a purely graphic variant (omitting the silent *s*) quoted from the Code Civil (Sirey, §§ 1120, 1340). No other verb-form in *-ant* can be modified by an adjective

(here **les** and **ses**) and at the same time have a complement; we could not say e.g. **les fuyants danger** for **ceux qui fuient le danger**, etc. See § 260, *b-d*.

NOTE 2. All the forms of **avoir** should be reviewed (written out in full, with all allowable inversions, and pronounced). Where possible, underscore inflectional endings (§ 392). For auxiliary uses of **avoir** see §§ 72, 103, 110, and 427.

426. Être [ɛ:tr], 'be,' but as an auxiliary usually 'have' (see §§ 73, 112, and 427). As to stems and endings see §§ 84, 91, 391-392, 394 (Note 2), 397, 398, *c*, 399, *c*, and 400-402. For all groups *A-E* see § 109; for *L. S.* and *O. S.* see §§ 202, *c*, and 204. On **étant** see § 395. See also §§ 402-406 and 408.

NOTE 1. In group *A* (here **suis-sont**) no other verb has a form like **sommes**; in all other verbs 4 *A* ends in **-ons**. See §§ 402 and 406.

NOTE 2. In group *A*, besides **être**, only **dire** (§ 474) and **faire** (§ 478), with **dites** (5 *A*) and **faites** (5 *A*), have forms resembling **êtes**. All other verbs have **-ez** for 5 *A*.

NOTE 3. For 6 *A* only **avoir** with **ont** (§ 425), **aller** with **vont** (§ 428), and **faire** with **font** (§ 478) have forms comparable with **sont**. All other verbs have **-ent**, silent, or [(ə)t] if linked.

NOTE 4. For group *L. S.* (§ 204) the forms (je) **soye** [swaj(ə)], (tu) **soyes**, (on) **soye**, with **soyent** [swaj(ə)] for **soient**, belong to folk-speech or are dialectal (patois).

NOTE 5. In group *C* (particularly) **être** may be used instead of **aller**. Ex.: **Je fus les voir** 'I went to see them.' Similarly 'I've been to town.'

NOTE 6. All the forms of **être** (including all possible inverted forms) should be written out in full and pronounced, by way of review.

427. Avoir and être as Auxiliary Verbs. The tense-values of nearly all verbs may be approximately doubled in number by using **avoir** or **être** as an auxiliary verb (§§ 61, 72-73, 87, 92, 103, 110-112). The compound forms (as **j'ai parlé** or **je suis venu**) can be clearly and briefly identified by *A p.p.*, *B p.p.*, *L. S. p.p.*, etc. (§ 408). Thus, for example, **nous serions venus** ('we should have come') = 4 *E p.p.* of **venir**.

REMARK. This abbreviation stands for what is often called 'the first person plural of the compound (or past) conditional' (or '. . . of the past future perfect'). See § 408.

a. Reflexive or Reciprocal Constructions containing a Past Participle. In folk-speech the auxiliary is often *avoir* (*Je m'ai couché plus tard* 'I went to bed later'); the educated classes use *être*, without exception, in all reflexive or reciprocal constructions that require a past participle (§ 269 and § 405):

<i>Elle s'était si mal conduite.</i>	1	She had behaved so badly.
<i>Elles se sont assises.</i>	2	They (<i>f.</i>) sat down.
<i>Elles se sont comprises.</i>	3	They (<i>f.</i>) have understood each other.
<i>But Ils se sont compris.</i>		
<i>Elle s'est faite belle.</i>	4	She has beautified herself.
<i>Elle s'est fait comprendre.</i>	5	She's made herself understood.
<i>Elles s'étaient dit bien des choses.</i>	6	They (<i>f.</i>) had said a great many things to each other.
<i>Voici les choses qu'elles s'étaient dites.</i>	7	Here are the things that they (<i>f.</i>) had said to each other.
<i>Elles se sont chamaillées, et après s'être chamaillées elles se sont battues à coups de poing.</i>	8	They (<i>f.</i>) wrangled, and after wrangling they fought with their fists.

Also *s'étant chamaillées* (*not s'ayant*).

NOTE. In colloquial reflexive constructions the group *C p. p.* may be avoided by using the following style: *Dès qu'ils ont été endormis* (instead of *Dès qu'ils se furent endormis*) 'As soon as they'd fallen asleep.'

b. Être + allé-e as a Type. The past participles of several frequent verbs, intransitively expressing literal or metaphorical changes of place or of state, also *resté-e* 'remained' (and in the same sense *demeurer*), require *être* and must agree with the gender and number of the subject. Examples:

aller go (§ 428)	choir fall (§ 464)	retourner return, come back
arriver ¹ arrive	éclore hatch (§ 480)	sortir ^{2, 3} come out <i>etc.</i> (§ 435)
entrer ^{2, 3} enter	monter ^{2, 3} go up <i>etc.</i>	naître ² be born, arise (§ 461)
tomber ² fall	mourir die (§ 438)	partir ⁴ go away <i>etc.</i> (§ 435)
rester remain	venir ² come (§ 482)	descendre ^{2, 3} descend <i>etc.</i> (§ 445)
résulter result		

¹ Also (almost always) *accourir* (§ 437) and *apparaître* (§ 460), but seldom *paraître*.

² Also derivatives, as *redescendre*, *rentrer*, *remonter*, *renaitre*, *etc.*

³ See § 427, *c.*

⁴ Meaning 'go off' (of firearms), with *avoir*.

c. Avoir + descendu-e as a Type. Used transitively, the past participles of the following verbs (as exemplified) are necessarily preceded by *avoir* :

Il a entré cette facture (dans son livre).	1	He (has) entered (recorded) that bill (in his book).
Nous avons rentré le blé.	2	We had got in the wheat.
On a descendu (monté) toutes nos malles.	3	They've brought down (up) all our trunks.
Elle avait descendu (monté) l'escalier.	4	She had come down (gone up) the stairway.
Il les avait sorties d'un tiroir.	5	He had taken them (got them) out of a drawer.

NOTES. Chiefly in plebeian or in dialectal speech, *avoir monté* and *avoir descendu* may occur intransitively in many circumstances. In standard French *avoir* replaces *être* in certain locutions: *Le prix du cuivre a monté* = 'The price of copper has gone up.' Etc.

d. Avoir or être + Past Participle. Some distinguishing examples :

J'y ai demeuré vingt ans.	1	I lived there twenty years.
But Elle est demeurée indécise.	2	She remained wavering.
Son secret lui a échappé. ¹	3	His secret has got away from him.
Ce point lui avait échappé.	4	That point had escaped him.
But Ce bon mot lui est échappé.	5	That witticism (of his, of hers) was not intentional.
Çela a passé dans l'histoire.	6	That has passed into history.
But Tout cela est passé.	7	All that is past (over).
En trois jours, elle avait vieilli.	8	In three days, she had grown old.
But Elle était vieillie.	9	She looked old.

NOTES. In example 3, *a* implies that the subject had constantly tried to keep his secret; cf. example 5. In some cases such distinctions merely split hairs, as e.g. in *Il a (or est) échappé de prison*.²

e. Past Participles as Pure Adjectives. The auxiliary must be *être*. Example: *Sont-ils divorcés?* 'Are they divorced?'

¹ Cf. E. C. Armstrong, *Syntax of the French Verb*, §§ 11-13.

² See the *Dictionnaire général* under *échapper*, also under *demeurer*, *descendre*, etc.

f. The Type *à lui connu-e* 'known to him.' French requires a 'prepositional dative' (§ 280, *b*), and the order exemplified, whenever some wholly different construction is not used.

428. *Aller* [ale], 'go,' despite *B*, *C*, *O.S.* (*allais*, *allasse*, etc.), and *p.p.* (*allé-s*), belongs mainly to the dead conjugations (§ 387) and has freakish forms (§ 402). Aux. always *être* (§ 427). All forms except *L.S.*, *O.S.*, and *vbl. adj.* in § 163. See § 408.

L.S.: *aile* [ɑj], *ailes*, *aile*, *allions* [aljɔ̃], *allez*, *aillent*.

O.S.: *allasse* etc. See § 399, *a*.

NOTE. The verbal adjective of *aller* occurs in a few locutions: *être (fort) allant-e* 'be (very much) on the go,' (*les*) *allants et venants* '(the) people going and coming,' 'passers-by.'

429. *Envoyer* [ɑ̃vwaje], 'send.' A living type, except in *D* and *E* (§§ 384, 387, 389). All forms, except *L.S.* and *O.S.*, in § 164. See § 408.

L.S.: *envoie*, *envoies*, *envoie*, *envoyions* (§ 419), *envoyiez*, *envoient*.

O.S.: *envoyasse* etc. See § 399, *a*, and § 428.

REMARK. No other verbs in the dead conjugations have *-er* and *-é-e*.

430. *Bénir* [beni:R], 'bless,' has preserved the oldest form of its *p.p.* in a few set phrases: *pain bénit* 'consecrated bread,' *eau bénite* 'holy water,' etc.; otherwise it is like *finir* (§§ 132, 200, 423).

REMARK. *Béni-e* is a participle (seldom adjectival); *bénit-s* and *bénite-s* (pl. rare) are pure adjectives.

431. *Fleurir* [flœ:ri:R], meaning literally 'bloom,' is completely regular (§ 389), like *finir* (§§ 132, 200, 423): *un pré fleurissant* 'a flowering meadow'; meaning 'flourish,' 'thrive,' it has *florissais* [florise] etc. in *B*, and the *vbl. adj.* *florissant-e*: *une industrie florissante*. See §§ 391, 402. Aux. *avoir*.

432. *Hair* [ai:R; occasionally hai:R], 'hate,' with 'aspirate h' throughout (§ 17), has in *A* *je hais* [(h)ɛ] (avoid *hais-je*), *tu hais* [(h)ɛ], *il (elle, on) hait* [(h)ɛ]; otherwise like *finir* (§§ 132, 200, 423). Examples: *tu la hais* and *tu le hais*.

433. Maudire. [modi:r], 'curse,' is like **finir** (§§ 132, 200, 423), except in its *inf.* and *p.p.* (**maudit-e**), where it is like **dire** (§ 474). Cf. § 430.

434. Ouir [wi:r or ui:r], 'hear,' in the only forms still used (**ouir** and **ouï**) is archaic (usually jocular). Ex.: **J'ai ouï dire . . .** 'I have heard tell (say) . . .' Note **un ouï-dire** 'a hearsay' as colloquial.

REMARK. The Supreme Court at Washington is opened with the cry **Oyez! oyez!** ('Hear! hear!'), pronounced in America [ˈo:jes], in England [o:jes], a relic of the Anglo-Norman spoken until the seventeenth century in the English law-courts. In England and in the United States there are courts of Oyer and Terminer.

435. Partir [parti:r], 'go away,' 'depart.' Aux. **être** (§ 427, *b*). All forms of this typical verb in §§ 224-225. Cf. § 437, *A*. Form 1 *A* (e.g. **je pars**) is seldom if ever inverted (**pars-je!**) in this type (§ 403, *a-b*).

NOTE. **Asservir** 'enslave,' **assortir** 'assort,' 'match,' **répartir** (not **repartir**) 'distribute,' and **ressortir** (**à**) 'be within the jurisdiction (of),' are like **finir** (§§ 132, 200, 423).

436. Bouillir [bu(·)ji:r], 'boil.' Mostly intr.; aux. **avoir**. See § 225, *g*, § 403, *a-b*, and note —

L.S.: 3 **bouille** [bu:j]; 6 **bouillent**; forms 1, 2, 4, and 5 are rare. See § 397, Note 2.

REMARKS. The only frequent forms are (**faire**) **bouillir**, (**en**) **bouillant**, **bouillant-e**, **bout** (3 *A*), **bouille** (3 *L.S.*), **bouillait** (3 *B*), **bouillira** (3 *D*), **bouillirait** (3 *E*), and **bouilli-e**. 'The water has boiled' = **L'eau a bouilli**; 'boiled water' = **eau bouillie**. In everyday French, **je fais bouillir** etc. are the usual equivalents of 'I boil' etc. + object.

437. Courir [ku(·)ri:r], 'run,' 'hurry,' resembles **mourir** (§ 438). Aux. **avoir**; sometimes tr. Stem-vowel **ou** [u(:) or u(·)]. On inversions see § 403, *a-b*.

Pr. part.: **courant** (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: **courant-e** (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404): **cours**, **courons**, **courez**. *P.p.*: **couru** (tr. **couru-e**).

A: **je cours** [ku:r], no **cours-je**, **tu cours**, **il court** (with **court-il** = [kurtil], but **court avec** = [ku(·)ravek]); 4-6 *A*: **courons** [ku:rɔ], **courez**, **courent**

(**courent avec** = [ku(·)ravək]). *B*: **courais** [ku(·)rɛ] etc. *C*: **courus** etc. (§ 398, *c*). *D*: **courrai** [kurɛ] etc. (§ 394, Note 2). *E*: **courrais** [kurɛ] etc. *L.S.*: **coure** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **courusse** etc. (§ 399, *c*).

a. So **accourir** 'run up,' 'flock' (with **être**), **concourir** 'compete' (with **avoir**), **discourir de** 'discourse about' (**avoir**), **encourir** 'incur' (**avoir**), **parcourir** 'run over,' 'run through,' etc. (**avoir**), **recourir** 'run again,' 'have recourse to' (**à**), and **secourir** 'help' (**avoir**). See § 427, *b*.

b. **Férir** [feri:r; *nearly* ferɪ:r] 'smite' occurs only in **sans coup férir** 'without dealing a blow' (archaic), and in **féru-e**, adj., 'smitten' (jocular).

c. **Issu-e** [isy] 'issued' (fig.) belongs to **issir** (*obs. inf.*). Aux. **être**.

438. Mourir [mu(·)ri:r], 'die.' For all non-subjunctive forms see § 167.

L.S.: **meure** [mœ:r], **meures**, **meure**, **mourions** [mu(·)rjɔ̃], **mouriez** [mu(·)rje], **meurent** [mœ:r] (cf. § 401). *O.S.*: **mourusse** [u] etc. (§ 399, *c*).

439. Vêtir [ve:ti:r], 'clothe' (more colloquially, **habiller** [abiʒe]). Usually reflexive; *p.p.* frequent. Stressed stem has [ɛ(:)]. Type: cf. §§ 435, 440, and 444. See § 408.

Pr. part.: **vêtant** (§ 395). No *vbl. adj.* *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404): **vêts**, **vêtons**, **vêtez**. *P.p.*: **vêtu-e**.

A: **vêts**, **vêts**, **vêt**, with [ɛ] (as to **vêts-je** see § 403, *a-b*), **vêtons** [ɛ:], **vêtez** [ɛ:], **vêtent** [ɛ:] (cf. **rêver**, § 162, and **mourir**, § 438). *B*: **vêtais** etc. *C*: **vêtis** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **vêtirai** etc. *E*: **vêtirais** etc. *L.S.*: **vête** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **vêtiisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

NOTE. Applied to offices and dignities, **revêtir** is fairly common.

QUERY. Wherein does **vêtir** differ most from **mourir** (§ 438), and from the types in §§ 440-446?

440. Couvrir [ku'vri:r], 'cover,' is like **livrer** 'deliver' (§§ 416-417), except in *C*, *D*, *E*, *O.S.*, *inf.*, and *p.p.* (**couvert-e**). See § 408.

A: **je couvre** [ku:vʀ], avoid **couvré-je** (§ 403), **tu couvres**, etc. (§§ 400, 416). *B*: **couvrais** etc. *C*: **couvris** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **couvrirai** etc. (§ 394). *E*: **couvrirais** etc. *L.S.*: **couvre** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **couvrisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So **découvrir** 'uncover,' 'discover,' **recouvrir** 'cover over,' 'cover again,' **offrir** 'offer,' **ouvrir** 'open,' **rouvrir** 'reopen,' and **souffrir** 'suffer,'

441. *Cueillir* [kœ:ʝi:r], 'pluck' etc., is like *veiller* (§ 421) in *A*, *B*, *D*, *E*, *L. S.*, *pr. part.*, and *impv.* (§§ 395-397, 402-404). *P. p.*: *cueilli-e* (§ 405).

A.: *cueille* [kœ:ʝ] etc. (§ 421). *B.*: *cueillais* etc. (§ 397, Note 2). *C.*: *cueillis* etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D.*: *cueillerai* [kœ:ʝ(ə)re] etc. (note *e* in *-erai*; cf. §§ 394, 402). *E.*: *cueillerais* etc. *L. S.*: *cueille* etc. (§ 401). *O. S.*: *cueillisse* etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So *accueillir* 'welcome' and *recueillir* 'gather.'

b. *Assaillir* 'assail' and *tressaillir* 'give a start' ('be startled') have *i* (not *e*) in groups *D*, *E*: *assaillirai*, *assaillirais*, etc.; elsewhere they are like *cueillir*.

442. *Faillir*, 'fail,' 'err,' 'go wrong,' etc., related to *falloir* (§ 470, *b*), is rare in all forms; those containing *fau* are obsolete. When used, *faillir* is like *assaillir* (§ 441, *b*).

NOTE 1. The dead forms of *faillir* are for *A* *faux*, *faut*; for *D* and *E* *faudrai* etc. So in *défaillir* (§ 442, *a*). However, *Le cœur me faut* (i.e. *me manque*) 'My courage fails me,' dative pronoun, is a living archaism. See § 402.

NOTE 2. Meaning 'fail' in business, *faillir* is like *finir* (§ 423), but the normal expression is *faire faillite*.

NOTE 3. Colloquially, *J'ai manqué de tomber* ('I came near falling') would replace *J'ai failli tomber*, which echoes the impressive saying of Louis XIV: *J'ai failli attendre*, 'I almost waited,' 'I came near having to wait.'

a. *Défaillir* 'grow faint' etc. hardly occurs save in *se sentir défaillir* with *me*, *te*, etc. and in *défaillant-e*. The forms *je défaille*, *tu défailles*, and *il défaille* (for *A*) are called 'barbarous'; *défaux*, *défaut*, *défaudrai*, etc. are obsolete or very rare. Cf. *faillir* (above).

443. *Acquérir* [akɛri:r or nearly akɛri:r], 'acquire' etc., derives *D* and *E* from the *obs. inf.* *acquerre* (cf. *courir*, § 437); in *A* and *L. S.* the stem varies according to stress (cf. *mourir*, § 438), and unstressed has [ɛ] (before *r*) rather than [e]. See §§ 402-406, 408.

Pr. part.: *acquérant*. No *vbl. adj.* *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P. p.*: *acquis-e* (§ 405).

A: j'acquires [akje:r] (as to *acquires-je* see § 403, *a-b*), tu *acquires*, -il *acquiert*; 4-6 *A*: *acquérons*, *acquérez*, *acquièrent*. *B*: *acquérais* [akere] etc. (cf. *E*). *C*: *acquis* etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: *acquerrai* [akerre] etc. *E*: *acquerrais* [akerre] etc. (cf. *B*). *L.S.*: *acquière* [akje:r], *acquières*, *acquière*, *acquérons* (§ 391, *b*), *acquérez*, *acquièrent* (cf. *A*, and § 401). *O.S.*: *acquise* etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So *conquérir* 'conquer' (with *conquérant-e*: William the Conqueror = *Guillaume le Conquérant*); also *s'enquérir de* 'inquire as to' (formal), and *requérir* (rare) 'require,' 'requisition' (*requissionner*).

b. *Quérir* [kèri:r or nearly keri:r] (*not querir*) 'seek' occurs only in *aller quérir* 'fetch,' and the like.

444. *Battre* [batr], 'beat' (with [a] in *bats* and *bat*; elsewhere [a]), is like *vendre* (§ 445), but two groups require special attention (cf. § 447):

A: *je bats* [ba] (as to *bats-je* see § 403, *a-b*), tu *bats* [ba], on *bat* [ba] (*bat-il* [batil] is possible, but note that *bat-on* sounds like *battons*), vous *battez*, *battent-ils* [batatil]. *L.S.*: *batte* etc. (§ 401). See §§ 394-397, 398, *b*, 399, *b*, 402-405, 408.

NOTES. The *tt* of *battre* and of *mettre* [t] might well be *t*; in two forms (*bats*, *bat*) one *t* is dropped (cf. *mettre*, § 447). *Se battre* usually means simply 'fight' (with, *avec*).

a. *Tissu-e* [tisy] 'woven' belongs to the *obs. inf. tistre* (which became *titre*), replaced by *tisser* (§§ 384, 389); *tissu-e* is common (§ 405).

445. *Vendre* [vã:dR], 'sell' (§§ 189-191), typifies about fifty verbs that are in common use, including about thirty-seven derivatives (e.g. *fondre* 'melt' and *confondre* 'confuse'); of forms without prefixes there are about thirteen (for *descendre* 'come (go) down,' 'alight,' there is no simple form). The inversion of 1 *A* (e.g. *descends-je* or *romps-je* or *vends-je*, etc.) is very rare in this type, especially in interrogation (§ 403, *a-b*). See § 408.

REMARK. *Vendre* is said to belong to the 'Fourth Conjugation' (§ 387, *a*) and to be 'regular,' though its stem-vowel [ã] varies in length (§§ 389, 391), and though in group *A* it has *vend* [vã(t)] instead of *vendt* (cf. *rompt*, from *rompre*; §§ 189, 391, 402).

Pr. part.: **vendant** [vā:dā]. No *vbl. adj.* (§ 396), but note, for example, **mordant-e** 'biting.' *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P. p.*: **vendu-e** (§ 405).

For groups *A-E* see § 190. *L. S.*: **vende** [vā:d] etc. (§§ 206, 401). *O. S.*: **vendisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. Similar verbs which have no prefix: **battre** (§ 444), **fendre** 'split,' **fondre** 'melt,' **mordre** 'bite,' **pendre** 'hang,' **perdre** 'lose,' **pondre** 'lay (eggs),' **rendre** 'give back' etc., **rompre** 'break,' **sourdre** (defective) 'spring up,' **tendre** 'stretch,' and **tondre** 'shear.'

b. Derivatives: **abattre** 'beat down,' 'fell,' **attendre** 'wait,' 'await,' **condescendre** 'condescend,' **se morfondre** 'get chills,' 'waste time,' etc.

446. Vaincre [vē:kr], 'overcome,' is like **vendre** (§ 445), but has **qu** [k] before *e*, *i*, *a*, and *o*. Its *c* is [k] in **vaincu-e** (*p. p.*). Stem (as written): **vainc** or **vainqu** (§ 391). The inverted forms **vaincs-je** (*i A*) and **vainc-il** (also **vainc-elle** and **vainc-on**) are avoided; **vainc un** is [vē œ], not [vêkœ]. See § 403, *a-b*.

A: **je vaincs** [vê], **tu vaincs** [vê], **on vainc** [vê]; 4-6 *A*: **vainquons** [vê:k5], **vainquez** [vê:ke], **vainquent** [vê:k], possibly **vainquent-ils** [vê:ktil]. *B*: **vainquais** etc. (§ 397). *C*: **vainquis** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **vaincrai** etc. (§ 394). *E*: **vaincrais** etc. (§ 394). *L. S.*: **vainque** etc. (§ 401). *O. S.*: **vainquisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. Likewise **convaincre** 'convince.' Note **convaincant-e** (adj.) 'convincing.'

447. Mettre [metr], 'put' etc., is like **battre** (§ 444) except in *C*, *O. S.*, and **mis-e** (*p. p.*) (§ 408).

Pr. part.: **mettant**. No *vbl. adj.* (but note **compromettant-e** 'compromising'). *Impv.* as in *A*: **mets** [ε], **mettons**, **mettez** (§ 404). *P. p.*: **mis-e** (§ 405).

A: **je mets** etc.; see **battre**. **Mets-je** does not occur interrogatively (§ 403, *a-b*). *B*: see **battre**. *C*: **mis** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D* and *E*: see **battre**. *L. S.*: see **battre**. *O. S.*: **misse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So all derivatives, as **compromettre** 'compromise,' **promettre** 'promise,' etc.

448. Prendre [prā:dr], 'take' etc., is less like **rendre** or **vendre** (§ 445) than like **mettre** (§ 447). See §§ 394-397, 402-408. On **prends-je** see § 403, *a-b*.

Pr. part.: **prenant** (*not* **prendant**). *Vbl. adj.* in e.g. **entreprenant-e** 'enterprising,' 'cheeky' (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **pris-e** (§ 405).

A: **je prends** [prā], **tu prends**, **prend-on** [prā'tɔ̃] etc., **nous prenons** [prənɔ̃], **vous prenez**, **prennent-elles** [prɛntɛl]. *B*: **prenais** etc. *C*: **pris** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **prendrai** [prā'drɛ] etc. *E*: **prendrais** etc. *L.S.*: **prenne** [prɛn], **prennes**, **prenne**, **prenions** [prənjɔ̃], **preniez** [prənje], **prennent** (cf. *L.S.* in §§ 438, 443, 449-452, 465-466, 471, 482). *O.S.*: **prisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So all derivatives, as **comprendre** 'understand' etc.

449. Coudre [ku:dr], 'sew (on),' has **s** [z] before **a, e, i, o, u**, e.g. in **cousant**, **couse**, **cousit**, **cousons**, **cousu**, but the same endings as **vendre** (§ 445). Cf. §§ 450-453.

Pr. part.: **cousant**. No *vbl. adj.* (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **cousu-e**.

A: **je couds** [ku] (**avoid couds-je**, § 403, *a-b*), **tu couds**, **coud-elle** [kutɛl], **nous cousons** [ku:zɔ̃], **vous cousez**, **cousent-elles** [ku:zɛtɛl]. *B*: **cousais** etc. *C*: **cousis** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **coudrai** etc. *E*: **coudrais** etc. (§ 394). *L.S.*: **couse** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **cousisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

450. Moudre [mu:dr], 'grind' (grain; cf. **moulin** 'mill'), has **moul** before **a, e, o, u**, as in **moulant**, **moulais**, **moule**, **moulu** (cf. § 449); in *C*: **moulus** etc. (§ 398, *c*); in *O.S.*: **moulusse** etc. (§ 399, *c*); otherwise it is conjugated like **coudre** (§ 449). Cf. § 451 and see §§ 389-397, 402-404, 406, 408.

451. Résoudre [rezu:dr], 'resolve' etc., has **ou** only in groups *D* and *E* and in forms 1-3 of *A*; everywhere else it has **ol** [ɔ(:)l]. See § 408.

Pr. part.: **résolvant**. *Vbl. adj.*: **résolvant-e** 'resolvent,' 'dissolving,' etc. (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **résolu-e**, and (in chemistry) **résous**, invariable (§ 405).

A: **je résous** (as to **résous-je** [rezu:ʒ] see § 403, *a-b*), **tu résous**, **il résout** (cf. 3 *A* of **coudre** and **moudre**; §§ 449, 450); 4-6 *A*: **nous résolvons** [rezɔlvɔ̃], **vous résolvez**, **elles résolvent** [rezɔlv]. *B*: **résolvais** etc. *C*: **résolus** etc. (§ 398, *c*). *D*: **résoudrai** etc. *E*: **résoudrais** etc. *L.S.*: **résolve** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **résolusse** etc. (§ 399, *c*).

Syntax. **Se résoudre à** = 'resolve to'; **résoudre qqn. à** = 'induce to'; **résoudre de** = 'resolve to' (**Ils ont résolu de s'en aller**).

a. Absoudre [apsu:dr], 'absolve,' 'acquit,' etc., has *A, B, D, E, L.S., pr. part.,* and *impv.* like *résoudre*; *C* and *O.S.* are lacking. *P.p.*: *absout-e* (§ 405). *Adj.*: *absolu-e* = 'absolute.'

b. Dissoudre [disu:dr] 'dissolve' (with *se dissoudre*) is conjugated like *absoudre*. *Adj.*: *dissolu-e* = 'dissolute.'

452. Boire [bwa:r], 'drink,' has features in common with *croire* (§ 453) and *devoir* (§ 465). Stems: *boi, boiv, buv* (§ 391). Save in *D* and *E, buv* occurs wherever the stem is not stressed; but see *p.p.*

Pr. part.: *buyant*. No *vbl. adj.* (note *papier buvard*, or simply *buvard*, 'blotting paper,' 'blotter'). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: *bu-e* (§ 405).

A: *je bois* [bwa] (as to *bois-je* [bwa:ʒ] see § 403, *a-b*), *tu bois, on boit, nous buvons* [y], *vous buvez, elles boivent* [bwa:v]. *B*: *buvais* etc. *C*: *bus* etc. (§ 399, *c*). *D*: *boirai* etc. (§ 394). *E*: *boirais* etc. *L.S.*: *boïve, boïves, boïve* [bwa:v], *buvions* [y], *buviez, boivent* [bwa:v] (cf. *A*). *O.S.*: *busse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

453. Croire [krwa:r], 'believe.' Cf. *boire* (§ 452) and *voir* (§ 463).

Pr. part.: *croyant*. *Vbl. adj.*: *croyant-e* (§§ 395-396). *Impv.* as in *A*: *crois, croyons, croyez* (§ 404). *P.p.*: *cru-e* (§§ 404, 460, *d*).

A: *je crois* [krwa] (as to *crois-je* [krwa:ʒ] see § 403, *a-b*), *tu crois, on croit, nous croyons* (§ 400, Note), *vous croyez, ils croient*. *B*: *croyais* etc. (§ 397, Note 2). *C*: *crus* etc. (§§ 398, *b, 460, d, C*). *D*: *croirai* etc. *E*: *croirais* etc. *L.S.*: *croie, croies, croie* [krwa], *croyions, croyiez* (§§ 397, Note 2, 400, Note), *croient*. *O.S.*: *crusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

a. Accroire occurs only with *faire* (§ 478). *Ex.*: *Il leur fit accroire . . .* 'He got them to believe' etc.

b. Pourvoir 'provide' is conjugated precisely like *croire*. Hence *je pourvois, je pourvoyais, je pourvus, je pourvoirai*, etc. See § 463, *b*.

454. Traire [tre:r], 'milk,' is like *croire* (§ 453), but lacks group *C* (§§ 65, 71), *O.S.* (§ 209), and has *trait-e* (§ 405).

a. So *distraire* 'amuse' and *soustraire* 'subtract.'

b. Braire 'bray' occurs only in its *inf.* and in 3 and 6, as follows:

A: *brait*. [bre], *braient*. *D*: *braira, brairont*. *E*: *brairait, brairaient*. Other forms, if found, should follow the style of *traire*.

REMARK. Formerly, *traire* and *braire* did not belong to the same type of conjugation as *croire*.

455. Frire [fri:r], 'fry,' is defective; its missing forms are supplied by **faire frire** (§ 478); likewise, usually, its existing forms. See § 408.

No *pr. part.* No *vbl. adj.* (see Note). *Impv.* (rare): **fris**. *P.p.*: **frit-e**.
A: **fris** [fri], no **fris-je**, **fris**, **frit**. *D*: **frirai** etc. *E*: **frirais** etc.

NOTE. From **friant** (*lost pr. part.*) we get **friand** 'dainty,' 'fond' (of, de), as of luxuries; whence **friande** (f.); cf. **gourmand-e**.

456. Fuir [fui:r], 'flee,' tr. or intr., is like **croire** (§ 453), except in *C*, *O.S.*, and **fui-e** (*p.p.*). Stems: **fui** [fui] and (before the stressed vowels *a*, *o*, *e*) **fuy** [fuij], as in **fuyant** [fuijã], **fuyais**, **fuyons**, **fuyez** (but **fuit**, **fuite**, **fuirai**, etc.).

C: **fuis** etc. (§§ 391-392, 398, *b*). *O.S.*: **fuisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So **s'enfuir** 'flee' (as from prison). See § 427, *a*.

457. Bruire [brui:r], 'rustle,' is defective and otherwise irregular.

Pr. part.: **bruissant** (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: **bruissant-e** = 'rustling'; **bruyant-e** = 'noisy': **une femme bruyante** (§§ 396 and 260, *b*). No *impv.*
 No *p.p.*

3 *A*: **bruit**; 6 *A*: **bruissent**. *B*: **bruissait**, **bruissaient**. *L.S.* (very rare): **bruisse**, **bruissent**.

458. Ceindre [sē:dr], 'gird,' 'put on' (a belt, a sword, etc.), 'surround,' 'wreathe,' etc., typifies some thirty frequent verbs in **-aindre**, **-eindre**, and **-oindre**, including derivatives. See §§ 216-219, 387, *c*. In verbs of this type, 1 *A* is perhaps never inverted in colloquial interrogation, and seldom otherwise (§ 403, *a-b*).

459. Conduire [kō:dui:r], 'conduct,' 'lead,' 'drive' (with reins), etc. (**duire** no longer exists), typifies a small group in which **cuire**, **luire**, and **nuire** are the only simple forms; the stem has **uis** [ui:z] before *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*. See **cuire** (*a*).

a. **Cuire** [kui:r], 'bake,' 'cook,' will save space and has one more form: **cuisante**. See §§ 403, *a-b*, and 408.

Pr. part.: **cuisant** (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: **cuisant-e** 'sharp,' 'stinging' (as a pain). *Impv.* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **cuit-e** (§ 405).

A: **je cuis** [kui] (as to **cuis-je** see § 403, *a-b*), **tu cuis**, **on cuit**, **nous cuisons** [kui:z], **vous cuisez**, **elles cuisent** [kui:z]. *B*: **cuisais** etc. *C*:

cuisis etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **cuirai** etc. *E*: **cuirais** etc. *L.S.*: **cuisse** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **cuisisse** etc., very rare (§ 399, *b*).

b. So **construire** 'construct,' 'build,' **déduire** 'deduce,' **détruire** 'destroy,' **éconduire** 'show out' ('get rid of'), **enduire** 'smear,' 'coat,' **induire** 'induce' (rare meaning), 'make an induction' (logic), **introduire** 'introduce' (but *not* by naming, for which use **présenter**), 'bring in,' 'let in,' **produire** 'produce,' 'bring forth,' **réduire** 'reduce,' **séduire** 'seduce,' and **traduire** 'translate.'

c. **Luire** [lɥi:R], 'glow,' 'gleam' (largely poetical), is defective:

Pr. part.: **luisant**. *Vbl. adj.*: **luisant-e**. No *impv.* *P.p.*: **lui** (§ 405).

3 *A*: **luit**; 6 *A*: **luisent**. *B*: **luisait, luisaient**. *D*: **luira, luiront**. *E*: **luirait, luiraient**. *L.S.*: **luise, luisent** (§ 401). No *C* or *O.S.*

d. **Reluire** 'shine,' 'glitter' (*not* 'again'), is defective like **luire**.

e. **Nuire** (à) 'harm' is like **cuire** except in *nui, p.p.*, necessarily invariable (§ 405).

460. **Connaitre** [kɔ̃nɛ:tr], 'know,' has [^] where **s** has been dropped (§ 24, *d*), and in some forms of *C* and *O.S.* (as have all other verbs). In **connaitre, connaitrai**, etc., **t** is euphonic, a glide, as in **être, croître**, etc., but not, e.g., as in **battre**. Note where **ss** occurs. Cf. **naître** (§ 461).

Pr. part.: **connaissant**. *Vbl. adj.* in **reconnaissant-e** 'grateful' (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **connu-e** (§ 405).

A: **je connais** (as to **connais-je** see § 403, *a-b*); 2-6 *A*: **connais, connaît** [ɛ] (note [^]), **connaissons** (note **ss**), **connaissez, connaissent**. *B*: **connaisais** etc. *C*: **connus** etc. (§ 398, *c*). *D*: **connaitrai** [kɔ̃nɛ:tre] etc. *E*: **connaitrais** etc. *L.S.*: **connaisse** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **connusse** etc. (§ 399, *c*).

Examples: **Je connais un homme qui** = 'I know a man who,' whereas **Je sais un homme qui** = 'I know of a man who'; **Je connais le Français** = 'I know the Frenchman,' whereas **Je sais le français** = 'I know French.' Usage makes other distinctions, but in some cases either verb may be used with no marked difference. See the larger dictionaries, under **connaitre** and **savoir**.

a. Like **connaitre** are conjugated **apparaître** 'appear' (upon the scene; aux. **être**), **paraître** 'appear' (upon the scene, or 'seem'; aux. **avoir**), **disparaître** 'disappear' (aux. **avoir**), **méconnaître** 'overlook,' 'slight,' **reconnaître** 'recognize,' etc.; also **croître** (*d*). Cf. **naître** (§ 461).

b. *Se repaître* (de) 'feed (on),' 'feast (on),' is complete, but *paître* 'graze' (*paître l'herbe* etc.) lacks *C*, *O.S.*, and *pu*, *p.p.* (cf. *repu-e*, 'fed,' 'glutted'). Cf. § 468.

c. *Comparoir* 'appear' (for trial) is a legal term now generally replaced by *comparaître* (aux. *avoir*); *il appert* 'it appears' (to be proved), legal, is from *apparoir*, *obs. inf.*

d. *Croître* [krwa:tr, or rather krwa:tr], 'grow,' 'increase,' usually intransitive, differs from *connaître* (above) only in that its stem-vowels (*oi* [wa] and *u* [y]) bear a $\hat{\ } (î, û)$ wherever otherwise there might be visible confusion with forms of *croire* (§ 453), except on *crue* (cf. *crû*). This $\hat{\ }$ has no phonetic value (cf. § 24, *d*). Especially in speech, the ambiguous forms are avoided; of plants, *pousser* is general; note also *augmenter* (*s'augmenter*) and *grandir*.

NOTE. *Accroître* 'increase' is transitive and often reflexive.

461. *Naitre* [ne:tr], 'be born,' 'arise' (aux. *être*; § 427, *b*), is like *connaître*, except in *C* *je naquís* [naki] etc. (§ 398, *b*), in *O.S.* *naquísse* etc. (§ 399, *b*), and in *né-e*, *p.p.* No *impv.* *Naisant-e* = 'nascent' etc.

462. *Asseoir* [aswa:r], 'seat,' (usually *s'asseoir* etc.) has more variant forms (most of them frequent) than any other French verb now used. See §§ 391, 402, 406, 408.

Pr. part.: *asseyant* [ase:jã] or *asoyant* [aswa:jã] (§ 395). No *vbl. adj.* (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: *assis-e* (§ 405). As to the inversion of *I A* see § 403, *a-b*.

A: *assieds* [asje], *assieds*, *assied*, *asseyons* [ase:jõ], *asseyez*, *asseyent* [ase:j]; or *assois* (avoid *assois-je*) etc., like *A* of *croire* (§ 453). *B*: *asseyais* etc. or *asoyais* etc. (§ 397, Note 2). *C*: *assis* etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: *assiérai* [asi(j)ere, or more nearly asi(j)ere] etc. or *asseyerai* [ase:j(ə)re] etc., or *assoirai* [aswa:re] etc. (§ 394). *E*: *assiérais* etc., or *asseyerais* etc., or *assoirais* etc. *L.S.*: *asseye* [ase:j] (§ 401) or *assoie* etc., like *L.S.* of *croire* (§ 453). *O.S.*: *assisse* etc. (§ 399, *b*).

NOTES. (*a*) The forms most used are possibly those in *oi*, though the *imperative* (§ 404) usually gives *assieds-toi* and *asseyez-vous*. For groups *D* and *E* the forms *asseyerai*, *asseyerais*, etc. are more frequent than those that have *ié*. (*b*) Save in *faire asseoir* (*Il nous a fait asseoir* = 'He gave

us chairs, or invited us to be seated,' etc.), and in *asseoir qqch. sur . . .* (*Il faut asseoir cette hypothèse sur une base solide* = 'You must set that theory on a firm basis'), or the like, *asseoir* is habitually reflexive: *Il s'assoit* = 'He sits down,' *Il s'asseyait* = 'He was sitting down,' *Ils s'assirent* = 'They sat down,' *Elle s'était assise* (§ 427, *a*) = 'She had sat down.' Hence *s'asseoir* (*m'asseoir*, etc.) = 'sit down' ('seat oneself'), whereas 'sit,' 'be sitting,' 'be seated,' = *être assis-e*, as in *Elles étaient assises près de moi* = 'They were sitting (were seated) near me.'

a. So (*se*) *rasseoir* 'sit down again.'

b. *Seoir* (*inf.* very rare) gives *seyant-e* (§ 396) 'becoming' (i.e. 'suitable'), the *p.p.* *sis-e* 'situate,' 'situated' (as a town), and occurs in 3 and 6 of *A, B, D, E*: *Cette robe lui sied bien* = 'That dress becomes her well,' *Ces vêtements leur siéent* [*sjet*] *à merveille*. Also *seyait*, *seyaient*, *siéra*, *siéront*, *siérait*, *siéraient*.

c. *Surseoir* (*à*), 'put off,' 'defer' (legal), nowadays mostly impersonal (*Il sera sursis à . . .*), has only *oi* in *D* and *E*.

463. *Voir* [*vwa:r*], 'see,' closely resembles *croire* (§ 453) in *A, B*, and *L.S.*; also in *voyant* (§ 395), *voyant-e* 'seer' (sb.), 'gaudy' (adj.): *des couleurs voyantes* (§ 396); also in *impv.* (§ 203), and in *p.p.* *vu-e* (§ 405). Cf. *asseoir* (§ 462). In *C* and *O.S.* it is precisely like *mettre* (§ 447) or *asseoir* (§ 462): *vis*, *vit*, etc. In *D* and *E* it has *verrai* [*vere*] etc. (§ 394). Stems: *voi* [*vwa*], *voy* [*vwa:j*] (before stressed vowels), and *vi*, *ver*, *vu* (§ 391). Hence:

A: *je vois* [*vwa*], *vois-je* [*vwa:ʒ*], etc., like *A* in § 453; 2-6 *A*: *vois*, *voit*, *voyons*, *voyez*, *voient*. *B*: *voyais* etc. (§ 397, Note 2). *C*: *vis* etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: *verrai* etc. (§ 394, Note 1). *E*: *verrais* etc. *L.S.*: *voie* [*vwa*] etc. (§ 401, § 397, Note 6). *O.S.*: *visse* etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So *entrevoir* 'see dimly,' 'catch glimpses of,' and *revoir* 'see again,' 'revise'; but *prévoir* 'foresee' has *prévoirai*, *prévoirais*, etc.; cf. *pourvoir*.

b. *Pourvoir* (*de*), 'provide (with),' differs from *voir* in *C* *pourvus* etc. (§ 398, *c*), in *O.S.* *pourvusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*), and in *D-E* *pourvoirai* etc. (§ 394). Cf. *prévoir* in *a*, and see § 453, *b*.

464. *Déchoir* [*deʃwa:r*], 'fall in (into) decay' (fig.), and all the following verbs in *-oir*, have *u*-endings in *C* and *O.S.* (§ 465-471).

Déchu-e, *p. p.* (aux. usually être), is frequent. Other forms given, but rare, are

A, C, D, E, L.S., and *O.S.* as for croire (§ 453). No *B. D.*: **décherrai** [defere] or (of late) **déchoirai** etc. *E.*: **décherrais** or **déchoirais** etc. (§ 394). Only form 3 (**déchoit** etc.) is at all likely to occur, but hardly 3 *C* (**déchut**) or 3 *L.S.* and *O.S.* (**déchoie**, **déchût**). *O.S.* is particularly rare.

a. **Échoir** 'fall due' has **échéant** (§§ 395-396) and **échu-e** (with être); also

A.: **échoit**, **échoient**. *B.*: **échéait**, **échéaient** (cf. **déchoir**). *C, D, E, L.S.*, and *O.S.* as in **déchoir**.

b. **Choir** 'fall,' 'succumb,' (archaic and usually jocular) has only **choir** and **chu-e** (§ 427, *b*).

465. Devoir [d(ə)vwa:R], 'owe' etc. See §§ 187, 206-207, and note **devant** 'owing,' 'having to.' **Dussé-je** [dyse:ʒ] 'Had I to' (§ 236) is purely bookish (cf. § 50, Remark). For type, cf. **savoir** (§ 469).

466. Mouvoir [muvwa:R], 'move' etc. All non-subjunctive forms in § 168.

L.S.: **meuve** [mœ:v], **meuves**, **meuve**, **mouvions** [muː], **mouviez**, **meuvent** (§ 168, *A*, §§ 401, 467). *O.S.*: **musse** etc. (§ 399, *c*).

467. Pleuvoir [plœvwa:R], 'rain.' Non-subjunctive forms in § 169.

L.S.: **pleuve** [plœ:v]. *O.S.*: **plût** [ply]. Stem-vowel always [œ:ɪ].

468. Pouvoir [puvwa:R], 'can' etc. Groups *A-E* in § 165. Stem-vowels: **ou**, **eu**, **ui**, **u** (§ 391). See §§ 387-390, 402-408. *D* and *E* (we might expect **pouvoirai** etc.) are based on the primitive form **poe(i)r**, **poue(i)r**; whence **pourrai** [pure, *not* **purre**] etc. (§ 394, Notes); cf. *D* in § 168.

Pr. part.: **pouvant** (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: **puissant-e** (§ 260, *b*, and § 396). *Impv.* (§§ 202, 404). *P. p.*: **pu** (§ 405).

L.S.: **puisse** etc. (§ 401), with **puissé-je** [puise:ʒ] 'may. I (be able to)' (§ 202). *O.S.*: **pusse** etc. (§ 399, *c*); **puissé-je** (cf. **dussé-je**, § 465) is very rare.

469. Savoir [savwa:R], 'know,' 'know how to,' 'be aware,' etc.; and in certain forms, if they express instantaneous activity, **savoir** may

mean 'learn,' 'discover' (cf. § 67). Note *il n'en saurait être de même de l'art* (§ 157, l. 12). Stems: *sai* [sɛ rather than se], *sav*, *su*, *sau*, *sach*; cf. *devoir* (§ 465). See §§ 387-390, 402-403, 406-408. Formation in general: cf. *avoir* (§ 425).

Pr. part.: *sachant* [saʃɑ̃] (§ 260, *b*, and § 395). *Vbl. adj.*: *savant-e*, 'learnèd,' 'scholarly,' etc. (§ 260, *b*, and § 396). *Impv.*: *sache*, *sachons* [saʃɔ̃], *sachez* (cf. § 202, and *L.S.*, below; also § 404). *P.p.*: *su-e* (§ 405).

A: *je sais* [usually sɛ], *sais-je* [sɛ:ʒ], as in *Que sais-je?* (§ 403, *a-b*), *tu sais*, *sait-on* [usually sɛʒ]; 4-6 *A*: *savons*, *savez*, *savent* [sa:v]. *B*: *savais* [save] etc. *C*: *sus* etc. (§ 398, *c*). *D*: *saurai* [sɔʁe] etc. (see Note 1, below). *E*: *saurais* etc. *L.S.*: *sache*, *saches*, *sache*, *sachions* [saʃɔ̃, or in more or less self-conscious speech saʃijɔ̃], *sachiez* [saʃe, or in more or less self-conscious speech saʃije] (cf. *impv.*), *sachent* (§ 401). *O.S.*: *susse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

NOTE 1. Formerly *savrai* etc. (§ 394, Notes); so *av* has become *au* in *aurai*. *Savoir* comes from Latin *sapĕre*; *avoir* from *habĕre*.

NOTE 2. *Je ne sache personne qui . . .* 'I know of nobody who . . .', *Je ne sache pas que . . .* 'I am not aware that . . .', and like locutions (not colloquial), seem to make 1 *L.S.* indicative. See § 213, *f*, and § 226, *a*; also § 227, Remark.

470. Valoir [valwa:r], 'be worth' etc., closely resembles *vouloir* (§ 471). Stems: *vau* [vo], *vaud*, *val*, *vaill* [va:j] (§ 391). See §§ 402, 406, 408.

Pr. part.: *valant*. *Vbl. adj.*: *vaillant-e* [va:jɑ̃(t)] 'valiant,' 'able,' etc. (§ 260, *b*, and § 396). *Impv.* never used; one might say *Tâche de valoir* 'Endeavor to be worth' etc., or the like (§ 404). *P.p.*: *valu-e* (§ 405). Note, e.g., *Cela lui a valu d'être élu président* 'That has won him the presidency,' or . . . *une fameuse raclée* '. . . a good licking,' etc.

A: *je vau* [vo] (as to *vau-je* see § 403, *a-b*), *tu vau*, *vaut-elle*; 4-6 *A*: *valons*, *valez*, *valent*. *B*: *valais* [vale] etc. *C*: *valus* etc. (§ 399, *c*). *D*: *vaudrai* [vo:dre] etc. (see Note). *E*: *vaudrais* etc. (§ 394). *L.S.*: *vaill* [va:j], *vailles*, *vaill*, *valions* [valjɔ̃], *valiez*, *vaillent* (*L.S.* has *vaill* if the stem is stressed). *O.S.*: *valusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

NOTE. As in *vouloir* (§ 471), *d* is a glide between *l* and *r* (*valrai*, *valdrai*, *vaudrai*). Cf. *moudre* (§ 450) from Latin *molĕre*, and see § 460, first paragraph.

a. Prévaloir 'prevail' has in *L.S.* *prévale* etc. (§ 401); otherwise, like **valoir**.

b. Falloir [falwa:R] (impersonal; meanings below) occurs only in form 3 of *A-E*, in *L.S.*, *O.S.*, *inf.*, and *p.p.* *fallu* (aux. *avoir*, except in *il s'en est fallu* etc.). Like **valoir**, but has *il* [1] after *fa*.

No *pr. part.* Necessarily no *impv.*; used occasionally (in colloquial French) without *il*.

Examples of falloir

Il faut travailler.	1	It's necessary to work.
Il ne faut pas faire ça.	2	You (I, He, etc.) mustn't do that.
Il faudrait que Jean vienne (bookishly, vint).	3	John would have to come
Il ne faut pas qu'on fasse ça.	4	That must not be done.
Il va falloir payer.	5	We (etc.) are going to have to pay up.
Tu ne feras pas ça. — Faut voir!	6	You're not going to do that. — See if I don't!
BIRON. Il faut des pauvres et des riches.	7	We have to have rich and poor.
D'AUBERVAL. Dites qu'il faut des pauvres aux riches (<i>Le Foyer</i> , I, 3).		Say that the rich have to have the poor.
Combien d'argent lui faut-il? — Il lui en faut beaucoup.	8	How much money does he need? — He needs a good deal.
Voilà un homme comme il faut.	9	That's the right sort of man.
Tu n'es pas aussi laid que lui, il s'en faut (de beaucoup).	10	You're not so ugly as he, not by a good deal.

SUGGESTION. Make a comparative table showing all **valoir**, all *L.S.* of **prévaloir**, and all **falloir** (*prévale* under *vaille*, *faillie* under *prévale*, etc.). Illustrate all **falloir** with subjunctives (examples in §§ 204–238) and with infinitives (§§ 238–258).

471. Vouloir [vulwa:R], 'wish,' 'will,' 'like to,' etc. Groups *A-E* in § 166. Stems: **voul**, **vou(d)**, **veu**, **veill** [vœ:ʝ] (§ 391). Cf. § 470.

Pr. part.: **voulant** (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.* concealed in **bienveillant** [ve:ʝã] 'kind(ly),' 'friendly' (originally **bienveillant**). *Impv.* (§ 202, e). *P.p.*: **voulu-e** (§ 405).

L.S. (save as in § 202): *veuille* [vœ:j], *veuilles*, *veuille*, *vouillions* [vuljʒ], *vouliez*, *veuillent* (cf. *L.S.* in §§ 428, 438, 443, 452, 465, 466, and see § 401). *O.S.*: *voulusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

NOTE. The forms *veux* and *voulez* occur as imperatives in *Ne m'en veux (voulez) pas* 'Don't bear me a grudge.'

472. *Écrire* [ekri:r], 'write,' resembles *dire* (§ 474), but has *v* before *a*, *e*, *i*, *o* (as in *écriv*ant, *écriv*e, *écriv*it, *écriv*ons); cf. *suis*vre (§ 473).

Pr. part.: *écriv*ant (§ 395). No *vbl. adj.* *Impv.* (§ 404). *P. p.*: *écrit*-e.

A: *j'écris* [ekri] (as to *écriv*-je see § 403, *a-b*), *tu écris*, *on écrit* (in 1-3 *A* no *v*); 4-6 *A*: *écriv*ons, *écriv*ez, *écriv*ent [ekri:v]. *B*: *écriv*ais etc. *C*: *écriv*is etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: *écriv*rai etc. (§ 394). *E*: *écriv*rais etc. *L.S.*: *écriv*e [ekri:v] etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: *écriv*isse etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So *circonscrire* 'circumscribe,' *décrire* 'describe,' *inscrire* 'inscribe,' *prescrire* [prèskri:r] 'prescribe,' *proscrire* [pròskri:r] 'proscribe,' *récrire* 'rewrite,' *souscrire* [suscri:r] 'subscribe' etc., and *transcrire* [trãskri:r] 'transcribe.'

473. *Suivre* [sui:vr], 'follow,' closely resembles *écrire* (§ 472).

Pr. part.: *sui*vant (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: *sui*vant-e (§ 396). *Impv.* (§ 404). *P. p.*: *sui*vi-e (§ 405).

A: *je suis* [sui] (*suis*-je 'do I follow' is avoided, but note *suis*-je 'am I'; see § 403, *a-b*), *tu suis*, *elle suit*; 4-6 *A*: *sui*vons, *sui*vez, *sui*vent [sui:v]. *B*: *sui*vais etc. *C*: *sui*vis etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: *sui*vrai etc. (§ 394). *E*: *sui*vrais etc. *L.S.*: *sui*ve [sui:v] etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: *sui*visse etc. (§ 399, *b*).

474. *Dire* [di:r], 'say,' 'tell,' etc., is like *lire* (§ 475), except in 5 *A* (*dites*), in *C*, in *O.S.*, and in *dit*-e (cf. *lu*-e), *p. p.* Cf. § 473.

Pr. part.: *dis*ant (§ 395). No *vbl. adj.* (cf. *médisant*-e 'sharp-tongued,' 'slanderer'). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P. p.*: *dit*-e (§ 405).

A: *je dis* [di], *dis*-je [di:ʒ] (§ 403, *a-b*), *tu dis*, *on dit*; 4-6 *A*: *dison*s [dirʒ], *dites* [dit], *disent* [di:z]. *B*: *dis*ais etc. *C*: *dis* etc. (§ 398, *b*); cf. *C* in §§ 443, 447, 448, 462, 463. *D*: *dir*ai etc. *E*: *dir*ais etc. *L.S.*: *dis*e [di:z] etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: *dis*se etc. (§ 399, *b*).

NOTE. The odd form *dites* (not in *-ez*) occurs elsewhere only in *redire*.

a. *Contredire* 'contradict,' *dédire* (usually *se dédire*) 'retract,' *interdire* 'forbid,' *médire* (*de*) 'disparage,' and *prédire* 'predict,' have *-disez* (not *-dites*) in 5 *A*.

b. *Confire* 'preserve,' 'pickle,' like *contredire*, hardly occurs in *C* or *O.S.* *Suffire* 'suffice' is like *contredire*, but has *suffi*, *p.p.* (not *suffit*); *aux. avoir*.

c. For *maudire*, tr., 'curse,' see § 433.

475. *Lire* [li:R], 'read,' is like *dire* (§ 474), except in 5 *A* (*lisez*: *dites*, not *disez*), *C*, *O.S.*, and *lu-e*, *p.p.* (cf. *dit-e*). *Lis-je* is bookish.

C: *lus* etc. (§ 398, *c*); cf. *C* in §§ 437, 438, 450-453, 460, 464-471. *O.S.*: *lusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

a. So *élire* 'elect' and *relire* 'read again.'

476. *Plaire* [plɛ:R], 'please' (*lui plaire*), has *plais* [plɛ(:)z] before *a*, *e*, *o* (*plaisant*, *plaise*, *plaisons*); *plu* in *C*, in *O.S.*, and in *p.p.*

Pr. part.: *plaisant* (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: *plaisant-e* 'funny,' 'odd' (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: *plu* (*aux. avoir*): *Elles s'étaient plu* (not *plues*) 'They had liked each other' (§ 428, *a*).

A: *je plais* [plɛ], no *plais-je*, *tu plais*, *il leur plaît* [plɛ] (note ^); 4-6 *A*: *plaisons* [plɛ:z], *plaisez*, *plaisent* [plɛ:z]. *B*: *plaisais* etc. *C*: *plus* etc. (§ 398, *c*). *D*: *plairai* [plɛ:re] etc. *E*: *plairais* etc. (§ 394). *L.S.*: *plaise* etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: *plusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*).

a. So *complaire* 'humor' (à) with *se complaire à* 'delight in,' and *déplaire* 'displease' (à).

b. *Taire* [tɛ:R], 'cause to be silent' (usually *faire taire qqn.* and *se taire* 'be silent,' 'become silent'), has no ^ in *tait* (3 *A*), and *tu-e*, *p.p.*, is variable (§ 405); otherwise *taire* is like *plaire*.

477. *Vivre* [vi:vR] 'live,' is exactly like *sivre* (§ 473) in its *pr. part.* and *vbl. adj.* *vivant-e* (§§ 395-396); in its *impv.* *vis*, *vivons*, *vivez* (§ 404); also in groups *A*, *B*, *D*, *E*, and *L.S.*; but in *C* it has *vécus* etc. (§ 398, *c*); in *O.S.*, *vécusse* etc. (§ 399, *c*). These two groups, with the *p.p.* *vécu* (occasionally variable, as in *une histoire vécue* 'a story that has been [seemingly] lived'), give *vivre* a place between

§ 473 and § 478 (§ 388). See §§ 389-392, 397, 401 (Note 2), 402-408. Stems: **vi, viv, véc** (§ 391). Aux. **avoir**.

NOTE. **Qui vive?** (**Être sur le qui vive**, or **qui-vive**, = 'Be on the lookout' etc.) means 'Who goes there?' (Possible answer: **Ami**.) See § 213, *e*.

a. So **revivre** 'live again' and **survivre** (**à**) 'survive.'

478. Faire [fɛ:r], 'do,' 'make,' etc.; causally, 'have,' 'make,' 'get . . . to,' etc.: **Je le ferai faire** 'I shall have (get) it done' ('cause it to be done'), etc. (§ 161, Note 3; § 244, *a*). Stems: **fai, fais** [z], **fi, fe, fass**, and note **font** for 6 *A*.

NOTE. See important idioms in § 247, *h-i*, § 301, *b*, § 302, *b*, and § 378, Notes 1-3.

Pr. part.: **faisant** [usually fɛzɑ̃] (§ 395). No *vbl. adj.*; but note **bien-faisant-e** 'kind,' 'beneficial' (§ 396). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **fait-e**.

A: **je fais** [usually fɛ] (in some cases, **fais-je** [fɛ:ʒ]; see § 403, *a-b*), **tu fais** [fɛ], **on fait**; 4-6 *A*: **faisons** [usually fɛzɔ̃], **faites** [fet], **font** [fɔ̃], **font-ils** [fɔ̃(ɔ̃)til]. *B*: **faisais** [usually fɛzɛ] etc. *C*: **fis** etc. (§ 398, *b*). *D*: **ferai** [f(ə)RE] etc. (§ 394, Note 2). *E*: **ferais** etc. (§ 394). *L.S.*: **fasse** etc. (§ 401). *O.S.*: **fisse** etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So **contrefaire** 'imitate,' 'counterfeit,' **défaire** 'undo,' **méfaire** (archaic; intr.; chiefly as *inf.*) 'do wrong,' **refaire** 'do again,' 'remake,' **satisfaire** 'satisfy,' **surfaire** 'overcharge.'

b. **Forfaire** 'fail' in (**à**) a duty etc. is limited to *inf.*, *A*, and *p.p.* (aux. **avoir**); **malfaire** 'do wrong' occurs only as *inf.*; **parfaire** 'complete,' 'perfect,' is rare except in *inf.* and *p.p.*: **parfait-e** 'perfected,' 'perfect.'

479. Rire [ri:r], 'laugh' (**at, de**), typifies a few verbs having no medial consonant¹ except in *D*, *E*, and *inf.* (cf. 418). Stem: **ri** (§ 391). See § 408.

Pr. part.: **riant** (§§ 395-396). *Vbl. adj.*: **riant-e** (§ 260, *c*). *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P.p.*: **ri** (§ 405). **Se rire de** = 'make light of.'

¹ However, between *ri* and any stressed inflectional vowel a [j] is usually inserted; so that commonly **riant** = [rijɑ̃], **riez** = [rije], **riais** = [rije] **riens**, = [rijɔ̃], etc. This insertion of [j] is common in all kinds of words wherein *i* immediately precedes a stressed vowel—at all events, in un-selfconscious speech. See § 418.

A: je ris [ri] (as to ris-je see § 403, *a-b*), tu ris, on rit; 4-6 *A*: rions [riʒ or rijʒ], riez [rie or rije], rient [ri]. *B*: riais [rie or rije] etc. (cf. § 418). *C*: ris etc. (§ 398, *b*, and Note). *D*: rirai etc. (§ 394). *E*: rirais etc. *L.S.*: rie [ri] etc. (§§ 401, 418). *O.S.*: risse etc. (§ 399, *b*).

a. So sourire 'smile.'

b. So conclure 'conclude' (logically or illogically); but with *u* throughout. In *C* (§ 398, *c*) and in *O.S.* (§ 399, *c*), *u* of the stem (§ 391) is confused with *u* of the inflection, like *i* in rire. Exclure 'exclude' is like conclure. Inclure hardly occurs save in ci-inclus-e 'herewith enclosed' (§ 276).

480. Clore [klo:r], 'close,' 'enclose,' hardly used except in clos-e, *p.p.*, has in *A* je clos [klo], no clos-je (§ 403), tu clos, on clôt (note ^); no pl. No *B*, *C*, or *O.S.* *D*: clorai etc. *E*: clorais etc. *L.S.*: close etc. (§ 401); cf. rie and conclue, without the medial *s*. Clos, *p.p.*, is perhaps met oftenest in à huis clos 'behind closed doors.' See § 408.

a. So déclore 'throw open.' Seldom used.

b: Éclore (of flowers) 'open,' (of eggs) 'hatch,' intr. (of chicks) 'be hatched,' intr. (of day) 'dawn,' occurs only in forms 3 and 6, as follows: 3 *A*: éclôt (note ^); 6 *A*: éclorent. 3 *B*: écloisait; 6 *B*: écloisaient. 3 *D*: éclora; 6 *D*: écloront. 3 *E*: éclorait; 6 *E*: écloraient. 3 *L.S.*: éclose; 6 *L.S.*: éclorent. *P.p.*: éclose (§ 405); aux. être.

c. Enclore 'enclose' (e.g. with walls) is like clore, but in *A* has enclosions, enclosez, encloient, and has all *B*: enclosais etc.; also encloient. Few of these forms, save enclore and enclose, are likely to be met.

d. Forclore 'estop' (legal) hardly occurs save in *inf.* and *p.p.* forclos-e.

NOTE. Originally, clore, éclore, etc. were conjugated like rire (§ 479).

481. Gésir [ʒèzi:r] 'lie' (as in a grave), an isolated type, has the following forms, all archaic, technical, or jocular:

Pr. part.: gisant (§ 260). *Vbl. adj.* (very rare): gisant-e (§ 396). No *impv.* No *p.p.*

A: je gis (?), tu gis (?), il (?) git (note ^), nous gisons (?), vous gisez (?), ils (elles) gisent. *B*: gisais etc., but hardly used save in gisait and gisaient.

NOTES. In epitaphs, *Ci-gît . . .* 'Here lies . . .' and *Ci-gisent . . .* 'Here lie . . .' are common. *Là gît la difficulté* is not wholly uncolloquial. Various forms (3 and 6) are used of ores in the earth. In ordinary language, all forms of *gésir* are now replaced by *être étendu-e*, *être couché-e*, etc. Living French has no single verbs to express 'lie' and 'stand'; 'stand' = *être debout*, *se tenir*, etc.

482. *Tenir* [t(ə)ni:R], 'hold,' 'keep,' etc., and *venir* 'come,' constitute a well-marked type of which they and their derivatives are the only members. Group *C*, with its nasal vowel [tē(:)], stands alone in the French verbs (§ 398, *d*); likewise *O.S.* Stems: *ten*, *tien*, *tiend*, *tienn*, *tin* (but in *tins* etc., the stem is confused with the inflectional endings; §§ 391-392).

Pr. part.: *tenant* (§ 395). *Vbl. adj.*: *tenant-e* (§ 396); e.g. in *séance tenante* 'while still in session,' 'then and there.' *Impv.* as in *A* (§ 404). *P. p.*: *tenu-e* (§ 405).

A: *je tiens* [tjɛ̃] (as to *tiens-je* see § 403, *a-b*), *tu tiens*, *on tient* [tjɛ̃], *tient-on* [tjɛ̃:tɔ̃]; 4-6 *A*: *tenons* [t(ə)nɔ̃], *tenez*, *tiennent* [tjen] (*ie* or *e*, according to stress). *B*: *tenais* [t(ə)nɛ] etc. *C*: *tins* [tɛ̃], *tins*, *tint* (no ^), *tinmes* [tɛ̃:m], *tintes* [tɛ̃:t], *tinrent* [tɛ̃:R] (§ 398, *d*). *D*: *tiendrai* [tjɛ̃:drɛ] etc. (see Note). *E*: *tiendrais* etc. (§ 394). *L.S.*: *tienne* [tjen], *tiennes*, *tienne*; 4-5 *L.S.*: *tenions* [tənjɔ̃], *teniez* [tənje]; 6 *L.S.*: *tiennent*. *O.S.*: *tinsse* [tɛ̃:s] etc. (§ 399, *d*).

NOTE. Instead of *tiendrai* etc. we should expect *tenirai* etc. (§ 394). In Old French, the forms in *D* and *E* were *ten(d)rai* etc. (the Latin *inf.* was *tenēre*). Confusion with *D* and *E* of *tendre* (like *vendre*, § 445), led to the creation of *tiendrai* etc., by analogy to *je tiens* etc. Likewise *vendrai* etc., for *venir* (cf. *vendrai* for *vendre*), became *viendrai* etc. See § 394, Notes.

REMARK. With *je viens* etc. + *inf.*, French expresses utmost recency: *Il vient de partir* 'He has just gone out'; with *je venais de* etc. + *inf.* an act is made immediately to precede another act, usually, an act completed at a definite moment in the past (§§ 65-67). Thus used (only in *A* and *B*), *venir de* is an auxiliary verb, and *vient de* in *Il vient de partir* is comparable with *est* in *Il est parti tout à l'heure* ('a moment ago').

a. Venir [v(ə)ni:R] 'come,' with *s'en venir* 'come along' etc., is conjugated precisely like *tenir*. So all derivatives of *tenir* and *venir*.

b. Derivatives of *tenir*. *S'abstenir* 'refrain' (from, *de*), *appartenir* 'belong' (to, *à*), *contenir* 'contain,' *détenir* 'hold' (in one's possession), 'detain' (as in prison), *entretenir* 'keep up' (as a household), 'converse with . . . about' (*de*), *maintenir* 'maintain,' *obtenir* [ɔptɛni:r] 'obtain,' *retenir* 'retain,' *soutenir* 'support,' 'maintain' (in arguing), etc.

c. Derivatives of *venir*. *Avenir* (mostly archaic; in 3d sg.; aux. *être*) 'happen' etc., *advenir* (in 3d sg.; aux. *être*) 'happen,' *convenir* 'agree,' 'admit,' 'suit' (usually with *être*; likewise *disconvenir* 'deny'), *contrevenir* (*à*) 'violate' (aux. *avoir*), *circonvenir* 'foil,' 'get round' (tr.; aux. *avoir*), *devenir* 'become' (aux. *être*), *intervenir* 'intervene' (aux. *être*), *parvenir* (*à*) 'succeed' (in) (aux. *être*); also *prévenir* 'forestall,' 'warn' (aux. *avoir*), *provenir* 'come from' (a source) (aux. *être*), *revenir* 'come back' (aux. *être*), *redevenir* 'become again' (aux. *être*), *se souvenir de* 'recollect' (§ 427, *a*), *subvenir à* 'aid' (aux. *avoir*), *survenir* 'occur,' 'appear on the scene' (aux. *être*), *se ressouvenir de* 'recall again' (§ 427, *a*).

NOTE. *Se souvenir de* occurs in all forms (cf. § 427, *a*); *souvenir de*, with dative, only in form 3: *Il lui souvient de cette affaire* 'He recalls that matter' (*Il lui en souvient, Il lui en était souvenu*).

483. SPECIAL INDEX OF VERB-TYPES AND OF ODD FORMS

NOTE 1. Except for good reasons, verbs that have obvious or casual prefixes are not included. Among these prefixes (mostly frequent) are —

a	circon	de	é	im	mal	par	r	sou
abs	com	des	em	in	mé	per	ra	sous
ac	con	dés	en	inter	més	pour	re	sub
ad	contre	dis	entre			pré	ré	sur
ap	cor	discon	ex			pres	ren	
at						pro	res	trans

NOTE 2. All odd forms (as *va* from *aller*) are printed in full, or are adequately identified by initial letters (as *ir-* from *aller*, etc.). See § 406. The circumflex accent (^) cannot be conveniently reproduced in all cases.

NOTE 3. For all verbs in *-aindre*, *-eindre*, and *oindre* see *ceindre* (§ 458).

NOTE 4. For all verbs in *-andre*, *-endre*, and *-ondre* see *vendre* (§ 445).

NOTE 5. For all verbs that before a *o* or *o* change *c* to *ç* (as *rincer*), and *g* to *ge* (as *manger*), see § 160.

NOTE 6. For all verbs in which *e* + one consonant (as in *mener*) changes under stress to *è*, in which *el* becomes *ell* or *èl* and *et* becomes *ett* or *ète*,

392 INDEX OF VERB-TYPES AND ODD FORMS

and in which *é* + one consonant or two (*céder*, *pénétrer*) changes to *e*, see § 162.

NOTE 7. For all verbs in which *y* may become *i*, or *i* become *y* (as in *payer*, *employer*, and *essuyer*), see §§ 158 and 419.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>a</i> , § 425 | choir, § 464 | <i>déçu</i> -, § 465 | <i>fer</i> -, § 478 |
| abattre, § 444 | circonscrire, § 472 | déduire, § 459 | férir, § 437 |
| <i>absol</i> -, § 451 | clore, § 480 | <i>désappr</i> -, § 448 | <i>fi</i> -, § 478 |
| acquérir, § 443 | comparer, § 460 | descendre, § 445 | finir, § 423 |
| agir, § 400 | concevoir, § 465 | détruire, § 459 | fleurir, § 431 |
| <i>ai</i> -, § 425 | conclure, § 479 | devoir, § 465 | <i>floriss</i> -, § 431 |
| <i>aill</i> -, § 428 | <i>conçoi</i> -, § 465 | <i>di</i> -, § 474 | fondre, § 445 |
| aimer, § 417 | <i>conçu</i> -, § 465 | dire, § 474 | <i>font</i> -, § 478 |
| aller, § 428 | conduire, § 459 | <i>dissol</i> -, § 451 | frire, § 455 |
| apercevoir, § 465 | confire, § 474 | dissoudre, § 451 | <i>fu</i> -, § 426 |
| <i>aperçoi</i> -, § 465 | connaître, § 460 | <i>doi</i> -, § 465 | fuir, § 456 |
| <i>aperçu</i> -, § 465 | <i>connu</i> -, § 460 | dormir, § 435 | <i>fuy</i> -, § 456 |
| apparoir, § 460 | conquérir, § 443 | <i>du</i> -, § 465 | geindre, § 458 |
| appartenir, § 482 | construire, § 459 | <i>éché</i> -, § 464 | gésir, § 481 |
| <i>appert</i> -, § 460 | correspondre, § 445 | <i>écherr</i> -, § 464 | <i>gi</i> -, § 481 |
| <i>as</i> , § 425 | coudre, § 449 | <i>échu</i> -, § 464 | hair, § 432 |
| asseoir, § 462 | courir, § 437 | écrire, § 472 | <i>hais</i> , <i>hait</i> , § 432 |
| <i>assey</i> -, § 462 | courre, § 437 | enduire, § 459 | inclure, § 479 |
| <i>assi</i> -, § 462 | <i>cous</i> -, § 449 | <i>enverr</i> -, § 429 | induire, § 459 |
| <i>assoï</i> -, § 462 | couvrir, § 440 | envoyer, § 429 | inscrire, § 472 |
| <i>aur</i> -, § 425 | craindre, § 458 | <i>es</i> , § 426 | instruire, § 459 |
| avoir, § 425 | croire, § 453 | <i>est</i> , § 426 | introduire, § 459 |
| <i>ay</i> -, § 425 | <i>croiss</i> -, § 460 | être, § 426 | <i>ir</i> -, § 428 |
| battre, § 444 | croître, § 460 | <i>eu</i> -, § 425 | <i>issu</i> , § 437 |
| bénir, § 430 | <i>cru</i> -, §§ 453, 460 | exclure, § 479 | joindre, § 458 |
| boire, § 452 | cueillir, § 441 | <i>fai</i> -, § 478 | lire, § 475 |
| <i>bou</i> -, § 436 | cuire, § 459 | <i>faille</i> , § 470 | <i>lu</i> -, § 475 |
| bouillir, § 436 | <i>cuis</i> -, § 459 | faillir, § 442 | luire, § 459 |
| braire, § 454 | décevoir, § 465 | faire, § 478 | maintenir, § 482 |
| bruire, § 457 | <i>décherr</i> -, § 464 | falloir, § 470 | maudire, § 433 |
| <i>bu</i> -, § 452 | déchoir, § 464 | <i>fass</i> -, § 478 | mentir, § 435 |
| céder, § 400 | <i>déchu</i> -, § 464 | <i>fau</i> -, §§ 442, 470 | |
| ceindre, § 458 | <i>déçoi</i> -, § 465 | feindre, § 458 | |
| | décrire, § 472 | fendre, § 445 | |

- mettre, § 447
meu-, §§ 438, 466
mi-, § 447
 mordre, § 445
mort, § 438
 moudre, § 450
moul-, § 450
 mourir, § 438
 mouvoir, § 466
mu-, § 466

naiss-, § 461
 naître, § 461
naqui-, § 461
né, § 461
 nuire, § 459

 obtenir, § 482
 offrir, § 440
 oindre, § 458
 omettre, § 447
omi-, § 447
ont, § 425
 ouïr, § 434
 ouvrir, § 440

paiss-, § 460
 paître, § 460
 paraître, § 460
 parler, § 416
 partir, § 435
paru-, § 460
 peindre, § 458
 pendre, § 445
 percevoir, § 465
perçoi-, § 465
perçu-, § 465
 perdre, § 445

peu-, § 468
 plaindre, § 458
 plaire, § 476
plais-, § 476
 pleuvoir, § 467
plu-, §§ 467, 476
 poindre, § 458
 pondre, § 445
pourr-, § 468
 pouvoir, §§ 453, 463
pourvu-, § 453
 pouvoir, § 468
pren-, § 448
 prendre, § 448
 prescrire, § 472
pri-, § 448
 produire, § 459
 proscrire, § 472
pu-, § 468
puis-, § 468

 quérir, § 443

 rapprendre, § 448
rappri-, § 448
 rasseoir, § 462
rassi-, § 462
 ravoir, § 425
 recevoir, § 465
 reclure, § 479
reçoi-, § 465
 récrire, § 472
reçu-, § 465
 réduire, § 459
 rendormir, § 435
 rendre, § 445

 répandre, § 445
 repentir, § 435
résol-, § 451
 résoudre, § 451
 rire, § 479
 rompre, § 445

sach-, § 469
sai-, § 469
 saillir, § 423
saur-, § 469
 savoir, § 469
 secourir, § 437
 séduire, § 459
 sentir, § 435
 seoir, § 462
ser-, §§ 426, 435
 servir, § 435
sey-, § 462
sie-, § 462
sié-, § 462
sis-, § 462
soi-, §§ 426, 462
sommes, § 426
sont, § 426
 sortir, § 435
 souffrir, § 440
 sourdre, § 445
 souscrire, § 472
soy-, § 426
su-, § 469
 suffire, § 474
sui-, §§ 426, 473
 suivre, § 473

 taire, § 476
tais-, § 476

 teindre, § 458
 tendre, § 445
 tenir, § 482
tien-, § 482
tin-, § 482
tissu, § 444
 tondre, § 445
 tordre, § 445
 traduire, § 459
 traire, § 454
 transcrire, § 472
tu-, § 476

va, § 428
vail-, § 470
 vaincre, § 446
vais, § 428
 valoir, § 470
vas, § 428
vau-, § 470
vécu-, § 477
 vendre, § 445
 venir, § 482
verr-, § 463
 vêtir, § 439
vou-, § 471
veuil-, § 471
vi-, §§ 463, 477
vien-, § 482
vin-, § 482
 vivre, § 477
 voir, § 463
vont, § 428
voud-, § 471
 vouloir, § 471
voy-, § 463
vu, § 463

THE GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS

GENDER

484. General Observations. To continue § 35,—broadly speaking, all French nouns are either masculine or feminine; but grammatical gender often conflicts with natural sex, even when natural sex is obvious. On the other hand, in many cases French hesitates or refuses to apply prepositional groups, such as **avant lui** (for 'before it'), **pour lui** (for 'for it'), **dans lui** (for 'in it'), etc., to obviously sexless nouns, such as **le dîner** 'the dinner,' **le lit** 'the bed,' etc. Likewise **pour elle-s**, **dans eux**, etc. See § 304.

a. The sex of the larger animals is commonly recognized by a special form, as **le lion**, **la lionne**; but a mare (**une jument**) is usually called **un cheval**, and a cock-partridge is simply **une perdrix**, unless its sex is important (**une perdrix mâle**)—but note **le coq** 'the cock' and **la poule** 'the hen.'

b. In some cases, grammatical gender violently conflicts with natural sex: **la sentinelle** (§ 85).

485. French nouns (and markedly those that name inanimate things) so often have a purely formal gender that it is necessary to state a good many rules as to gender.

486. Gender Determined by Derivation. (A principle of little value to persons unacquainted with Latin.) In general, French nouns preserve their original Latin gender. Thus, to give four examples, **murus** ('wall') > (**le**) **mur**, **fenestra** ('window') > (**la**) **fenêtre**, **digitus** ('finger') > (**le**) **doigt**, and **bucca** ('mouth') > (**la**) **bouche**.

Note that the sign > means 'became,' 'gave,' 'becomes,' etc. Note also that nearly all the modern forms of French nouns were derived from a Latin objective form, usually the accusative; but we give **murus**, for instance, instead of **murum**, to avoid concealing its gender. †

a. Many nouns called masculine (cf. § 484) were neuter in Latin: **verbum** 'word' > (**le**) **verbe** 'verb,' **corpus** 'body' > (**le**) **corps**, **ligamen**

'bond' > (1e) *lien*, *mel* 'honey' > (1e) *miel*, etc. Yet *jumentum* 'beast of burden' > (1a) *jument* 'mare,' *mare* 'sea' > (1a) *mër*, and other exceptions occur.

b. Latin neuters plural were often taken for feminines singular: *folia* 'leaves' > (1a) *feuille* 'leaf,' *gaudia* 'joys' > (1a) *joie* 'joy,' etc.

c. If a Latin noun had two genders, usually only one survived: *cinerem* 'ashes' > (1a) *cendre* 'ashes,' *finem* 'end' > (1a) *fin*, etc.

d. Of the Latin feminines in *-us*, only (1a) *main*, from *manus*, survives.

e. Analogy has led to (1e) *front* 'forehead,' because *frons frontis* resembled *mons montis* (1e *Mont-Blanc*), *pons pontis* (*pont* 'bridge'), etc.

f. Latin nouns in *-tor*, denoting an agent, remained masculine, and came to end in *-eur*: *laboratorem* > *laboureur* 'plowman,' *auctorem* > *auteur* 'author,' **pinctor* (for *pictor*) > *peintre* 'painter' (§ 25, b), etc. But

g. Latin masculines in *-or* became feminine, because most of them were abstract nouns and in French such nouns are usually feminine: *colorem* 'color' > *couleur*, *florem* 'flower' > *fleur*, etc. By analogy, words of like ending, even though not descended from a given Latin ancestor, are also feminine: *rondeur* 'roundness,' *maigreur* 'thinness,' etc.

NOTE. *Honneur* 'honor' and *déshonneur* are still masculine; also *labour* 'toil,' *labour* 'tillage,' and *amour* 'love.' In archaic poetry, *amours*, pl., is occasionally made feminine, as in the Middle Ages.

h. Nouns derived from various foreign languages ('loan-words') keep their original gender, or change it sometimes because of some real or fancied resemblance to certain native words. The Latin ending *-a* (*stella* > *étoile* 'star') is no longer felt to be feminine; hence *un opéra*; but note *la villa* 'villa.' Nouns borrowed from English usually follow French models: *ale* f., *bifteck* m. 'beefsteak,' *record* m., etc.; but note *châle* m. (from 'shawl'), etc.

i. Many nouns which have the characteristically feminine ending *-e* are masculine because this *-e* does not go back to Latin *-a* (as in *stella*), but has been kept to ease the pronunciation of difficult consonant-groups, as in *livre* 'book' from *librum* (*liber*), etc. See § 25, a, Note.

487. ~~Natural~~ Gender. Nouns denoting the holders of positions peculiar chiefly to males are almost always masculine: *banquier* 'banker,' *libraire* 'bookseller,' *capitaine* 'captain,' etc.

NOTE. Hence **une recrue** (or sometimes **un recrue**) 'recruit,' **une sentinelle**, and **une vedette** 'sentry,' 'scout,' 'lookout' (also 'sentry-box') are remarkable.

REMARK. Certain personal nouns are feminine, to whomever applied: **connaissance** 'acquaintance,' **caution** 'surety' (in law), **dupe** 'dupe,' **personne** (cf. § 376), **pratique** 'customer,' **victime**, etc.

a. If need be, a masculine noun which lacks a feminine mate (§ 488) may, without change of gender, be applied to a woman: **Madame de Sévigné est un bon auteur (écrivain)** 'Madame de Sévigné is a good author (writer).'

Similarly **ange** 'angel,' **médecin** 'physician,' **officier** 'officer,' **peintre** 'painter,' **poète** 'poet,' **témoin** 'witness,' etc.

488. Natural Gender Distinguished by Pairs. When separate forms exist to denote males and their corresponding females, each form is exclusively masculine or feminine. This may be illustrated (a) by cognate forms, and (b) by non-cognate forms. (Supply the correct English feminines.)

a.

Cognate Forms

roi	king	reine	orphelin	orphan	orpheline
prêtre	priest	prêtresse	ouvrier	workman	ouvrière
héros	hero	héroïne	marchand	shopkeeper	marchande
époux	husband	épouse	acteur	actor	actrice
lion	lion	lionne	ambassadeur	ambassador	ambassadrice
chat	cat	chatte	empereur	emperor	impératrice
chien	dog	chienne	menteur	liar	menteuse
loup	wolf	louve	serviteur	servant	servante
ours	bear	ourse	un mort	(§ 340)	une morte
renard	fox	renarde	un pauvre	(§ 340)	une pauvre
dindon	turkey	dinde	François	Francis	Françoise

NOTE 1. The wife of a **gouverneur** ('governor') would be **la femme du gouverneur**; whereas **gouvernante** = 'governess.'

NOTE 2. **Hébreu** 'Hebrew' has no feminine; note **juif** 'Jew(-ish),' **juive**.

REMARK. The list above, and that below, contain only typical forms; many more might be added.

b.

Non-cognate Forms

homme	femme	mari	femme	frère	sœur
man	woman	husband	wife	brother	sister
coq	poule	oncle	tante	gendre	belle-fille
cock	hen	uncle	aunt	son-in-law	daughter-in-law

489. Isolated Forms. To distinguish the sex of animals represented by only one noun, *mâle* or *femelle* may be added: *une baleine mâle* = 'a bull whale,' *une baleine femelle* = 'a cow whale' (cf. English 'he-bear' and 'she-bear').

a. For a few nouns, sex may be indicated by the articles: *un (une) aigle* = 'a male (female) eagle,' *un (une) enfant* = 'a boy' or 'a girl,' etc.

NOTE. A good many nouns in *-aire* and *-iste* allow this differentiation.

490. Homonyms. Without varying otherwise, forty or more nouns vary in meaning according to the gender chosen. Not all come from the same etymons (original or earliest known forms). Examples:

- aide**: F. 'help,' '(female) helper'; M. '(man) helper,' 'assistant,' 'aid.'
crêpe: M. 'crêpe' (a fabric); F. 'pancake.' (From *crispum* and *crispa*.)
critique: M. (adj. as noun) 'critic'; F. (Greek *kritiké*) 'criticism.'
enseigne: F. 'banner,' 'sign' (e.g. over a shop); M. 'standard-bearer.'
faux: F. (Latin *falcem*) 'scythe'; M. (L. *falsum*) 'forgery.'
garde: F. 'guard' (an activity); M. 'guard' (a man).
guide: M. 'guide'; F. (usually pl.) 'rein' (part of harness).
livre: M. (L. *liber*) 'book'; F. (L. *libra*) 'pound' (weight).
manche: M. (L. *manicum*) 'handle'; F. (L. *manica*) 'sleeve.'
manœuvre: F. 'maneuver,' 'handling,' etc.; M. 'laborer.'
mémoire: F. 'memory'; M. 'memorandum' etc.
mode: F. 'fashion' (of dress etc.); M. 'mood' (in grammar) etc.
moule: M. 'mold' (L. *modulus*); F. 'mussel' (L. *musculus*, shell-fish).
mousse: F. (Old German *mos*) 'moss'; M. (Ital. *mozzo*) 'cabin-boy.'
office: F. 'pantry'; M. 'service' (in church).
page: F. (L. *pagina*) 'page' (in a book); M. (origin uncertain) 'page.'
pendule: F. 'clock' (moved by a pendulum); M. 'pendulum.'
poêle: M. I (L. *pensile*) 'stove' (in this sense, preferably *poile*); M. 2 (L. *pallium*) '[mortuary] pall'; F. (L. *patella*) 'frying-pan,' 'pan.'
tour: M. (L. *tornum*) 'tour,' 'turn'; F. (L. *turrim*) 'tower.'
voile: F. 'sail' (§ 486, b); M. 'veil.'

NOTE. *Relâche* may be always feminine, whether it means 'intermission' ('no performance') or 'port to run into' (for vessels).

491. The Gender of *après-midi*, *automobile*, and *gens*. Here (cf. § 490) fluctuation does not affect the meaning.

a. *Après-midi* usually shows itself to be feminine when coupled with a gender-revealing adjective: *toute l'après-midi* 'the whole afternoon.'

Note the possible division (purely phonetic) into *la près-midi*; perhaps influenced also by (*toute*) *la matinée* 'the (whole) morning,' or likewise by *journée* and *soirée*, 'day' and 'evening' conceived as definite time-units.

b. *Automobile* (familiarly *une auto*) is almost always feminine; it abbreviates *une voiture automobile*, already obsolete.

c. *Gens* is the plural of *gent* (L. *gens, gentis*), always feminine, but now used only for its quaint (archaic) effect, as in *la gent ailée*, 'the winged race' (i.e. the birds), 'the feathered folk.' Having become a synonym of *les hommes*, *les gens* has become *partly* masculine; a variable adjective immediately preceding it (proclitic) must be feminine (*les vieilles gens* 'the old folks'); an adjective or participle following it is usually masculine (*des gens oisifs* 'idle people'); *jeunes gens*, a compound contrasting with *jeunes filles* ('girls,' 'young ladies') and meaning 'young men' (or, inclusively, 'young folks'), is purely masculine: *ces courageux jeunes gens*. Likewise *gens de lettres* 'men of letters.'

492. Gender Indicated by Suffixes. (Cf. § 488.) A suffix (as in *jardin-ier* or *français*) is a syllable or a group of syllables added to a stem to give that stem a special meaning.¹ In some cases, suffixes once clearly distinguishable as such have been obscured, as in *poing* 'fist' from *pugnum* (-um) and in *France* from *Franc-ia*; but a good many others are still easy to identify and should help to determine gender. Here follow some of the most frequent types.

a. Nouns in *-ie* are nearly all feminine: *folie* 'madness,' etc.

NOTE. *Incendie* 'conflagration' comes from *incendium*, n., and is masculine.

b. Nouns in *-erie* are feminine: *galerie* 'gallery,' etc.

¹ The term suffix is not usually applied to pluralizing letters, nor to the inflectional endings of verbs (§ 392).

c. Nouns in **-i** and **-ie** are respectively masculine and feminine: **ami** m., **amie** f., 'friend.'

d. Nouns in **-age** are nearly all masculine: **voyage**, **courage**, etc.

NOTE. **Rage**, f., 'hydrophobia,' 'anger,' 'passion,' comes from *rabies*, f., later *rabia*. Note **à la nage** '(by) swimming.'

e. Nouns in **-is** and **-isse** are respectively masculine and feminine: **croquis** 'sketch,' **jaunisse** 'jaundice.' Similarly those in **-as** and **-asse**.

f. Nouns in **-eresse** are feminine: **forteresse** 'fortress,' etc.

g. Nouns in **-euil**, **-eul**, **-eu**, **-ul**, and **-ol** are almost always masculine, while those in **-euille**, **-eulle**, and **-ole** are characteristically feminine: **écureuil** 'squirrel,' **filleul** 'godson,' **moyeu** 'hub,' **rossignol** 'nightingale'; feminine, **feuille** (*folia*) 'leaf,' **filleule** 'goddaughter,' **casseroles** 'saucepan.'

h. Nouns in **-ail**, **-eil**, **-il**, and **-ouil** (almost invariably masculine) correspond to feminine nouns in **-aille**, **-eille**, **-ille**, and **-ouille**. Examples: **gouvernail** 'rudder,' **volaille** 'poultry,' 'fowls'; **orteil** 'great toe,' **bouteille** 'bottle'; **gril** [gri] 'gridiron,' **grille** [gri:j] 'grating' (of metal); **fenouil** [fənu:j] 'fennel,' **quenouille** [kənu:j] 'distaff.'

NOTE. Formerly **genou** 'knee,' **pou** 'louse,' and **verrou** 'bolt' (part of a lock), were spelt **genouil**, **pouil**, **verrouil**.

i. Nouns in **-al** and **-el** (mostly from adjectives) are masculine: **journal** 'newspaper,' **missel** 'missal.'

j. Nouns in **-ain**, **-ein**, **-ien**, and **-in** (nearly all masculine) often correspond to feminines in **-aine**, **-ienne**, and **-ine**. Examples: **parrain** 'stepfather,' **marraine** 'stepmother'; **sein** (*sinum*) 'breast,' **veine** (*vena*) 'vein'; **Prussien** 'Prussian,' **Prussienne** (note also **doyen** 'dean,' with **doyenne** 'eldest lady'); **butin** 'booty,' **raisins** 'grapes,' **bottine** 'boot' (in U. S. A., 'shoe'), etc.

NOTE. These and other endings are characteristic also of pure adjectives.

k. Nouns in **-on**, corresponding to nouns in **-onne**, and usually not abstract, must be distinguished from a large number of nouns (mostly abstract) with no form in **-onne**. Examples: **fripon** 'rogue,' **friponne** 'hussy'; **baron** 'baron,' **baronne** 'baroness.'

NOTE. **Laideron** 'ugly creature' (girl or woman) and **souillon** 'slattern' are feminine.

l. Most nouns in **-son** and **-tion** are feminine: **maison** 'house,' **raison** 'reason,' **prison** 'prison,' **nation** 'nation,' etc.

REMARK. This is notably true of abstract nouns. Nouns of this class are nearly all derived from Latin feminines in **-tio** **-tionis** and **-sio** **-sionis**. Include **la façon**, 'the fashion,' from **factio** **factionis**.

m. On nouns in **-eur** (as **empereur** and **couleur**) see § 486, *f-g*, and § 488.

n. Nouns in **-ure** are feminine: **allure** 'gait,' **couverture** 'covering,' etc.

o. Nouns in **-oir** are nearly all masculine: **abattoir** 'slaughter-house.' Nouns in **-oire** are mostly feminine: **histoire** 'history,' 'story.'

NOTE. **Réfectoire**, *m.*, 'refectory,' is a learned word (*L. refectorium*).

p. Nouns and adjectives in **-er**, **-ère**, and **-ier**, **-ière**, are respectively masculine and feminine: **ménager** (archaic) 'manager,' 'economist,' etc., **ménagère** 'housewife'; **écolier** 'schoolboy,' **écolière** 'schoolgirl'; etc. Note **la cuiller** (or **la cuillère**) [kujje:R] 'the spoon.'

q. Abstract nouns in **-é** and **-ée** are feminine: **beauté** 'beauty,' **année** 'year,' etc.

r. All abstract nouns in **-esse**, and some not abstract, are feminine: **ivresse** 'drunkenness,' **pauvresse** 'poor woman,' etc. Also all abstract nouns in **-ise**: **convoitise** 'covetousness,' etc.

s. Nouns in **-if** (or simply **-f**), **-eau**, **-et** (always [ɛ]), **-at** (always [a]), **-let** (always [lɛ]), **-ot** (always [o]), **-ais**, **-ois**, **-eux**, and **-oux** are almost all masculine (likewise such adjectives); note the corresponding feminines:

canif	knife	rive	bank, shore
veuf	widower	veuve	widow
corbeau	raven	pelle	shovel
mulet	mule	disette	dearth, scarcity
goujat	blackguard	date	date (in time)
osselet	little bone	gouttelette	tiny drop
îlot	islet	motte	clod
	(or block of houses)	idiote	idiot
dais	canopy	falaise	cliff
gueux	vagabond	Meuse	(the river)
époux	husband	épouse	wife
mois	month	toise	fathom

NOTES. A good many nouns in *-te* are masculine; *clef* [kle] 'key' (L. *clavem* f.) is feminine. *Eau* (L. *agua* f.) and *peau* 'skin' (L. *pellem* f.), are feminine.

t. Nouns in *-ant* and *-and* (rare), masculine, correspond to feminines in *-ante* and *-ande* (rare): *un amant* 'a lover,' *une amante* 'a lover,' 'sweet-heart'; *marchand* 'shopkeeper,' *marchande* 'shopwoman'; etc.

u. For *-ard*, *-arde*, note *billard* m., 'billiards' etc., and *moutarde* f., 'mustard.' A rather common ending, especially *-ard*.

v. Nouns in *-ment* are masculine almost always: *bouleversement* 'upheaval,' *appartement* 'apartment,' etc. On *jument* see § 486, *a*.

w. Abstract nouns in *-ance* and *-ence* are feminine: *croissance* 'belief,' *concurrence* 'competition,' etc.

x. Nouns in *-ade* (*suffix*) are feminine: *ballade*, *cascade*, etc.

y. (Summary statement.) Nearly all nouns in *-aie*, *-eie*, *-oie*, and *-uie*, also in *-ie*, *-ue*, and *-ée*, are feminine; but not *le lycée* 'the lycée,' *le musée* 'the museum,' and a few other nouns of Greek origin.

493. *Ellipses.* *Le champagne* stands for *le vin de Champagne* (f.); *un garde-française* stands for *un soldat de la garde française*. Note *Pâques* m. sg. 'Easter-day,' but otherwise f. sg. or f. pl. Many like examples might be quoted.

NOTE. For *un(e) pas grand'chose* see § 370, ex. 15.

494. *Words Quoted as Such.* Usually masculine: *un merci* 'a "thank you"' (cf. *à sa merci* 'at his mercy'), *ce table* 'this [word] "table,"' etc.¹

495. *Adverbs etc. as Nouns.* Used as nouns, all adverbs, prepositions, and most verb-forms except feminine participles, are masculine: *le devant* 'the front,' *le souper* 'the supper,' etc. (Note *une affaire*, due to the unconscious division into *la faire*.)²

¹ Daudet calls one of his characters 'le petit Chose,' making *petit* masculine because here *chose*, normally feminine, is substituted for a family name, just as we say 'thingumbob' etc. when we don't know, or affect to despise, the true name.

² Note that *demande* 'question' (from *demander*) looks feminine, hence is so. Various like examples might be quoted.

NUMBER

496. The Addition of s. To continue §§ 36, 136, and 143,—the majority of nouns form their plural simply by adding *s* to the singular; but certain typical cases require comments.

a. The plural of *cerf* [sɛrf], 'stag,' 'deer,' is usually [sɛrf; *archaically* sɛ:r], whereas *nerf* [nɛrf], 'nerve,' 'sinew,' has only [nɛ:r]; yet *nerf* = [nɛ:r] in various locutions (mostly figurative); *nerf-de-bœuf* (a quirt, a kind of whip) = [nɛ:rdəbœf]; *bœuf*, with [bœf bø], and *œuf*, with [œf ø], show a like remarkable variation. On the other hand, *os* [ɔs] m. sg., 'bone,' becomes *os* [o] m. pl., or [oʔ] if linked.

REMARK. Some centuries ago, when all final consonants of singular nouns were sounded, all, or nearly all, became silent before *s*; so that *coq* gave *cos* 'cocks' and *drap* gave *dras* 'cloths,' etc., precisely as *d* is silent in 'winds,' pronounced like 'wins.' Herrick (17th c.) rimes 'clothes' with 'goes.'

b. Various final consonants, sounded (exceptionally) in certain *liaisons*, as the *t* of *mot* in *mot à mot* [motamo] 'word for word,' are silent in other cases, as the *t* of *mot* in *un mot anglais*. All such singulars must be called variable, because they may vary for the *ear* when they do not vary for the eye.

c. Proper names seldom take *s* when members of the same family are concerned: *Je connais les Guizot* 'I know the Guizots'; however, if the writer is thinking of individuals he generally adds *s*, as in *les deux Guizots*.

NOTE 1. In all cases, such an *s* exists only for the eye.

NOTE 2. Names such as *La Fontaine* or *Le Brun* take no *s*, for *les La Fontaines* or *les Le Bruns* would *look* queer; yet *les Lesages* is allowed.

NOTE 3. Proper names designating types usually take *s*. Examples: *les Dantes* 'the Dantes' (men like Dante); also figuratively of works: *trois Raphaëls* 'three Raphaëls' (three paintings by Raphael), etc.

d. As the pluralizing *s* is usually silent anyhow, we find either *des habits d'enfants* ('children's clothing') or *d'enfant*, either *coiffeur pour dame* ('ladies' hairdresser') or *coiffeur pour dames*; but such groups might require *chevaux* 'horses,' for *cheval* and *chevaux* have different sounds.

e. As in English, some nouns have no plural and some no singular: *la justice* sg. only, but *toutes ces injustices* ('acts of injustice') is possible; likewise various other abstract singulars may have a plural.

NOTE 1. The following plurals have no singular: **besicles** f. 'goggles,' **bestiaux** 'cattle,' **ciseaux** 'scissors' (**ciseau** = 'chisel'), **frais** 'cost(-s),' **hardes** f. 'clothes' ('duds'), **matériaux** 'materials' ('building materials'), **mœurs** [mœrs] f. 'manners,' etc.

NOTE 2. Unlike 'trousers,' **les pantalons** has a singular: 'my trousers' = **mon pantalon**.

NOTE 3. In **à témoin** 'as a witness,' 'as witnesses,' and initially (**témoin les lettres** = 'witness the letters'), **témoin** is invariable.

f. Nearly all borrowed words may and do take s: **déficit-s**, **folio-s**, **macaroni-s**, **solo-s**, **tory-s**, etc.

NOTE 1. But **ex-voto**, **in-folio**, **in-octavo**, **in-quarto**, **post-scriptum**, **Te Deum**, etc. are invariable.

NOTE 2. **Cicerone** 'cicerone' and **dilettante** 'dilettante' usually get their Italian plurals: **ciceroni** and **dilettanti**.

497. The Plurals of Compounds. Here usage is often uncertain, and the rules laid down, often arbitrarily, are inconsistent and complicated. In most cases, however, there is more confusion for the eye than for the ear.

a. Most of the compounds written as one piece (cf. § 27) merely add s or x: **des portemanteaux** etc. However, **bonhomme** ('fellow,' 'chap,' etc.)¹ and **gentilhomme** ('nobleman') give **bonshommes** and **gentilshommes**. We may give a few types according to groups.

b. **Two Nouns.** Commonly, both may be pluralized, but usage is uncertain: **choux-fleurs** m. 'cauliflowers,' **martins-pêcheurs** 'kingfishers,' **porcs-épics** [pørkɛpik] 'porcupines,' etc.

NOTE. Yet some persons would write **des reine-claude** [rɛ'nglo:d or -klo:d], 'green gage plums,' because of Queen Claude! (Clédat, *Grammaire raisonnée*, § 213).

c. **Noun + Adjective.** Generally, both may be pluralized: **basses-cours** 'farmyards,' **grands-oncles** [grɑ̃'zɔ̃:kl] 'great-uncles,' etc.

Note **grand'mères** 'grandmothers' and **grand'tantes** 'great-aunts,' containing the original sound of the feminine of **grand** (sg. **grant**; pl. **grans**).

¹ In folk-speech **des bonhommes** [bɔ̃nɔm]. With this plural, **bonhomme** = 'man of the people.'

d. Adjective + Noun. Usage hesitates: **des sauf-conduits** 'safe-conducts,' **des saufs-conduits**, and **des sauf-conduit**; but only **demi-heures** 'half hours.'

NOTE. **Plate-forme** has only **plate-formes** ('platforms'); **plate-bande** 'flower-bed' has **plates-bandes**; but **plafond** 'ceiling' is treated as a unit.

e. Verb + Noun. Some such forms are hyphenated, some not; some are pluralized, some not: **porte-monnaie** m. 'purse(-s),' but **portefeuille-s** 'portfolio-s.' **Porte-cigare** = 'cigar-holder'; **porte-cigares** = 'cigar-case.'

NOTE 1. The following frequent compounds are commonly called invariable: **abat-jour** 'lamp-shade' etc., **coupe-circuit** 'cut-out,' **coupe-gorge** 'nest of thieves,' 'dive,' etc., **gagne-pain** 'livelihood,' **porte-drapeau** 'ensign,' and others.

NOTE 2. Of **un garde-chasse** 'gamekeeper' we may make **des gardes-chasse**, but this **s** means nothing to the ear and is otherwise almost useless.

REMARK. No rule can be made to cover chaos.

f. Noun + Preposition + Noun. The first noun can usually be pluralized, but in true compounds never varies for the ear: **un chef-d'œuvre** [ʃɛdœ:vʁ], **des chefs-d'œuvre** 'masterpieces,' etc.; but **des tête-à-tête** 'tête-à-têtes,' **des coq-à-l'âne** 'cock-and-bull stories,' **des pot-au-feu** [potofø] 'meat to boil,' 'beef stock,' etc., **des croc-en-jambe** [krɔkɑ̃ʒɑ̃:b] 'trip,' 'misstep,' and the like. As **pot à fleurs** [pɔt a flœ:r, pɔt a flœ:r, or, colloquially, often po a flœ:r] 'flowerpot' is not a true compound, its plural is **pots à fleurs** [poz a flœ:r, or, colloquially, often po a flœ:r]; similarly, **pot à tabac** [po a taba; pl. poz a taba or po a taba] 'tobacco jar.'

NOTE. There is no phonetic difference between **arc-en-ciel** 'rainbow' and **arcs-en-ciel**; both = [arkɛ̃sjɛl].

g. Verb + Preposition + Infinitive. The plural **salles à manger** 'dining-rooms' is [salamɑ̃ʒe], not [salzamɑ̃ʒe].

h. Preposition (or Adverb) + Noun. The noun can usually be made plural: **des avant-coureurs** 'forerunners,' **des contre-amiraux** 'rear-admirals,' etc.

i. Verb + Adverb. Usually invariable: **des réveille-matin** 'alarm-clocks.'

ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY

Time can be saved, and mistakes can be avoided, by heeding the following notes :

1. This vocabulary is limited to the needs of this book.
2. All but a few words are accompanied by references to examples and explanations. If any reference seems inadequate, consult the French-English Vocabulary or the General Index. Note the headlines over pages 33-342, and other headings. The side-headings of §§ 382-427 may well be consulted even before systematic study of Part II is begun.
3. If in doubt as to any verb-form, examine § 483.
4. See the notes at the beginning of the French-English Vocabulary.

- a or an un, une, or omit.** §§ 38, 88, ll. 1-2, 5, 7, 9; §§ 311-315, 328, and p. 301, I, 5 (fool of a . . .)
- able to, be** pouvoir, § 165; être à même de + *inf.*
- about (1) adv.** ça et là, à l'entour; à peu près or presque, quelque (trois kilomètres); about ten une dizaine, environ; run about simply courir
- about (2) prep.** (*of place*) autour de, (*of time*) vers, sur, p. 70, I, § 327, *f.*;
- about to** sur le point de + *inf.*; (*concerning*) sur (ce point), (parler) de, (penser) à or de (*see think*);
- about it or them** en or y (*see it and them*). Note the type Elle n'a rien de sot, § 340, *a*
- above** adv. au-dessus, en haut, là-haut; prep. au-dessus de, par-dessus. Cf. § 282 and R
- absence (from)** absence (de) *f.*
- absolutely** absolument, § 157, l. 10
- abuse** abuser de, § 113, l. 4
- accept** accepter, § 70, l. 13
- according to** selon, suivant, à en croire (qqn.), d'après, § 95, ex. 8; according to whether suivant que, § 249, l. 32
- account of, on** à cause de
- accusative** accusatif *m.*, régime direct *m.*
- across** prep. à travers, § 322, *c*
- act** *vb.* agir, § 132, *d*
- admire** admirer, § 384
- adore** adorer, § 384
- adventure** aventure *f.*, p. 78
- advertising agent** courtier de publicité *m.*, p. 117
- advise . . . to** conseiller à qqn. de, § 421
- affair** affaire *f.*, § 177, § 254, l. 12
- afraid, be** avoir peur, §§ 122, N, 216-221, 256, ex. 1
- Africa** Afrique *f.*, § 333
- after** adv. and prep. après; before *inf.*, § 241, *c*; conj. après que, § 105. Note à partir de, § 66, l. 1
- afternoon** après-midi *f.* and *m.*, § 491

- afterwards** après, ensuite, plus tard
again encore, une (or pour la) seconde fois. *Note re-* (*prefix*), § 483
against contre, § 113, l. 17, § 115
age âge *m.*, § 150, ex. 1, § 174, N
ago il y a (avait *etc.*), voilà, §§ 203, c, 397, a, ex. 2
agreeable agréable, § 296, b
aid *vb.* aider, §§ 289, 384
aim (1) *vb.* viser (haut), § 362, ex. 9
aim (2) *noun* but [by] *m.*, objet *m.*, § 157, ll. 5 and 13
alight descendre, § 191
all tout *etc.*, § 48, ll. 4-5, p. 66, II, § 182; **not at all** pas du tout, § 90; **all the way to** jusqu'à; **all of you** vous tous; **make them all understand** leur faire comprendre à tous; **master of them all** leur maître à tous, § 297, N
alleged prétendu-e, § 265, ex. 2
allow (to) permettre (de), cf. § 295, b
allowable légitime, § 157, l. 7
allude to faire allusion à, § 119
almost presque, § 96, l. 23
alone seul-e, § 48, l. 4, § 52, l. 7, § 70, l. 15
along *prep.* le long de, § 304, R; **get along** without se passer de, § 319, c
aloud à haute voix, § 162, d
already déjà, § 149, ex. 1
also aussi, § 44, l. 4; également
although bien que, quoique, § 229
always toujours, § 33, l. 5, § 182
ambition ambition *f.*, § 228, ex. 5
America Amérique *f.*, § 333, ex. 3
American américain-e, § 49, a, R
among parmi, entre, § 138; chez
amount *vb.* *See* § 179, a, R, § 182, c, 4
amuse amuser, § 384; divertir, § 132, d; *note* s'amuser de, § 113, ll. 13-14, or à + *inf.*, § 251, a
an *See* a
analogy analogie *f.*, § 157, l. 8
analysis analyse *f.*, § 33
ancient ancien-ne, § 338, e
and et [e], § 33, l. 3; **both . . . and** et . . . et; **come and spend** venir passer, § 250; *note and in subjunctive of added cond.*, § 230, a, also § 231, ex. 2; **more and more** de plus en plus (*so* de moins en moins)
angry fâché-e, en colère; **get angry** se mettre en colère, s'emporter
animal animal *m.*, *irreg.*, § 34
Anjou Anjou *m.*, § 337, l. 10
announce annoncer, §§ 81, 160, 289
annoy ennuyer, § 158, embêter, § 162, g
another un-e autre, encore un-e, § 178; **one another** l'un l'autre *etc.*, § 183, se, §§ 48, l. 4, § 183
answer (1) *vb.* répondre (à), § 445
answer (2) *noun* réponse *f.*, p. 54, I, § 57
antecedent antécédent *m.*, § 121
anxious that, be *See* § 215, ex. 2
any (1) *adj.* quelque-s, § 173; du *etc.*, § 38, a, §§ 46, 318; tout *etc.*, § 182; aucun-e, § 170, b-e; quelconque, § 175; n'importe quel *etc.*, § 155, c, R. *See* en, jamais, pas, *etc.* (French-English Vocabulary)
any (2) *pron.* quelqu'un *etc.*, § 173; aucun-e, § 170, c; **I haven't any** je n'en ai pas. *Note* § 178, ex. 9
anybody or **anyone** quelqu'un-e, § 173; aucun-e, § 170, c, e; personne, §§ 90, 376; n'importe qui (*or* lequel *etc.*), § 155, c, R; qui que ce soit, § 138, N; qui vous voudrez, § 134; tout le monde, § 58, ex. 3; on, §§ 43, 185, 284, 305; quiconque, § 176
anyone *See* anybody

- anything** quelque chose *m.*, § 180; rien, §§ 90, 374; quoi que ce soit, § 138, N; n'importe quoi, § 155, c, R; **anything but** tout autre chose que; **anything you please** ce que vous voudrez .
- anywhere** quelque part, partout; n'importe où, § 155, c, R; **anywhere else** partout ailleurs; *neg.* nulle part, § 184
- apiece** *adv.* (la) pièce *etc.*, § 328, ex. 2. *See each and* § 171, N
- appear** (*seem*) sembler, § 245, b; paraître, § 223, b-c; (*appear upon the scene*) paraître, § 106, ex. 1
- approach** s'approcher de, § 33, l. 2; p. 42, V, § 384
- April** avril *m.*, § 327, a
- Ariosto** Arioste or l'A., § 323, R
- arm** bras *m.*, § 143, c, § 329
- around** or **round** *prep.* autour de; *adv.* autour. *In the U. S.*, around is often misused for about ('Do you live around here?') 'Around one o'clock'). *For French, see about*
- arrival** arrivée *f.*, § 94
- arrive** arriver (à or dans), §§ 73, 384
- art** art *m.*, § 157, l. 12
- as** *adv.*, *conj.*, *pron.* (*of time*) comme, § 88, l. 2; (*of cause*) comme, parce que, puisque; **as a soldier** en soldat, § 312, d; **serve as** servir de, § 312, c; **as to** (**as for**) quant à, comme, § 312, e, R, sur; (*correl.*) as . . . as aussi . . . que; **as well as** aussi bien que; **as much** (**as many**) **as** autant que; **as long as** (*of time*) tant que; **in proportion as** à mesure que; **same as** même-s que, § 179. *Note* venir le plus vite possible **come as soon as possible**
- ask** (**for**) demander (qqch. à qqn.), § 83; **ask to** demander à or de, § 247, e, or prier de; **ask a question** poser (faire) une question
- asleep** endormi-e; **fall asleep** s'endormir, § 225, a
- assure** assurer (qqn. de qqch.)
- astonish** étonner, § 81, ex. 3, § 215
- astrologer** astrologue *m.*, § 161, l. 1
- at** à (*of motion or rest*); (arriver) dans (un village); **at least** au moins; **at last** enfin; **at once** (*forthwith*) tout de suite; (*simultaneously*) en même temps, à la fois; **fire at** tirer sur; **laugh at** rire de; **at home** chez moi *etc.*; **at ten francs**, § 328, ex. 1; **not at all** pas du tout
- attain** atteindre (à), §§ 216, 458
- attempt** (to) essayer (de), § 158
- attentively** attentivement, § 113, l. 1
- August** août, § 327, a, § 354, b
- author** auteur *m.*, § 106, ex. 1
- autumn** automne *m.*, § 327, b
- avenge** venger, § 160, § 161, l. 4
- avoid** (+ *vb. in-ing*) éviter (de + *inf.*), cf. § 251, c
- await** attendre, § 192
- awake** éveiller, s'éveiller, § 158, a; **be wide awake** veiller, § 52, l. 2
- aware**, **be** savoir, § 469, § 227, R; **ne pas ignorer**, § 223; **se rendre compte**, § 190, E; **s'apercevoir**, p. 153, II
- away**, **come** (*or go*) partir, § 224; **s'en aller**, § 163, a. *See en*
- back** (1) *adv.* en arrière; **be back** être de retour, § 333, b; **come back** revenir; **put back** remettre, § 483; **throw back** rejeter, § 162, d. *For back of prep. (U. S. A.) see behind*
- back** (2) *noun* dos, § 143, c, § 329

bad *adj.* mauvais-e, § 55, *b*, R; (*malicious etc.*) méchant-e, § 113, l. 10
badly mal, § 56, N
balloon ballon *m.*
bank (*of stream*) bord *m.*, § 88, l. 2
banker banquier, § 314, *b*
bargain *vb.* marchander
barnyard (*farmyard*) basse-cour *f.*, § 113, l. 5
baron baron, § 324
Bar-on-Aube Bar-sur-Aube *m.*, § 322, *c*
basket panier *m.*, § 52, l. 10; hotte *f.*, § 45, § 46, N 1
bath bain *m.*, § 322, *b*
be être, §§ 42, 109, 112, 426; *exister*, *se trouver*. (*a*) Être is used (*occasionally*) to express 'progression only with à + *inf.*', § 251, *a*, ex. 3, § 264, 3; (*b*) when *be* expresses likelihood or duty, use *devoir*, § 187, *falloir*, § 470, *b*, or *avoir à and être à*, § 252; (*c*) *be . . . old avoir . . . ans*, § 66, l. 3; (*d*) *there is (were etc.) il y a (avait etc.)*, § 302, *b* (5); (*e*) *of weather faire beau etc.*, § 302, *b* (4); (*f*) *be cold (of animate things) avoir froid, etc.*, § 320; (*g*) *Fr. equivalents of Engl. passive groups in § 275; (h) on I am etc. in ellipses see § 280, a, § 303*
bear *vb.* (*carry*) porter, § 52, l. 10; *on bear a grudge see grudge*
beat battre, § 444
beautiful beau, bel, belle, § 338, *f*, § 348
because parce que (*only with groups A-E; if repeated, simply que*)
become (*change state*) devenir, § 33, l. 3, § 128, § 147, N; *become larger grandir*, § 33, l. 2, §§ 40, 131. *In most cases, become + adj. corresponds to a single Fr. vb., as vieillir become (grow) old*

bed lit m.; go to bed se coucher; in bed au lit
beef bœuf *m.*, § 143, *b*
beer bière *f.*
before *adv. and prep. (of space) devant*, § 322, *c*; (*of time*) *avant, avant de + inf.*, § 241, N 1, *avant que + subjunctive*, § 233, *c*
begin commencer, § 160, § 241, *a*, § 247, *c*; *se mettre à*, § 427, *a*, § 447
behind *adv. and prep. derrière*
believe croire, § 41, l. 6; *with inf.* § 246, ex. 3. *See § 453*
belong (to) appartenir (à), *and of persons être à*, § 144, ex. 6, § 296, *a*
below *adv.* au-dessous, dessous; *prep.* sous, au-dessous de
beneath *See below*
beside *prep.* à côté de
besides *adv.* d'ailleurs, de plus; *prep.* outre, excepté, en dehors de
best *adj.* meilleur-e, § 55, R; *adv.* (le) mieux, (le) plus, § 56
better *adj.* meilleur-e, § 55, *b*; *adv.* mieux, § 56, N; *note valoir mieux*, § 88, l. 13, § 173, ex. 2, § 246, ex. 10
between *prep.* entre, §§ 138, 241, ex. 2; *not used as adv.; supply complement to suit the context*, § 304
beyond *prep.* au delà de
big grand-e, § 55, F, § 73, N 2, § 348; gros-se, § 88, l. 7, § 338; *grow bigger grandir, see become*
bind lier, § 418
biology biologie *f.*, § 317
bit (*small part*) morceau *m.*; *adverbially un peu*
bitter amer, amère, § 338, *a*
black noir-e, §§ 338, 349, *c*
blow *vb.* faire du vent, § 302, *b* (4)
blue bleu-e, §§ 345, 349, *c*

- blunder** *noun* bévue *f.*
- boat** bateau, § 136, *b*; (*rowboat*) canot *m.*; (*fig.*) § 310
- body** corps *m.*, § 143, *c*
- bone** os, § 496; (*of fish*) arête *f.*
- book** livre *m.*, § 38, *a*, § 49, *b*
- bore** ennuyer, raser; feel bored, be bored s'ennuyer, §§ 158, 427, *a*
- born, be** naître, § 78, ex. 4
- borrow (from)** emprunter (de or à), § 295, ex. 2, § 319, *c*
- boss** patron *m.*
- both** tous (toutes) les deux, § 182, *b* (*omit de nous etc.*); l'un et l'autre *etc.*, § 178, ex. 9
- boy** garçon
- bread** pain *m.*, § 46
- break** briser, casser; (*fig.*) rompre, § 189, *a*; (*a law*) enfreindre, § 176
- breakfast** *noun and vb.* déjeuner (*m.*)
- breathe** respirer, § 155, ex. 5, § 384; (*blow*) souffler, § 52, l. 7
- bring** apporter, § 201, l. 2; amener, § 162, *a*, N; bring together rapprocher, réunir, § 85, l. 7
- brother** frère, § 54, *b*, § 227, ex. 6
- brutal** brutale *etc.*, § 338, *g*
- build** bâtir, § 132, *d*, § 244, ex. 2; construire
- burglar** cambrioleur, § 488
- burn** brûler, *tr. and intr.*, § 384
- burst** crever, § 162, *a*; éclater
- business** affaire-s *f.*, § 49, *c*, § 495; commerce *m.*; (*calling*) métier *m.*
- busy** occupé-e (à), § 241, *a*, § 463
- but** *conj.* mais, § 44, l. 8; *prep.* ne . . . que, § 378; but for sans, § 95, ex. 1
- buy** acheter, § 161, *e*, § 328, ex. 2
- by** *prep.* (*of agents*) par, § 85, l. 3 (cf. § 307, *d*), also à, as in § 243, ex. 3, § 244, ex. 8; (*of means*) par or de, § 44, l. 9, § 141, N; note roman de (by) Mérimée, p. 278, l. 12; (*before vbs. in -ant*) en, § 132, *b*, §§ 261–262; (*of measures*) par, à, or no *prep.*, § 328; (*near*) près de, à côté de, au bord de, § 88, l. 2; by the bye à propos; by . . . self (*selves*) à . . . seul(e)s, § 70, l. 15, § 88, ll. 8–9
- Cairo** le Caire, § 325
- call** appeler, § 162, *d*; be called (*bear a name*) s'appeler, § 55
- can (could)** pouvoir, § 165 (cf. § 41, l. 5); savoir, § 246, ex. 3
- care** (1) *vb.* (*about, for*) soigner, § 96, l. 8; tenir à, § 226, ex. 2 (cf. § 307, *c*, ex. 5)
- care** (2) *noun* soin *m.*; note avoir soin (de) and prendre garde, § 368, *a*; take care of soigner (qqn.); the care it has taken les soins qu'il a fallu (*not fallus*), § 265
- career** carrière *f.*, § 155, ex. 3
- carefully** avec soin, soigneusement
- carp** *noun* carpe *f.*, § 85, l. 7
- carplet** carpillon *m.*, § 85, l. 1
- carriage** voiture *f.*, § 52, l. 7
- carry** porter, § 52, l. 10; carry off emporter, § 89, ex. 4; carry out (*orders*) exécuter, § 96, l. 19
- cart** charrette *f.*, § 492, *s*
- case** cas *m.*, § 143, *c*; cf. § 99, § 157, l. 12, § 230, ex. 3
- cask** tonneau *m.*, § 52, l. 11
- cat** chat *m.*, § 113, l. 3; chatte *f.*
- catch** attraper; (*fish*) prendre, § 88, l. 2
- cease** (to) cesser (de); cf. § 368, *g*
- cellar** cave *f.*, § 96, l. 2
- certain** certain-e, § 155, *c*, § 174
- certainly** à coup sûr, certainement

- chair** chaise *f.*
- chance** chance *f.*, § 155, ex. 3, § 232, ex. 5; **by chance** par hasard, § 322, *d*; **miss a fine chance** (*usually with p.p.*), § 276, *b*; **a chance to l'occasion de + inf.**
- change** *vb.* changer, § 160
- charge** *vb.* faire payer (qqch. à qqn.), § 328, ex. 4
- charm** (1) *vb.* charmer, *with charmant-e*
- charm** (2) *noun* charme *m.*, § 486, *i*
- cheap** bon marché, pas cher (*chère*)
- cheek** (*lit.*) joue *f.*; (*fig.*) toupet *m.*, aplomb *m.*, § 256, ex. 2
- child** enfant *m. or f.*, § 52, l. 12
- China** la Chine, § 78, ex. 4, § 334
- Chinese** chinois-*e*, § 49, *a*, R, § 58
- choice** choix *m.*, *but see* § 241, ex. 2
- choose** choisir, § 132, *d*
- chop** côtelette *f.*, § 318, *a*
- Christmas** Noël *m.*; *cf.* § 323, *c*, R
- cigar** cigare *m.*, § 194, *a*
- city** ville *f.*, § 85, l. 24
- claim** *vb.* prétendre, § 161, l. 10
- classical** classique
- clean** (1) *vb.* nettoyer, § 158
- clean** (2) *adj.* propre, § 347
- clear** *adj.* clair-*e*
- climb** grimper, § 85, l. 12; **climb over** escalader
- clock** horloge *f.*, pendule *f.*
- close** *vb.* fermer, § 157, l. 10
- close upon** sur, § 33, l. 4
- clothe** habiller, § 158, *a*; *vêtir*, § 140, Q
- club** (*social*) cercle *m.*, club *m.*
- coffee** café *m.*, § 53, N 2
- cold** *adj.* froid-*e*; *cf.* § 320, ex. 1
- colonel** colonel, § 85, l. 3
- combine** combiner (*se combiner*)
- come** venir, § 482; **come and . . .**, **come to . . .**, § 250; **come away** partir; **come back** revenir, § 63, ex. 2; **come out of** sortir de, § 44, l. 7; **come up** monter, § 427, *b*
- comedy** comédie *f.*, § 157, N 17
- commit** commettre, § 447
- communication** communication *f.*
- company, part** fausser compagnie (à qqn.), § 320; *se séparer*
- compare** (*with, to*) comparer (*avec, à*)
- competence** compétence *f.*
- complain** (*of*) se plaindre (*de*)
- concern** *vb.* regarder
- confidence** confiance *f.*
- confounded thing** maudite chose; *or vulg.* sacrée chose, § 273
- confuse** confondre, § 249, l. 16; *embrouiller*, § 158, *a*
- Congo, the** le Congo, § 337, II
- conscience** conscience *f.*, § 329
- consider** considérer, § 162, *f*; *réputer*, § 157, l. 6, § 245, *b*
- consonant** consonne *f.*
- constantly** constamment, § 361
- construction** construction *f.*, § 157, l. 8
- contain** contenir, § 482; (*comprise*) comprendre, § 448
- continue** (*to*) continuer (à *or de*), § 247, *d*
- contrive** *to* trouver moyen de
- conversation** conversation *f.*
- convince** convaincre, § 446
- cool** *adj.* frais, fraîche, § 338, *b*
- coral** corail, § 143, *a* (*for pl.*)
- corner** coin *m.* *See* nook
- correct** *adj.* correct-*e*, exact-*e*
- correcting, correction, correctness** correction *f.*, § 157, l. 11
- correctly** correctement, § 157, l. 16
- cost** *vb.* coûter, §§ 139, 156, 213, *c*

- count** *vb.* compter, § 246, ex. 4
- country** pays *m.*, § 142; (*rural*) campagne *f.*; **across country** à travers champs, § 322, *c*
- courage** courage *m.*
- course** (*of study*) cours *m.*, § 143, *c*; **of course** bien entendu, § 117, ex. 1; **the wisest course** le plus sage, § 254, l. 38
- cousin** cousin-e *m. or f.*, § 297
- cover** *vb.* couvrir, § 440
- crazy** fou (fol), folle, § 338, *f*, R
- create** créer, § 157, l. 10, § 418
- creel** (panier en osier), filet *m.*, § 88, l. 3
- crime** crime *m.*
- criminal** malfaiteur *m.*
- criticize** critiquer (qqn.)
- cry** (1) *vb.* crier, § 85, l. 14, § 418
- cry** (2) *noun* cri *m.*, § 52, l. 13
- cubist** cubiste *m.*
- customs** mœurs *f.*, § 178, *c*, Q
- Dahomey** Dahomey *m.*, § 337, l. 13
- danger** danger *m.*, § 52, l. 1
- Dante** Dante (*properly no le*), § 323, R
- dare** (to) oser, § 170, *b*, § 246, § 368, *g*
- darkness** obscurité *f.*, § 96, l. 4
- daughter** fille, § 54, *e*, R
- day** jour *m.*, § 70, l. 6; (*as a unit, commonly*) journée *f.*
- deaf** sourd-e, § 88, l. 10
- deal, a good** beaucoup, bien du *etc.*, § 178, *d*, N
- dear** cher, chère, § 347, § 362, ex. 12
- debt** dette *f.*, § 38, *a*; cf. § 187, *A*
- deceive** tromper, § 170, ex. 9
- December** décembre *m.*, § 327, *a*
- decide** décider (de), se décider (à)
- declare** déclarer, § 94, § 248, ex. 2
- deep** profond-e
- defect** défaut *m.*, § 70, l. 9
- defend** défendre, § 85, l. 6, § 190
- definition** définition *f.*, § 249, l. 2
- degree, in the least** le moins du monde
- delay** *vb.* retarder, § 161, l. 24
- delight** *vb.* charmer, ravir, § 256, ex. 10; s'amuser (de), § 113, ll. 13-14
- delightful** charmant-e, ravissant-e; délicieux (§ 338, *c*)
- deny** nier, § 223, ex. 5, § 418
- depart** partir, § 73, *a*, § 224
- departure** départ *m.*
- deprive** priver, § 41, l. 4, § 43, *a*
- deserve** (to) mériter (de), § 89, ex. 3
- desire** (1) *vb.* désirer, § 247, *b*
- desire** (2) *noun* désir *m.*, § 256, R 2
- destiny** destinée *f.*, § 161, l. 11
- detain** retenir, § 229, ex. 4
- detest** détester
- devoid of** dépourvu-e de
- devoted to, be** être tout-e à
- die** mourir, § 167
- differ** (from) différer (de), § 249, l. 37; cf. § 162, *f*
- different** différent-e, § 177, § 264, 1; cf. autre que, § 178, ex. 12
- difficult** difficile, § 44, l. 12
- difficulty** difficulté *f.*, § 58, ex. 4
- dig** (*work hard*) trimer, travailler ferme, § 362, ex. 10
- dine** dîner, § 111, ex. 2; cf. § 240
- dining-room** salle à manger *f.*
- dinner** dîner *m.*, § 240, R
- dirty** sale, § 349, *e*
- disagreeable** désagréable, § 161, l. 3, § 296, *b*
- disappear** disparaître, § 48, l. 12
- disappoint** désappointer; **be disappointed to** être déçu-e de, p. 153
- discover** découvrir, s'apercevoir
- discreet** discret, discrète, § 338, *e*

- dislike (to)** ne pas aimer (à), § 247, a; cf. § 215
- disobey** désobéir (à), § 132, d
- disorder** désordre *m.*
- dissatisfied (with)** mécontent-e (de)
- dissuade (from)** dissuader (de)
- distasteful, be** répugner, § 255, ex. 4
- distinct** distinct-e, § 44, l. 9
- disturb** déranger, § 96, l. 2, § 160
- do (generally)** faire, § 478; faire *is not used as an aux. vb. in negations* (§ 52, l. 12; but see § 247, h), nor in *interrogation* (§ 40, § 50, b); but may stand for other verbs (§ 254, l. 39); **do well to** faire bien de, § 251, d, ex. 5. See General Index, under faire
- doctor (physician)** médecin *m.*, § 95, ex. 8; docteur *m.*, § 324
- dog** chien *m.*, § 38
- door** porte *f.*, § 266, l. 3
- doubt (1)** *vb.* douter, § 223, § 368, b
- doubt (2)** *noun* doute *m.*; no doubt (doubtless) sans doute; both imply doubt
- down** See upside
- dozen** douzaine *f.*, § 328, ex. 1
- drag** traîner, § 52, l. 5
- drawing-room** salon *m.* (au or dans le)
- dream (of)** rêver (de), § 162, g
- dreary** triste, § 347
- dress (1)** *vb.* habiller, § 158, a (*refl.* s'habiller); (a wound) panser
- dress (2)** *noun* robe *f.*, costume *m.*
- drink** *noun* à boire, § 253, ex. 1
- driver** cocher *m.*
- drop** *vb.* tomber; see pin
- due** dû, due *p. p.*, § 187, a
- dunce** cancre *m.*, buse *f.*
- during** pendant, § 52, l. 3
- duty** devoir *m.*, § 157, l. 23
- each** chaque *adj.*, § 171; chacun-e *pron.*, §§ 171-172; each other *sc.*, § 52, l. 12; *se, nous, vous*, § 283, b-c; see another
- eager to, be (very)** avoir (grande, or grand') envie de; cf. § 255, b, R
- ear** oreille *f.*, § 329
- early** *adv.* de bonne heure, § 105, l. 2; earlier plus tôt
- earn** gagner, § 420
- ease** aise *f.*, facilité *f.*
- easily** facilement, bien
- Easter** Pâques *f.* (Easter-day Pâques *m.*), § 493
- easy** facile
- easy-chair** fauteuil *m.*, § 44, l. 2
- eat** manger, § 160, § 253, a
- effort** effort *m.*
- egg** œuf, § 45
- eight** huit, § 354, a, g
- eighth** huitième, § 353
- either . . . or** *conj.* soit . . . soit, § 213, d; possibly ou . . . ou
- either** *pron.* l'un-e ou l'autre, § 178, ex. 9; after *ne, use* ni . . . ni, § 292, d; see one and neither
- eleven** onze, § 353, § 354, a
- else** d'autre, § 186, § 376, N 3; autre, § 178, ex. 5; everybody else tous (toutes) les autres, § 63, ex. 3; nothing else rien d'autre, pas autre chose, § 178, c, Q; something else quelque chose d'autre, autre chose; nowhere else nulle part ailleurs
- elsewhere** autre part, ailleurs
- employ** employer, § 158; se servir de (s'en servir), § 157, l. 16
- empty** vide; empty-handed les mains vides, § 266, l. 12
- enable (to)** mettre (qqn.) à même de, permettre (à qqn.) de

- enamel** émail, § 143, *a* (*for pl.*)
- encourage (to)** encourager (à), § 160
- end** (1) *vb.* finir, § 241, ex. 1; achever, § 162, *a*, N
- end** (2) *noun* fin *f.*, § 52; bout *m.*, § 105, l. 8, § 201, l. 3
- endeavor (to)** essayer (de), § 158; tâcher (de)
- enemy** ennemi-*e*, § 48, l. 2, § 349, *h*
- England** Angleterre *f.*, § 333, ex. 5
- English** anglais-*e*, § 49, *a*, R, § 58, ex. 2, § 73, N 3
- Englishman** *etc.* Anglais (*f.* Anglaise), § 73, N 3; *see* English
- engraving** gravure *f.*
- enjoy** jouir de, § 132, *d*; **enjoy oneself** se divertir, § 132, *d*
- enormous** énorme, § 33, l. 3
- enough** assez; **enough money** *or* **money** enough assez d'argent, § 49, *b*; **enough** to de quoi, § 140, ex. 2; **enough** for . . . to assez . . . pour que, § 232, ex. 3
- enter** entrer (dans), § 73, *b*
- enterprise** entreprise *f.*, § 177
- enterprising** entreprenant-*e*, § 448
- entertain** divertir, § 132, *d*
- entrust (to)** confier (à), § 418
- errand boy** (*fam.*) saute-ruisseau *m.*, § 314, *a*, ex. 1
- error** erreur *f.*, § 486, *g*
- escape, have had a narrow** l'avoir échappé (*or* -ée) belle
- especially** surtout
- esteem** (1) *vb.* estimer
- esteem** (2) *noun* estime *f.*, § 157, l. 18
- etc.** *etc.*, *or* (*occasionally*) et cætera
- Europe** Europe *f.*, § 333, § 335
- even** *adv.* même, § 52, l. 3, § 82, N 1, § 179, *a*, R; **not even** même pas, § 95, ex. 2; **even though** (*if*) quand même, même si, § 97; *see* same
- evening** soir *m.*, § 55, *b*, N; *adv.* le soir, § 70, l. 1
- ever** jamais, § 373; (*always*) toujours, § 182, *c*, 1; **hardly ever** guère, ne . . . guère, § 372
- every** tout-*e*, tous (toutes) les, § 52, l. 3, § 170, ex. 3, § 182; chaque, § 63, ex. 3
- everybody** tout le monde, § 58, ex. 3; tous, toutes, § 182, N, § 182, *c*, 7
- everyone** *See* everybody
- everything** tout, § 44, l. 10, § 48, ll. 4-5; *see* § 182, *c*, 6
- everywhere** partout, § 33, l. 6
- evident** évident-*e*
- evidently** évidemment, § 361
- exact** *adj.* exact-*e*, § 249, l. 4
- example** exemple *m.*; **for example** par exemple
- excellent** brave, § 96, l. 21; **excellent-*e*** except excepté, sauf, si ce n'est, § 368, *i*
- excessive** excessi-*f*, -*ive*, § 96, l. 17, § 338, *b*
- exchange** échanger, § 160
- excuse** (1) *vb.* excuser (*for* de)
- excuse** (2) *noun* excuse *f.*, § 150, ex. 3
- exercise** *noun* exercice *m.*, § 157, l. 27
- exist** exister, § 55, l. 9
- expect** attendre (qqn.), s'attendre à, § 192, § 233, *a*
- explain** expliquer, § 148, ex. 2
- express** exprimer, § 44, l. 9
- exquisite** exquis-*e*, § 143, *c*
- extremely** extrêmement, § 361
- eye** œil (*pl.* yeux), § 143, *b*
- fable** fable *f.*, § 113, l. 2
- face** visage *m.*
- fact** fait [fe(t)] *m.*, § 157, l. 14; *note* de ce que, § 44, l. 3

- factory** usine *f.*
fail échouer (*aux.* avoir); **not fail to** ne pas manquer de
faithful fidèle, § 55, *a*, N 2
fall tomber, § 73, *b*; *see* asleep
false faux, fausse, § 338, *k*
family famille [fami:] *f.*, § 66
far (from) loin (*de*), § 161, l. 20; **far** (better *etc.*) beaucoup *or* bien (*meilleur etc.*); **for** loin que *see* § 234, ex. 3
farmyard basse-cour *f.*, § 113, l. 5
fast *adv.* vite, § 56; rapidement
fat gras, grasse, § 338, *e*
fate sort *m.*
father père, § 54, *e*
fault (*defect*) défaut *m.*, § 80, ex. 2; (*mistake, q.v.*) faute *f.*
fear (1) *vb.* craindre *etc.*, §§ 216-221
fear (2) *noun* peur *f.*, crainte *f.*, § 220
February février, § 327, *a*
feel sentir, § 225, *d*, § 258, *d*
fellow, good brave homme, § 345
ferocious féroce, § 113, l. 7
fetch apporter, § 201, l. 2; **aller chercher**, § 250, *a*
fetching coquet-*te*, § 338, *e*
few peu de (*see* little); **a few** quelques, § 63, ex. 4; quelques-uns *or* quelques-unes, § 173, ex. 4
fewer moins de (*cf.* moins nombreux)
fewest le moins de
fiddle *vb.* jouer du violon
fifteen quinze, § 354
fifth cinquième, § 353
fiftieth cinquantième, § 353
fifty-first cinquante et unième, § 353, *a*
figure *vb.* figurer, § 113, l. 15
fill remplir, § 132, *d*, § 201, l. 10
find trouver, § 43; (*learn*) s'apercevoir, p. 153, II-III
fine chance *See* chance
finger doigt [dwa] *m.*, § 329
finish finir, § 106, *a*, § 132; achever, § 162, *a*, N; **finish writing** finir (*achever*) d'écrire; (**to**) **have just finished writing** venir d'écrire, § 482, *a*; *see* just
fire (1) *vb.* tirer, § 85, l. 16
fire (2) *noun* feu *m.*, § 136, *b*
fireplace cheminée *f.*, § 44, l. 4
first *adj. or pron.* premier, première, p. 70, II, § 227, *a*, § 353, *b*, § 355, *a-b*; **at first** d'abord
fish (1) *vb.* pêcher (*cf.* § 88, l. 8)
fish (2) *noun* poisson *m.*, § 88; **deaf as a fish** sourd-*e* comme un pot [po] (*m.*)
fishing *noun* (la) pêche (à la ligne)
five cinq, § 354, *e*
flattering *adj.* flatteur, flatteuse, § 338, *a*
flee (from) fuir, § 52, l. 13, § 456
floor *noun* étage *m.*; *see* ground
Florence Florence *f.*, § 325
flower *noun* fleur *f.*
fly (1) *vb.* voler, § 96, l. 13
fly (2) *noun* mouche *f.*
follow suivre, § 141, N, § 473
food nourriture *f.*, § 41, l. 2
fool *noun* sot, sotté, § 338, *e*
foolish sot, sotté (*see* fool)
foot pied [pje] *m.*, § 329
for (1) *conj.* car, § 41, l. 5
for (2) *prep.* pour, § 41, l. 3, § 113, l. 6; (*during*) pendant, § 65, ex. 2; depuis (*e.g.* huit jours), § 192, *cf.* § 249, l. 22; **for it** pour ça (*or possibly* lui *in personifications*; *see* it; *likewise* with elle, elles, eux); pour + *inf.*, § 241, exs. 7 and 8 (*possibly* *de*, § 242, ex. 5); pour que + *subjunctive*, § 232, exs. 3 and 4; **for of price** § 328; **as for me**, I quant à moi, je *or*

- moi, je, § 193, ll. 6-7; send for, *see* send. Note that for me, for you, etc. often require *Fr. dative*, § 295, *g*
- forbid, Heaven** à Dieu ne plaise, § 213, *c*; note défendre (à qqn. de)
- force (to)** forcer (de or à), obliger (de or à), § 96, l. 19, § 247, *f*
- foreign, -er** étranger, étrangère, § 74, ex. 2, § 338, *a*, § 340
- foresee** prévoir, § 463, *a*
- forget (to)** oublier (de), § 418
- forgive** pardonner (qqch. à qqn.), § 244, ex. 7, § 295
- fork (table-)** fourchette *f.*
- form (1)** *vb.* former, § 44, l. 7
- form (2)** *noun* forme *f.*, § 48, l. 10 not good form, § 275, ex. 1
- former, the** celui-là (ceux-là etc.)
- formerly** autrefois, § 178, *c*, Q
- formidable** redoutable, § 52, l. 15
- forth, come** sortir, § 44, l. 7
- fortunate** heureux, heureuse
- fortunately** heureusement, § 361
- fortune** fortune *f.*
- forty** quarante, § 353, § 381, l. 20
- four** quatre, § 353
- fourth** quatrième, § 353, § 355, *c*
- fox** renard *m.*, § 113, l. 10
- franc** franc *m.* (about 20 cents)
- France** France *f.*, §§ 333, 335
- frank** franc, franche, § 338, *h*
- frankly** franchement, § 361
- free (from)** *vb.* délivrer (de)
- free** *adj.* libre, § 51, § 256, ex. 7
- freeze** geler, § 162, *e*, § 302, *b* (4)
- French** français-*e*, § 33, § 49, *a*, R, § 85, l. 2; French teacher professeur de français; *see* mistake
- Frenchman** etc. Français-*e*
- fresh** frais, fraîche, § 338, *h*
- friar** frère, § 324
- Friday** vendredi *m.*, § 327, *e*
- friend** ami *m.*, amie *f.*, § 38, § 54, *b*
- friendly** amical etc., § 338, *g*; *see* terms or § 305, *c*, ex. 1
- frightfully** affreusement, § 361; à faire peur, § 253, ex. 3
- from** de, § 44, ll. 3 and 6; from door to door de ... en, § 266, l. 3; from time to time de ... en, § 178, *a*; from that day depuis ce jour-là; à partir de, § 66, l. 1; from it or from them, *of sexless things*, en, § 113, l. 18, § 304; fill from the cask remplir au tonneau, § 201, l. 10; take from a drawer prendre dans un tiroir; take from a table prendre sur une table; from (off) de dessus; from under de dessous; from me etc. commonly expressed by *Fr. dative*, § 295, *c*
- front of, in** devant, § 44, l. 4
- frown (at)** froncer le sourcil (à, or *dative*), § 329, ex. 2 (usually les sourcils)
- frying-pan** poêle *f.*, § 88, l. 12, § 490
- full (of)** plein-*e* (de), § 52, ll. 1 and 14
- fun, in** plaisamment, § 361; pour rire
- funny** drôle-*s* after noun; drôle-*s* de before noun, p. 301, I, 4; rigolo, § 370, *f*, N 3
- furnish (with)** meubler (de), *of houses* etc., § 244, ex. 2
- furniture** meubles *m. pl.*; a piece of furniture un meuble
- gain** gagner, § 158, § 253, ex. 5
- game** jeu *m.*, § 136, *b*
- garden** jardin *m.*, § 201, l. 5
- gather** réunir, § 85, l. 8; (*meet*) se réunir, § 284, *a* (*end*)
- general, in** en général
- generally** le plus souvent; *see* above

genius génie *m.*, § 155, ex. 7
gentle doux, douce, § 338, *k*
gentleman galant homme, § 345;
(vaguely) monsieur, pl. messieurs,
 § 89, exs. 3 and 4
German allemand-e, § 49, *a, R*
get corresponds to many different Fr.
vs.: obtenir, § 482, recevoir, § 188,
 avoir, §§ 64, 425, chercher, § 49, *b*,
 aller chercher, § 250, *a*, acheter,
 § 162, *e*, trouver, § 43; **get back**
(recover) recouvrer, reprendre, ra-
voir (inf. only, § 394, N 4); of
causation: faire, § 244, ex. 2, per-
suader qqn. de, obtenir de qqn. de,
 § 251, *d*; *expressing changes of state*
or of place: get angry s'emporter,
se mettre en colère; get old vieillir;
get ready (se) préparer; get to
arriver à, aller à (or jusqu'à); get
away (réussir à) s'en aller, (réussir
à) partir, s'échapper, s'enfuir (see
flee); get down descendre; get home
arriver chez soi (moi etc.), rentrer;
get in (into) entrer (dans), réussir
à (y) entrer (see enter), or likewise
pénétrer; get up (rise) se lever,
 § 162, *a*; *note get along without se*
passer de, § 319, c
gift cadeau *m.*, § 171
girl jeune fille (almost always with
adj. or complement), § 171
give donner (qqch. à qqn.); give back
 rendre, § 190; **give up renoncer à**
glad content-e, § 215, ex. 6, § 256,
 ex. 9; *see happy*
glance at (e.g. a book) feuilleter,
 § 162, *d*; parcourir, § 178, ex. 13
glass verre *m.*, § 49, *b*
go aller, §§ 73, 163; **go away s'en**
 aller, § 163, *a*, partir, § 224; **go**

back retourner, § 427, *b*; **go down**
 descendre, § 427, *b*; **go off partir**,
 § 427, *b*; **go on continuer (à or de)**,
 § 247, *d*; **go out sortir**, § 73; **go**
with accompagner (qqn.); who goes
there? qui vive? § 85, l. 14; *express-*
ing futurity: aller, § 41, l. 2, § 250
god (God) dieu (Dieu), § 44, l. 3,
 § 136, *b*, § 213, *c*
gold or m.
good bon, bonne, § 48, l. 1, § 348;
compared, § 55, b; **a good man un**
brave homme, §§ 345, 348; **for a**
good while depuis longtemps, § 192;
a good deal or good many beaucoup
(de); good-by adieu (nos adieux)
m., § 111, ex. 2; **good-day bonjour**,
 § 55, *a*; **be so good as to veuillez**,
 § 202, *a, e*
gossip vb. potiner, § 255, ex. 4; **ba-**
varder (noun bavardage m.)
gown robe *f.*, § 250, ex. 5
grammar grammaire *f.*, §§ 137, 249
grammatical grammatical etc., § 33,
 § 338, *g*
granted! soit! [swat], § 213, *c*, ex. 8
grateful reconnaissant-e, § 296, *b*
grave adj. grave
great grand-e, § 52, l. 13, § 55, *F and*
Notes, § 348
greatly bien, beaucoup, très
green vert-e, § 339, *a*, § 349, *c*
grenadier grenadier, § 85, l. 9
grossly grossièrement, § 157, l. 6
ground floor rez-de-chaussée *m.*, § 96,
 l. 10
group groupe *m.*, § 157, l. 10
grow (in size) grandir, § 33, l. 2; *(be-*
come) devenir, § 33, l. 3; *Fr. prefers*
inclusive vs.: **grow old vieillir etc.**;
see become and get.

- grudge**, bear a en vouloir (à qqn. de qqch.), § 242, ex. 3
- guess** (1) *vb.* deviner, § 44, l. 13
- guess** (2) *noun* conjecture *f.*, § 144, ex. 5
- guide** guide *m.*
- Hague**, the la Haye, § 325
- half** moitié *f.*, § 357; demi-, demie, § 356, *a-b*, § 357; **half an hour** une demi-heure; *adv.* half à demi, à moitié; **half past one** une heure et demie
- hall** (*hallway*) corridor *m.*
- hammer** *vb.* marteler, § 162, *e*
- hand** main *f.*, § 101, l. 6, § 330; **on the other hand** d'autre part, § 157, l. 17; *see empty*
- handkerchief** mouchoir *m.*
- handle** *vb.* manier, § 159, *a*, § 418
- happen** arriver, se passer (§ 427, *a*), §§ 83, 146; **he happens to . . .** il lui arrive de . . ., § 255, *b*, R; **he happens to have** il se trouve avoir, § 245, ex. 7; **happen to be** se trouver, § 98, ex. 2; **if he happens to meet** si par hasard il rencontre; **happen what may** (**whatever happens**) advienne que pourra, § 139
- hard** (*not soft*) *adj.* dur-*e*; (*difficult*) difficile, § 44, ll. 12-13, § 254, l. 18; *adv.* fort, § 52, l. 8; ferme, § 362, ex. 10
- hardly** (*of time*) à peine, § 106, ex. 1 (cf. ex. 3); *see guère*, § 372
- harm** nuire (à), § 289, R, § 459, *e*
- harness** *vb.* atteler, § 162, *d*
- hasten** courir, § 96, l. 10, § 437
- hat** chapeau *m.*, § 136, *b*, § 329, *b*, N
- hateful** haïssable, § 52, l. 9; *cf. haïr*, § 132, *d*
- have** avoir, § 38, *a*, § 108; *as aux.* avoir *or être*, §§ 72-73, 109-112, 427; *causally* faire, § 161, l. 21, §§ 244, 277; **I should like to have him say** je voudrais qu'il dise; *also* laisser, § 244, *a*, § 270, *b*; *of obligation* (**have to**) avoir à, § 100; devoir, § 187; falloir, § 221, ex. 1, § 470
- Havre** le Havre, § 25, *c*, § 325
- he** il, § 43; lui, § 122, ex. 2, §§ 278, 291; elle [la sentinelle], § 85, l. 16; ce, § 74, ex. 1; **he who** celui qui, § 82
- head** tête *f.*, § 52, l. 11, § 329
- headache**, **have a** avoir mal à la tête *m.*, p. 294, III, 18
- hear** entendre, § 96, ll. 8 and 13, § 244, § 270; **hear** [**said**] entendre dire; **hear of** entendre parler de, § 244, ex. 6; (*listen*) écouter; *see* § 445
- heart** cœur *m.*, § 295, ex. 11
- hearthstone** dalle *f.*, § 44, l. 4
- heat** chaleur *f.*, § 265, ex. 14
- heaven** ciel *m.*; *pl.* cieux, § 143, *b*; *see sky*; *see forbid*
- help** *vb.* aider (qqn. à + *inf.*)
- henhouse** poulailler *m.*, § 113, l. 11
- Henry** Henri
- her** (1) *adj.* son, sa, ses, § 54; lui . . . le (la, les) § 295, *d*, *h*; le *etc.*, §§ 329-330; *see his adj.*
- her** (2) *pron.* la, lui, § 43; elle, §§ 278-297; *see him*
- here** ici, § 80; *sometimes* là, p. 82; **here is** (**are**) voici, § 54, *b*, § 203
- hero** héros *m.*, § 17, § 37, *b*
- herring** hareng *m.*, § 45
- hers** *pron.* le sien *etc.*, § 57; **of hers** à elle, § 297; *see his pron.*
- herself** se, § 43, *a*; elle *or* elle-même, §§ 278, 287; *see himself*
- hesitate** (**to**) hésiter (à): j'hésite
- hide** (**from**) cacher (à), se cacher; dissimuler, § 70, l. 8, § 254, l. 11

high *adj.* haut-e; **high time** grand temps, § 302, *b* (2); *adv.* haut, § 193, 7
him le, lui, § 43; la, § 85, l. 23; *see also* §§ 278-301 *and her pron.*
himself se, § 43, *a*; lui, lui-même, §§ 278-283, 285, 287-288, 292, *c*, §§ 298-302; *see herself*
his *adj.* son, sa, ses, § 54; lui . . . le *etc.*, § 295, *d, f, h*; *see her adj.*
his *pron.* le sien *etc.*; § 57; of **his** à lui, § 297; *see her*
history histoire *f.*, § 333, *exs.* 4
hit *vb.* frapper; *see by*
hold *vb.* tenir, § 482; **hold out** (*extend*) tendre (à qqn.), § 41, l. 1, § 445
home, at chez moi (toi *etc.*); **return** (*or come*) home rentrer, revenir (chez soi, chez lui, *etc.*)
hope (1) *vb.* espérer, § 162, *f*, § 246, *ex. 1*
hope (2) *noun* espoir *m.*, § 170, *exs.* 7 *and* 8; *espérance f.*
horse cheval *m.*; *pl.* chevaux, § 52, l. 5
hospital hôpital *m.*; *pl.* hôpitaux
hostile hostile, § 48, l. 7, § 52, l. 15, § 296, *b*
hot chaud-e, § 44, l. 5; **be hot** (*of weather*) faire chaud, § 302, *b* (4)
hotel hôtel *m.*, § 45
hour heure *f.*, § 34, § 182, *c*, 2; *cf.* § 328, *b*, § 356, *b*
house maison *f.*, § 48, l. 10; **at my house** chez moi (*so* chez toi *etc.*)
how comment, § 58, *ex. 4*, § 156, 2; *comme*, § 193, l. 29; *que*, § 154, *exs.* 2 *and* 4; **how much, how many** combien (de), § 156, § 268, *b*
however cependant, § 294, *pourtant*; (*in whatever way*) de quelque façon *que* + *subjunctive*; **however** + *adj. or adv.*, § 228, *c, g*

hugely énormément, § 361
hundred cent, § 85, l. 1, § 328, N
hungry, be (*so, very, too*) avoir (*si, très, trop*) faim, § 320
hurry *vb.* courir; *see hasten*
hurt *vb.* faire (du) mal (à qqn.), *bless*; *see harm*

I je, § 38, *a*, § 42; moi, § 33, l. 4; **I alone** moi seul je, § 48, l. 4 (*cf. moi seule* *peux*, § 290, *ex. 5*); *see also* §§ 278-281, 285, 287, 290-291, 293
idea idée *f.*, § 55, l. 6, § 312, *a*, *ex. 6*
idle, stand chômer, § 266, N 7
if si (s'il-s; *otherwise* si), § 41, l. 4, § 95, *b-c*, § 235
ill (1) *adj.* malade, § 89, *ex. 1*, § 345
ill (2) *adv.* mal, § 56, N, § 85, l. 6
imaginable imaginable; *cf.* § 55, N 1
imagine imaginer, s'imaginer (*que*)
imitate imiter, § 151
impolite impoli-e, § 255, *ex. 2*
impossible impossible
impression impression *f.*, § 268, R
in (1) *prep.* dans, § 44, l. 2, § 322, *c*; *en*, § 33, l. 2, § 52, ll. 7 *and* 9, § 85, l. 1, § 157, l. 1, § 321; *de* (*cette façon*), § 129; (*sept heures*) du matin, p. 69, I; **the best in the world** le meilleur du monde; **a mistake in** une faute de, § 157, l. 19; **a lesson in** une leçon de; **meddle in** se mêler de; *note* au milieu, § 48, l. 5; *before names of towns, usually* à (à Paris), *unless emphatically within* (courir dans Paris); *before names of countries* en, dans, à, §§ 332-337; *of houses, streets, fields, water, air, receptacles, etc., usually* dans, *or en without article; of parts of the body, commonly* à (mal à la tête *headache*); *before*

- moi etc., usually en; of periods, dans, en, or no prep.,** § 85, l. 1, § 327; *of time consumed by an act, en* (vieillir **en un jour**, § 427, *d*, ex. 8); *of time preceding an act, dans* (je pars **dans deux jours** I leave in two days); *of styles, à* (à l'anglaise, § 331); *in it or in them, of sexless things, usually y*, § 113, l. 2, § 284, *b*, § 304, *or là dedans*, § 282, R
- in** (2) (*at home*) *adv.* chez moi (toi *etc.*)
- inaccurate** fauti-f, -ve, § 157, l. 7
- incline** s'incliner, § 142; *feel inclined to avoir envie de*
- increase** *vb.* augmenter
- indebted for, be** devoir à qqn. de, § 187, *a*, § 247, *g*
- indispensable** indispensable
- individual** *noun* (*fam.*) individu *m.*
- infinitive** infinitif *m.*, § 239
- inform** (about) renseigner (sur)
- ingenious** ingénieu-x, -se, § 338, *c*
- inn** auberge *f.*
- innocent** innocent-e, § 113, l. 17
- insist** (on) insister (pour + *inf.* or pour que + *subjunctive*), § 258, *c*
- instant that, the** dès que, aussitôt que, § 105; au moment où, § 95, ex. 3; *see soon*
- instead of** au lieu de + *obj.* or au lieu que + *subjunctive*, § 234, ex. 4
- instruction** enseignement *m.*, § 157, l. 13
- instrument** instrument *m.*, § 157, l. 15
- intelligent** intelligent-e, § 96, l. 15
- intend** (to) compter, § 246, ex. 4; *se proposer* (de)
- interest** *vb.* intéresser, § 90, § 157, l. 4, § 215, ex. 2
- interesting** intéressant-e
- into** dans, § 41, l. 3; *en* (traduire *en français* translate into Fr., aller *en France* go to F.), § 335; à (l'eau), § 88, l. 6; **into it or into them** (*of sexless things*) y, § 304, *or là dedans*, § 282, R
- invariable** invariable, § 121
- invitation** (to) invitation (à) *f.*
- invite** (to) inviter (à)
- involve** *See* s'agir, § 132, *d*
- issue** *vb.* sortir; *cf.* être issu-e, § 141
- it** il, § 44, l. 12, §§ 255, 303; elle, § 39; le, la, § 43; ce, § 41, l. 3, § 50, *b*, § 70, l. 2, § 74, exs. 1 and 2, §§ 76–78; cela, ça, §§ 79–81; **find it difficult to trouver difficile de; for in it, for it, about it, etc. (of sexless things) see in, for, about, etc., also** § 282, § 284, *b–c*, *also y and en, also itself* ..
- Italian** italien-ne, § 49, *a*, R
- Italy** Italie *f.*, § 85, N *b*, § 333
- its** *adj.* son, sa, ses, § 54; *en*, § 309
- itself** se, § 43, *a*; *after preps., of indef. things, sometimes soi or soi-même; of specific things, sometimes lui-même or elle-même*, § 179, *a*, § 287; *see it*
- January** janvier *m.*, § 327, *a*
- Japan** Japon *m.*, § 334, ex. 2, § 337
- jaunt** petite excursion *f.* (faire)
- jealous** jalou-x, -se, § 338, *c*
- jewel** bijou *m.*, § 136, *b*
- John** Jean, § 30, *a*
- Jourdain** Jourdain, § 381
- journey** voyage *m.*, § 337, III
- joy** joie *f.*, § 70, l. 3
- July** juillet *m.*, § 327, *a*
- June** juin *m.*, § 327, *a*
- just, have** venir de, § 251, *c*, § 482, R; *ne faire que* de, § 247, *i*; *cf.* § 400, *a*

- (il sort à l'instant); **just** it cela même, § 179, *a*, R; **just now** à l'heure qu'il est; **just a bit** tant soit peu, § 229, Q; **just to** + *inf.* rien qu'à, § 253, ex. 6 (cf. § 374, *b*)
- keen to**, be il + tarder à, § 255, R
- keep** garder; **keep from** empêcher de; **keep** . . . warm tenir chaud à, § 44, l. 1
- kill** tuer, § 85, l. 19, § 159, *b*
- kind** (1) *adj.* aimable, obligeant-e, gentil-le, bon-ne, § 296, *b*
- kind** (2) *noun* genre *m.*, espèce *f.*, § 182, *b*
- king** roi, § 161, l. 3
- kitten** petit-e chat-te; **her kittens** ses petits, § 340
- knoll** glas *m.*, § 266, l. 9
- knife** couteau *m.*; (*pen-*) canif *m.*
- knock** (at) frapper (à), § 238, ex. 4
- know** savoir, § 95, exs. 4 and 5, § 161, l. 11, § 223, ex. 1, § 469; ne pas ignorer, § 223, ex. 3; connaître (*not used with conj. que*), § 460
- knowledge** connaissance *f.*, § 157, l. 13
- labor** travail *m.*, § 143, *a* (*for pl.*)
- ladder** échelle *f.*, § 85, l. 12
- lady** dame, § 74, ex. 1; **young lady** jeune fille; *see* girl
- land** terre *f.*; (*country*) pays *m.*
- language** (*specif.*) langue *f.*, § 157, l. 15; (*speech*) langage *m.*, § 157, or les langues
- large** grand-e (*see* big), gros-se, § 348; *see* become
- last** dernier, dernière, p. 70, II, § 227, *a*, § 253, ex. 9, § 327, *e*, § 355, *b*
- late** *adv.* tard, § 63, ex. 4
- Latin** *noun* latin *m.*, § 49, *a*, R
- latter**, the celui-ci; *see* former
- laud** vanter, § 113, l. 12
- laugh** (at) rire (de), § 141, N
- law** loi *f.*, § 176, ex. 1
- lawsuit** procès *m.*, § 236
- lawyer** avocat *m.*, § 193, l. 10
- lay** mettre (§ 447), poser, coucher
- lazy** paresseu-x, -se, § 338, *c*
- lead** *vb.* mener, § 162, *a*; conduire, § 459; **lead** (*influence*) to amener à, porter à
- leaf** (*of trees etc.*) feuille *f.*
- leap-year** année bissextile *f.*
- learn** (to) apprendre (à), § 60, N 2; savoir, § 463
- learned** *adj.* érudit-e, bien instruit-e, savant-e (§ 260, *b*)
- least** moindre *adj.*, § 55, *b*, R; (le) moins *adv. and pron.*, § 55, *a*, § 56, § 227, ex. 3; **at least** du moins or au moins, § 157, l. 1; *see* less
- leave** (1) *vb.* (*go away*) partir, s'en aller; *tr.* quitter, § 66, l. 7, or laisser; **be left** (*as a remnant*) rester, § 146, R, § 375, ex. 7
- leave** (2) *noun* congé *m.*, § 320
- left** (1) *p.p.* *See* leave (1)
- left** (2) *adj.* gauche, § 344, Q
- leg** jambe *f.*, § 329
- lend** prêter, § 295, ex. 1
- less** moins (de), § 44, l. 8, §§ 55-56; the less . . . the less moins . . . moins, § 56, § 268, *c*; moindre *adj.*, § 55, *b*, R; *see* least
- lesson** leçon *f.*, § 225, *e*, § 362, ex. 10
- lest** de peur que . . . (ne), § 220
- let** laisser, § 244, ex. 4, and § 244, *a*, § 270, *b*; permettre (à qqn. de); *for* let *hortative*, *see* §§ 194-196
- letter** lettre *f.*
- liberty** liberté *f.*
- library** bibliothèque *f.*

- lie** (1) (*tell lies*) mentir, § 78, ex. 3, § 225, *b*
- lie** (2) (*recline*) être couché-e, § 44, l. 2; *cf.* gésir, § 481
- life** vie *f.*, § 52, l. 1
- lightning** foudre *f.*; *cf.* § 302, *b* (4)
- like** (1) *vb.* aimer, § 52, l. 12, § 247, *a*; vouloir, § 101, § 166, *E*, § 238, ex. 1; *cf.* plaie (à), § 86, *b*, ex. 2
- like** (2) *prep.*, *adv.*, *or adj.* comme, § 96, l. 20, pareil-le à, § 352, l. 10; en, § 312, *d*; tel-le que, § 181, ex. 4; *like* . . . *like* tel-le . . . tel-le, § 181, ex. 2; *be* (*or look*) *like* ressembler (à), § 156
- likewise** aussi, également
- limit** *vb.* borner, § 254, l. 39
- lion** lion *m.*, § 113, l. 11; *cf.* § 418
- listen** (*to*) écouter (*no* à), § 61, *a*
- little** (1) *adj.* petit-e, § 55, *b*, R, § 348
- little** (2) *adv.* peu (de), § 49, *b*; *a little* un peu (de), § 254, l. 40; *little by little* peu à peu
- live** vivre, § 140, ex. 2, § 477; *live on* (*food*) se nourrir de, § 132, *d*; *live in* (*or at*) habiter, § 66, l. 9
- loaf** *vb.* flâner, § 247, *h*
- lobster** homard *m.*, § 38, *a*
- logical** logique, § 155, ex. 4
- London** Londres *m.*, § 163, *A*
- long** (1) *adj.* long, longue, § 338, *h*, § 348; *see* long (2)
- long** (2) *adv.* longtemps, depuis longtemps, § 192; *as* (*or so*) *long as* tant que, § 86, ex. 2, § 193, l. 26; *no longer* ne (. . .) plus, § 375; *how long* combien de temps, § 161, l. 13
- look** (1) *vb.* regarder; *look as if* avoir l'air de, *cf.* look (2); *look at* regarder; *look for* chercher
- look** (2) *noun* air *m.*, § 256, ex. 3, § 350, *b*; *see* look (1)
- lose** perdre, § 95, ex. 3, § 191
- lot**, *a* (*fam.*) un tas (de)
- loud** *adv.* haut, § 362, ex. 1; fort, § 52, l. 8, § 362, ex. 3
- love** (1) *vb.* aimer, § 49, *a*, § 417
- love** (2) *noun* amour *m.*, § 49, *b*, R
- low** (1) *adj.* bas, basse, § 113, l. 5, § 349, *d*, § 350, *d*; *see* tones
- low** (2) *adv.* bas, § 362, ex. 1
- luck** chance *f.*, § 65, ex. 3; *veine f.*, § 193
- luckily** heureusement, § 361
- lucky**, *be* avoir de la chance
- lunch** (1) *vb.* déjeuner, § 105, l. 5
- lunch** (2) *noun* déjeuner *m.*
- luncheon** *See* lunch (2)
- madam** madame, § 155, ex. 8, § 324, R
- magnificent** magnifique
- maid**, old vieille fille, § 348, R
- make** faire, § 478, § 244, § 270, *a*; (*force to*) forcer à (*or de*), § 247, *f*; (*cause to be*) rendre, § 190; *make use of* se servir de, § 225, *c*; *make money* gagner (*or fam.* faire) de l'argent
- malicious** méchant-e, § 113, l. 10
- man** homme, § 34, § 253, ex. 12
- manage** to trouver moyen de, § 312, *a*
- manner** façon *f.*, § 231, N 1
- many** beaucoup (de), § 44, l. 12; (*many animals are* il y a beaucoup d'animaux qui . . .); bien des, § 178, *d*, N; *so many* tant de, § 49, *b*; (*so many things happen* il arrive tant de choses); *as many as* autant que; *how many* combien de, § 156, que de, § 268, *b*; *many and many a* maint-e et maint-e, § 177, *a*; *see* much
- March** mars *m.*, § 327, *a*
- marry** épouser, § 100
- mass** (*ceremony*) messe *f.*, § 322, *a*
- master** maître *m.*, § 41, l. 1, § 381

- matter**, no n'importe, § 155, *c*, R; **what matter** qu'importe, § 153; **business matters** des affaires *f.*; **be the matter** y avoir, § 302, *b* (5)
- may** (*and might*), § 98, ex. 1; pouvoir, § 165, § 202, *b*; **it may be that** il se peut que, § 229, *b*, Q (*end*); **may** (*might*) **as well** autant vaut *etc.*, § 245, ex. 9; *see might*
- May** mai *m.*, § 327, *a*
- maybe** peut-être (*see perhaps*)
- me** me, moi, § 41, l. 6, §§ 43, 197-198, 201, 261, 1 *b*, §§ 292, 298
- meal** repas *m.*, § 52, l. 3, § 143, *c*
- mean** *vb.* vouloir dire, § 249, l. 5
- meaning** sens *m.*, § 44, ll. 8 *and* 11
- meaningless** vain-e, § 44, l. 12
- means** moyen *m.* (*see manage*)
- meddle in** se mêler de, § 162, *g*
- meet** rencontrer (§ 90), faire la connaissance de; *intr.* se réunir, § 284, *a*; **be met** (*encountered*) se trouver, se rencontrer
- meeting** réunion *f.*; *but see* § 284, *a*
- mention it, don't** il n'y a pas de quoi, § 140, ex. 3
- merciful** clément-e, § 113, l. 13
- merely** *See only* (2)
- message** dépêche *f.*
- method** méthode *f.*, § 181, ex. 1
- Mexico** (le) Mexique, § 337, l. 11
- midnight** minuit *m.* (*see noon*)
- midst** milieu *m.*, § 48, l. 5
- might** *vb.* *expressed by E form*, § 95, ex. 2; *see may*
- mind** (1) *vb.* faire attention (à), § 253, ex. 8; **never mind** n'importe *or ça ne fait rien*
- mind** (2) *noun* esprit *m.*, § 161, l. 17
- mine** le mien *etc.*, § 57; à moi, § 297; *see belong*
- minute** minute *f.*, § 182, *c*, 3, § 356, *b*
- misery** misère *f.* (cf. § 70, l. 11)
- miss** *vb.* manquer, § 85, ll. 22-23
- mistake** (*in*) faute (de) *f.*, § 157, l. 19; erreur *f.*
- mister** [Mr.] monsieur [M.], § 33, N *d*, § 146, *a*
- misunderstand** mal comprendre
- misunderstanding** malentendu *m.*, § 272
- modern** moderne, §§ 325, 344
- modify** modifier, § 418
- Molière** Molière, § 25, *d*, § 381
- moment** moment *m.*, § 95, ex. 3; **every moment** (*instant*) *adv.*, § 52, l. 3
- Monday** lundi *m.*, § 327, *e*
- money** argent *m.*, § 49, *b*
- month** mois *m.*, § 143, *c*, § 327, *a*
- more** plus (de), § 49, *b*, § 375; **davantage**, § 102 (*end*), § 375, *a*, N 2; **the more . . . the more** plus . . . plus, § 56, § 268, *c*; **one more** un (une) de plus; **six years more** six autres années, § 178, *e*; *see most*
- morning** matin *m.*, p. 69, I, § 327, *d*
- most** le plus (de) *etc.*, §§ 55-56; **le mieux** (aimer le mieux); **la plupart**, § 55, l. 1, § 319, *g*; *see more*
- mother** mère *f.*, § 38, *a*
- mother-in-law** belle-mère, § 348, *a*
- motor-car** automobile *f.*, 'auto' *f.*
- mouse** souris *f.*, § 113, l. 4
- mouth** bouche *f.*, § 44, l. 6, § 329
- mouthful** bouchée *f.*, § 88, l. 5
- move** *vb.* émouvoir (*fig.*), § 168, *a*
- movement** mouvement *m.*, § 70, l. 6
- much** beaucoup (de), bien du *etc.*; **very much** **alone** bien seule; **much less** bien (*or* beaucoup) moins, § 44, l. 8; **as much as** autant (de . . .) que, § 96, l. 23; **how much** (*or many*) que de,

- § 154, ex. 4; combien (de), § 156, 1; so much tant (de), tellement; much - (in some negations) grand' chose, § 312, e, § 370, ex. 15; never say très beaucoup for very much; see many
- music** musique *f.*, § 362, ex. 10
- musical (instrument)** (instrument) de musique; see music
- must** falloir (*impers.*), § 470, *b* (with *subjunctive*), § 222, (with *inf.*), § 52, l. 2, § 245, *b*; devoir, § 187
- my** mon, ma, mes, § 54; me (*dat.*), § 295, *d, h*, §§ 329-330; à moi, § 297
- myself** me, § 43, *a*; moi, moi-même, §§ 278, 283, 287; by myself à moi seul-*e*, § 88, ll. 8-9
- naïve** (*guileless*) naïf, naïve
- name** nom *m.*, § 155, ex. 1; my name is . . . je m'appelle . . . , § 162, *c*
- narrow** étroit-*e*; see escape
- nasal** nasal-*e*, § 338, *g, N*
- natural** naturel-*le*, § 338, *e*
- naughty** méchant-*e*, § 113, l. 10
- near** près de (*in some cases*, près)
- nearly** presque, à peu près
- necessary** nécessaire, § 44, l. 13; see must
- need** *vb.* avoir besoin de, § 102, ex. 2; (*impers.*) falloir, § 178, ex. 15
- neither** (1) *conj.* ni, § 377
- neither** (2) *pron.* ni l'un (l'une) ni l'autre, § 377, N 1, § 381, N 2
- Nero** Néron, § 25, *b*, § 486
- nervous** nerveu-*x, -se*, § 238, ex. 4
- nest** nid *m.*, p. 109, V, § 201, l. 6
- net** filet *m.*, § 88, l. 3
- never** jamais, p. 70, III, § 373
- new** neuf, neuve, § 250, ex. 5; nouveau *etc.*, § 325, § 338, *f*
- New Orleans** la Nouvelle-Orléans, § 325
- newspaper** journal *m.*, § 136, *a*
- next** prochain-*e*, § 327, *e*
- nice** gentil-*le*, § 338, *f*, § 256, R, 4
- night** nuit *f.*, § 182, *c, 2*, § 327, *d*
- nine** neuf, § 354, *b, h*
- nineteen** dix-neuf, § 354, *b*, § 66, l. 3
- ninth** (*title*) neuf (IX), § 355, *c*
- no** (1) *Engl. adj.* ne . . . pas, § 53, N 2, §§ 90, 370; aucun-*e*, § 170, *a-e*, § 178, ex. 5; nul-*le*, § 184; for no one see nobody
- no** (2) *Engl. adv.* non (*cf.* oui and si), §§ 90, 366; no more, no longer ne . . . plus, § 375
- nobleman** gentilhomme, § 348, *a*
- nobody** personne, §§ 90, 186, 374, *e*, § 376; see no (1)
- noise** bruit *m.*, § 44, l. 12
- nominative** cas sujet *m.*, nominatif *m.*
- none** aucun-*e*, § 170, *c*; ne . . . pas (*with en*); see no (1) and any.
- nook and corner**, every tous les coins et recoins, § 307, *e*, ex. 2
- noon** midi *m.*, § 63, ex. 5, § 356, *b*
- nor** ni, § 377; see neither (1)
- Normandy** Normandie *f.*, §§ 333, 335
- north** nord *m.* (l'Amérique du Nord)
- not** (*don't, isn't, etc.*) ne . . . pas *etc.*, ne . . . point *etc.*, § 52, l. 12, §§ 90, 370-371, 366-381; non pas or pas, § 366, *c-h*; not I moi non, § 33, l. 4, or pas moi, § 366, *g*; not very peu, § 56, § 366, *d*; not so . . . as moins . . . que, § 56, N; not one pas un-*e* (ne), § 311; not everybody . . . ce n'est pas tout le monde qui; on ne or pas alone, see §§ 368-370
- note** *vb.* noter; note and record (*ascertain*) constater, § 157, l. 5

nothing rien, § 374; **nothing else** pas autre chose, § 370, *f*, N 2, *or* rien d'autre; *see else*

notice *vb.* s'apercevoir (de *or* que), p. 153, II-III; remarquer, § 85, l. 6
noun nom *m.*

novel (by) roman (de) m.

novelty nouveauté *f.*

now maintenant; *see also* just

nowhere nulle part, § 184

number nombre *m.*, § 312, *a*, ex. 2, § 359

numerous nombreux-*x*, -*se*, § 338, *c*

obey obéir (à), § 132, *d*

object *noun* objet *m.*, § 157, l. 12

oblige (to) obliger (à, de), § 247, *f*

obliging aimable

observe observer

occasion occasion *f.*, § 177

occur arriver, se passer, § 146; venir à l'esprit, § 295, ex. 15

o'clock heure-*s f.*, § 356, *b*

of de (du *etc.*), §§ 45, 318-319, 323, 332-333, 335; **of it, of them** (*impers.*) en, § 284, *c*, § 304; de lui, d'elle-*s*, d'eux *usually apply to persons*; *en must sometimes be omitted*: **most of them** speak to him la plupart lui parlent; *note* quelques-uns d'entre nous (vous *etc.*) **some of us** (you *etc.*); **of + vb.** de + *inf.*, § 241, ex. 5; **think of** penser à (*or* de), *see think and cf.* songer à, § 96, l. 22; **August 19** le dix-neuf août, § 355, *c*; **nice of you** gentil à vous, § 256, R 4; **of mine** à moi, **of John's** à Jean, § 297; **all of us** nous tous (*see all*)

off *adv.* en (s'en aller); **carry off** emporter; **a day off** un jour libre, § 340, N; **off prep.** de (*Fr. has no*

true equivalent of off; *see of and from*)

offer (to) offrir (de + *inf.*), § 440; *cf.* offrir que, § 215, ex. 7

often souvent, § 56; **how often** combien (*possibly* que) de fois; *see how*

oh oh, ô (p. 330, II), ah (p. 138, II) · **old** vieux, vieil, vieille, § 338, *f*, § 348,

R; **ancien-ne**, § 338, *e*; **how old** quel âge, § 150, ex. 1; **be . . . years old** avoir . . . ans, § 66, l. 3

on sur, § 33, l. 4, § 52, l. 10; **on Monday** (le) lundi, § 327, *e*; **on all sides** de toutes parts, § 70, ll. 4-5 (*so* de ce côté **on this side**); **on it** (**on them**,

impers.) là-dessus, § 282, R, § 304;

on —ing en —ant, § 33, l. 2; §§ 261-262

once une fois; **at once** (*forthwith*) tout de suite; **at once** (*simultaneously*) en même temps

one (1) *num. adj. or pron.* un, une, §§ 311, 353-355; **page one** page un,

§ 355, *c*; **one of them** un (*or* l'un) d'eux, une d'elles *etc.*, § 85, l. 10; **one**

or the other, **one of the two**, l'un (l'une) ou l'autre, § 381, l. 6; **one thing . . . another** autre chose . . .

autre chose, § 178, ex. 8; *for one another* *see another and each*; **one and the same** un-*e* seul-*e* et même, § 179,

ex. 3; **the (this, that) one, the ones** celui, celui-ci, *etc.*, § 82, § 122, ex. 2,

§ 157, l. 7, § 183; **good ones** de bons, de bonnes, § 340, *a* (*cf.* § 180)

one (2) *indef. pers. pron.* on, § 43, § 284, *a*, § 305

one's son, sa, ses, § 305; **one's own** le sien *etc.*, §§ 57, 305

oneself se, § 43, *a-b*; **soi, soi-même**, § 284, *a*

only (1) *Engl. adj.* seul-e, § 157, l. 24, § 227, a

only (2) *Engl. adv.* seulement; ne . . . que, § 88, ll. 4-5, § 378; ne faire que + *vb.*, § 246, ex. 8; **only I** moi seul je, § 48, l. 4, **only I (I alone)** can moi seule peux, § 290, ex. 5, il n'y a que moi qui, § 227, N 2; **only the French** les Français seuls or seuls les Français

open (1) *vb.* ouvrir, § 440

open (2) *adj.* ouvert-e, § 349, f, § 364, b

opinion opinion *f.*, avis *m.*, § 143, c

or ou, § 48, l. 7; (*stressed*) ou bien, § 193, l. 10; **either . . . or** soit . . . soit, § 213, d; *see* **nor**

order (1) *vb.* ordonner (à qqn. de), § 161, ll. 6-7

order (2) *noun* ordre *m.*, § 96, l. 20; **in order to** pour, § 41, ll. 3-4, afin de, § 241, d, N 2; **in order that** pour que, § 231

ordinarily d'ordinaire, § 96, l. 1

Orleans Orléans, § 325; *see* **New**

other-s autre-s, d'autres, § 70, l. 11, § 178; **somebody** (something, somewhere) or other je ne sais qui (quoi, où), § 155, c, R; of **others** d'autres, des autres, or (*archaically*) d'autrui

otherwise autrement (*cf.* § 157, l. 12)

ought generally *E of* devoir, § 187, or *of* falloir, § 470; *see* **must**

our notre, nos, § 54; nous (*dat.*) and *art.*, § 295, d, f, h; or *art. alone*, §§ 329-330

ours le nôtre *etc.*, § 57; of **ours** à nous, § 297; *see* **belong**

ourselves nous, § 43, a; nous-mêmes or nous, § 287, b

out, go (come) sortir; **throw out** jeter, § 161, l. 8; **dine out** dîner en ville, § 321; **out of** de, § 44, l. 6; hors

de; par, § 161, l. 8; **out of it** (*them impers.*) en, § 113, l. 18, or de là; **out of tune** *adv.* faux, § 362, ex. 5

outcome issue *f.*, § 236

outside dehors; *see* **out of**

over (1) *adv.* au-dessus; (*finished*) fini; *see* **above**

over (2) *prep.* sur, § 85, l. 12; **par-dessus** (the wall la muraille)

overtake rattraper, p. 94, V

owe devoir, § 187

owl hibou *m.*, § 136, b

own *adj. or pron.* propre, § 95, ex. 8; le mien *etc.*, § 57; à moi, à toi, *etc.*, § 296, a, § 297

ox bœuf *m.*, § 143, b

oyster huître *f.*, § 19

page page *f.*, § 105, l. 4, § 355, c

paint peindre, p. 175

painter peintre *m.*, § 146, b

painting peinture *f.*, § 268, ex. 12

palace palais *m.*, § 101, l. 7, § 319, h

pant haleter, § 162, d, § 261, 4 a

paper papier *m.*, § 271, ex. 2

parcel paquet *m.*

pardon *noun* pardon *m.* (*see* **forgive**)

Paris Paris *m.*, § 42, N

Parisian parisien-ne, § 49, a, R

parlor salon *m.*, § 96, l. 6

part (1) *vb.* *See* **company**

part (2) *noun* partie *f.*; **for my part**, I moi, je

particularly particulièrement

pass passer, § 427, d

passage passage *m.*

past one, half *etc.* une heure et demie *etc.*, § 356, b

patience patience *f.*, § 202, a

patient (1) *adj.* *See* § 202, a

patient (2) *noun* malade *m. or f.*

- Pau Pau** *m.*
- pay** (1) *vb.* payer, § 158, § 328, ex. 4;
pay a visit faire (une) visite
- pay** (2) *noun* (wages) gages *m. pl.*,
§ 96, l. 22
- pear** poire *f.*, § 38, *a*
- pearl** perle *f.*, § 49, *c*
- pen** plume *f.*, § 82, ex. 2
- pencil** crayon *m.*, § 178, ex. 4
- pension** (boarding-house) pension *f.*
- people** gens, § 74, ex. 2 (*m. and f.*,
§ 491); monde *m.*, § 226, ex. 4; on,
see one (2) *and other-s*
- perceive** s'apercevoir, § 188, *a*
- perfection** perfection *f.*
- perfectly** parfaitement, § 161, l. 11
- performing** (*dog*) savant, § 260, *b*
- perhaps** peut-être (*or* peut-être que,
with indic.); *see maybe*
- Périgord** Périgord *m.*, § 334, ex. 5
- person** personne *f.*, § 55, l. 2
- Peter** Pierre
- philologist** philologue *m.*
- philology** philologie *f.*
- philosophy** philosophie *f.*
- phonetic** phonétique, §§ 33, 344
- phrase** locution *f.*
- picture** tableau *m.*; (*in books*) image *f.*
- piece** pièce *f.*, § 97; (*of furniture*)
meuble *m.*, § 96, l. 6
- pill** pilule *f.*
- pin** (*lit.*) épingle *f.*; (*fig.*) hear a pin
drop entendre voler une mouche,
§ 96, ll. 13-14
- pity** (1) *vb.* plaindre, § 283, *c*, ex. 1
- pity** (2) *noun* pitié *f.*, § 202, *a*; dom-
mage *m.*, § 215, ex. 3 (*or* de + *inf.*)
- place** endroit *m.*, § 85, l. 6; lieu *m.*,
§ 80, ex. 1; (*post*) place *f.*, § 95, ex. 3
- plain** *adj.* laid-e; *see ugly*
- plan** projet *m.*, § 170, *b*
- plate** assiette *f.*, § 268, ex. 5
- play** jouer (à), § 253, ex. 9; (*an in-
strument*) jouer de; (*feign to be*)
faire le (la), p. 302, I, 9
- pleasant**, be faire bon, § 250, *d*
- please** plaire (à), faire plaisir (à),
§ 296, *a*; (*suit*) convenir (à); **please**
knock veuillez frapper, § 202, *e*;
when you please quand vous vou-
drez, § 166, *D*
- pleasing** aimable, § 48, l. 11; agréable,
§ 296, *b*; beau *etc.*, § 348, *R*
- pleasure** plaisir *m.*, § 296, *a*
- plenty** (of) beaucoup (de), § 49, *b*
- plural** pluriel *m.*, § 121
- point** point *m.*, endroit *m.*
- poison** *vb.* empoisonner, § 95, ex. 8
- Poitou** Poitou *m.*, § 334, § 337, III
- poor** pauvre, § 70, l. 10, § 344, *C*
- portrait** portrait *m.*
- Portugal** Portugal *m.*, §§ 334, 337
- position** place *f.*, § 95, ex. 3; **be in a
position** to être à même de, § 227,
N 1 (*end*)
- possession** of, take s'emparer de,
§ 85, l. 7
- possible** possible, § 51
- possibly** peut-être (cf. § 89)
- post card** (postal [card]) carte pos-
tale *f.*
- potato** pomme de terre *f.*, § 318, *a*
- pour** verser; (*rain hard*) pleuvoir à
verse, § 266, l. 13, N 9
- power** pouvoir *m.*, § 161, l. 23
- praise** *vb.* louer, § 418, *a*
- pray** (*expletive*) donc (*after vb.*)
- precede** précéder, § 162, *f*
- predict** prédire, § 161, l. 2, § 474, *a*
- prefer** aimer + mieux, § 247, *a*, § 215,
ex. 9; préférer, § 162, *f*
- preposition** préposition *f.*

- presence** présence *f.*, § 161, l. 17
pretty joli-e, § 55, F, § 348
prevent empêcher, § 178, ex. 9
prince prince, § 101, l. 3
probable probable
probably probablement, § 361
problem problème *m.*
process procédé *m.*, § 157, l. 2
proclaim proclamer, § 157, l. 7
produce produire, § 459
professor professeur *m.*, § 324
promise (1) *vb.* promettre, § 447
promise (2) *noun* promesse *f.*
prompt prompt-e, § 48, l. 3
pronoun pronom *m.*, § 121
pronounce prononcer, § 106, ex. 2
prose prose *f.*, § 381
proud fier, fière, § 338, a
proverb proverbe *m.*, § 155, b, N
provided that pourvu que, § 230
prowl rôder, § 96, l. 3
pull tirer, § 85, l. 16 (fire)
punish (for) punir (de), § 41, l. 4,
 § 132, d, § 176, exs. 1-2
pure pur-e
purpose but [by] *m.*; dessein *m.*,
 § 254, l. 33; *see* aim (1)
put mettre, § 41, l. 2, § 447; **put back**
 remettre, § 172, R

quality qualité *f.*, § 55, l. 2
quantity quantité *f.*
queer étrange, bizarre, drôle-s de
before noun, drôle-s *after noun*
question question *f.* (*see* ask)
quickly vite, § 56
quietly, so avec si peu de bruit
quite tout à fait, § 182, c, 9; *cf.* tout
 (autre), § 178, ex. 12; **be quite differ-**
ent from ne ressembler pas du tout
 à; **quite near** tout près

racket (tennis) raquette *f.*
rag haillon *m.*, § 52, l. 9
railway station gare *f.*, *see* station
rain (1) *vb.* pleuvoir, § 169
rain (2) *noun* pluie *f.*
rampart rempart *m.*, § 85, l. 21
rare rare
rather plutôt (*cf.* soon); (*somewhat*)
 assez, un peu; **would rather** aimer
 + mieux, § 247, a
read lire, § 113, l. 1, § 475
ready (to) prêt-e (à), § 253, c
realize se rendre compte, § 190, E
really vraiment, § 361; **ma foi** (*cf.*
 § 381, l. 20); **really true** bien vrai,
 § 81, ex. 2
reason raison *f.*, § 170, ex. 1; **the**
reason is *often* c'est que, § 78, ex. 4
reasonable raisonnable, § 193; l. 6
recall (remember) se rappeler (que),
 § 223, ex. 4; *with inf.*, § 246, ex. 6;
see § 162, d, *and* remember
receive recevoir, § 188
recognize reconnaître, § 113, l. 2
recommend recommander
record *vb.* consigner; *but see* note
red rouge, § 349, c
re-form reformer, § 157, l. 9
refrain (from) s'abstenir (de), § 240
refuge, take s'abriter (*see* shelter)
refuse (to) refuser (de), § 240
regard to, with au sujet de
regret (to) regretter (de), § 251, d;
with que, § 215, ex. 1
reject rejeter, § 162, d
relative relati-f, -ve, § 121
rely on se fier à, § 299, ex. 4; *or*
 compter sur, § 306, ex. 3
remain rester, §§ 73, 146; **demeurer**,
 § 33, l. 5, § 427, d
remarkable remarquable

- remember** se souvenir de, § 227, R, § 482 (*end*); see **recall**
- renew** renouveler, § 162, *d*
- reopen** (se) rouvrir, § 266, l. 7, § 391 (*footnote*), § 440
- repeat** répéter, § 162, *f*
- reply** (1) *vb.* répondre (à to), § 85, l. 15, § 445
- reply** (2) *noun* réponse (à to) *f.*
- resemble** ressembler (à), § 156, 1
- resign oneself** se résigner, § 254, l. 38
- resolve** (to) résoudre (de), § 85, l. 7; *for* se résoudre à see § 451
- respects, in all** à tous (les) égards, § 182, p. 148 (*top*)
- rest** (1) *vb.* se reposer
- rest** (2) *noun* (*remainder*) les autres, § 58, ex. 4; reste *m.*, § 359, *b*
- return** (*come back*) revenir, rentrer, § 73, § 427, *b*; (*go back*) retourner, rentrer, § 427, *b*; (*give back*) rendre, § 190, *D*
- revolt** révolte *f.*, § 176, ex. 2
- revolver** revolver, § 89, ex. 2
- reward** récompense *f.*, § 66, l. 7
- rich** riche (*cf. poor*); **make** . . . rich enrichir, § 132, *d*; **get rich** s'enrichir, § 262, 11
- rid of, get** se débarrasser de (*cf.* § 162, *a*, N)
- ridiculous** ridicule, § 51
- right** (*not left*) droit-*e*, § 344, Q; (*correct*) correct-*e*, exact-*e*, juste; **right end** bon bout: § 348 R; **be right** (*of persons*) avoir raison, § 122, N
- rise** se lever, § 105, l. 1, § 162, *a*, N; see **get up**
- risk** risquer (*tr.*, or *de* + *inf.*)
- road** chemin *m.*, p. 90
- roll** rouler, § 52, l. 11
- Rome** Rome *f.*, § 182, *a*
- room** pièce *f.*; (*bedroom*) chambre *f.*
- rose** rose *f.*, § 49, *a*
- Rouen** Rouen *m.*, p. 78, III
- round about** autour de, § 48, ll. 7-8; see **about**
- route** route *f.*, § 268, ex. 1
- rule** règle *f.*, § 157, l. 24
- run** courir, § 52, l. 13, § 437
- sad** triste, § 347; **become sad** s'attrister (*se sentir attrister*)
- sail** (*away*) partir, faire voile
- saint** saint-*e*, §§ 324, 340
- salary** appointements *m.*, salaire *m.*
- same** même, § 179; **at the same time** en même temps
- Saturday** samedi *m.*, § 327, *e*, § 356, *a*, 15
- say** dire, § 85, l. 11; *regular parenthetic inversion in* § 88, l. 12
- scene** scène *f.*, § 305, *b*, ex. 3
- scholar** (*of note*) savant *m.*, § 260, *b*
- school** école *f.*, § 113, l. 6
- science** science *f.*, § 154, ex. 5
- sea** mer *f.*, § 24, *c*
- season** saison *f.*
- second** (1) *adj.* deuxième, seconde-*e*, § 354, *d*; (*in titles*) deux, § 355, *c*
- second** (2) *noun* seconde *f.*, § 182, *c*, 3
- see** voir, § 463, § 46, § 48, l. 9; (*voir* + *inf.*) § 221, § 301, R; (*for p.p.*) § 268, exs. 3 and 12, § 270, *b*
- seek** chercher (*see look vb.*)
- seem** sembler, § 96, l. 16, § 223, *b*, § 245, *b*; paraître, § 245, *b*
- Seine** Seine *f.*, § 266, l. 15
- seldom** rarement, peu souvent
- self, -selves** -même-*s*, § 179, *a*, § 283-287; see **myself etc.**
- sell** vendre, § 191, § 328, ex. 1

- send** envoyer, § 164; **send for** envoyer chercher, § 161, ll. 5-6, § 250, *b*, § 270, ex. 3
- sentence** phrase *f.*, § 249, l. 10
- sentinel** sentinelle *f.*, § 85, l. 14
- September** septembre *m.*, § 327, *a*
- servant** domestique *m. or f.*; (*housemaid*) servante *f.*, bonne *f.*
- serve** servir, § 225, *e*
- set** placer, poser, mettre
- seven** sept, § 354, *f.*; **at seven** à sept heures
- seventeenth** dix-septième, § 353
- several** plusieurs, § 177
- shadow** ombre *f.*
- shall** (*and should*) *aux.* §§ 84-86, 91-92, 95, *c*, 97-100, 226, *b*; **shall and should** may be expressed at times also by *devoir*, § 187, *or by falloir*, § 470, *b*
- shame** honte *f.*, § 37, *b*, § 122, ex. 2
- she** elle, §§ 43, 281-282, 286, 289; *possibly ce*, § 74, ex. 1
- shed** hangar *m.*, § 34
- shell** (*artill.*) obus [oby] *m.*
- shelter** (1) *vb.* abriter, § 70, l. 4
- shelter** (2) *noun* abri *m.* (à l'abri)
- ship** navire *m.*, vaisseau *m.*
- shop** magasin *m.*; (*if small*) boutique *f.*, § 320
- short** court-*e*, § 348
- shortly before** peu avant
- should** *aux.* See *shall*
- shoulder** épaule *f.*, § 295, *d*, *h*
- show** montrer, § 280, *b*; **show in** faire entrer
- shut** fermer (*see close vb.*)
- sick** malade (*see ill adj.*)
- side** côté *m.*, § 172, ex. 2; **on all sides** de toutes parts, § 70, ll. 4-5; **take sides** prendre parti (pour qqn.), § 113, l. 16
- sight** vue *f.*, § 70, l. 10
- silent**, **be or become** se taire, § 213, *a*, ex. 1, § 476
- silly** sot, sotté, §§ 338, 348
- simply** (tout) simplement
- since** depuis *prep.*; depuis que *conj.*, § 192; (*because*) puisque
- sing** chanter, § 270, ex. 2; (*buzz, of ears*) bourdonner
- single**, **a un-e** seul-*e*; **not a single** pas un-*e* (seul-*e*), § 311
- sir** monsieur *or* Monsieur, § 9, *d*; (*usually not initial*) § 381
- sister** sœur *f.*, § 38, *a*, § 324
- sit** être assis-*e*; **sit down** s'asseoir, § 462, *N*
- site** emplacement *m.*
- situation** situation *f.* (*see boat*)
- six** six, § 354, *b*
- sixth** sixième, § 354, *b*
- sixty-five** soixante-cinq, § 354, *b*, *e*
- sixty-six** soixante-six, § 354, *b*
- size** grandeur *f.* (cf. § 33, l. 5)
- sky** ciel *m.*, § 143, *b*; **the skies of Italy** les ciels de l'Italie; **skies gray** than ours des ciels plus gris que les nôtres; *less technically* cieux
- slang** argot *m.*
- sleep** (1) *vb.* dormir, § 225, *a*
- sleep** (2) *noun* sommeil *m.*, § 48, l. 9
- slight** *adj.* léger, légère, § 338, *a*; **slightest** (*least*) moindre, § 55, *b*, *R*
- slip away from** fausser compagnie à, § 320
- slowly** lentement, §§ 56, 361
- small** petit-*e*, § 55, *b*, *R*, § 348
- smell** *vb.* sentir, § 225, *d*
- smile** (1) *vb.* sourire, § 479, § 286, l. 6, § 264, 4
- smile** (2) *noun* sourire *m.*, § 240, *R*
- smoke** fumer, § 194, *a*

so *adv.* (to such a degree) before adjs., advs., and *p.p.*: si, tellement; with other *vb.* forms: tant, tellement (je m'ennuie tellement); before *faim*, *soif*, *chaud*, *froid*, *peur*, *besoin* (§ 122, N, § 320): si; **so few** si peu (de), **so much**, **so many** tant (de), **so little** si peu (de), § 49, b; **so that** (of result) en sorte que, si bien que; **so as to** (purpose or result) de façon à + *inf.*, § 241, d, N 2; **so that** (of purpose) pour que etc., § 231; **so = thus** ainsi, comme ça; **so long as** (of time) tant que; **so much the better** tant mieux; **so = accordingly** donc, § 157, l. 20; of vague antecedents: le, I think so je le pense, § 303

social social-e etc., § 338, g, § 157, l. 18

soft tendre, mou, mol, molle (§ 338, f, § 348, R)

soldier soldat *m.*, p. 46, III

solve résoudre, § 451

some quelque-s, § 173; du, de la, etc., § 38, a, §§ 46, 318; certain-e etc., § 174; **some ten** quelque dix; *pron.* quelques-un(e)s, §§ 173, 180; **some . . . others** les un(e)s . . . les autres, or qui . . . qui, § 135; **some think so** il y en a (quelques-uns) qui le pensent; see **somebody**, **somehow**, **something**, etc.

somebody or **someone** quelqu'un-e, §§ 173, 180; on, see one (2); **somebody** or **other** je ne sais qui, § 152

somehow (or **other**) de façon ou d'autre, § 178; je ne sais comment

someone See **somebody**

something quelque chose *m.*, § 161, l. 2, § 180; **that is something which . . . c'est là** (or voilà) une chose

qui etc., § 80; **something very different** tout autre chose, § 178, c, Q; **something or other** je ne sais quoi, § 152; **something else** quelque chose d'autre, or in some cases autre chose; **something to eat** (quelque chose) à manger, § 253, a

sometimes quelquefois, parfois; **sometimes . . . sometimes** tantôt . . . tantôt

somewhat un peu

somewhere quelque part, § 89, ex. 2; **somewhere or other** je ne sais où, § 155, R; see **some and something**

son fils, § 54, d, § 143, c

soon bientôt (see early); **sooner** plus tôt; **soonest** le plus tôt; **as soon as** aussitôt que, dès que, etc., § 86, b, §§ 105-106; **as soon as possible** aussitôt que possible, le plus tôt qu'on pourra, etc.; **so soon** si tôt or sitôt; **too soon** trop tôt; note that for **soon alone** bientôt is commoner than tôt but must not be modified (do not use très bientôt or the like)

sort sorte *f.* (see kind noun)

sou sou *m.* (about one cent or half-penny; see franc)

sound son *m.*, § 44, l. 10, § 45

south sud [syd] *m.*, § 449, h (but see north and southern)

southern méridional-e etc., § 338, g, § 344, Q (see south)

Spain Espagne *f.*, § 14, c, §§ 333, 335, 346

speak parler, § 43, b, § 58, ex. 2, § 107, § 317, R, § 416

speech le langage, § 157

speech-sound phonème *m.*, § 157, l. 6

spell (out) épeler, § 162, d

spelling orthographe *f.*, § 157, l. 19, § 254

- spend** (*time*) passer; (*money*) dépenser
- spite of, in** malgré (moi *etc.*); *conj.* malgré que, § 229, N 2
- spring** (*season*) printemps *m.*, § 327, *b*
- spy** (*upon*) épier, § 48, l. 2, § 418
- squarely** (*blunty*) carrément, § 361
- stagger** chanceler, § 162, *d*
- stairs** escalier *m.*, § 96, l. 11
- stampede** *noun* sauve-qui-peut *m.*, § 213, *c*
- stand** être (debout), se tenir (debout); se mettre, § 288, *a*; **stand idle** chômer, § 266; *see* § 481, N
- start** partir; (*a law-suit*) intenter, § 236
- starve** mourir de faim, § 319, *a*, ex. 1
- state** état *m.*; *see* United
- station** (*railway*) gare *f.*, § 55, *b*, R
- stay** rester, § 73; *see* remain
- steal** voler, § 295, ex. 2
- step** *noun* pas, § 143, *c*, N
- stick** bâton *m.*, § 348, R
- still** (*yet*) encore, § 98, ex. 1; (*now, as before*) toujours; *see* however
- stir up** susciter, § 176, ex. 2
- stock** *See* family
- stone** pierre *f.*, § 34
- stop** arrêter *tr.*; *refl.* s'arrêter
- stoppage of work** chômage *m.*, § 266
- storm** orage *m.*
- story** (*tale etc.*) histoire *f.*; conte *m.* (*see* history)
- strange** étrange, § 313, ex. 1
- stranger** étranger, étrangère
- stream** rivière *f.*, § 88, l. 2
- street** rue *f.*, § 52, l. 6; *often adv.*: come to . . . Street venez rue . . .
- strike** frapper; (*of clocks*) sonner, § 193, ll. 25-26, § 356, *b*, 7
- strong** fort-e, § 113, l. 17; vigoureux-x, -se, § 338, *c*
- student** étudiant-e, élève *m. or f.*
- study** (1) *vb.* étudier, § 159, *a*
- study** (2) *noun* étude *f.*
- stuffy, smell** sentir le renfermé, § 225, *d*
- stumble** trébucher, § 96, l. 5
- stunning** (*slang*) épatant-e, chic
- stupid** stupide, bête (§ 349, *h*)
- style, in the English** à l'anglaise, § 331 (*note* style *m.*)
- subject** sujet *m.*, § 150, ex. 1
- substitute** (*for*) substituer (à), remplacer (par)
- succeed** (*in*) réussir (à), § 132, *d*; (*follow*) succéder (à), § 48, l. 4
- succumb** succomber, § 41, ll. 4-5
- such, such a, such and such** (a) tel-le, § 157, l. 3, § 181; *cf.* pareil-le, §§ 129, 338, *e*
- suffer** souffrir, § 440
- suffering** souffrance *f.*, § 52, l. 2
- sum** somme *f.*
- summer** été *m.*, § 319, *f*, § 327, *b*
- sun** soleil *m.*, § 302, *b* (4)
- Sunday** dimanche *m.*, § 327, *e*
- support** soutenir, § 85, l. 20
- suppose** supposer, § 100, § 223, p. 180 (*top*); **supposed to** supposé-e, réputé-e, *etc.*, + *inf.*, § 245, *b*
- sure** sûr-e, § 100; certain-e, § 161, l. 18 (*see* fail to)
- surprise** (1) *vb.* surprendre, § 448
- surprise** (2) *noun* surprise *f.*, § 85, l. 8
- swallow** (*lit.*) avaler, § 234, ex. 1; (*credulously*) gober, § 232, ex. 1
- sweep** balayer, §§ 158, 419
- sweet** doux, douce, § 338, *h*
- swerve** (*from*) se détourner (de)

swift rapide; **swift to act** prompt-e,
§ 48, l. 3

syllable syllabe *f.*, § 106, ex. 2

syntax syntaxe *f.*, § 157, l. 2, § 249, l. 13

table table *f.*, § 41, l. 2

tag, play jouer au chat; *circumlocution*: se fuir, se chercher (se fuyant, se cherchant), § 52, ll. 12-13

tail queue *f.*, § 314, *d.*, ex. 1

take (away) prendre, § 48, l. 2, § 101, l. 6, § 448; (*conduct*) mener, amener, § 70, l. 1, § 162, *a.*; (*lead away, carry off*) emmener, § 101, l. 6; **take care of** soigner, § 96, l. 8; **take in (deceive)** attraper; **take (require)** falloir: **the care it has taken** les soins qu'il a fallu, § 203, *b.*; **take (rent) a house** louer une maison

talent talent *m.*, § 173, ex. 5

talk parler (*see speak*); (*chat*) causer (about de)

tall grand-e, § 73, N 2, § 348

task tâche *f.*, § 70, l. 14

taste noun goût *m.* (*cf. goûter vb.*)

teach instruire (qqn.), § 459; apprendre (qqch. à qqn.), § 226, ex. 6, § 448; enseigner (qqch. à qqn.), § 420

teacher professeur *m.*, § 312, *c.*, ex. 1; *cf. maître de philosophie*, § 381

telegram télégramme *m.*, dépêche *f.*

telephone téléphoner, p. 96 (*top*)

tell dire (qqch. à qqn.), § 251, *d.*, ex. 2, § 474; (*relate*) raconter

tempt (to) tenter (de), § 41, l. 4

temptation tentation *f.*, § 41, l. 5

ten dix, § 354, *b.*

tennis tennis [ni's] *m.*, § 253, ex. 9

tenth dixième, § 354, *b.*; (*in title*) dix, § 355, *c.*, N

terms, on friendly en termes amicaux, *but see* § 305, *c.*, ex. 1

terrible terrible, § 48, l. 11

text texte *m.*, §§ 33, 34

than que, § 44, l. 9; **than I** que moi; *before numerals or the like*: **more (less) than two** plus (moins) de deux (**more than half** plus de la moitié; *cf. plus de minuit after midnight*, § 356, *b.*, 9); *before inf.*: que (de), § 247, *a.* (*cf. pour autre chose que voler*, § 226, ex. 3); **than that simply** que: j'aime mieux que ce soit moi que ce soit toi; *note ne . . . que*, § 378

thank (for) remercier (de), § 242, ex. 5, § 418

thanks merci (for pour), § 98, ex. 1, § 494

that (1) *conj.* que, qu' (qu'il *etc.*), § 41, l. 6; *never omitted*: **I think he will come** je crois qu'il viendra

that (2) *dem. adj.* ce, cet, cette (*with or without -là*), §§ 68, 74, 82 (N 3); *see one (1) and voilà*, § 203, *b.*

that (3) *dem. pron.* ce, cela, ça, § 44, l. 3, §§ 74-81 (*cf. § 255, ex. 6, and § 302, b.*, R); **that is** c'est-à-dire, § 252, *b.*; celui, celui-là, celle, celle-là, § 82; *note que cela (ça)*, § 129; *and comment ça va-t-il?* § 302, *d.*

that (4) *rel. pron.*: *nom.* qui; *obj.* que; qu', §§ 113, 121-124, 127; *pred. nom.* que, § 128; **that followed by prep.**: quoi (§ 140), dont (§§ 118, 141), duquel *etc.* (§§ 115-116), où (§§ 120, 142); *note* § 137 *and* p. 106, V-VI; *see which, what, who, whom, whose*

that (5) *advbl. rel.* que, § 265, *g.*, R, § 268, *d.*

the (1) *def. art.* le, la (l'), les, § 34; **of the** du, de la (de l'), des, § 45; **to the** au, à la (à l'), aux, § 47; **for the one, the ones**, see **one** (1); **for many details as to le, la, les, etc.**, see §§ 57, 316–337

the (2) *adv. of degree (no le)* the . . . the plus . . . plus, moins . . . moins, etc., § 56; **all the more** . . . d'autant plus

theater théâtre *m.*, § 142, § 157, l. 25
thee te, § 43; **toi**, § 278 (**thee and thou are not required by this book**)

their leur-s, §§ 54, 329–330; **leur** . . . le etc., § 295, *d, f, h*; **their may be expressed by en**, § 309; **see its**

theirs le (la) leur, les leurs, § 57; **of theirs** à eux, à elles, § 297

them les (*accus.*), leur (*dat.*), §§ 43, 195–197, 244, 262 (6 a), 270, 278, 280, 288, 295–296, 298–301; **make them all understand leur faire comprendre à tous**, cf. § 297, N; **I trust them (all)** je me fie à eux (tous), à elles (toutes), § 299, ex. 4; **compound obj. (with eux or elles)**, § 292; **in them (of sexless things)** y, § 113, l. 2; **of them d'eux, d'elles, or en (especially of sexless things)**, § 293, b, §§ 282, 284, b–c, §§ 304, 309; **with them avec eux (half personified)**, § 254, l. 19; **see it, him, her (2), also for, in, and other preps.**

themselves se, § 43, a; **eux-mêmes or elles-mêmes (eux or elles)**, § 287; **see himself, herself, itself**

then alors, p. 66, II; (*accordingly, so then, therefore*) **donc**, § 193, l. 8; **well then eh bien; what then? eh bien, quoi alors?**

there (if heavily stressed) là or (*meaning yonder*) **often là-bas; (for there**

lightly stressed) **y**, § 86, b, N, §§ 80–82, 288, a, § 298; **there is or there's (are, was, etc.)** il y a (*avait etc.*), § 44, ll. 4 and 11, § 302, b (5), or (*archaically*) **il est (était etc.)**, § 302, b, R; (*stressed*) **voilà (there is etc.)**, § 54, b, § 203; **there come forth** il sort (*des sons*), § 44, l. 7 (cf. § 265, ex. 12); **there will be three of us** nous serons trois, § 253, ex. 9

therefore donc, par conséquent

thereupon là-dessus, § 161, l. 20

these (1) *dem. adj.* ces, ces . . . -ci, § 68; **see this** (1)

these (2) *dem. pron.* ceux-ci, celles-ci, or (*possibly*) ce, §§ 74–82; **see this** (2)

they ils, elles, § 38, a, §§ 39–40, 42, § 52, l. 8; **be they être eux (elles)**, §§ 122–123; (*as stressed subj. nom.*) **eux or elles**, § 278, § 281, a, §§ 290–291; (*stressed*) **possibly ceux(-là) or celles(-là)**, § 52, l. 8, §§ 82, 134, or (*possibly*) **ce**, §§ 74, 76; **see he, she, him, her, it, these, those**

thick épais, épaisse, § 338, e

thin maigre, § 253, ex. 3; **mince**

thing chose *f.*, § 45; **the good thing about your plan ce que votre projet a de bon**, p. 302, I, 13; **see anything, something, nothing, and what** (3)

think penser; **penser à (of)**, § 280, c, N; (*form an opinion of or about*) **penser de**, § 148, R (cf. *Que vous en semble-t-il?* § 146); (*have in mind*) **songer à qqch.**, § 96, l. 22, § 193, l. 13; (*believe*) **croire**, § 246, ex. 3; (*regard as*) **trouver**, § 58, ex. 3; (*reflect*) **réfléchir**, § 132, d; **to think that (excl.)** dire que, § 242, ex. 4

third troisième, § 353; **trois**, §

thirsty, *be avoir soif*, § 320
thirty-one *trente et un-e*, § 353, *a*
this (1) *dem. adj.* *ce, cet, cette, or with -ci*, §§ 68, 74; *this umbrella le parapluie que voici*, § 203, *b*; *see this* (2), *these* (1)
this (2) *dem. pron.* *ce, ceci*, §§ 74-81; *celui-ci etc.*, § 82; **this is my voicy mon etc.**, § 203, *a-c*; *see here*
thoroughly *à fond*
those (1) *dem. adj.* *ces, ces . . . -là*; *see that* (2)
those (2) *dem. pron.* *ceux, celles, ceux-là, celles-là*, § 82; *note the types ce sont là . . . those are . . .*, § 80, *and voilà les miens those are mine*, § 203; *see that* (3) *and there*
thou (*not required*) *tu, toi*; *see thee*
though *bien que, quoique*, § 229; **even though** *quand même*, § 97; **little though** *etc. si peu que*, § 228, *g-h*; *see although*
thought *pensée f.*, § 33, § 44, l. 13
thousand *mille*, § 65, ex. 1, § 353, *b*, *N*
threaten *menacer*, § 113, ll. 9-10, § 160
three *trois*, § 353
through *par*, § 161, l. 8, § 96, l. 2, § 244, ex. 6; *à travers*, § 322, *c*; **through not** *faute de*, § 241, *d*, *N 2*
throw, throw away *jeter*, § 161, l. 8, § 162, *b, d*; **throw back** *rejeter*, § 88, l. 6
Thursday *jeudi m.*, § 327, *e*
thus *ainsi*, § 70, l. 4, § 398, ex. 2
ticket *billet m.*, § 156, *i*
till (*jusqu'à ce*) *que*, § 232, ex. 6
time *temps m.*, § 143, *c*, § 161, l. 13; *époque f.*, § 233, *b*, *R*; (*special occasion*) *fois f.*, § 63, ex. 3; **three times** *trois fois* (*see once*); **at times** *parfois*; **in time** *à temps*, § 246, ex. 4; **a long time** *longtemps*, § 192, § 193,

l. 16; **the time being** *le moment*, § 254, l. 38; **what time** *quelle heure*, § 150, ex. 2, § 356, *b*
tire *fatiguer*; (*bores*) *ennuyer*
to *à*, § 47; *before inf.* *à*, §§ 247, 251, 253, *or de*, § 44, l. 13, §§ 245-256, 251, 255 (*but often a pure inf.*: § 48, l. 1, §§ 242, 244-245, 248, 250, 256, *R 2*); (*in order*) *to pour + inf.*, § 41, l. 3, § 241, *d*; **enough** *to assez pour + inf., or assez pour que + subjunctive*, § 232, *a* (*also too . . . to*); **expect . . . to** *s'attendre à ce que*, § 233, ex. 1; **I wish you to** *je veux que tu*, § 213, *a* (*end*), § 258, *a*; **a man to** *un homme qui*, § 258, *b*, *or un homme à*, § 253, ex. 12; **the one-s to** *see* § 122, ex. 2, § 215, ex. 9; *to often expressed by dative*, § 43, *b*, § 295, *a-b*, *or by à lui etc.*, § 299; **to her sister's** *chez sa sœur*; **from time to time** *de temps en temps*, § 321; **go to England** *aller en Angleterre*, §§ 99, 335; *for à and dans before names of countries* *see* §§ 335-337; **to it** (*to them, of sexless things*) *y*, § 284, *b*, § 304
to-day *aujourd'hui*, § 356, *a*, 7
together *ensemble, en même temps*
toll *sonner*, § 266, l. 9
to-morrow *demain*, § 95, ex. 6
tones, in low *bas adv.* (*see low*)
too *trop* (*trop aimable, trop loin, trop dire, trop mangé, etc.*); **too much, too many** *trop* (*de*), § 49, *b*; **too** (= *also*) *aussi*, § 44, l. 4
top, the *le haut*, § 96, l. 11
tourist *touriste m. or f.*, § 74
toward-s *vers*, § 329, ex. 4; (*of moral relations*) *envers*, § 283, *a*
town *ville f.*, § 321

- tragedy** tragédie *f.*
train train *m.*, § 150, ex. 2
tramp (*vagabond*) chemineau *m.*
transcription transcription *f.*, § 33
translate traduire, § 459
translation traduction *f.*, § 33
travel *vb.* voyager, § 160; *cf.* § 337
tree arbre *m.*, § 48, l. 10
trip (*stumble*) trébucher
trudge battre . . . , § 266, l. 1
true vrai-*e*, § 40 (*cf.* § 157, l. 12)
truffle truffe *f.*, § 334, ex. 5
truly vraiment, § 361
trust avoir confiance (en qqn.); se fier (à qqn.), § 299, ex. 4; (*entrust*) confier (qqch. à qqn.)
truth vérité *f.* (*cf.* § 229, *b*, Q)
try (to) essayer (de), § 158; chercher à, § 70, l. 8, § 251, *b*
Tuesday mardi *m.*, § 327, *c*
tune, out of faux, § 362, ex. 5
twentieth vingtième, § 353; (*in dates etc.*) vingt, § 355, *c*, N
twenty-eight vingt-huit, § 354, *c*
twenty-four vingt-quatre, § 354, *c*
twenty-nine vingt-neuf, § 354, *c*
twenty-sixth vingt-sixième, § 354, *b-c* (*cf.* § 355, *c*, N)
twice deux fois, § 354, *b*
two deux, § 354, *b*
two-hour *adj.* de deux heures

ugly laid-*e*
umbrella parapluie *m.*, § 190, *D*
unable to, be ne (pas) pouvoir
unceasingly sans cesse, § 157, l. 6
uncle oncle, § 54, *d*, § 326, R
under sous, § 41, l. 1; au-dessous de; under it (*or them, of sexless things*) là-dessous, dessous, § 282, R, § 304, and see them

underhandedly sous main, § 322, *c*
undersigned soussigné-*e*, § 294, R
understand comprendre, § 448, *a*
understanding, good See § 305, *c*, ex. 2
undertake entreprendre, § 448, *a*
undoubtedly sans doute (*see doubt*)
uneasy inquiet, inquiète, § 338, *c*, R
unfortunately malheureusement
United States États-Unis *m.*, § 333
unless à moins que . . . ne, § 230; *before inf.* à moins de, § 241, *d*, N 2; ne . . . que si, § 378, ex. 5
until jusqu'à; (*before vbs.* jusqu'à ce que, en attendant que, § 233, *a-b*; tant que . . . ne, p. 78, IV; ne . . . que quand, § 378, ex. 6
up, come (or go) monter, § 137, ex. 2, § 250, § 427, *b*; **be up** (*out of bed*) être levé-*e*, § 265, ex. 5; **get up** (*rise*) se lever, § 162, *a*
upon sur, § 85, l. 21; **upon leaving** en quittant, § 262, 6 *a*; **upon many an occasion** en mainte occasion, § 177, *a*; **upon it (or them, of sexless things)** là-dessus, § 282, R
upside down sens dessus dessous, § 120, ex. 4
us nous, § 43; nous autres, § 178
use (1) *vb.* employer, § 158; (*more often*) se servir de; *see use* (2)
use (2) *noun*; **make use of** se servir de, § 157, l. 16, § 225, *c*; **of what use** à quoi bon, § 149, R (*cf.* § 154, ex. 5)
useful utile, § 51, § 296, *b*
useless inutile; *but see* avoir beau, § 193, l. 27, § 250, *c*
utilization utilisation *f.*, § 157, l. 14
utter prononcer, § 106, ex. 2, § 160; (*cries*) pousser, § 52, l. 13

- valuable** précieux-, -se, § 338, *c*
value valeur *f.*, § 55, *b*, *R*
various plusieurs *etc.*, § 177
verse vers *m.*, § 29, *b*, § 381
very (1) *adj.* même-s, § 179, *a*; at the very most tout au plus, § 356, *b*, 11
very (2) *adv.* très (*link s as [z]*), § 52, 1.8; bien (*link n*); fort (*link t*)
view vue *f.*, § 157, 1.14
vigilant, be veiller, § 421
village village *m.*
virtue vertu *f.*, § 154, ex. 5
visible visible, § 51
visit (1) *vb.* faire (rendre) visite (à qqn.), § 320
visit (2) *noun* visite *f.*; see pay (1)
visitor visiteur-, -se, § 488, *a*
vogue vogue *f.*
voice voix *f.*, § 44, 1.10, § 143, *c*
volume tome *m.*, § 355, *a*
vowel voyelle *f.*, § 27, *c*, *R*

wait (for) attendre, §§ 192, 196
waiter garçon *m.*, § 178, ex. 10
walk (1) *vb.* marcher, § 194 (*aux.* avoir)
walk (2) *noun* marche *f.*, § 319, *f*
wall mur *m.*; (*enclosing wall, city wall*) muraille *f.*, § 85, 1.12
want désirer, § 247, *b*; vouloir, § 166, § 215, ex. 1, § 258, *a*
war guerre *f.*, § 106, ex. 3, § 319, *h*
warm chaud-e, § 44, 1.5; be warm (*of living things in warm environment*) avoir chaud *noun m.*, § 320; keep . . . warm tenir chaud *noun m.* (à qqn.), § 44, 1.1
warn avertir (qqn. de, que), § 132
warranted justifié-e
wash laver, p. 294, 8-10
waste perdre; (*squander*) gaspiller

watchful, be veiller, § 158, *a*
water eau [o] *f.*, § 49, *b*, § 136, *b*
way route *f.*, § 268; chemin *m.*; on the way en route, § 321; all the way to jusqu'à; by the way (*fig.*) à propos, § 322, *a*; way-s (*means*) moyen-s *m.*, § 312; (*habits*) mœurs *f. pl.*, § 113, 1.2; (*manner*) façon *f.*, § 242, ex. 2 (*see manner*)
we nous, § 38, *a*; nous autres, § 178, ex. 1; on, § 284, *a*, § 305
weak faible, § 51, § 113, 1.16
wealth richesse *f.*, § 321, ex. 1
wear (*garments*) porter; wear out user *tr.*, (*fig.*) éreinter, § 266, ll. 12-13
weather temps *m.*, § 155, *a*, § 250, *d*, § 302, *b* (4); see time
Wednesday mercredi *m.*, § 327, *e*
week semaine *f.*, § 328, *a*; huit jours *m.*, § 266, 1.2
weigh peser, § 162, *a*, *N*
well bien, § 56, *N*; bien + *inf.*, § 158, *a*; bien + *p.p.*, § 225, *a*; well then eh bien
what (1) *adj.* quel-le, § 50, § 83, *N*, §§ 150, 155; see which (1)
what (2) *neut. interr. pron. (nom.)* qu'est-ce qui, §§ 124, 129, 146-147, or possibly que, §§ 146, 153; (*accus.*) que, §§ 124, 148, 151; (*stressed*) quoi, §§ 149, 151; (*excl.*) quoi or comment, § 193, 1.1; what is your name? comment t'appelles-tu?
what (3) *rel. pron. (*that which) (nom.)* ce qui (*accus.*) ce que, § 78, ex. 3, § 133, and (*in indir. questions*) §§ 83, 124-125; que for ce qui or ce que (*what, whatever*), § 139; ce dont (*what . . . of*), ce à quoi (*what . . . to*), § 119

- whatever** (1) *adj.* quel-le que, quelque . . . que, § 228, ex. 5, c
- whatever** (2) *pron.* (tout) ce qui (*or* que, dont, etc.), § 89, ex. 4, § 102, ex. 2; quoi que (ce soit, fût, etc.), § 138, N, § 155, R, § 228, exs. 3-5, § 229, Q
- when** quand, § 33, l. 3, § 86, ex. 1; lorsque (*never interr.*), § 156, 5; alors que; **than when** que lorsque, *more euphonious than* que quand; (*after nouns*) où, § 120
- whence** d'où, § 120, N
- whenever** toutes les fois que, § 182, c, 1; quand, lorsque, § 105
- where** où, § 33, l. 6, § 40, II; là où (*cf.* là que), § 142, N
- whereas** tandis que
- wherein** en quoi, § 149; dans lequel (laquelle etc.), §§ 115, 121
- wherever** partout où, § 33, l. 6; où que, § 228, f
- wherewithal, (the)** de quoi, § 140
- whether** si, § 86, b; whether . . . or soit que . . . soit que, § 229, a
- which** (1) *adj.*, *see* what (1); *note in which case* auquel cas
- which** (2) *interr. pron.* lequel, laquelle, etc., § 155
- which** (3) *rel. pron. (used chiefly after preps.: to which etc.)* after which (*thing*) après quoi, etc., § 140; in which où, from which d'où, §§ 120, 142; of which dont, §§ 118, 141; which (*thing*) ce qui, ce que, § 126; which (*archaic*) for that *see* that (4)
- while** (1) *conj.* pendant que (*unlike while, never misused to express pure concession.; see though and although*), § 63, ex. 1, § 86, ex. 1; **while + vb.** in -ing en, § 261, I b; *or* tout en, § 262, 12
- while** (2) *noun*; a long while long-temps (*no art.*), § 192, § 193, l. 16
- whisper** chuchoter, § 95, ex. 2
- white** blanc, blanche, § 345
- who or whom** (1) *interr. pron.* qui, §§ 50, 144-145, 151-152; *possibly* lequel, laquelle, etc., § 155; *fam.* qu' (*nom.*), § 146, a
- who or whom** (2) *rel. pron. (nom.)* qui, (*accus.*) que, § 48, l. 2, §§ 115, 119, 121-123, 127, 137; (*to avoid ambiguity*) lequel, laquelle, etc., § 117; **among whom** parmi (*or* entre) lesquel(le)s, § 138; **of whom** dont, § 118 (*cf.* § 116)
- whoever or whomever** qui (= celui qui, celui que, etc., § 134, *cf.* § 82), tous ceux qui (*or* que), etc.; *qui-conque*, § 176; qui que, § 228
- whole, the** tout le, toute la, § 182
- wholly** tout à fait
- whom** *See* who (1) and (2)
- whomever** *See* whoever
- whose** (1) *interr. pron.* de qui, à qui, § 144, exs. 5-6
- whose** (2) *rel. pron.* dont, § 118; duquel, de laquelle, auquel, etc., §§ 116, 121; à qui, de qui, §§ 115, 296, a
- why** pourquoi, § 58, ex. 3, § 156, 4, § 149, R; (*possibly*) que, § 154
- wide** large; **be wide awake** veiller, § 158, a
- wife** femme *f.* (*cf.* § 324, R)
- wiles, full of** subtil-e, § 48, l. 3
- will** (1) *and would* vouloir, § 166, § 218, R; *forms of groups D and E*, §§ 59-62, 84-85, 91-94, 394
- will** (2) *noun* volonté *f.*
- win** gagner, § 158, a, § 420
- wind** *noun* vent *m.*
- window** fenêtre *f.*, § 161, l. 21

wine vin *m.*, § 53, N 2

winter hiver *m.*, § 70, L 1

wipe essuyer, § 158

wise sage, § 161, L 10, § 254, L 38; *see course*

wish (to) désirer (de [?]), § 215, ex. 1; vouloir, § 44, L 6, § 166; wish one to vouloir (désirer) que, § 213, a, § 258, a

wit esprit *m.*, p. 294, III, 11-12

with avec, § 241, N 1, § 322, b; (*of instruments or causes*) commonly de; with which dont, § 141, N; do with faire de, § 88, L 4; dine with diner chez (*see at*); go with accompagner; with it avec cela or avec *adv.*, or avec lui (elle-s, eux, *if more or less personified*), § 254, L 19, §§ 282, 304

within (*inside*) dans, entre; within a week dans huit jours

without *prep.* sans, § 53, N 1, § 322, e; sans + *inf.*, § 241, d (cf. § 260, a); sans que, § 234; without it (*or them, of sexless things*) sans cela (sans lui, eux, elle-s, *if more or less personified*), §§ 282, 304 (cf. with)

wolf loup *m.*, § 113, L 9

woman femme; an Englishwoman une Anglaise, § 49, a, R (cf. § 174)

wonder (*be uncertain*) se demander; wonder that s'étonner que, § 215, ex. 1

word mot *m.*, § 249, L 8, § 496, b

work (1) *vb.* travailler, § 157, L 8, § 158, § 262, II

work (2) *noun* travail *m.* (*pl.* § 143, a), § 102, ex. 2; ouvrage *m.*, § 178, ex. 13; œuvre *f.*, § 179, ex. 3

workman ouvrier *m.*, § 266, L 1

world monde *m.*, § 52, L 14

worry (about) s'inquiéter (de), se soucier (de), § 228 (r)

worse (1) *adj.* plus mauvais-e (*or pire*), § 55, b, R

worse (2) *adv.* plus mal (*seldom pis*), § 56, N

worst *See* worse (1) and (2)

worth, be valoir, § 226, ex. 1

worthless sans valeur (*f.*)

worthy (of) digne (de)

would *aux.*, expressed by group E (*see will*); by group B, §§ 60, 62; would rather aimer + mieux, § 247, a; would that plutôt à Dieu que, § 213, b, 6

wound (1) *vb.* blesser, § 109, R

wound (2) *noun* blessure *f.*

write écrire, §§ 269, 472

writer écrivain *m.*, auteur *m.*

wrong, be avoir tort, § 122, N; se tromper, § 135, § 368, i; wrong (*of th.*: ix, fausse, incorrect-e

year an *m.*, § 66, L 3, § 105, L 9, § 328, a; (*if a specific unit*) commonly année *f.*: deux années, cette année-ci (cf. § 355, b)

yell pousser de grands cris, § 52, L 13

yes oui, § 40, § 366, a-b; (*in denial of a negative assertion*) si, § 178, ex. 7; why yes mais oui

yesterday hier (*adv.*), § 82, ex. 2

yet encore, § 106, ex. 2, § 403, b; (*in contrasts etc.*) cependant

yield céder, § 162, *f.*, § 303, a

you vous, § 38, a, §§ 42-43, 278-279, 287-301; vous autres, § 178, ex. 1; tu, p. 38, Q 4, § 38, a, §§ 42-43, 278-279, 291; te, t' (*accus. or dat.*), §§ 278-279, § 281, b, §§ 295-296, 298, 300-301; toi, §§ 278, 287, 290-292; on, *see* one (2)

young jeune, § 348

your ton, ta, tes, votre, vos, § 54; te
(or vous) . . . le (la, les), § 295, *d, h*;

le, la, les, §§ 329–330

yours le (la) vôtre, les vôtres, le tien,
la tienne, *etc.*, § 57; à toi, à vous,
§ 297

yourself te (t'), toi, toi-même, vous,
vous-même, § 43, *a*, §§ 278–279, 283,
287–289, 298; *see oneself and your-*

selves

yourselves vous, vous-mêmes; *see*
yourself

zeal zèle *m.*, § 96, l. 16, § 253, *ex. 7*

FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Time can be saved, and mistakes can be avoided, by heeding the following notes :

1. This vocabulary is limited to the needs of this book ; its scope (like that of the English-French vocabulary) is therefore very restricted, and the serious study of French demands that for more light a general dictionary be owned and often consulted.

2. Many of the defining words used in this special vocabulary occur in the English-French vocabulary as important key-words with references. Thus, for example, additional information as to prepositional usage can be got by looking up the various English words given for *à* or *de* or *pour* ; or, as to verbs, by doing likewise for *avoir*, for *faire*, for *vouloir*, etc.

3. Many examples, directly or indirectly referred to by § 483, supplement both our special vocabularies. Examine all § 483.

4. For various reasons, a good many very irregular verb-forms (though all the frequent simple irregular forms are listed in § 483) are quoted ; also various cardinal and ordinal numerals ; but at the top of every fourth page from page 35 to page 339 the ordinals occur in their proper sequence, from *première* (*m. premier*) 'first' to *soixante-dix-septième* 'seventy-seventh' ; their formation, sounds, and syntax are dealt with in §§ 353-359.

5. The abbreviation 'q.v.' (Latin *quod vide*) means 'Look this up.'

6. See the notes over the English-French vocabulary.

à pure prep. commonly to, at, in ;
 (1) *of place* : *à l'école* at (to, in) school, *jeter à l'eau* throw into the water, *remplir au tonneau* fill at (*or* from) the cask, *mets au feu* put on the fire, *regarder à Caen* look toward Caen, *à portée* within reach, *aux yeux de* in the eyes (*opinion*) of, *midi à ma montre* noon by my watch, *à fond* thoroughly, *à même de* in a position to, able to, *à travers* through, *à l'envers* wrong side out ;
 (2) *similarly, of activities* : *perdre à se défaire de* lose in getting rid of, *à partir de* from ; (3) *of time* : *à midi* at noon ; (4) *of figurative direction* : *intéresser . . . à* interest

. . . in, *penser à* think of (*or* about), *servir à* serve to, *ressembler à* be like ; (5) *before indirect objects* : to, for, from, by : *dire à* say to, tell, *demande qqch. à* ask something of (*or* from), *faire chanter à* have sung by, *faire comprendre à tous le* make everyone understand the, *rendre un service à* do a favor for ; (6) *with intransitive vbs.* : *obéir à* obey, *ordonner à . . . de* order . . . to ; (7) *of possession* : *être à* belong to, *tout-à-à toi* ever yours ; (8) *after adjs. etc.* : *difficile à lire* hard to read, *c'est triste à dire* it's a sad thing to say, *c'est bon à toi de* it's kind of you to, *soit à diviser . . .* to divide . . . ; (9) *as*

- a mere link* : **commencer à** begin to ;
 (10) *of means or accompaniment* : **un chapeau à plumes** a hat with feathers, **des sardines à l'huile** sardines with oil (tinned, canned), **café au lait** coffee with milk, **avoir affaire à** have to deal with, **à coup sûr** unquestionably, **à moins que** unless, **peu à peu** little by little, **à peu près** about
- abaisser** (§ 384) bring down
abîme *m.* abyss
abord *m.*: **d'abord** (at) first, originally
abréviation *f.* abbreviation
abri *m.* shelter (cf. **abriter**)
absolument (§ 361) absolutely
académie *f.* (§ 157, l. 22) academy
accident *m.* accident, mere chance
accomplir (§ 132) accomplish
accueillir (§ 441) welcome, receive
acheter (§ 162, *e*) buy, purchase
achever (§ 162, *a*) finish, complete
acteur *m.* (§ 488) actor
actuel-le (§ 338, *e*) present (*in time*)
additionner (§ 384) add (*in counting*)
admettre (§ 447) admit
admirable admirable (cf. § 361)
admirer (§ 384) admire
adorer (§ 384) adore, love to
adoucir (§ 132) lessen, assuage
adresse *f.* skill, address
affaire *f.* (§ 495) affair, business, matter, thing; **avoir affaire à** have to deal with
- affectation** (*f.*), **avec** affectedly
affinité *f.* (§ 157, l. 9) affinity
affreusement (§ 361) frightfully
affreux-x, -se frightful, beastly
Afghanistan *m.* (§ 337) Afghanistan
afin de in order to ; **afin que** (§ 231, N 1) in order that
âge *m.* age ; **quel âge** how old
- agir** (§ 132, *d*) act ; **de quoi s'agit-il?** what is it about? **dont il s'agit** that is (*or are*) involved
ah oh (*possibly* ah)
aile *f.* wing
ailleurs (§ 184) elsewhere
aimer (**à**) like (to), love (to) ; **aimer** + **mieux** (§ 247, *a*) prefer
ainsi thus, so, (in) this way
air *m.* air ; **avoir l'air** seem, look
aisé-e well-to-do
ajouter (§ 384) add (cf. **additionner**)
aller (§ 163) go ; **aller chercher** go after, fetch ; **allons, bon!** oh, very well! **s'en aller** go away
alors then
alphabétique alphabetic(al)
amener (**amènerait**) bring about
ami *m.*, **amie** *f.* friend, friendly
amuser (§ 384) amuse
an *m.* (§ 355, *b*, § 356, *a*) year
analogie *f.* (§ 157, l. 8) analogy
ancien-ne (§ 338, *e*) old, former
anglais-e (§ 49, *a*, R) English
animal *m.* (cf. § 338, *g*) animal, beast
animaux *pl.* of animal (§ 34)
Anjou *m.* (§ 337) Anjou
année *f.* (§ 356, *a*) year
annoncer (§§ 160, 384) announce
antérieur-e earlier
anthologie *f.* (§ 27, *b*, R) anthology
Anvers *m.* Antwerp
apôtre *m.* apostle
appel *m.* call, appeal (§ 249, l. 20)
appeler (§ 162, *d*) call
appliquer à, s' apply oneself to
apporter (§ 384) bring, fetch ; **apporter à** (§ 254, l. 25) bring into
appréhender (§ 384) forebode, apprehend
apprendre learn, teach, make known

approcher de (draw) near, approach
approprié-e à (§ 418) fitted to
après *adv. or prep.* after, afterward;
après que after; **d'après** according
to
arbre *m.* tree
archaïsme *m.* (§ 122, N) archaism
argent *m.* money, silver
arme *f.* weapon; *pl.* arms
arrêter stop, check; **s'arrêter** stop
arriver (à, dans) arrive (at, in), get
(to), happen (to), reach; **arriver +**
à + inf. succeed in + *vb. in -ing*
art *m.* (§ 157, l. 12) art
artifice *m.* (§ 158, a) artifice
artiste *m. or f.* artist, photographer
Asie *f.* (§§ 333-336) Asia
asseoir, s' sit down, take a seat
assertion *f.* statement, assertion
assez (de) enough; rather, somewhat
assurément (§ 361) assuredly
assurer (§ 24, b, § 384) assure
astrologue *m.* (§ 161) astrologer
attachement *m.* (§ 254, l. 34) fondness
attacher à connect with, relate to
attendant, en (§ 262, 8) meanwhile
attendre (§ 192) wait (for), await;
s'attendre à ce que expect . . . to
atténuer (§ 418, a) attenuate, lessen
attitré-e recognized, accepted
attitude *f.* attitude, posture
attrayant-e (cf. § 454) attractive
au (à + le): au-dessus (de) above; **au-**
dessous (de) below, underneath
aucun-e (§ 170) no, none, any
aucunement (§ 361) in no wise
augmenter (§ 384) increase
aujourd'hui to-day, at present
aussi also, too, therefore, accordingly;
aussi . . . que as . . . as
aussitôt que as soon as

autant as (*or so*) much (*or many*);
autant dire one might as well say;
d'autant plus . . . que all the more
. . . in proportion as (*or . . . because*)
auteur *m.* (§ 249, l. 19) author
autorité *f.* (§ 157, l. 22) authority
autre-s (§ 178) other-s; **des autres** of
other people (cf. **autrui**); **de façon**
ou d'autre somehow
autrefois (§ 178, c, Q) formerly
autrui *archaic obj. pron.* others
aux (à + les) See § 47
auxiliaire auxiliary
avancer (§ 160) be too fast, advance
avant, avant de, avant que before
avec with; **avec lenteur** deliberately
avertir (§ 132) warn, notify
avocat *m.* (§ 193, l. 10) lawyer
avoir (§ 425) have (*q. v.*); **avoir qua-**
rante ans be forty years old; **avoir**
raison be right; **avoir froid** (*of ani-*
mate things) be cold; **avoir neuf**
minutes de retard be nine minutes
slow (*or late*); **nous avons le treize**
to-day is the thirteenth; **ses dents**
avaient un émail éclatant his teeth
glittered with white enamel
avouer (§ 418, a) confess, admit
avril *m.* (§ 327, a) April
ayant droit, l' (§ 425, N 1) *m. or f.*
the rightful owner *or . . . claimant*
baisser (§ 384) lower, let down
baleine *f.* (§ 49, a) whale
banquier *m.* banker
bas (1) *adv.* low (*adj. bas, basse*)
bas (2) *m. noun* (§ 143, c) stocking
base *f.* basis. See **servir de**
battre (§ 444) beat, churn, tramp
Bayeux *m.* Bayeux (*in Normandy*)
beau, bel, belle (§ 338, f) beautiful,

- fine, handsome, fair; *j'ai beau + inf.* it is useless for me to (§ 250, *c*); *en raconter de belles* (§ 340) tell pretty stories (nice pranks); *de plus belle adv.* more (faster, harder) than ever
- beaucoup** much, greatly, a good deal;
beaucoup (de) much, many
- bel, belle** *See beau*
- Benoît** (*lit.*) Benedict; (*fig.*) Willy
- berceau** *m.* (§ 136, *b*) cradle
- bercer** (§ 160) rock. *See berceau*
- Berry** *m.* (§§ 334, 337) Berry
- besogne** *f.* task; (*fam.*) job
- besoin** *m.* need; *avoir besoin de* need
- Bêta** Neddy (**bêta** *m.* noodle)
- bête** (1) *adj.* (§ 340) stupid, foolish
- bête** (2) *f. noun* animal, creature;
bête de + noun idiotic, stupid
- beurre** *m.* butter. *See battre*
- bibliothèque** *f.* library
- bien** (1) *adv.* well, very, certainly, no doubt; *ou bien* or (*stressed*), or else;
bien du much, **bien des** many; **bien malgré lui** quite unwillingly, by no means intentionally; **bien plus** much (*or far*) more; **je crois bien** I don't doubt it; **veuillez bien** kindly, please;
bien que although
- bien** (2) *m. noun* (§ 157, l. 1) good
- bienfait** *m.* benefit, advantage
- bientôt** soon. *See tôt and plutôt*
- blâmer** blame, find fault with
- blanc, blanche** (§ 338, *h*) white
- blesser** (§ 384) wound, injure, hurt
- blesseure** *f.* wound, injury
- bleu-e** (§ 349, *c*) blue
- boire** (§ 452) drink; *le roi boit!* a cry uttered at the Feast of the Bean, Twelfth Night, when the card called 'king(s)' is drawn and the King of the Bean, la fève, begins to drink
- bois** *m.* (§ 143, *c*) wood
- boit** *See boire*
- bon, bonne** good, kind, right; **bon enfant** *adj.* good-natured (*or* a simpleton)
- bonheur** (§ 497, *a*) happiness, luck
- bonhomme** *m.* (§ 348, *a*, § 351, *c*, § 497, *a*) chap, fellow
- bonne** *f.* (house)maid. *See bon*
- borner** (§ 384) limit, confine
- bouche** *f.* mouth
- bouger** (§ 160) stir, budge, move
- bouillir** (§ 225, *g*) boil
- bout** *m.* (§ 201, l. 3) end, tip
- bouteille** *f.* (§ 492, *h*) bottle
- bras** *m.* (§ 143, *c*) arm
- brave** good, brave (§ 345)
- bref, brève** (§ 338, *b*) short, brief
- Brésil** *m.* (§ 337) Brazil
- Bretagne** (§§ 333, 335) Brittany
- brèvement** briefly. *See bref*
- briser** (§ 384) break
- bruit** *m.* noise
- brûler** (§ 384) burn
- brun-e** dark, brown
- brusquement** (§ 361) suddenly, abruptly
- but** [by] *m.* aim, target (§ 352, l. 11)
- c'** (*c'est, ç'aurait, etc.*) *See ce*
- ça** that, it. *See cela*
- çà** here (*of motion*)
- cacher** (§ 384) hide; **se cacher** hide
- cadet** *m.* junior; **Cadet (Rousselle)** Little Boy (Rousselle)
- Caen** [kã] *m.* Caen (*in Normandy*)
- cætera, et et cetera**, and so forth
- café** *m.* coffee, café
- calligraphie** *f.* fine penmanship
- Canada** *m.* (§ 337) Canada
- cancre** *m.* (*lit.*) crab; (*fig.*) dunce
- capitaine** *m.* (§ 487) captain

caporal *m.* (*pl.* -aux) corporal
car *conj.* for
caractère *m.* character, written symbol
cas *m.* (§ 143, *c*) case (§ 99)
cascade *f.* waterfall
cassation (*f.*), **cour de** court of appeal(s)
causer (§ 384) chat (de about)
causerie *f.* chat (sur about)
cave *f.* (§ 201, 1.9) cellar
ce (1) *adj.* (§ 68) this, that; **ce** (*cet*, *cette*, *ces*) . . . -*ci* this . . . , *ces* . . . -*là* those . . . , *etc.*
ce (2) *pron.* (§§ 72-83, 145-148) this, that, it; **ceci** de bon this good feature; **ce que mon projet a de bon** the good thing about my plan; **c'est que'** (it) is that, the reason is that; **le troisième c'est** the third is; **vouloir c'est pouvoir** where there's a will there's a way; **c'est là que** it is (was *etc.*) there that; **ce sont** these are, they are, those are; **ce qui** (*or ce que*) what
ceci *pron.* this. See **ce** (2)
céder (§ 162, *f*) yield; *but see* § 304, *a* (*ne le céder à personne*)
cela *that.* See **ça** and **ce** (2)
célèbre celebrated, widely known
celle *etc.* (§ 82) that, the one
celui *etc.* (§ 82) that, the one, one (§ 161, 1.24); **celui-là** that one, the first, the former; **celui-ci** this, this one, the latter
cent (§ 353, *b*) (a) hundred
centaines (*f.*), **des** hundreds (*fig.*)
cependant however, yet
cerise *f.* (§ 331, R) cherry
certain-e (a) certain, sure
certainement (§ 361) certainly

ces these, those. See **ce**. (1)
cesse, sans (§ 157, 1.6) without cease
cet, cette *adj.* (§ 68) See **ce** (1)
ceux those, the ones. See **celui**
chacun-e *pron.* each
chagrin *m.* sorrow, trouble
chambre *f.* room (*usually* bedroom)
Champagne *f.* (§ 493) Champagne
champagne *m.* champagne. See *above*
changer (§ 160) change
chanson *f.* song
chanter (§ 384) sing
chapeau *m.* (§ 136, *b*) hat
chaque *adj.* each, every. See **chacun**
chasser (§ 384) hunt, drive (away)
chat *m.* (§ 484, *a*) cat. See **chatte**
chatte *f.* cat, tabby cat. See **chat**
chaud-e warm, hot. See **faire**
chèque *m.* check (*in payment*)
cher, chère *adj.* dear, costly (§ 347);
cher *adv.* dear, at a high price (§ 362)
chercher (§ 384) seek (à to), look for, get. See **aller and envoyer**
cheval *m.* (*pl.* chevaux) horse;
chevaux *pl.* of cheval (§ 136, *a*)
cheveu *m.* (§ 136, *b*) hair; **cheveux** hair, *or* hairs (*p.* 142, V)
chevron *m.* rafter. See **poutre**
chez *pure prep.*: **chez moi** at (*or* to) my house, at home; **chez X** at (*or* to) X's; **de chez X** from X's
chic stylish, smart, nice
chien *m.* (§ 38, *a*, § 488, *a*) dog
chiffre *m.* figure (*arith.*), digit
Chili *m.* (§ 337) Chile
Chine *f.* (§ 334) China. See **chinois**
chinois-e (§ 49, *a*, R) Chinese
chocolatière *f.* chocolate girl
choisir (§ 132) choose
choix *m.* (§ 143, *c*) choice
choquer (§ 384) jar, shock

- chose** *f.* thing; **quelque chose (de)** *m.* (§ 180) something; **un or une pas grand'chose**, § 370, ex. 15; **le petit Chose**, p. 401, *footnote*
- chou** *m.* (§ 136, *b*) cabbage
- cinq** (§ 354, *e*) five; fifth (§ 355, *c*)
- cinquantaine**, **la** one's fiftieth year
- cinquante** (§ 353) fifty
- cinquante-six** *etc.* fifty-six *etc.*
- citer** (§ 384) quote
- clair** (*adj. or adv.*), **claire** clear, clearly
- clairement** (§ 361) clearly
- clairvoyant-e** clear-sighted, clairvoyant (§ 264, 2)
- classe** *f.* class, classroom
- classement** *m.* classification
- classique** classic, classical
- cochon** *m.* (p. 26, *footnote*) hog, pig
- cœur** *m.* (§ 295, *h*, § 329) heart
- coiffer** supply with headgear; **naitre coiffé-e** be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth, be born lucky, *etc.*
- colonne** *f.* column
- colossal-e** (§ 338, *g*) tremendous
- combien** how much, how greatly;
- combien de** how much, how many;
- le combien** (§ 356, *a*, 6) what day
- combler** (§ 384) fill (up), supply
- comédien** (§ 488) comedian
- comme** as, as for (in respect to), as if, inasmuch as, while, how, how much, as . . . as, like
- commencer** (§ 160, § 247, *c*) begin
- comment** how, what! (§ 193, l. 1)
- commission** *f.* committee, commission
- commode** convenient, easily handled
- communication** *f.* communication
- comparer** (§ 384) compare; (**la phonétique**) **comparée** comparative
- compétence** *f.* ability, skill
- complètement** (§ 361) completely
- compléter** (§ 162, *f*) complete
- compliqué-e** (§ 384) complicated
- composer**, **se** be composed, consist
- comprendre** (§ 448) understand, comprise; **y compris** included, including
- compris-e** *p. p.* of **comprendre**
- compte** *m.* account; **sur ton compte** about you; **se rendre compte (de)** realize (§ 190, *E*); **tenir compte de** allow for, take into account
- compter** count, count on, allow
- comte** *m.* (§ 334) count (*title*)
- condamner** (§ 384) condemn
- condition que, à** on condition that
- conditionnel-le** conditional
- confiance** *f.* (§ 492, *w*) confidence
- confier** (§ 418) entrust
- confondre** (§ 445) confuse, confound
- confusion** *f.* confusion
- Congo, le** (§ 337) the Congo
- conjonctif, -ve** subjunctive, relative
- connaissance** *f.* (§ 492, *w*) knowledge
- connaître** (§ 460) know
- consciemment** consciously, wittingly
- conscience** *f.* (§ 329) conscience
- conséquence** *f.* (§ 492, *w*) consequence
- conséquent, par** therefore
- consister à + inf.** consist in
- consonance** *f.* group of sounds
- consonne** *f.* consonant
- constatation** *f.* ascertaining, noting
- constater** ascertain, note and record
- construction** *f.* construction
- continuer** (§ 418, *a*) continue, go on
- contraire, au** on the contrary
- contre** against, with, (*sometimes*) from
- convaincant-e** (§ 264, 1) convincing
- convaincre** (§ 446) convince
- coq** *m.* (§ 484, *a*) cock, rooster
- corps** *m.* (§ 143, *c*) body
- correctement** correctly, accurately

correction *f.* correctness (§ 157)
correspondre (§ 445) correspond
costume *m.* costume, dress, garb
côté *m.* side; à côté de alongside
côtelette *f.* chop, cutlet
coucher lay; se coucher go to bed
coude *m.* (§ 329) elbow
coulée *f.* flood, flow. See couler
couler (§ 384) flow. See coulée
coup *m.* blow, stroke; à coup sûr unquestionably; du même coup at the same time (*along therewith*)
couper (§ 384) cut, cut off (short)
cour *f.* court, courtyard
courage *m.* (§ 492, *d*) courage, pluck
courant-e current, everyday
courir run, run about, hurry, hasten
cours *m.* (§ 143, *c*) course
coûter (§ 384) cost
craindre (§§ 216–221) fear
crainte *f.* fear. See craindre
crampe *f.* cramp
créer (§ 418) create
crier (§ 418) cry, cry out, shout
crime *m.* crime
crochet *m.* (§ 28, *d*) square bracket
croire (§ 453) believe, think; croyant avoir believing one has; je crois bien I don't doubt it
croissance *f.* (§ 492, *w*) belief
cueillir (§ 193, l. 23) gather
cuirassier *m.* cuirassier (*cavalry*)
cuisine *f.* kitchen
cuisinier *m.*, **cuisinière** *f.* cook
culotte *f.* knee-breeches, breeches
culotter: Votre Majesté est mal culottée your Majesty's breeches are on wrong or in shabby state

d' See de
Dagobert (King) Dagobert (p. 330)

Dahomey *m.* (§§ 334, 337) Dahomey
dame *f.* lady
Danemark *m.* (§ 334) Denmark
danger *m.* danger
dangereu-x, -se dangerous (§ 338, *c*)
dans *pure prep.* in, into, on; (*possibly*) at, inside, within; dans une certaine vue (§ 157, l. 14) with a certain end in view; note § 201, l. 3
dansant, thé *m.* tea with dancing
davantage more, further
de *pure prep.* (1) of mental directions or the like: of, concerning, about, as to, in respect to, pertaining to, etc.: dire (parler, penser, s'agir) de say (speak, think, be a question) of, rire de laugh at, quoi qu'il en soit de cela however that may be, s'occuper de concern oneself with, traiter de treat of, deal with, pardonnez-moi de forgive me for, une faute de a mistake in, une leçon de musique a music lesson, un instrument de communication an instrument for communication, livres d'enseignement textbooks, craindre de + *inf.* (§ 251) fear to; (2) before numerals and the like: plus d'un an more than a year (more, with respect to a year), plus de onze heures after eleven o'clock, plus de minuit after midnight; (3) expressing separation: from, away from, off, out of, of: loin de far from, deux de six two from six, se défaire de get rid of, de par la loi by law, d'abord (at) first, d'autre part on the other hand, de purement locale from being purely local, relever de la rhétorique fall under rhetoric; (4) expressing various kinds of possession: of, —'s,

- etc.*: les acteurs du Théâtre-Français the actors of *etc.*, aux yeux des étrangers in the eyes of foreigners, les pensées de Riquet Riquet's thoughts or the thoughts of Riquet, autour de moi round about me, au milieu de tout in the midst of everything, un roman de Mérimée a novel by Mérimée or a novel of Mérimée's; (5) *partitively, quantitatively, or in apposition*: avoir de l'or have (some, or any) gold, pas de bien et de mal no good and no evil, jamais de mal never any evil, rien d'achevé nothing finished, la plupart des most of, assez de pain enough bread, après de longs travaux after long labors, dix minutes de retard ten minutes slow, ceci de bon this good feature, quelque chose de bon something good; (6) *expressing agency, means, degree*: éreinté de misère worn out with (by) wretchedness, bercer du bout du pied rock with the toe, profiter de profit by, jouer du piano play the piano, jouir d'une estime enjoy an esteem, habillé de dressed in, servir de base serve as a basis, voyageur de nature a traveler by nature, avancer de deux minutes be two minutes fast; (7) de façon (à ce) que so that, de cette façon in that way; (8) d'après according to; (9) de même likewise
- débout** *adv.* standing, upright
- décider (de)** decide (to, as to); **se décider à** decide to
- décimale** *f.* (§ 340) decimal
- décourager** (§ 160) dishearten
- défaire de, se** (§ 478) get rid of
- défendre** (§ 189) defend, forbid (**à** définition *f.* definition
- dehors** *adv. and noun m.* outside
- déjà** already
- déjeuner** *vb.* (§ 384) or *noun* lunch
- délai, dans un bref** ere long
- délicieu-x, -se** (§ 338, c) delightful
- déloyal-e** (§ 338, g) disloyal
- demain** to-morrow; *fig.* (§ 157, l. 7)
- demande** *f.* (§ 495) question, request
- demander** (§ 384) ask (for); **demander à** or **de** ask to (§ 247, e)
- demi-e** half; **et demie** half past . . .
- dent** *f.* (§ 329) tooth
- départ** *m.* departure
- département** *m.* department (*territorial division, under a prefect*)
- depuis, depuis que** (§ 192, § 249, l. 22) since, from, for, in the course of
- déranger** (§ 160) disturb
- dernier, dernière** (§ 355, b) last
- derrière** behind (*not* 'back of')
- des (de + les)** See § 45
- dès** *pure prep.* from, as early as; **dès ce moment** from this very instant; **dès midi** by noon; **dès que** as soon as
- désagréable** disagreeable, unpleasant
- descendre** go (come, bring, let, carry) down (§ 427, c); alight
- désigner** (§ 420) refer to, designate
- desquel(le)s** (§ 121) of which, whose
- dessein** *m.* plan, purpose
- dessus** over (it, them), above, *etc.*
- destinée** *f.* (§ 161, l. 11) destiny
- détail** *m.* (§ 249, l. 37) detail
- détester** (§ 384) heartily dislike
- dette** *f.* debt
- deux** (§ 354, b-d) two; (*in dates etc.*) second (§ 355, c)
- deuxième** (§ 353, § 354, b-d) second
- devait** (§ 161, l. 25) was to (§ 187)

- devant** (1) *pr. part. of devoir* (*q.v.*)
devant (2) *prep. or adv.* (cf. § 495)
 before (*in space*), in front of
devenir (§ 482) become; *qu'est-elle
 devenue?* what has become of her?
devoir (1) *vb.* (§ 187) owe, have to,
 ought to, must; be likely (*or des-*
tined or obliged) to (§ 66, l. 6)
devoir (2) *m. noun* (§ 239) duty
diable *m.* devil, deuce, dickens
dictionnaire *m.* (§ 254) dictionary
dieu (**Dieu**) god (God); *pl.* **dieux**
différence *f.* difference
différer (§ 162, *f.*) differ
difficile hard, difficult
difficulté *f.* (§ 254, l. 43) difficulty
dimanche *m.* (§ 327, *c.*) Sunday
dîner *vb.* (§ 384) *or noun* (§ 240, R)
 dine, dinner
dire say, tell, talk (§ 300, 5); *et dire
 que* and to think that; *vouloir dire*
 (§ 249, l. 5) mean, signify; *dites clas-*
siques called classical; *que dis-je?*
 (§ 249, l. 49) no, rather (*lit.* what am
 I saying?)
discrédit *m.* discredit, disrepute
disparaître (§ 460) disappear
disputer, se dispute, wrangle
disqualifier (§ 418) disqualify
dissimuler (§ 384) hide; *se dissimuler*
 (§ 254, l. 11) hide from oneself
distinct-e (§ 44, l. 9) distinct
distinguer (§ 384) distinguish
dit-e *p.p. of dire* (*q.v.*)
divers-es (§ 177) diverse, various
divertir (§ 132, *d.*) entertain, amuse
dividende *m.* (§ 359, *d.*) dividend
diviser (§ 359, *d.*) divide, share
division *f.* (§ 359, *d.*) division
dix (§ 354, *b.*) ten; tenth (§ 355, *c.*)
dix-huit (§ 354, *b.*) eighteen
dix-neuf (§ 354, *b.*) nineteen
dix-sept (§ 354, *b.*) seventeen
doi- (§ 406) *from devoir* (§ 187)
donc then (*not of time*), so, therefore;
prenez donc do take, pray take
donner (§ 384) give, publish
dont (§§ 118-119, 141) of (from, by,
 with) which; in which (§ 249, l. 44);
 of (from, by) whom, whose
Dordogne *f.* (§ 335) Dordogne (*dept.*)
dormir (§ 225, *a.*) sleep
dos [do] *m.* (§ 143, *c.*) back
doter de endow with
doué-e (§ 418, *a.*) gifted
douleur *f.* (§ 486, *g.*) pain, grief
doute *m.* doubt; **sans doute** doubtless
douter (§ 384) doubt
dragon *m.* (§ 397, 4) dragon
drame *m.* drama
dresser (§ 384) prick up (§ 329)
droit, droite *adj. or noun* straight;
ce droit this right; à [la main] *droite*
 on (*or to*) the right
drôle (§ 344) funny, odd, queer; *un
 or une drôle de* a funny (§ 340)
du (**de + le**) *See* § 45
dû, due *p.p. of devoir* (§§ 187, 406)
duc [dyk] *m.* (§ 334) duke
duquel (§§ 116, 121) of which, whose
dur-e hard, tough
eau *f.* (§ 136, *b.*, § 492, *s.*, N) water
éclaircir (§ 132) enlighten, clarify
éclatant-e brilliant, gleaming. *See*
éclater
éclater (**de rire**) burst (out laughing)
école *f.* school (cf. § 254, l. 13)
écouter (§ 384) listen (to)
écrier, s' (§ 424, *a.*) exclaim
écrire (§ 249, l. 32) write, spell (*by writ-*
ing)

écriture *f.* writing; handwriting
écumer (§ 384) skim (§ 201, l. 8)
édition *f.* edition
éducation *f.* (§ 193, l. 6) education
effet *m.* effect; **en effet** in fact
efforcer, s' (§ 160) endeavor, strive
également likewise, also, equally
égard *m.* (§ 182) regard
église *f.* church
eh bien well, well then
élève *m. or f.* student, pupil
elle she, her, herself; it, itself; he
 (§ 85, l. 16); *see* **he**
elle-même herself, itself
elles they, them, themselves
elles-mêmes themselves
Éloi *m.* (Saint) Eligius
email *m.* (§ 143, a) enamel
embarquer, s' embark, (set) sail
embarras *m.* (§ 143, c) plight; **un embarras de richesses** more (wealth) than one can handle
embêter (§ 162, g) bother, plague, annoy; **s'embêter** be (or feel) annoyed *etc.*
embrasser (§ 384) embrace, include
émettre (§ 447) utter
émis-e *p. p. of émettre (g. v.)*
émission *f.* utterance, uttering
empailler (§ 421) stuff (*taxidermy*)
empêcher (§ 162, g) prevent, thwart
empereur *m.* (§§ 334, 488, a) emperor
emploi *m.* (§ 249, l. 35) use
employer (§ 158) employ
en (1) *adv. and pron.* (§§ 284, 298, 304, 307-310); **en implique de + compl.** (*test-words*: thereof, therefrom, thence, thereby, thereat, for that), of it, of them; **je vous en prie** I beg you, please; **en remercier** thank for; **il en est de même de l'art** the case

is the same for art; **quoi qu'il en soit** whatever the truth may be, however that may be; **s'en aller** go away; **en sortir** get out of it; (*partitively*) **j'en ai** I have some; **si j'en ai** if I have any (some); **je n'en ai pas** I haven't any, I have none; (*possessively*) its, their, (sometimes) his, her; *often not to be translated*
en (2) *pure prep.* (§§ 312, c-d, 321, 327, b-c, 335-337) in, into, to (*with or without the or a, my, your, etc.*); **en papier gris** of gray paper; **en ce moment** at this moment; **en galant homme** like a gentleman; (*with gerund*) in, while, through, by, or as + *finite vb.*, or sometimes *not to be translated* (§§ 261-262)
encore still, yet, again, even then; **non seulement . . . mais encore** not only . . . but also; **encore un** one more, another
endroit *m.* place, point; right side (*of cloth*); **à l'endroit** in the right place, right side out (p. 330)
énergiquement (§ 361) energetically
enfant *m. or f.* child, boy, girl; **bore enfant (adj.)** a nice chap, a simpleton
enfin (§ 249, l. 38) finally, in a word
énigme *f.* riddle
ennemi-e enemy
ennuyer (§ 158) bore, irk, annoy; **s'ennuyer** be bored, feel bored
ennuyeux, -se boring, vexatious
énorme enormous, huge
énormément (§ 361) hugely, enormously
enrichir (§ 132) make rich; **s'enrichir** get rich
enseignement *m.* instruction; **livre d'enseignement** textbook

ensemble together, at the same time
ensuite then, after that, next
entendre hear; **entendre dire** hear (said); **entendre parler de** hear of
entier, entière (§ 338, *a*) entire
entre between, among, within; **deux d'entre eux** two of them
entrer enter; **faire entrer** show in
envers (1) *prep.* (*fig.*) toward
envers (2) *m.* wrong side (*of cloth*);
à l'envers inside out (p. 330)
envie (*de*), **avoir** feel inclined (to);
aucune envie no desire
environ *adv.* about, approximately
envoyer (§ 164) send; **envoyer chercher**
 send for
épatant-e (*slang*) stunning, ripping
épaule *f.* shoulder
épée *f.* (§ 331, III) sword
époque *f.* time; (*sometimes*) epoch
épouser marry (*take a wife*)
éprouver (§ 384) feel, experience
équivaloir à (§ 470) be equivalent to
équivaux 3 *A of* équivaloir
éreinter (§ 384) wear out (*fig.*)
espèce *f.* kind, sort
espérer (§ 162, *f*) hope (to); **espérer**
 on put one's hopes in, trust in
esprit *m.* mind, wit
essai *m.* essay, trial
essayer (*de*) try (to)
essentielle (§ 338, *e*) essential
essoufflé-e out of breath, blown
estime *f.* esteem
estimer (§ 384) esteem
et [e] and; **et qui** and one that
établir (§ 132) establish
étendre (§ 445) stretch, stretch out,
 lay (*a tablecloth*)
étonner astonish; **s'étonner** (*de*, *que*)
 wonder (at, that)

étrange strange
étranger, étrangère (§ 338, *a*) foreign,
 foreigner, stranger
être be *or* have (§§ 426-427); be
 true; **il n'en est rien** nothing of
 the sort (is true); **il n'en saurait**
être de même de, § 157, l. 12; **est-ce**
que, c'est que, n'est-ce pas, § 78;
être à be at, be in, belong to
 (§ 296, *a*); **être à refaire** have to be
 made over (§ 252, *b*); **fut** (p. 330, II,
 l. 10) = *alla* went off to; (*in dates*)
quel jour sommes-nous? what day is
 it? what is the date [to-day]? (§ 356)
étude *f.* study
étudier (§ 159, *a*) study
étymologique etymological
euphonie (§ 399, *footnote*) euphony
Europe *f.* Europe (§§ 333-337)
eux them, they, themselves; **à eux**
 to them, of theirs (§ 297)
eux-mêmes themselves
éveiller (§ 421) waken, rouse; **s'éveil-**
ler wake up
évidemment (§ 361) evidently
éviter (§ 384) avoid; **à éviter** some-
 thing to avoid
évolution *f.* development, evolution
exact-e accurate, exact, right
exactement (§ 361) accurately
exagérer (§ 162, *f*) exaggerate
examiner (§ 384) examine, look into
excellent-e excellent
excepté *prep.* except
exécuter perform, carry out
exemple *m.* example; **par exemple**
 for instance; (*excl.*) certainly not!
or let me tell you! *etc.*
exercice *m.* (§ 159, l. 27) drill
exister (§ 384) exist; **il existe . . .**
 there is (are) . . .

- exotique** exotic (*not native*)
expérience *f.* experiment, experience
expliquer (§ 384) explain
exprès on purpose
exprimer (§ 384) express
exquis-e exquisite
extrait *m.* extract, selection
extrême-ment (§ 361) extremely
ex-voto *m.* (§ 496, *f.*) votive offering
- fable** *f.* (§ 113) fable
face *f.* (front) face
facile easy
façon *f.* (§ 492, *l.*, *R.*) manner, way, fashion; **de façon** (à ce) que so that; **de façon** à so as to; **de façon** ou d'autre somehow
facteur *m.* postman, factor (§ 359, *c.*)
faible weak
faim *f.* hunger; **avoir** (très) **faim** be (very) hungry *etc.* (§ 320)
faire (§ 478) do, make, make out, constitute; **faire** un chèque make out a check; **il faisait des mines singulières** (§ 352, *l.* 9) he would take on *etc.*; **on fait la somme de** (§ 359, *c.*) one adds up; **cela lui fait plaisir** that gives him pleasure; **faire le mort** (la morte) play dead (sham death); **faire son intéressante** put on her interesting air (*or* . . . pose); **ça ne fait rien** that doesn't matter, never mind; (*of weather*) **faire beau** *etc.* (§ 302, *b.*) be fine *etc.*; (*similarly*) **il fait bon marcher** (§ 250, *d.*) it's pleasant walking; (*causally*) **faire mourir** have (cause to be) put to death, **faire entrer** show in, **faire comprendre à tous** make everyone understand, **faire connaître un homme** make a man known; **Votre Majesté se fera noyer** your Majesty will get drowned; **faire que** cause to, make
fait de, en in the field of
falloir *impersonal* (§ 470, *b.*): **il faut** one (I, you, he, she, they) must, it is necessary (to, that); **il faudrait le faire** we (*etc.*) should (*or* should have to) do it; **la seule chose qu'il ne fallait pas faire** the one thing it was wrong to do (that should not have been done); **il faudrait une révolution** it would take (require) a revolution
fameu-x, -se (§ 338, *c.*) famous; **cette fameuse règle** that great rule
farceur *m.* joker, wag, humbug
fatalement (§ 361) unescapably
fausse-ment (§ 361) false-ly, wrong-ly
faute *f.* mistake (*de* in)
fauteuil *m.* armchair, easy-chair
fauti-f, -ve inaccurate, faulty
faux, fausse (§ 338, *h.*) false, untrue, wrong, counterfeit; **chanter faux** (*adv.*) sing off the key
féminin-e feminine
femme *f.* woman, wife
fenêtre *f.* (§ 486) window
ferme, travailler work hard
fermer (§ 384) shut, close
fête *f.* (festival) day (of a saint), holiday
fétu *m.* a (stalk of) straw; **un fétu de paille** (*q. v.*) a straw
feu *m.* (*pl.* feux) fire; **au feu** on the fire
feuilleter (§ 162, *d.*) turn over the leaves of
fier, fièrement (§ 361) proud-ly
filie *f.* daughter, girl; **jeune fille** young lady
fin *f.* end (*in abstract sense*)
final-e (*m. pl. in -als*) final; **les finales** *f.* (*gram.*) the endings

- financier, financière** (§ 338, *a*) (*as noun*) financier; (*as adj.*) financial
- finir** end; **il finit par s'écrier** he finally (at last he) exclaimed
- fixation** *f.* determining, fixing
- flatter** (§ 384) flatter (**de on**)
- flatteu-r, -se** (§ 338, *d*) flattering
- fleur** *f.* flower
- fleuve** *f.* (tidal) river
- flexion** *f.* (§ 249, l. 23) inflectional ending
- foi** *f.* faith; **par ma foi, archaic** (*now ma foi*) upon my word, really
- fois** *f.* time (**une fois** once; **deux fois** twice; *see temps*)
- fol, folle** *See fou*
- fonction** *f.* function
- fond** *m.* bottom; à **fond** thoroughly
- force** *f.* (*often pl.*) strength, power, might
- forcer** (§ 247, *f*) make, force (to)
- forme** *f.* form, shape
- former** (§ 384) form, shape
- fort** very, loud, hard (*adj.* strong)
- fortune** *f.* fortune
- fou, fol, folle** (§ 338, *f*) crazy
- foule** *f.* crowd, throng
- fourchette** *f.* fork (table-fork)
- fournir** (§ 132) supply, provide
- franc, franche** frank; **un franc** a (*or one*) franc
- français-e** (§ 49, *a, R*) French (*noun* Frenchman, Frenchwoman)
- France** *f.* France (§§ 333-337)
- François** *m.* (§ 488, *a*) Francis, Frank
- frapper** (§ 384) strike, knock
- frère** *m.* brother, friar
- froid-e** cold (*see avoir and faire*)
- fromage** *m.* cheese
- froncer le sourcil** (*q.v.*) frown
- fruit** *m.* (§ 193, l. 22) fruit (*fig.*)
- fumer** (§ 384) smoke
- furieu-x, -se** (§ 338, *c*) raging, furious
- fut (= alla) mettre** (p. 330) *See être*
- futur-e** future
- gâcher** (§ 384) make a mess of, spoil
- gages** *m.* wages
- gagner** (§ 420) earn, win, gain
- gai-e** jolly, cheerful, merry, gay
- galant homme** *m.* gentleman (good fellow)
- galop, au** at a gallop
- garçon** *m.* boy; **garçon** (*de restaurant m.*) waiter
- garder** (§ 384) keep; **se garder de + inf.** take care not to + *inf.*
- gare** *f.* (railway) station
- gâter** (§ 384) spoil
- gauche** left; à **gauche** to the left
- geler** freeze; **il gèle** it's freezing
- général-e** (§ 338, *g*) general
- généreu-x, -se** (§ 338, *c*) generous
- générosité** *f.* generosity, kindness
- génie** *m.* genius
- genou** *m.* (*§ 136, b*) knee
- gens** *m. or f.* (§ 491) people, persons; retainers (§ 161, l. 7)
- gentil-le** (§ 338, *h*) nice, likable
- gober** swallow (*credulously*), bolt
- gourmand-e** greedy; *noun* glutton
- goût** *m.* taste
- gracieu-x, -se** gracefully (§ 352, l. 4)
- grammaire** *f.* grammar (§ 249)
- grammatical-e** (*m. pl. -aux*) grammatical
- grand-e** (*old f.* grand) great, big, tall
- gras, grasse** (§ 338, *e*) fat, plump
- grave** grave, serious
- gravure** *f.* engraving
- grec, grecque** Greek (**le grec = Y, y**)
- grêler** be hailing (*cf. geler*)

gris-e gray; **grisâtre** grayish
gronder (§ 384) scold
gros-se (§ 338, *c*) big; **coûter gros** cost a lot
grossièrement (§ 338, *a*) grossly
grossir (§ 132) enlarge, swell
grotesque grotesque, outlandish
groupe *m.* group
grouper (§ 384) group
guère (§ 372) hardly, hardly ever
guerre *f.* (§ 319, *h*) war
guillemets *m.* quotation marks (« . . . »)

habiller (§ 421) dress (**de in**)
habit *m.* coat (*or fig.*) suit
habiter (§ 384) reside, live (**in, at**)
habitude *f.* habit, custom
hacher (§§ 17, 384) chop up
haillon *m.* (§ 17, § 52, l. 9) rag
haine *f.* (§ 17) hate, hatred
hair (§§ 17, 432) hate
haïssable (§ 17, § 52, l. 10) hateful
halle *f.* (§ 17) market (*for foods*)
hareng *m.* (§§ 17, 45) herring
hasard *m.* (§ 17) chance; **par hasard** by chance; **au hasard** at random
haut-e (§ 17) high, tall; **à haute voix** aloud; **à voix haute** loudly; **le haut** the top; **bien haut** (*adv.*) in loud tones; **arriver très haut** get very high up (§ 193, l. 7)
Havre, le (§§ 17, 325) Havre
Haye, la (§§ 17, 325) the Hague
héros (§ 17, § 143, *c*) hero
hésiter (§ 384) hesitate, waver
heure *f.* hour, time, moment; **quelle heure** what time, **à deux heures** at two o'clock (§§ 150, 356)
heureu-x, -se (§ 338, *c*) happy
hideu-x, -se (§ 338, *c*) hideous

hier yesterday
hirondelle *f.* swallow
histoire *f.* history, story
historique historic, historical
holà hi there, hold on, stop
homard *m.* lobster
homme *m.* man
honnête-ment honest-ly, proper-ly
honneur *m.* honor
honte *f.* shame; **avoir honte** be (*or feel*) ashamed
horloge *f.* clock (*outside of bldgs.*, § 356, *b*, *or fig.*, § 193, l. 26)
hors, (usually) hors de outside of
huile *f.* oil; **à l'huile** in oil, canned, tinned
huit eight (§§ 353-357); **huit jours** a week; **le dix-huit** the 18th
huitième (§§ 353-355) eighth
hypothèse *f.* hypothesis, theory

ici here, in this case; **c'est ici le** this is the
idée *f.* idea, notion, thought
il he, it (§ 302); **il y a** there is, there are; **il sort des sons** there come forth sounds; **il en est de même** the case is the same (*cf.* § 157, l. 12)
illusion *f.* illusion
illustrer (§ 384) illustrate
image *f.* illustration (*in a book*)
immuable [im- *or* imm-] immutable, fixed
imparfait-e-ment (§ 361) imperfect-ly
impartial-e (§ 338, *g*) impartial, fair
important-e important, of importance
importer (*impers.*): **n'importe quel-le** any; **n'importe où** no matter where
imposer impose, put in force
impossible impossible
impression *f.* impression, printing

imprimer (§ 384) print
incertain-e uncertain, unreliable
incessamment (§ 361) unceasingly
inconnu-e (§ 460) unknown
incontestable undeniable
inconvenient *m.* drawback, disadvantage
incorrect-e-ment (§ 361) incorrectly
incroyable incredible, past belief
Inde *f.* (§§ 333, 335) India
indéfini-e indefinite (§ 61, N 2)
indicati-f, -ve indicative
indifférent-e of small consequence
indiquer (§ 384) point out, indicate
individu *m.* individual, (*fam.*) fellow
industrie *f.* industry, trade
inférieur-e inferior, lower
infini-f, -ve (§ 239) infinitive
innover (§ 384) innovate
inoccupé-e (§ 366, *e*) not occupied
insister (§ 384) insist (*pour, pour que* on)
inspirer (§ 384) inspire, excite
instruire (§ 459) educate, instruct
instrument *m.* instrument
insulter (§ 384) insult
intéresser (§ 384) interest, concern;
s'intéresser à take an interest in,
 be interested in
interrompre (§ 445) interrupt
inutile-ment (§ 361) uselessly
inviter (§ 384) invite (*à to*); *les invités*
 (§ 272) the guests
Italie *f.* Italy (§§ 333, 335)
italien-ne (§ 49, *a, R*) Italian

j' See *je*
Jacqueline *f.*, *given name* (§ 340, I)
jadis [*zadis*] formerly
jamais (§ 373) never, ever
jambe *f.* (§ 295, *d, h, § 329*) leg

Japon *m.* Japan (§§ 334, 337)
jardin *m.* garden
jaune (§ 349, *c*) yellow
je (§§ 42, 278) I
Jean *m.* John; **Jeanne** *f.* Jane
Jeannine *f.* (*dimin. of Jeanne*) Jenny
jeter (§ 162, *d*) throw, throw away;
jeter un pont sur bridge *vb.*
jettes-y (§ 201, l. 8) See *jeter*
jeu *m.* (*pl. jeux*) game, play
jeudi *m.* (§ 327, *e*) Thursday
jeune young; junior (§ 348, R)
jolie *f.* joy, gladness, happiness
joindre (§ 458) join
joint-e *p.p. of joindre (q.v.)*
joli-e (§ 348) pretty, good-looking
joue *f.* (§ 329) cheek
jouer (§ 418, *a*) play (§ 151); *jouer au*
tennis play tennis; *jouer du piano*
 play the piano
jour (de) enjoy (§ 132, *d*)
jour *m.* (§ 327, *d, § 328, a*) day
journée *f.* day. See *jour*
juger *m.* (§ 319, *h, § 324*) judge
juillet *m.* (§ 327, *a*) July
Julien *m.* (§ 193) Julian
jusqu'à until, to, as far as, to the
 point of; *jusqu'à ce que* until
juste just, right, fair; *adverbially*
 right, on the key, in tune

kilomètre *m.* kilometer

l' See *la and le*
la (1) *def. art. f.* the (*or not to be trans-*
lated: §§ 46, 49, 57, 116, § 295, *d, h,*
 §§ 333–336); *avoir la vue bien nette*
 (§ 350, *c*) see quite clearly; *perdre*
la tête lose my (your, our, his, her)
 head (§§ 329–330); *la valeur sociale*
 one's social value (§ 157, l. 18); *la*

- Noël Christmas Day (§ 327, *c*, R); la nuit (*adv.*) at night (§ 327, *d*); de la sorte in that way. See § 311-335, *passim*, and le (1)
- la (2) *pers. pron.* her, it. See le (2)
- là there (*stressed*); là, il y a . . . there there is (are) . . . ; ce que vous dites là (*inexactly*) what you are saying (§ 193, l. 29); cette heure-là that hour (§ 354, *f*, Q); c'est là une chose . . . that is a thing . . . (§ 80); là dedans in it, in them, therein; *sometimes* là = here
- là-bas yonder, over there, there
- lâcher (§ 384) let go, utter
- lacune *f.* gap, omission
- là-dessous beneath, below; (*sometimes*) under it or them (§§ 282, 304)
- là-dessus thereupon, over (above, on) it, in them (§§ 282, 304)
- laïd-e ugly, plain, unseemly
- laisser (§ 384) leave, let, allow to
- lait *m.* (§ 322, *a*) milk
- langage *m.* (§ 157) language, speech
- langue *f.* tongue; la langue française the French language; la bonne langue cultured speech (§ 300, 5)
- lapin *m.* rabbit
- laquelle which, what, that, who, whom (§§ 116-117, 121, 155)
- large wide, broad
- latin-e Latin; le latin Latin
- laver (§ 384) wash, wash away
- le (1) *def. art. m.* (§§ 34-37, 45, 47, 316-337, 350, *c*) the (*or not to be translated*); le vendredi 20 avril on Friday, April 20th, le soir in the evening, à onze heures moins le quart at a quarter to eleven (§ 356, *a-b*). See la (1)
- le (2) *pers. pron.* (§§ 43, 278-282, 285, 288, 292-293, 298, 301-303) him, it, so, or not to be translated (§ 303). See la (2) and les (2)
- leçon *f.* lesson (de in)
- lecture *f.* reading
- légende *f.* legend
- léger, légère (§ 338, *a*) light, slight
- législation *f.* legislation; une législation nouvelle new laws
- légitime allowable, legitimate
- lendemain, le the next day
- lent-e-ment (§ 361) slowly
- lenteur *f.* slowness, deliberateness; avec lenteur deliberately
- lequel which, what, that, who, whom (§§ 116-117, 121, 155)
- les (1) *def. art., pl. of la (1) and le (1)*, the, or not to be translated; my, your, his, her, our, etc.
- les (2) *pers. pron.* them
- lesquel(le)s (§ 121) which, that
- lettre *f.* letter
- leur (1) (*pl. leurs*) *poss. adj.* (§ 54) their; leur utilisation the utilization of them (§ 157, l. 14); *pron. le (la) leur etc.* theirs (§ 57)
- leur (2) *pers. pron., dat.* (§ 43, *b*, § 244, ex. 7, §§ 282, 292, 295, 298) them, to (from, for, at) them etc., or not to be translated; je leur serre la main I shake their hands (§ 295, *d, f, h*)
- lever (*with lèv-*, § 162, *a*) raise, lift; se lever rise, get up
- lèvre *f.* (§ 329) lip
- lexicologie *f.* (§ 249) lexicology
- lexicologique (§ 249, ll. 8 and 12) lexicological
- liaison *f.* linking, liaison (§ 29)
- liberté *f.* freedom, liberty
- libre free, at liberty, not engaged
- lier (§ 418) tie (up), bind, link

- lieu** *m.* (*pl.* lieux) place; **en dernier lieu** at the end, last; **au lieu de (or au lieu que)** instead of (§ 234)
- limite** *f.* boundary, limit
- linguiste** *m. or f.* linguist
- linguistique** linguistic; **la linguistique** linguistics (*a study*)
- lire** (§ 475) read
- lit** *m.* bed
- littéraire** *f.* literary
- littérature** *f.* literature
- livre** *m.* book; *f.* pound (1.10 lb.)
- local-e** (§ 338, *g*) local
- locution** *f.* expression, idiom
- loger** (§ 160) lodge, house
- loi** *f.* (§ 254, l. 22) law
- loin (de)** far (from), far away
- lointain-e** distant, remote
- Loire, la** the (river) Loire
- long, longue** (§ 338, *h*) long; **le long de** along; **tout au long** at full length, in full. *See* **longtemps**
- longtemps** a long while, long (§ 192)
- lorgnette** *f.* opera glass, lorgnette; eyeglass, monocle
- lorsque** (§ 9, *end*) when
- louer** (1, *Lat.* locare) rent, hire
- louer** (2, *Lat.* laudare) praise.
- Louis** *m.* (§ 161, l. 2) Lewis, Louis
- Louise** *f.* (§ 488, *a*) Louise
- loup** *m.* wolf
- lourd-e** heavy, clumsy
- loyal-e** (*m. pl.* loyaux) loyal
- lui** *pers. pron., dat.* (*or, if stressed,* he, him, himself) him, her; to (for, from) him *or* her; **lui . . . le (la, les)** his, her (§ 295, *d, f, h*). *See* **leur** (2)
- lumière** *f.* light, lamp
- lundi** *m.* (§ 327, *e*) Monday
- lune** *f.* (§ 322, *e*) moon, moonlight
- lutte** *f.* struggle
- lutter** (§ 384) struggle, wrestle
- luxe** *m.* luxury
- M.** = monsieur Mr. (p. 242, *footnote*)
- m'** *See* **me**
- ma, mon, mes** (§ 54) *my*
- mâchoire** *f.* jaw
- madame (M^{me})** (§ 324, R) madam, Mrs.
- mademoiselle (M^{lle})** miss, Miss . . .
- magasin** *m.* (large) shop, (U.S.A.) store
- magnifique-ment** (§ 361) magnificently
- mai** *m.* (§ 327, *a*) May
- main** *f.* hand; **les mains vides** empty-handed
- maintenant** now
- mais** but; **mais si** yes, I am (§ 193, l. 9); **mais pas du tout** of course not; **mais non** certainly not; **mais oui** why, yes
- maison** *f.* house; **à la maison** home, at home (to *or* at the house)
- maître** *m.* master, owner; **maître de philosophie** teacher of philosophy (§ 381), **now professeur de philosophie**
- majesté** *f.* (§ 161, l. 3) majesty
- mal** (1) *adv.* ill, badly
- mal** (2) *m. noun (pl. maux)* evil (§ 157, l. 1); **avoir mal à la tête** have a headache; **pas mal de** a good deal of (§ 370, *f, N 1*)
- malade** ill; **un-e malade** a patient
- maladie** *f.* illness
- malgré (que)** in spite of (the fact that, . . . of his, *etc.*); *see* § 229, N 2
- malheur** *m.* misfortune, unhappiness
- malheureu-x, -se** unhappy, unfortunate
- malheureusement** (§ 361) unluckily

- manger** (§ 160) eat
manière *f.* manner, way
manquer (§ 384) miss, be lacking;
manquer de (*neg.*) fail to
mansarde *f.* garret bedroom (*under a mansard roof*)
marchand-e *m. or f.* shopkeeper
marché *m.* market; **bon marché** *adj. or adv.* cheap
marcher (§ 384) walk, proceed
mardi *m.* (§ 327, *e*) Tuesday
marié-e *m.* bridegroom; *f.* bride
marmite *f.* (§ 201, l. 8) pot, kettle
marquer (§ 384) mark; *also (of clocks)* show *or (fam.)* say
marquis *m.* (§ 143, *c*) marquis
mars *m.* (§ 327, *a*) March
masculin-e masculine
maternelle, langue mother tongue
matin *m.* morning; (**le**) **matin** *adv.* in the morning, early (§ 327, *d*, § 356, *a*, 15)
mauvais-e (§ 55, *b*) bad, poor, wrong
me *me*, myself; *dat.* to (for, at, from) *me* (§ 43, *b*, § 295); **me . . . le (la, les)** my (§ 295); *see lui*
méchant-e bad, mischievous, wicked
meilleur-e (§ 55, *b*) better, best
même *intensive adj., pron., or adv.* same, very, even; **de même espèce** of the same kind; **à même de** in a position to; **de même** likewise (§ 157, l. 12, and N); **moi-même** myself; **eux-mêmes** themselves *etc.*
ménagé-e, bien discreet (§ 254, l. 30)
mener (with mèn-) take (§ 162, *a*)
mentir (§ 225, *b*) lie (tell lies)
mer *f.* sea, ocean
mercredi *m.* (§ 327, *e*) Wednesday
mère *f.* mother
Mérimée *m.* Mérimée (1803-1870)
merveille (f.), à wonderfully (well)
mes, mon, ma (§ 54) my
Mesdames (vocatively) ladies
Mesdemoiselles (vocatively) young ladies. *See mademoiselle*
Messieurs (vocatively) gentlemen
mesure *f.* step, measure; **avec mesure** (§ 254, l. 41) with moderation
met (mets, mett-) *See A of mettre*
méthodique methodical
métrique metric
mettre (§ 447) set, put, put on, don
Mexique *m.* (§ 337) Mexico
midi *m.* noon, twelve o'clock
mien-ne (le, la) mine (§ 57)
mieux (§ 56, N, § 360, R) better, better-looking, best
mil *occurs in l'an mil (A.D. 1000) etc.*
milieu *m.* middle, midst
militaire (§ 344, Q) military
mille thousand; **un mille** a mile
mine (1) *f.* mine (*of ore*)
mine (2) *f.* expression of countenance (§ 352, l. 9)
minuit *m.* midnight, twelve o'clock
minute *f.* minute (§ 356)
misère *f.* wretchedness, misery
MM. =, messieurs, *pl. of monsieur*
moderne modern, up-to-date
modifier (§ 418) modify
mœurs *f.* (§ 496, *e*, N 1) customs, ways
moi *me*, to (for, at, from) *me*, myself, I (*stressed*); **moi, je** as for *me*, I; **à moi** to *me*, of mine, mine (*stressed*). *See lui*
moins (§ 55, *b*, R) less, least
moins (§§ 55-56) less, least, not so, not as; **au moins or du moins** at least; **moins d'amis** fewer friends; **à moins que** unless; **à moins de + inf.** unless + *finite vb.*; **à minuit moins**

- un quart** at a quarter to (before)
twelve (§ 356, *b*)
mois *m.* (§ 143, *c*, § 327, *a*) month
moitié *f.* (§ 266, l. 6, § 357) half
moment *m.* moment, time; **pour le moment** for the time being
mon, ma, mes (§ 54) my (cf. § 324, R)
monde *m.* world; **le plus obligé du monde** ever so much obliged; **tout le monde** everybody
monsieur (§ 89, *b*) sir (§ 381); you, sir; **ce monsieur** this gentleman
mont *m.* Mount (le mont Blanc)
monter go (take, carry) up, mount
montre *f.* (§ 356, *b*, 2) watch
montrer (§ 280, *b*, § 384) show
moquer de, se (§ 427, *a*) make fun of
morceau *m.* (§ 136, *b*) piece, bit
mordre (§ 191) bite
morphologie (§ 249, l. 12) morphology
mort (1) *f.* death. See **mort-e**
mort (2), **morte** *p.p.* of **mourir** (§ 167), dead; **faire le mort** sham death, play dead (§ 341, I)
mortel-le (§ 338, *e*) killing, deadly
mot *m.* (§ 348, *a*, § 496, *b*) word
mouche *f.* fly
mouchoir *m.* handkerchief
mouiller wet, moisten; pronounce as a palatal consonant (§ 14, *c*, § 15, *a*)
mourir (§ 167) die
mouvement *m.* movement, motion
moyen *m.* means, way, medium; **trouver moyen (de)** contrive to, manage to
muet, muette (§ 338, *e*) dumb, mute
mulet *m.* (§ 493, *s*) mule
multiplicande *m.* multiplicand
multiplicateur *m.* multiplier
multiplication *f.* multiplication
multiplier (§ 418) multiply
mur *m.* (§ 486) wall (*q.v.*)
muraille *f.* (§ 492, *h*) wall (*q.v.*)
musique *f.* music. See **leçon**
n' See **ne**
naïf, naïve simple-minded, artless
naître be born, arise, spring up
nappe *f.* (§ 201, l. 9) tablecloth
natal-e (*m. pl.* -als or -aux, § 338, *g*) native
national-e (§ 338, *g*) national
nature *f.* nature. See **de** (6)
naval-e (§ 338, *g*, N) naval
ne *neg. particle, mostly with pas, personne, jamais, etc.* (§§ 90, 367-381) not, lest, but sometimes *untranslatable*; **à moins que . . . ne** unless; **craindre que . . . ne** fear that, *etc.*; **ne . . . pas** not, not any, no, *etc.*; **ne . . . personne or personne ne** nobody, not . . . anybody, **ne . . . que** only, **ne . . . plus** no longer. See **pas, personne, etc.**, also § 217
né-e *p.p.* of **naître** (§ 461)
nécessaire necessary
négligeable (cf. § 160) negligible
négliger neglect, overlook, slight
neige *f.* snow
neiger (§§ 160, 302, *b*, 4) snow, be snowing
net [net], **nette** clear. See **vue**
neuf (1), **neuve** new (*not yet used*)
neuf (2) nine, ninth (§§ 354-355)
neutre neuter, neutral
nez *m.* (§ 143, *c*) nose
ni (§ 377) neither, nor
nid [ni] *m.* nest
nier (§ 418) deny
noblesse *f.* (§ 317, R) nobility
noir-e (§ 349, *c*) black, dark
nom *m.* name, noun

- nombre** *m.* number (§ 359)
nombreux, **-se** numerous; **peu nombreux** (§ 254, l. 2) rather small
nommer name; **se nommer** be called
non (§§ 365-366, 375, *b*) no, not, non-
nonchalant-e careless, nonchalant
non-initial-e (§ 338, *g*) non-initial
nord *m.* north
nos, **notre** (§ 54) our
noter (§ 384) note, observe
notre, **nos** (§ 54) our
nôtre, **le**, **la** (*etc.*) ours (§ 57)
nourrir (§ 132, *d*) feed
nourriture *f.* (§ 41, l. 2) food
nous we, us, ourselves (§ 43, *b*); each other (§ 283, *b*); to (for, at, from) us (§ 295); **nous . . . le (la, les)** our (§ 295, *d, h*)
nouveau, **nouvel**, **nouvelle** new
nouveauté *f.* novelty, newness
nouvelle *f.* (*see nouveau*) news, tidings
noyer (§ 158) drown. *See faire*
nu-e (§ 352, l. 8) naked, bare
nuire (**à**) harm, injure
nuit *f.* (§ 327, *d*) night
nul-le (§ 184) no (*adj.*); no one
nullement (§§ 184, 361) in no wise
o (*sometimes ô*; cf. *oh*) oh
obéir (**à**) obey (§ 132, *d*)
objection *f.* (§ 258, *c, 4*) objection
objet *m.* object, aim (§ 157, l. 12); **objet d'art** work of art
obliger (§§ 160, 247, *f*) oblige; **noblesse** oblige nobility imposes obligations
observer (§ 384) observe
obstacle *m.* obstacle, hindrance
occuper (§ 384) occupy; **être occupé**-e (**à**) be busy (at, with); **s'occuper de** concern one's self with
œil *m.* (*pl. yeux*) eye; **aux yeux des étrangers** in the eyes of (*i.e.* as it seems to) foreigners
œuf *m.* (§ 45) egg
offrir-e *p.p.* of **offrir** (§ 440)
offrir (§ 440) offer
oiseau *m.* (§ 136, *b*) bird
omettre (§ 447) omit, leave out
omis-e *p.p.* of **omettre** (§ 447)
on *indef. pron.* (§§ 43, 284, *a, § 305*) one, we, you, they, a man, anyone, people; *or translate by passive or impers. vbs.*
onze (§ 354, *a, § 355, c*) eleven; eleventh
opération *f.* operation
opinion *f.* (§ 254, l. 42) opinion
opposer **à**, **s'** stand in the way of or (1) *conj.* now (*resumptively*) or (2) *m. noun* gold; **en** or gold
oral-e (*m. pl. oraux*) oral
ordinaire ordinary, usual
ordonner (**à**) order (§ 161, l. 6)
ordre *m.* order, command
oreille *f.* (§ 295, *d, h*) ear
ornement *m.* (§ 339, *b*) ornament
orner (**de**) adorn or grace (with, by)
orthopédie *f.* (§ 157, ll. 23-24, § 249, l. 12) rules of pronunciation
orthographe *f.* (§ 254) spelling
oser (§ 384) dare, dare to
ôter (§ 384) take, take away
ou or; **ou bien** or (*stressed*), or else
où where, in which, when; **au cas où** in case; should . . .
oublier (§ 418) forget
oui (§ 366, *a-b*) yes
outré (§ 322, *c*) besides, beyond
ouvert-e (*p.p.* of **ouvrir**) open-ed
ouvrier *m.* workman, laborer
ouvrir open *vb.* *See ouvert*-e

- page** *f.* (§ 355, *c*) page
paille *f.* straw. *See* **fétu**
pain *m.* bread; **un petit pain** a roll
panique *f.* (§ 266, l. 9, § 340) panic
panser (§ 384) dress (*a wound*)
pantoufle *f.* (§ 381, l. 17) slipper
papier *m.* paper
par *pure prep.* by, through; **par la fenêtre** through (out through, out of) the window; **commence par une voyelle** begins with a vowel; **finir par annoncer** end by announcing, finally announce; **par jour** a day, daily (§ 328, *a*); **répondre par oui** answer (with *a*) yes; **par ordre alphabétique** alphabetical(ly); **par la raison** for the reason; **parce que** because; **partout** everywhere; **par ici** in this direction, this way; **par-dessus** over; **de par la loi** by law (§ 254, l. 22)
paraître (§ 460) seem, appear
parapet *m.* parapet
parapluie *m.* umbrella
parasol *m.* parasol
parce que because
parcourir run through, glance at
pardon *m.* pardon
pardonner (**à qqn. de**) forgive (one for); cf. § 295
paré-e (**parer** adorn) sumptuous
pareil-le à (§ 338, *e*) like
parfait-e-ment (§ 361) perfect-ly
parfois sometimes, at times
Paris *m.* (§ 254, N 9) Paris
parisien-ne (§ 49, *a*, R) Parisian
parler (§§ 107–110, 249, l. 7) speak
parmi (§ 138) among
parole *f.* word, speech
part *f.* share; **à part** aside; **d'autre part** on the other hand; **de toutes parts** on all sides; **quelque part** somewhere
parti *m.* party (cf. § 224)
participe *m.* participle (§§ 260–277)
partie *f.* part, portion
partiel-le (§ 359, *c*) partial
partir (§ 224) go (come) away, leave (*intr.*); **à partir de** from
partout (§ 33, l. 6) everywhere
parvenir à (§ 382) arrive at, reach
pas (1) *neg. with or without ne* (§§ 90, 369–370) not; **pas de bien** no good; **je n'en ai pas** I haven't any
pas (2) *m. noun* (§ 143, *c*) step
passage *m.* passage
passer (p. III, bot., § 249, l. 22, § 427, *d*) pass, spend (*time*); **à trois heures et demie passées** after half past three
passionnel-le (§ 338, *e*) of passion
patience *f.* (§ 492, *w*) patience
patron *m.* boss, employer
pauvre poor
payer (§ 158) pay, pay for
pays *m.* (§ 11, *b*, § 143, *c*) country
paysage *m.* landscape (cf. **pays**)
pêche, la fishing, angling
pêcher (§ 162, *g*) fish (angle). *See* **pêche**
peine *f.* pain; **à peine** hardly
peloton *m.* ball (*e.g. of wool*)
penaud-e abashed, (looking) foolish
pencher, se (§ 384) lean
pendant *prep.* during, for; **pendant que** while (cf. **cependant**)
pénétrer penetrate; **lui faire pénétrer dans la tête** get into his head
pénible-ment painful-ly, laborious-ly
pensée *f.* (§ 33) thought
penser (§ 384) think (§ 148, R, § 280, *c*, N)
percé-e (**percer**) worn through
perçu-e *p.p.* (§ 188) perceived

- perdre** (§ 191) lose, waste
père *m.* father
Périgord *m.* (§§ 334, 337) Périgord
péril *m.* (§ 254, l. 43) peril, danger
périr (§ 132) perish
permettre (§ 447) allow; **a permis de** made it possible to (§ 254, l. 9); **se permettre de** venture to
permis-e *p.p.* of **permettre** (§ 447)
Pérou *m.* (§ 337) Peru
personnage *m.* person, personage, character
personne (1) *f. noun* person
personne (2) *pron.* (§ 376) nobody
perte *f.* loss, waste
perturbation *f.* disturbance, turmoil
peser (§ 162, a, N) weigh
petit-e little, small; **une chatte et ses petits** a cat and her kittens
peu little, not very; **peu de** little, few; **peu à peu** little by little; **un peu bien** fairly well (§ 193, l. 20); **dites-moi un peu** just tell me (§ 161, l. 12); **un peu de toutes façons** pretty much every way; **à peu près** about; **si peu que** however little; **pour peu que** if . . . just (or but) a little (§ 249, l. 3)
peuple, le the (plain) people
peur *f.* fear; **de peur que . . . ne** lest
peut plus, on ne (§ 165) *adv.* highly
peut-être, peut-être que perhaps
phénomène *m.* (§ 249, l. 28) phenomenon
philologie *f.* philology
philologue *m.* (§ 254, l. 3) philologist
philosophie *f.* philosophy (cf. § 381)
phonème *m.* (*technical neologism*, § 157, l. 6, § 249, l. 34, *intended clearly to distinguish the sounds of speech from sounds in general: les sons*) speech-sound, word-sound, vocable
(sometimes a word, sometimes part of a word, as n', or a group, as m'en)
phonétique phonetic; **la phonétique comparée** comparative phonetics
photographie *f.* photograph
phrase *f.* sentence (§ 249, l. 10)
physiologie (§ 249, l. 43) physiology
piano *m.* piano
pièce *f.* (*entire*) piece, room
pie [pje] *m.* foot
pierre (1) *f. noun* stone
Pierre (2) *m.* Peter
pilule *f.* pill
pincer (les lèvres) close hard
pire (§§ 55-56) worse, worst
pis *adj. or adv.* (§ 56) worse, worst
pistolet *m.* pistol (*not a revolver*)
pitié [pitje] *f.* pity
place *f.* place, position
placer (§ 160) put, place, set, lay
plaindre pity; **se plaindre** complain
plaine *f.* plain (*flat land*)
plaire please; **cela lui plaît** that pleases him, he likes that
plaisanter (§ 384) joke, jest, say funny things
plaisir *m.* pleasure; **faire plaisir (à qqn.)** please, give pleasure
plateau *m.* (§ 136, b) plateau
plein-e full (cf. § 321, a)
pleurer (§ 384) weep; *"(fam.)* cry (weep)
pleut, il (§ 169) it's raining
pleuvoir (§ 169) rain, be raining
pluie *f.* rain
plume *f.* (§ 322, a, R) feather, plume
plupart (de), la most (of)
pluriel *m.* plural
plus more, most (§§ 55-56); **plus haut** higher; **plus de** more, more than, and after (§ 356, b, 9); (*with or*

without ne) again, further, any more, longer, no more, no longer; ni . . . non plus nor . . . either (§ 375)

plusieurs *m. or f.* several

plus-que-parfait (§ 103, I) pluperfect

plutôt (que, que de) rather (than)

poche *f.* (§ 329, b, N) pocket

poêle *f.* frying-pan, pan

poids *m.* (§ 143, c) weight

poil *m.* hair, coat (*of animals*)

poilu-e hairy; **poilu** *a pet name* (§ 340) *given to the French private soldier*

point *m.* point, extent; *neg.* not

poisson *m.* fish

Poitou *m.* (§§ 334, 337) Poitou

poitrine *f.* breast, chest

pomme *f.* apple; **pomme de terre** potato

pont *m.* (§ 486, e) bridge

porte *f.* door

portée *f.* (§ 193, l. 23) reach

porter (§ 384) bear, carry, wear (have on); **porter (qqn.) à croire** lead one to believe

portrait *m.* (§ 249, l. 49) portrait

pose *f.* pose (*affected attitude*)

poser (§ 384) set down

posséder (§ 162, f) possess, own

possibilité *f.* possibility

possible possible

pot *m.* (§ 497, f) pot, jug (§ 322, a)

potage *m.* (§ 492, d) soup

poulailler *m.* henhouse (*cf.* poule)

poule *f.* hen (*cf.* poulailler)

pour *pure prep.* for, as for; **pour ça** because of that (§ 193, l. 4); **vous ne faites rien pour ça** (§ 193, l. 14) you're doing nothing toward that (*or* to bring that about); **pour + inf.** (*in order*) to; **pour nous rejoindre** and then rejoin us (§ 352, ll. 11-12); **pour**

que + subjunctive in order that, for . . . to (§ 193, l. 23); **pour peu que**, *see* peu; **avoir pour objet** (§ 157, l. 12) have as an (as its) object

pourquoi why. *See pour and quoi*

pourtant however, yet

pourvu que (§ 230) provided (that)

pousser (§ 384) push, thrust, shove; **pousser de grands cris** yell; *intr.* grow

poutre *f.* girder

pouvoir (1) *vb.* (§ 165) can, could, may, might, be able to; **il se peut que** it may be that, possibly; **ça se peut** that's possible; **peut-être** perhaps

pouvoir (2) *m. noun* power (§ 161, l. 23)

pratique (1) *adj.* practical

pratique (2) *f. noun* (§ 157, l. 27) practice, experience

précéder (§ 162, f) precede

précis-e (1) *adj.* precise; **à quatre heures précises** at just four

précis (2) *m. noun* summary (*de of*)

précisément precisely, in truth

prédire (§ 474, a) predict, foretell

préférer (§ 162, f) prefer

premier, première (§§ 353, 355) first

prendre take, take away, take on (*assume*), catch

préparer make ready, prepare

près *adv.* near (by); **à peu près** about; **près de** near *prep.*

présence *f.* presence

présent-e present (*cf.* actuel-le)

président *m.* president (§ 333, R)

presque [presk(ə)] almost; **presque rien** hardly anything

prétendre (§ 161, l. 10) claim to

prêter (§ 162, g) lend

preuve *f.* proof

- prévoir** (§ 463, *a*) foresee
prier (§ 418) pray; **je vous en prie** pray, pray do; **prier de** ask . . . to
prix *m.* (§ 143, *c*) price, pay (§ 266, l. 6)
probablement (§ 361) probably, I suppose, very likely
problème *m.* problem
procédé *m.* (§ 157, l. 2) process
proclamer (§ 384) proclaim, declare
produire (une impression) make
produit *m.* (§ 459) product (§ 359, *c*)
professeur *m.* teacher, professor
profiter (§ 384) profit (*de by*)
profond-e deep, thorough, radical
projet *m.* plan
promesse *f.* promise
pronom *m.* pronoun
prononcer (§ 160) pronounce, utter
prononciation *f.* pronunciation
propos *m.* (§ 143, *c*) remark, talk; à propos by the bye
proposition *f.* (§ 249, l. 10) clause
propre own, clean (§ 347); **nom propre** proper name (§ 254, l. 22)
prose *f.* (§ 381) prose
protectrice (§ 488) *f. adj.*: **la Société protectrice des animaux** the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals (§ 349, *b*)
protéger (§§ 160, 162, *f*) protect
protester (§ 384) protest
prouver (§ 384) prove, demonstrate
proverbe *m.* proverb
provisions *f. pl.* stock of food
public, publique public
puis then, next, later, besides (*adv.*)
puisque [pɥisk(ə)] *conj.* since
punir (§ 132) punish; condemn, make a punishable offense (§ 303, ex. 5)
pur-e-ment (§ 361) pure-ly
putois *m.* (§ 33, *N e*) polecat
- qu'** *See que*
qualité *f.* quality, good quality
quand when (§ 156, 5); **quand même** even though (§ 97)
quant à as for, as to
quantième *m.* day of the month, day
quantité *f.* quantity, lots of (*de*)
quarante (§ 353) forty
quart *m.* (§ 357) quarter; **onze heures moins le quart** quarter to eleven; **une heure et quart** quarter past one
quatorze fourteen; fourteenth (§ 355, *c*)
quatre (§ 353, § 355, *c*) four; fourth
quatre-vingt-sept eighty-seven
quatrième (§ 353) fourth
que (1) *conj.* that (*or not always necessarily translated*); **dire que tu say** that you; **dire que oui say yes** (§ 366, *b*); **qu'on songe** (§ 213, *a*) think, let us think (§ 254, l. 14); **il travaillerait pour rien qu'on ne pourrait le garder** though he should work for nothing, nobody could keep him (§ 266, ll. 7-8); **que (pour que, afin que)** in order that, so that (§§ 231-232); **que must end all conjunctive groups**: **afin que** in order that, **aussitôt que** as soon as, **bien que** although, **parce que** because, and (*more or less pronominally*) **pour peu qu'on** if one . . . just a bit, **où que** wherever, *etc.* (*many examples in §§ 41-381; but see especially §§ 213-238*); **que immediately follows depuis** since (§ 192) and **pour**: **pour que** in order that, for . . . to (§§ 231-232); **c'est un accident . . . que la façon . . .** the way . . . is an accident . . . (§§ 129, 249, ll. 43-44)

que (2) *correl. adv. or pron.*: aussi bien que as well as; les mêmes que the same as, the same that

que (3) *interrog. or excl. adv. and pron.* why, what, how, how much, how many (*often with de*)

que (4) *rel. pron.* that, whom, which (*but this que need not always be translated*). See qui que, quoi que, où que, etc. (§ 228)

que (5) *prep. or prepositional conj.*: plus que moi more than I; tu n'as que ça you have only that (§ 378)

quel, quelle (§ 338, *e*) what (a), which; **quel que, quelle que** (§ 328) whichever, whatever

quelconque (§ 175) some . . . or other **quelle** See **quel**

quelque-s (§ 173) some, any

quelquefois (§ 173) sometimes

quelqu'un-e (§§ 173, 180) somebody, anyone; **quelques-uns (-unes)** some

question *f.* question

questionnaire *m.* list of questions

questionner (§ 384) question (doubt)

queue *f.* tail, pigtail, cue

qui (1) *interrog. pron.* who, whom

qui (2) *rel. pron.* that (*or omit*), who, (*seldom*) which; **écume la marmite**

qui bout (§ 201, l. 8) skim the pot: it's boiling; **à qui sait attendre** (§ 193) to him who (to whoever) knows how to wait; **épouse qui tu veux** marry anyone you want to;

qui que (§ 228) whoever, whomever **quiconque** (§ 176) anyone who, whoever

quinze fifteen; fifteenth (§ 353, § 355, *c*)

quitter (§ 384) leave *tr.*

quoi (1) *interrog. pron.* (§§ 146, 149, 151-152) what; **en quoi** how, wherein;

quoi que indef. pron. whatever; **quoi qu'il en soit** however that may be

quoi (2) *rel. pron.* (§§ 119, 121, 140) which; **de quoi** of which, wherewith

quoique although, though (*not while*)

quotient *m.* (§ 359, *d*) quotient

raconter (§ 384) tell, relate

raison *f.* reason; **avoir raison** be right (*not in error*)

raisonnable reasonable

raisonné-e 'reasoned,' with proofs

ramasser (§ 384) pick up

rappeler, se (§ 162, *d*) recall, remember

rapport *m.* report, relation

rare rare, scarce

ravissant-e (*from ravir*) entrancing

réaliser (§ 384) realize, make (*money*)

rebutant-e (*from rebuter*) repellent

récent-e recent, late

recevoir (§ 188) receive, get

recherche *f.* research, investigation

réciter (§ 384) recite

recommander (§ 384) recommend

reconnaissant-e grateful

réduction *f.* reducing, lessening

réel-le-ment (§ 361) real-ly

refaire (§ 478) make over, remake

refermer, se (§ 384) close (again)

réfléchir (à) reflect (on, about)

réformateur *m.* (§ 488) reformer

réforme *f.* (§ 254, l. 12) reform

reformer (§ 157, l. 9) re-form

refrain *m.* refrain, burden (of a song)

regard *m.* look, glance (cf. **regarder**)

regarder (§ 384) look, look at, concern

région *f.* region, district

règle *f.* (§ 157, l. 24) rule

règne *m.* (§ 161, l. 1) reign

regret *m.* regret

- regretter** (§ 384) regret (*de to*)
régulier, régulière (§ 338) regular
rejeter (§ 162, *d*) reject, throw back
rejoindre (§ 458) join . . . again
relati-f, -ve (§ 338, *b*) relative
relation *f.* (§ 492, *l*) relation
relever de (§ 162, *a*) fall under (*fig.*)
remarquable remarkable
remarquer (§ 384) note, notice, remark
remercier (§ 418) thank (*de for*)
remettre (§ 447) shift (*or put*) back
rempart *m.* (§ 85, l. 21) rampart
remplacer (§ 160) replace (*par with*)
remplir (§ 132) fill (*de with*)
remporter (§ 201, l. 2) carry back
rencontrer (§ 384) meet
rendez-vous *m.* appointment
rendre (§ 190) give back, make (*i. e.* cause to be); *s'en rendre un compte exact* accurately realize its meaning (§ 249, l. 4); *rendre visite (à)* visit, call on, pay a call; *se rendre (à)* surrender (to)
renfermer (§ 384) shut up, enclose; *sentir le renfermé* smell stuffy
renoncer à (§ 160) give up
renouveler (§ 162, *d*) renew
renseignement *m.* information
renseigner (§ 420) inform
rentrer (§ 427, *c*) return (home)
renvoyer (§ 164) send away, refer
répandre, se (§§ 190-191) spread
reparler (§§ 107, 110) speak again
repartir (§ 224) start off again
repas *m.* (§ 143, *c*) meal
répéter (§ 162, *f*) repeat
répondre (à) answer, reply (§ 190)
réponse *f.* answer, reply
repos *m.* (§ 143, *c*) rest (repose)
reposer (sur) rest (on, upon)
reprendre (§ 448) take up again, resume
représentant *m.* representative
représentation *f.* representation
représenter (§ 384) represent
reproduire (§ 459) reproduce
républicain-e republican
république *f.* (§ 333, R) republic
réputer (§ 157, l. 6, § 384) consider
rescousse *f.* rescue
réserve *f.* reserve
résigner, se (§ 420) resign oneself
résolus (§ 161, l. 4, § 451) resolved
résoudre (§ 451) resolve (*de to*)
respect *m.* (§ 254, l. 34) respect, awe, feeling of awe
respectable-ment (§ 361) respectable, respectably
responsable (de) responsible (for)
ressembler (à) be like, look like
restaurant *m.* restaurant
reste *m.* remainder
rester (§§ 384, 427, *b*) stay, remain, be left (§ 375, ex. 7)
résultat *m.* result
résulter (§ 427, *b*) result (*de from*)
résumé *m.* (§ 272) summary, epitome
résumer summarize, briefly restate
retard *m.* delay; *en retard* late (§ 356, *a*, 16); *avoir dix minutes de retard* be ten minutes slow
retarder delay *tr.* (§ 161, l. 24); *ma montre retarde de onze minutes* my watch is eleven minutes slow
retenir (§ 482) carry (over); keep back, hold back, detain
retenu-e, de (§ 482) carried over
retiens (I) carry (over). *See retenir*
retirer (§ 384) withdraw, draw back
retomber (§ 427, *b*) fall back, hang, droop (§ 352-1.4)

- retour** *m.* return; **de retour** back *adv.*
- retourner** (§ 427, *b*) go back, return
- retrancher** (§ 384) take (de from)
- retrouver** (§ 384) find, find again
- réunir** (§ 132) bring together, unite
- réussir** (§ 132, *d*) succeed (à in)
- revenir** (§ 482) come back, return
- rêver** (§ 162, *g*) dream
- revoir** (§ 463) see again
- révolution** *f.* revolution
- revu-e** *p. p.* of revoir
- r'garde for regarde** (§ 9, *d*, § 25, R)
- rhétorique** *f.* (§ 249, l. 40) rhetoric
- riche** rich, wealthy
- richesse** *f.* wealth, riches
- ridicule** ridiculous
- rien** *m. pron.* (§ 374) nothing, not anything; **rien qu'à** merely to
- rincer** (§ 160) rinse (§ 201, l. 9)
- rire** (1) *vb.* (§ 479) laugh (de at)
- rire** (2) *m. noun* laugh, laughter
- risquer** (de) risk (+ *vb. in -ing*)
- rivière** (§ 88, l. 2) stream
- robe** *f.* (§ 250, ex. 2) dress, gown
- robinet** *m.* tap (of casks etc.)
- roi** *m.* (§ 161, l. 3, § 488, *a*) king
- Roland** *m.* (p. 295) Roland
- roman** *m.* novel
- roquet** *m.* pug, (*fig.*) cur
- rosbif** [Rɔzbif] *m.* roast beef
- Rouen** *m.* Rouen (in Normandy)
- rouge** red
- Rousselle** *family name*; see cadet
- routinier, routinière** (§ 338, *a*) never-varying, routine-ridden, in a rut
- rouvrir** (*p. p.* rouvert-e) open again
- royal-e** (§ 338, *g*, § 339, *b*) royal
- royaume** *m.* kingdom
- royaux** *m. pl.* of royal
- rue** *f.* street
- ruisseau** *m.* (§ 136, *b*) gutter, brook
- s'** See *se and si* (2)
- sa, son, ses** (§ 54) his, her, its
- sage-ment** -(§ 361) wisely
- saint-e** (§ 327, R, § 340) saint
- sais** See *savoir* (§ 469)
- saisir** (§ 132) seize, grasp
- saison** *f.* season
- sait** See *savoir* (§ 469)
- salade, une a** (mess of) salad
- sale** dirty, (*fig.*) low (§ 349, *e*)
- salle** *f.* (§ 497, *g*) room, hall
- salon** *m.* drawing-room, parlor
- saluer** (§ 418, *a*) greet, bow to
- samedi** *m.* (§ 327, *e*) Saturday
- sang** *m.* blood
- sans** without, but for (§ 95, *a*); **sans que** + *subjunctive* (§ 234) without
- Saône, la** (§ 254, N 9, § 335) the (river) Saône
- sardine** *f.* sardine. See *huile*
- sauce** *f.* (§ 331, R) sauce
- sauf** *prep.* save, saving, except
- savant** *m.* scientist, scholar
- savoir** (§ 469) know, know how to; **ne saurais** (§ 157, l. 12) could not, really cannot
- scène** *f.* scene; **mettre en scène** stage, bring before you, etc.
- sceptre** *m.* (§ 339, *b*) scepter
- science** *f.* (§ 157, l. 1) science
- scientifique** (§ 249, l. 11) scientific
- se** himself, herself, itself, oneself, themselves, to (for, from) . . . self, etc.; **s'appeler « cochon »** call each other 'pig'; **on s'éveille** one wakes up; **de quoi il s'agit** (§ 132, *d*) what it's about; **les sons dont se compose notre langue** the sounds of our language; **ils s'embêtent** they get bored; **elles se sont chamaillées** they've wrangled, see § 427, *a*

- second-e** (§ 354, *d*) second; *noun* une
-seconde a second. *See* deuxième
- secours** *m.* (§ 143, *c*) help ·
- secret, secrète** secret
- Seine, la** (§ 266, l. 15) the Seine
- seizième (XVI^e)** sixteenth (§ 353)
- sel** *m.* salt
- selon** according to
- semaine** *f.* week. *See* huit
- semblable** like, similar
- sembler** (§ 146, R, § 384) seem, seem to
- sens** *m.* (§ 44, ll. 8, 11) meaning(s),
sense(s)
- sentir** (§ 225, *d*) feel, smell
- sept** (§ 354, *f*) seven; seventh
(§ 355, *c*)
- sergent** *m.* (§ 324, R) sergeant
- série** *f.* series
- sérieu-x, -se** serious, grave, real
- serrer** (§ 384) clasp, squeeze
- sert** *See* servir (§ 225, *e*)
- servir** (§ 225, *e*) serve; **servir de** serve
as; **se servir de** make use of
- ses, sa, son** (§ 54) his, her, its
- seul-e** only, single, alone; **un-e seul-e**
just one
- seulement** (§ 361) only, just
- si** (1) *adv.* so, yes; **si besoin** such (a)
need; **si + adj. + que** however . . .
(§ 228, *g*)
- si** (2) *conj.* if, whether; **tâter si** feel
(to find out) if (whether); **si je . . .**
suppose I . . .
- siècle** *m.* century
- sien-ne (le, la)** his, hers (§ 57); **les**
siennes his (her) old tricks
- signal** *m.* (§ 136, *a*) signal, sign
- signification** *f.* meaning
- signifier** (§ 418) mean, signify
- simple-ment** (§ 361) simple, simply
- singulier, singulière** singular
- singulièrement** (§ 361) singularly
- sitôt** (§ 161, l. 25) so soon, forthwith,
straightway
- six** [si, siz, sis] (§ 354, *b*) six; sixth
(§ 355, *c*)
- sixième** (§ 354, *b*) sixth
- social-e** (*m. pl.* sociaux) social
- société** *f.* (§ 157, l. 25) society
- sœur** *f.* (§ 38, *a*) sister
- soi** oneself; (*occasionally*) itself, him-
self, herself, themselves; **soi-même**
oneself (*stressed*)
- soin** *m.* (§ 161, l. 22) care
- soir** *m.* (§ 356, *a*, 14) evening
- soit** [swat] granted, all right, so be
it; **soit . . . soit** [swa] either . . . or,
whether . . . or; **soit à** [swata] addi-
tionner (§ 359, *a*) to add
- soixante** (§ 354, *b*) sixty
- soldat** *m.* (§ 493) soldier
- soleil** *m.* (§ 492, *h*) sun, sunshine
- solennel-le-ment** (§ 361) solemnly
- somme** *f.* sum; **faire la somme de . . .**
add up . . . ; **en somme** after all
- son** (1), **sa, ses** (§ 54) his, her, one's.
See on
- son** (2) *m.* sound. *See* phonème
- sonder** (§ 384) sound (*the depths of*)
- songer** (§ 160) think (à of)
- sonner** sound; (*of clocks*) strike
- Sorbonne, la** the Sorbonne (*founded*
in 1253 by Robert de Sorbon; part
of l'Université de Paris)
- sort** *m.* fate (cf. 3 *A of* sortir)
- sorte** *f.* kind; **de la sorte** (§ 331, III, 5)
in that way; **en (or de) sorte que** so
that
- sortir** (§ 225, *f*) go (come, bring, take)
out (§ 427, *b-c*)
- sot, sotté** (§ 338, *e*) foolish, silly; **sot-te**
de (§ 340) fool of a

- sottise** *f.* silliness, (tom) foolery, silly trick, bit of stupidity
- sou** *m.* sou (halfpenny, cent)
- souffrant-e** (§ 264, 3) ill
- souffrir** (§ 440) suffer (de from)
- soupe** *f.* (§ 201, l. 7) soup
- souper** *m.* supper; *vb.* have supper
- sourcil** [si] *m.* eyebrow. *See froncer*
- souriant-e** (§ 264, 4) smiling *adj.*
- sourire** *vb.* and *m.* noun smile
- sous** *pure prep.* under, beneath; **sous le règne** in (under) the reign
- soustraction** *f.* (§ 359, b) subtraction
- soustraire** (§ 454) subtract
- souvenir de, se** (§ 482) remember
- souvent** often
- soyeu-x, -se** (§ 338, c) silky
- statue** *f.* statue
- sténographie** *f.* (§ 249, l. 45) shorthand
- stratégie** *f.* strategy
- strophe** *f.* stanza, strophe
- stupide-ment** (§ 361) stupidly
- style** *m.* (§ 249, l. 38) style
- stylistique** *f.* (§ 249, l. 40) stylistics (*study or art of style*)
- subir** (§ 132) undergo
- subjonctif, -ve** subjunctive
- subsister** (§ 384) continue (to live)
- substantif, -ve** substantive
- substituer** (§ 418, a) substitute
- subtil-e** (§ 48, l. 3) subtle, wily
- succéder à** (§ 162, f) follow, succeed (*chronologically*)
- sud** [syd] *m.* south
- suicide** *m.* suicide (*as an act*)
- suite** *f.* (§ 41) continuation
- suisvant-e** following; **suisvant que** according to whether (§ 249, l. 32)
- suivre** (§ 473) follow
- sujet** *m.* subject
- superstitieu-x, -se** superstitious
- supposer** (§ 245, b, § 384) suppose
- suprême** supreme, final
- sur** *pure prep.* on, upon, over, as to, about; **apporte Josette sur mon lit** bring Josie and put her on my bed (§ 201, l. 2); **deux sur six** two out of six
- sûr-e (de)** sure (of); **soyez-en sûr-e** I assure you
- surtout** (§ 29, c) especially
- susceptible** susceptible, capable
- syllabe** *f.* (§ 27) syllable
- sympathie** [sèpati] *f.* sympathy
- syntaxe** *f.* (§ 249, l. 13) syntax
- syntaxique** (§ 157, l. 2) of syntax
- système** *m.* system
- t'** *See te*
- ta, ton, tes** (§ 54) your
- tableau** *m.* picture, table (scheme)
- tache** *f.* (§ 352, l. 3) spot. *See tâche*
- tâche** *f.* (§ 7, e) task. *See tache*
- tâcher de** (§ 384) endeavor to
- taille** *f.* cut, build, size
- talent** *m.* talent, gift
- tandis** [tâdi(s)] **que** whereas
- tant** so much; **tant soi peu** the least bit; **tant de** so much, so many; **tant que** so (as) long as
- tante** *f.* aunt
- tapant** *adv.* (cf. § 101, l. 5) just
- tard** *adv.* late. *See retard*
- tas de, un** a heap, a lot (lots) of
- tâter** (§ 384) feel (*by rummaging*)
- taxi** *m.* (*fam.*) taxi (taxicab)
- te** you, to (for, at, from) you; **te . . . le (la, les)** your (§ 295, d, h)
- tel, telle** (§ 338, e) such, such a, such and such a; **telle qu'elle est** in its present state (§ 254, l. 37)

téléphoner (§ 107, R) telephone
tellement (§ 361) so, so much
temps *m.* (§ 143, *c*) time, weather, tense
tenir (§ 382) keep, hold. *See compte*
tentative *f.* attempt, effort
terme *m.* (§ 249, l. 11) term
terre *f.* earth, land, ground
tes, ton, ta (§ 54) your
tête *f.* head; **en tête de** at the beginning of (**en-tête** *m.* heading)
thé [te] (§ 17) *m.* tea
théâtre *m.* (§ 157, l. 25) theater
tien-ne (le, la) yours (§ 57)
timide-ment (§ 361) timid-ly
tirer (§ 384) pull, haul, draw
tiret *m.* (§ 28, *d*) dash (—)
toi you, yourself, *etc.* *See moi*
tolérance *f.* tolerance
tomber (§ 384, § 427, *b*) fall
ton, ta, tes (§ 54) your
tonneau *m.* (§ 52, l. 11) cask
tort *m.* wrong; **avoir tort** be wrong
torturer (§ 384) torture
tôt soon, early. *See bientôt*
toujours always, still
toupet *m.* (*fig.*) cheek
tour *m.* turn (**de to**)
tous (§ 182) *m. pl. of tout* (*q. v.*)
tout (1), **toute-s, tous** (§ 182) *adj. and pron.* all, every, any; **tous les deux** both; *adverbially* (§ 363) **toutes seules** (§ 52, l. 7) all by themselves, and **tout entier** (§ 266, l. 4) wholly, without reserve; *so tout-e à toi* devotedly (*or ever*) yours
tout (2) *pure adv.* **tout simplement** merely; **tout au plus** at the very most; **tout en admettant** (§ 262, 12) though readily granting
tout (3) *m. pron.* everything; **pas du tout** (*fam. du tout*) not at all

traduire (en) translate (into)
train *m.* train; **être en train de** be + *vb. in -ing* (§ 264, 3)
traîner (§ 384) drag (along), haul
trait *m.* dart; **trait d'union** hyphen; **avoir trait à** bear upon
traiter de deal with, treat of
transformer (§ 384) turn (**en into**)
transition *f.* transition
travail *m.* (§ 143, *a*) work, labor
travailler (§ 421) work, be at work
travaux *pl. of travail* (*q. v.*)
travers, à (§ 322, *c*) through
treize (§ 353), thirteen, thirteenth (§ 355, *c*)
trente (§ 353) thirty (*cf.* § 355, *c*)
très very, very much, greatly
tresse (*f.*), **mettre en braid**
trisaïeul *m.* great-great-grandfather
triste (§ 347) sad, gloomy, dreary
trois (§ 353) three, third (§ 355, *c*)
troisième third (§ 353)
tromper (§ 384) deceive; **se tromper** (**de**) be wrong (as to the, his, *etc.*)
trop (**de**) too, too much, too many
trottoir *m.* sidewalk, pavement
trouble *m.* confusion, disturbance
trouver (§§ 43, 384) find, think; **se trouver** + *inf.* happen to; **venir trouver** come to meet
tu (§ 40, Q, 4; p. 38) you
tuer (§ 418, *a*) kill
type *m.* (§ 340, I) type, 'one'
typhon *m.* typhoon, cyclone
un, une a, an, one; **sans une . . .** without even one . . . ; **l'un-e de** one of; **l'un-e ou l'autre** either, one of the two; **ni l'un-e ni l'autre** neither; **se . . . l'un-e (à) l'autre** (§ 283, *c*) each other; **les uns . . .** some . . .

- unième, et** (§ 353, *a*) and first
unité *f.* unity, (*arith.*) unit
univers *m.* (§ 143, *c*) universe, whole world
universel-le (§ 338, *e*) universal
université *f.* university
Uruguay *m.* (§ 337) Uruguay
user (§ 384) wear out; **user de use**
usine *f.* factory, works
usité-e (*p.p. only*) *adj.* used, usual, in good use
utile-ment (§ 361) usefully
utilisation *f.* utilization
utilité *f.* utility, usefulness
- valeur** *f.* value, worth
valeur (§ 470) be worth; **il vaut mieux** it is better to
variable variable
varier (§ 418) vary
variété *f.* variety
Vaucluse *f.* (§ 335) Vaucluse (*town and department*)
veiller (§ 421) keep (lie) awake, be watchful
veinard-e lucky, lucky one
veine *f.* (§ 193) vein, luck
vendre (§§ 190–191, 328) sell
vendredi *m.* (§ 327, *e*, § 356, *a*, 5) Friday
venger (§ 160) avenge
venir (§ 482) come; **je viens de + inf.** I have just; **je venais de + inf.** I had just
vent *m.* (§ 302, *b*, 4) wind
vente *f.* sale
verbal-e (§ 338, *g*) verbal, of verbs
verbe *m.* (§ 486, *a*) verb
véritable true, genuine, real
vérité *f.* (§ 492, *q*) truth
verre *m.* glass
- vers** (1) *m. noun* (§ 143, *c*) verse; **des vers** (§ 381, 1. 1) verses or verse (*i.e.* poetry)
vers (2) *pure prep.* toward, about (**vers midi** about noon). *See envers*
version *f.* version, form
vert-e (§ 339, *a*) green
vertical-e (*m. pl. -aux*) vertical
vertu *f.* (§ 486) virtue
veuillez (§ 202, *e*) please, kindly
veut *See vouloir* (3 *A*)
viande *f.* meat
vide empty; **vide de** devoid of
vie *f.* (§ 373, ex. 6) life
vieil, vieille *See vieux*
vieux, vieil-le (§ 338, *f*) old
vif, vive (§ 338, *b*) lively, keen
ville *f.* city, town; **dîner en ville** dine out
vin *m.* wine
Vincennes *f. sg.* Vincennes (*near Paris*)
vingt (§ 353) twenty; **le vingt mars** the twentieth of March (§ 355, *c*, *N*)
vingt-cinq *etc.* (§ 354, *c*) twenty-five
vingt-neuf *etc.* (§ 354, *c*) twenty-nine
visage *m.* (§ 492, *d*) face
viser (§ 384) aim, aim at (§ 352, 1. 11)
visite *f.* visit. *See rendre*
visiteu-r, -se (§ 488) visitor
vit *See vivre and voir*
vite quickly, fast, soon
vive *See vif and vivre*
vivement (§ 361) keenly. *See vif*
vivre (§ 477) live (*de on, by*)
vocabulaire *m.* vocabulary
vocal-e (§ 338, *g*) of the voice
vocaux *m. pl. of vocal-e* (*q.v.*)
voici (§ 203) here is, here are; this is, these are. *See voilà*
voie *f.* way, path (*fig.*)

- voilà** (§ 54, *b*, § 82, § 157, l. 4, § 203) there (look!), there is (are), that is, those are; **voilà un an** a year ago
- voir** (§ 463) see
- voiture** *f.* carriage; **en voiture!** take your seats! *or* (U. S. A.) all aboard!
- voix** (§ 143, *c*) voice
- voler** *tr.* steal; *intr.* fly
- volontaire** of the will, voluntary
- volonté** *f.* will, wish; **de la bonne volonté** *f.* willingness
- volontiers** gladly, with pleasure
- vos** *See* **votre**
- votre, vos** (§ 54) your
- vôtre, le, la** (*etc.*) yours (§ 57)
- vouloir** (§ 166) wish (to), desire (to), like to, want (to), will *and* would (*but not as aux. vbs. of pure futurity*), be willing (*neg.* be unwilling); **vouloir dire** mean (**Que veut-on dire par « parler »?** § 249, l. 5); **vouloir, c'est pouvoir** where there's a will there's a way; **veuillez** please, kindly; **en vouloir à** bear . . . a grudge
- vous** you, yourself, yourselves, to (for, from, at) you; **vous . . . le (la, les)** your (§ 295, *d, h*); **à vous** (§ 297) (of) yours
- voyage** *m.* (§ 337, ll. 21-23) journey, voyage, travel
- voyager** (§ 160) travel (*cf.* **voyage**)
- voyelle** *f.* (§§ 7-11) vowel
- vrai-e** true, real; **du vrai** *noun* of what is true, more or less truth
- vraiment** (§ 361) truly, really
- vue** (*cf.* § 463) *f. noun* eyesight, end in view; **la vue de** the sight of
- y** (§ 282, § 284, *b*, § 298, § 306, *a*) there (thereat *or* thither), therein; **in or into it (or them)**; **y penser** think about it (*or* of it, *or* of them); **il y a** there is
- yeux** *pl. of œil (q.v.)*
- yod** *m.* the sound [j]
- zéro** *m.* (§ 359) zero

GENERAL INDEX

See also the references in the English-French and French-English Vocabularies

- a**, § 45, R, §§ 47, 230, 231, N 1, §§ 240-241, *d*, § 247, *e-f*, §§ 249, 251-254, 280, *c*, N, § 292, *b*, §§ 295-297, 306, *a*, § 322, *a*, §§ 328, 331, 368, *d*
- Absolute constructions**, § 329, *b*, § 350, *d*
- Académie Française**, § 157, l. 22, § 254, l. 35
- Accusative**, §§ 43, 280, *c*, § 281, *b*, §§ 282, 285, 295, 298, *a-e*, § 299
- Added condition**, Subjunctive of, § 230, *a*
- Adjectives (forms and syntax)**, §§ 51-52, N (*a*), §§ 54-55, 68, 73, N 2-3, §§ 77, 144-156, 170-175, 177-179, p. 183 (footnote), § 227, *a*, §§ 265, 273, 296, *b*, § 305, *c*, §§ 314, 319, *e*, § 334, *a*, §§ 338-340 and exercises, §§ 341-352, 355, 363-364, 396. See Demonstrative, Interrogative, Possessive, Descriptive, Limiting, Numerical, Verbal
- Adrienne Lecouvreur**, § 238, ex. 4
- Adverbial clauses**, §§ 229-236
- Adverbs (forms and syntax)**, §§ 56, 79-82 (*-ci*, *ici*, *-là*), 154, 156, 304, 306-307, 319, *d*, § 327, *d-e*, §§ 328, 333, *a*, § 350, *a*, §§ 358, 360-381
- adviene que pourra**, §§ 139, 213, *c*
- afin que**, slightly archaic, § 231, N 1
- agir . . . il s'agit**, § 132, *d*, § 302, *b*, § 424
- Agreement of adjectives**, §§ 339, 350, *b*; agreement of finite verbs, §§ 122-123, 377, N 1; agreement of the past participle, §§ 265-268, 405, *a*
- air fou (folle), avoir l'**, § 350, *b*
- aller**, §§ 163, 203, *d*, § 213, ex. 4, §§ 250, 262, 13, § 295, ex. 14
- Alphabet in France, The**, § 23
- Âne, Un Bel**, § 352
- Antecedents, Doubtful**, § 123, *a*
- Apôtre, L'**, quoted, § 398, ex. 3
- appeler + infinitive**, § 246, ex. 5
- appris à aimer (syntax of past participle)**, § 270, *b*, Q
- après**, § 241, *c*, § 322, *c*; **après que**, §§ 105, 111, 233
- Archaisms. Archaic forms: dormant for dormante**, § 225, *a*; **maint-e** as pronoun, § 177, *a*; **mangé-je** and other inversions of *I A*, § 50, *b*, § 403, *a-b*; group *C* ('past definite'), §§ 65, 71, 398; group *O.S.* ('simple past subjunctive'), §§ 207, 209-210, 238, 399; **il est for il y a**, § 302 (5). See also § 178, *c*, Q, § 181, R, § 381, l. 20. — Archaic syntax: **avoir faim etc.**, § 122, N, § 320, R (cf. § 312, *a-c*), § 314, *b*, R; historical infinitive, § 257; omission of definite article, § 317, R, § 319, *c-h*; **l'un d'eux**, § 85, N *d'*; archaic usage with **falloir**, § 212, N; stock phrases, § 213, *b, e-f*; **quelque . . . que**, § 228, *c*; **au cas que**, § 230; archaic position of personal pronoun (**je le dois dire**), § 301, (**baillonnez-le et le liez**), § 288, *b*; archaisms in negation, § 134, ex. 1, §§ 370-371, 374, 378, as therein noted
- Arithmetic, Language of**, § 359
- Armstrong, E. C.**, p. v, §§ 67, 343
- arrache, on se vous**, § 299, R
- Article, Definite**, §§ 33-34, 45, 47-49, 52-53, 85, N *b*, § 108, R, §§ 115-118, 122, N, § 182, *b*, §§ 305, 316-337, 350, *b-c*, § 370, *d*
- Article, Indefinite**, §§ 38, 46, 174, N, §§ 311-315, 320-322

- Aspirate *h*, §§ 17, 37, *b*, § 38, N
 Attraction of subjunctive, § 215, *b*
aussitôt ma chambre faite etc., § 274,
 ex. 2; **aussitôt que**, § 86, *b*, §§ 87,
 105, 111
autant, § 227, R, § 271, ex. 6
autre, personne (obsolete), § 376, ex. 3
avant (syntax), §§ 233, 241, *d*, N 1,
 § 322, *c*, § 368, *d*
avoir (forms and syntax), § 38, *a*,
 §§ 72, 100, 107-108, 110-111, 202, *a*,
 § 203, *c*, §§ 204, 207, 220, 242, *a*,
 § 250, *c*, §§ 252, 261 (3), §§ 267, 277,
 292, *c*, § 302 (5), § 314, *c*, § 320, N,
 § 340, *a*, § 350, *b-c*, § 399, *c*, §§ 425,
 427
 Balzac, H. de, § 333, N 3
 'be' as an auxiliary verb, §§ 59-60,
 62, N, § 63, N, § 264, 3
beau + infinitive, avoir, § 250, *c*
Bel Ane, Un, § 352
belle: **manquée belle**, § 276, *b*; **de plus
 belle**, § 340, I, 10
 Bergeret, § 33, N *d*
bien, § 178, *d*, N, § 225, *a*, §§ 229, 319, *g*,
 § 360, R
blanc bonnet, bonnet blanc, § 349, *c*, R
bon: **homme bon** and **bonhomme**, § 348, *a*,
 p. 403 (footnote); **bon mot**, § 351, *c*
Bourgeois Gentilhomme, Le, § 381
 Bourget, Paul, § 238, exs. 1-2, § 241,
 ex. 2
 Breath-groups, § 28
 Brunot-Bony, § 121, pp. 111 and 251
 (footnotes), § 352
C p. p. (verb-group), §§ 103, 106, 110
ça for **il**, § 302, *b*, R. See **ce**
Cadet Rousselle, pp. 138 and 142
 Capus, Alfred, §§ 193, 238, ex. 5
 Cardinal numbers, §§ 353-359
ce, ceci, cela, ça, §§ 74, 83, 124-126,
 245, 255, 302, 314, *b*, § 340, I, 13-14
ceci, cela, see **ce**
celle, see **celui**
celui, celle, etc., §§ 82, 119, 228, R (*a*)
censé + infinitive, § 245, *b*, ex. 6
cette heure and **sept heures**, § 354, *f*, Q
Chanson de Roland, p. 295
Cher Maître, § 245, R
 Chiasmus, § 349, *c*, R
Chômage, Le, § 266
Chopin, jouer du, § 318, *e*
chose, § 155, ex. 8, § 370, *f*, ex. 15 and
 N 2, § 494. See **grand'**
ci, adverbial prefix or suffix, §§ 68;
 80-82, 276, *a*
 Clédat, L. (*Grammaire raisonnée*),
 pp. 123, 209, 217, § 300 (5), p. 344
 (footnote), pp. 355-356 (footnotes),
 § 497, N
 Close vowels, §§ 4, 7, *a*
combien and past participle, §§ 156,
 268, ex. 6, § 268, *b*, N
 Comédie-Française, La, § 157
Comment on prononce le français,
 quoted, pp. 349-351 (footnotes)
 Comparison, §§ 55-56, 350, *e*, § 368, *e*,
 § 375, *a*, N 2
 Compound nouns, §§ 291-292, 318, *c*,
 § 348, *a*, § 351, *c*, § 497, *b*
 Concealed datives and subjunctives,
 § 194, *c*, § 199, *a*, §§ 200, 205-206,
 289, R, 297, II
 Concession, §§ 97-98, 229, 262, 12
 Conditional, § 60, N 1, §§ 91-102, 229,
 N 1, § 394. See **Nomenclature**
 Conditions, § 61, *a*, § 95, *a-b*, §§ 97-
 99, 226, *a*, §§ 235, 398 (3), N
 Conjugations, § 107, R, §§ 382-483
 'Conjunctive' and 'Disjunctive' as
 terms, § 300, 6
 Consonants, §§ 3, 12-22, 30
 Continuants, § 3, *b*
 Conventional symbols, § 5
 Coppée, F., § 329, *b*, § 398, *a*, ex. 2
Costaud des Epinettes, Le, § 374, *c*,
 N 2
coûte que coûte, §§ 139, 213, *c*, ex. 3
cru aimer (syntax of past participle),
 § 270, *b*, Q, ex. 3
Dagobert, Le Bon Roi, p. 330, II
dans (syntax and meanings), § 306;
 ex. 1, §§ 321-322, *c*, § 327, *b-c*, §§ 335-
 337
 Dates, Idioms expressing, §§ 327, 356
 Dative, §§ 41, 43, *b*, § 280, *b*, § 281, *b*,
 §§ 282, 285, 295-296, 297, II, §§ 298,
 329, *e*
 Daudet, A., § 268, R, § 348, R

- de** (meanings and syntax), § 38, *a*, §§ 45-46, 53, 85, *N b*, § 152, ex. 2, § 241, *d*, § 242, exs. 2 and 5, § 245, *R*, § 247, *i*, §§ 249, 250, *e*, § 251, *c-d*, §§ 255-257, 271, 292, 302, *c*, §§ 304, 312, *c*, §§ 318-319, 322, *f*, §§ 332-334, 340, *a* and *I*, 12 (**de purement locale**), § 378, ex. 7
- Definite Article.** See **Article**
- Demonstrative adjective**, § 68; **demonstrative pronoun**, §§ 74-83, 119
- Denial and the subjunctive**, § 223
- Dernière Classe, La*, § 268, *R*
- dès que** (syntax), § 86, *b*, §§ 87, 105, *b*, §§ 110-111
- Désabusée*, § 268, *R*
- Descriptive adjectives**, § 341
- devoir** (forms and syntax), §§ 100, 187, 246, 247, *g*, §§ 301, 387, 394, *N 1*, § 465
- Diacritical signs**, § 5
- Dictionnaire général*, pp. 63, 319, 344 (footnotes)
- Dictionnaire phonétique* of Michaelis-Passy, p. 349 (footnote)
- Diphthongs**, § 11
- dire** (syntax), § 245, *b*, *N*, §§ 248, 251, *d*, ex. 2
- 'Disjunctive' and 'Conjunctive' as terms, § 300, 6
- Divorce, Un*, § 241, ex. 2
- Doublets in -ant and -ent**, § 264, *I*
- Doubt and the subjunctive**, § 223
- écouter** + infinitive, § 301
- '**écrire**' defined, § 249, ll. 32-40
- Elision**, §§ 279, 288, *a*, § 354, *a*
- elle** in neuter senses, §§ 282, 303, *b*, § 304
- Ellipses**, § 493
- Emigré, L'*, § 238, exs. 1-2
- Emotions requiring the subjunctive**, §§ 215-221
- empêcher que ne**, § 368, *b*
- en** (meanings and syntax): (1) preposition, §§ 260-263, 286, l. 4, § 306, ex. 2, § 312, *d*, §§ 321, 332, 335-337; (2) pronoun and adverb, § 157, l. 12, § 229, *b*, *Q*, § 268, *a*, ex. 5, §§ 279, 284, *c*, § 292, *b*, §§ 294, 298, 300, 304, 307-310, 375, *a*, *N 1*
- Enchantement, L'*, § 329, ex. 7
- Enclitics**, § 278, *a*, § 281, *R*, § 285, *a*, §§ 298-300. See 'Conjunctive' and 'Disjunctive,' also **Proclitics**
- encore**, § 106, ex. 2, § 178, *e*, § 229, *N 2*
- enjambement** or overflow, § 28, *b*
- entendre** (syntax with infinitive or past participle), § 244, ex. 6, § 246, ex. 7, § 259, 270, ex. 2, § 301
- entre** (syntax), §§ 138, 241, *b*, § 304
- espérer** + infinitive, § 246, ex. 1
- est-ce que**, §§ 40, 78, 403, *b*, *N*
- et** in numbers, §§ 353, 354, *c*
- être** (meanings and syntax), §§ 42, 64, 72-73, 109, 112, 202, *c*, §§ 204, 242, *a*, §§ 252, 261, 3, § 265, *d-h*, §§ 267, 296, *a*, §§ 303, 314, 398, *c*, §§ 426-427
- Euphony**: its influence on the position of adjectives, § 342; in the loss of verb-forms, p. 355 (footnote)
- Fables, L'Enfant qui lit les*, § 113
- Fabre, F.*, quoted, § 352
- faire** (forms, meanings, and syntax), § 161, ll. 20 and 22, §§ 244, 246, 247, *h-i*, § 250, *d*, § 265, *g*, § 270, ex. 4, § 296, *a*, §§ 301, 302, *b* (4), § 340, l. 8-9, § 378, *a*, *N 1-2*, § 478
- falloir** (forms, meanings, and syntax), §§ 153, 222, 245, *b*, § 368, *c*, § 470, *b*
- Fear and the subjunctive**, §§ 216-221
- Fédora*, § 288, *b*
- finir** (forms and syntax), §§ 131-132, 207, 241, *a*, §§ 388-389, 399, *b*, § 423
- Fitness expressed by the subjunctive**, § 222
- Flandre, les côtes de (la)**, § 333, *N 3*. See **Article**
- Folk-speech**, § 218, *R*, § 279, *c*, § 300, 3 and 5, § 306, *a*, *R*, § 318, *f*, § 354, *h*, *R*, §§ 368-369, 374, *c*, *N 2*
- fraîche éclosion**, § 364, *b*
- France, Anatole**, § 33, *N e*
- French Shifts in Adjective Position, The*, p. 303. See **Armstrong**
- Fromont jeune et Risler aîné*, § 348, *R*
- Futurity**, §§ 85-89, 91, 94-102, 163, *N 2*, §§ 218, 251, *d*, ex. 5
- garde que ne, prendre**, § 368, *a*, *N*
- Geddes, J.*, p. xii

- Gender and sex of nouns, §§ 35, 39-40, 489-492
- Gerund (en . . . ant), § 33, N b, § 258, c, N, §§ 260-264, 395; English gerund in *-ing* and some French equivalents, § 258, c
- Glides, § 9, d, R, § 13, a-c
- Gobseck*, § 235, N 3, § 398, ex. 4
- Grammaire, La*, § 249; Clédât, *Grammaire raisonnée*, pp. 123, 209, 217, 244, 356 (footnotes). See Clédât
- Grammar defined, § 1, p. 3. See *Grammaire*
- 'Grammatical subject,' The so-called, § 265, e, N 1, § 302 (5)
- grand' chose**, § 370, ex. 15 (see *chose*); **grande ouverte**, § 364, b
- Helmholtz on the sound of *l*, § 15
- Henriette, Ma Sœur*, quoted, §§ 66, 70
- Historical infinitive, § 257
- Holidays, Names of, § 327, R
- Hours and dates (idioms), § 356; cf. § 327, f
- How to Teach a Foreign Language*, p. 110 (footnote). See Jespersen
- Hyphe after imperatives, § 288, a, § 300, 5; in numerals, § 353, a
- Idealizing volition, § 226, b
- il (= 'it') neuter, § 44, l. 7, §§ 146, R, 250, d, § 252, a, exs. 2-4, §§ 255, 265, ex. 12 and N 1-2, § 271, R, § 302
- Imperative (forms and syntax), §§ 194-203, 250, f, §§ 288, 292, e, §§ 298, 377, ex. 12, § 381, ll. 16-17, § 404
- Imperfect (forms and syntax), §§ 59-63, 67, 397. See Nomenclature
- Inclusive personal pronoun, §§ 291-292
- Indefinite adjectives and indefinite pronouns, §§ 152, 170-186 (see the English-French Vocabulary, under **any**, **anybody**, **some**, etc.); indefinite relatives, § 228
- Indicative, Present, § 132, 162, 206, 227, N 1, §§ 384-385, 387, 400. See Futurity, Imperfect, and Past definite
- Indirect questions, §§ 83, 124-125, 151; mood of the verb, § 223, d
- Infinitive, §§ 151, 213, N, §§ 221-222, a-b, §§ 239-259, 301, 370, b, § 373, ex. 5, § 374, c, § 375, a, N 1, § 393
- Inflection. See Intonation and Inflectional endings
- Inflectional endings of verbs, §§ 60, 69, 84, 91, 108-109, 132, 392, 394-403, and §§ 416-482. See Stems
- International Phonetic Association, pp. xii, 8
- Interrogative forms, §§ 50, 58, 144-156. See Indirect questions and Questions
- Intonation or inflection, §§ 26, 403, N
- Intransitive past participle with **avoir** and **être**, §§ 73, 426-427
- Inversion of verb and subject for interrogation or after certain adverbs, § 50, b, § 98, R, § 213, g, § 228, g, §§ 236, 302 (7) R, § 403
- Italian personal names, § 323, R
- je ne sais qui** (**quoi**, **quel**, etc.) §§ 152, 155, c, § 368, g
- Jespersen, O., p. 110 (footnote), § 279, d
- Jésus-Christ en Flandre*, § 333, N 3
- Jourdain, M., § 381
- 'keep' (saying, etc.) as an auxiliary verb and its French equivalents, §§ 60, 262, 13
- la** as a neuter object, § 303, b
- Langage, Le*, § 157
- le** as a predicate nominative, § 280, a
- Liaison. See Linking
- lieu que**, **au**, § 234, ex. 4
- Limiting adjectives and the subjunctive, § 227, a
- Linking, §§ 29-31, 38, a, § 143, c, § 182, N, § 279, e, § 281, a, N, §§ 354, 403, c, § 497, b, c, f, g
- Logical distinguishers, § 343 ff.; the so-called 'logical subject,' §§ 76, 265, e, N 1
- Loi de l'homme, La*, § 293
- loin que**, § 234, ex. 3
- Louis XI et son Astrologue*, § 161
- Lourdes* (by Zola), § 323, R
- lui**. See English-French Vocabulary, under **he**, **her** (2), and **him**

- Madame la** (or *votre* etc.), § 324
Mademoiselle, § 25, R, § 324
maint-e, § 177, *a*
Maître phonétique, *Le*, p. xii (footnote)
mal de, pas, § 370, *f*, N 1
malgré que, § 229, N 2
manquée belle, § 276, *b*
Marquis de Priola, Le, § 155, ex. 8, § 306, *a*, 1
 Martinon, Ph., pp. 349-351 (footnotes)
 Maupassant, G. de, § 341, ex. 3
 Mental reservations and the subjunctive, § 223
 Michaelis-Passy. See *Dictionnaire phonétique*
 Miller, D. C., p. 5 (footnote)
Miquette et sa mère, § 306, *a*, 1
 Misplaced futurity, § 89
moi as immediate subject, § 290, *b*, § 291, *a*
moins . . . en, moins . . . en + past participle, § 268, *c*
 Molière, quoted, § 381
Mon oncle et mon curé, quoted, § 397(4)
monsieur le curé etc., § 324
 Months, Names of (syntax), § 327
 Moods. See Conditional, Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, Subjunctive
 Morphology, § 1, *a*, § 249, ll. 9 and 12
- Names of countries, §§ 332-337; of months, seasons, etc., § 327; of persons and cities, §§ 323, 325; of verb-forms, § 408 (see *Nomenclature*)
 Nasal consonants, § 14; nasal vowels, § 10
ne (meanings and syntax), §§ 78, 151, 155, *c*, R, § 227, N 2, § 247, *h-i*, § 271, ex. 7, § 292, *c-d*, §§ 365, 367-381
 Necessity etc. expressed by the subjunctive, § 222
 Negation, § 52, *N d*, § 53, N 2, §§ 90, 151-152, 155, *c*, § 165, N 1, §§ 184, 186, 195, 197-198, 200, 216-217, 223, 226, *a*, § 227, N 2, § 233, *c*, § 234, R, § 235, N 2, § 271, R, § 292, *c-e*, § 320, N, §§ 365-381
ni, § 291, *b*, § 292, *d*, § 314, *d*, § 375, *b-c*, § 377
- Nisard, D., quoted, § 113
 'Nobody who(m)', § 374, *e*. See 'Nothing that'
 Noël-Armfield, G., quoted, § 14, *c*, R
 Noises and musical tones, § 3
Nomenclature, Report on Grammatical, quoted, p. xiv. See Names
 Nominative, § 280, *a*, §§ 282, 287, *c*
nonobstant que + subjunctive, § 229, N 2
 Non-pronominal proclitics, § 294
 'nor' + verb + subject, § 377, *a*
 'Nothing that', § 374, *e*. See 'Nobody who(m)'
 Noun clauses, § 214
 Nouns (syntax), §§ 314, 341, R, § 349, *c*, N, and *h*, § 327, *d-e*, §§ 357, 360, R. See Gender and Plural. On nouns as negatives (adverbial or pronominal), see *pas*, *personne*, *point*, *rien*, etc., and their English equivalents
nouveau riche, § 364, *a*
 Numbers (numerals): formation, sounds, syntax, § 268, *a*, N, § 271, exs. 2 and 4, §§ 353-359
 Numeral adjectives. See Numbers
 Numerals. See Numbers
- Objects. See Accusative and Dative
 Obligation expressed by groups *D* and *E*, by *avoir à*, *devoir*, etc., § 100
 Openness of vowels and consonants, § 3, *c*, § 7, *a*
 Ordinal numbers, §§ 353-359. See Numbers
 Organs of speech, § 2
Orthographe, La Réforme de l', § 254; cf. § 249, ll. 40-50
 Orthography, §§ 5, 254. See *Orthographe*
où as a relative pronoun, §§ 120-121, 130, N, §§ 141-142
 « *Oui, mon colonel* », § 85
 Overflow or enjambement, § 28, *b*
- Palais de Justice, § 319, *h*; le Palais-Vieux, § 348, R
par, § 241, *a*, § 244, ex. 8 (par or à), § 322, *d*, § 328, *a*
 Paradigms, § 413, R
 Paris, Gaston, p. xi, §§ 157, 249, 254, 398, ex. 1

- Participle, Past, §§ 72-73, 265-277, 289, 307, *d*, § 349, *f*, § 374, *c*, § 378, N 5, § 405; present participle, §§ 260-264, 395
- Partitives and partitive groups, §§ 46, 49, *b-c*, §§ 53, 173, 174, R, § 178, *e*, §§ 180, 307, *e*, §§ 308, 318-319, 322, *e*, ex. 3, § 373, ex. 2, § 374, *d*, § 376, ex. 2, § 379. See *combien de*, *que de*, *quelque chose*, *ne . . . que*, *pas*, and their English equivalents (Vocabularies)
- pas** (negative), Syntax of, § 170, *d-e*, § 366, *c-h*, §§ 370, 375, 378, N 4
- Passive constructions, §§ 265, 275
- Passy, Paul, pp. xii and 26 (footnote), § 279, *d*, p. 349 (footnote)
- Past definite (forms and functions), § 398
- Past participle. See Participle
- Pensées de Riquet, Les*, §§ 33, 41, 44, 48, 52
- Personal pronouns, §§ 122-123, 244, 250, *a*, §§ 278-310
- Personification of *lui*, *elle-s*, and *eux*, §§ 282, 302, *b*, 4, R, § 304
- personne**, §§ 186, 228, R (*e*), § 376
- pesé** after *que*, § 268, *d*, ex. 3
- Petit Larousse illustré, Le*, p. 344 (footnote)
- Petit Poisson et le Pêcheur, Le*, § 88
- Petite Chocolatière, La*, § 293
- Petite Phonétique comparée*, p. xii
- Phonetic symbols, § 6
- Phonetics defined, § 1, *a* (p. 3)
- Phonographic records, § 4 (p. 8)
- Phonology defined, § 1, *a* (p. 3)
- Pierre et Thérèse*, § 398 (3), R
- plein moyen âge**, *en*, § 321, *a*
- Pleonastic use of *y*, *en*, *le*, etc., § 307, *c*, R, and *e*, R
- Platives, § 3, *b*, § 13
- Plural of nouns, §§ 34, 36, 136, 143, 146, 177, 496-497
- plus**, §§ 55-56, 90, 268, *c*, § 373, ex. 5
- Poisson et le Pêcheur, Le Petit*, § 88
- portant-e**, *être bien*, § 264, 3
- Position of descriptive adjectives, §§ 341-352; of numerals, § 355; of negatives, §§ 366-381 (*passim*); of personal pronouns, § 298 and §§ 278-310 (*passim*)
- Possessive adjective, §§ 54, 172, 295, *d* and *h*, §§ 297, 309, 324, R, §§ 329, 333, ex. 5; possessive pronoun, §§ 57, 297
- Predicate nominative, §§ 128, 139, 245, 280, *a*
- Prepositional dative, § 280, *b*; prepositional groups, § 115; prepositional reflexives, § 283, *a*. See Prepositions
- Prepositions, §§ 115-116, 138, 130, V, § 283, *a*, § 287, *b*, § 296, *b*; §§ 304, 306-307, 327. See Prepositional, and both vocabularies
- Prévost, M., § 268, R, § 398, (3), R
- Principal parts (of verbs), § 390
- Proclitics, § 285, *a*, §§ 289, 294, 298-301, 348, 351, *b*. See Enclitics
- Pronouns, demonstrative, §§ 74-83; indefinite, §§ 170-173, 176-178; interrogative, §§ 144-155; personal, § 38, *a*, §§ 43, 278-304; relative, §§ 113-129, 133-135, 137-142, 226-227, 374, *d*
- Pronunciation, §§ 1-32
- Prose et les Vers, La*, § 381
- Provisos requiring a subjunctive, § 230
- Punctuation, § 28, *d*
- Purpose, Clauses of, §§ 231, 241, *d*, § 250
- Quantity, § 24
- que** (meanings and syntax), §§ 90, 113-114, 119, 121, 127-130, 139, 146-149, 151, 153, 154, 194-200, 213, 227, R, § 229, *a*, § 230, *a*, §§ 231, 245, *a*, N, § 265, *g*, R, § 268, ex. 7 (*que de*), § 302, *c-d*, § 366, *b*, § 368, *h*, § 374, *b*, §§ 378, 381
- quelque . . . que** with subjunctive, § 228, *c*
- Questions, §§ 50, 58, 83, 124-125, 129, 139, N, §§ 141-155, 226, *d*, § 302, *b* (3), § 403
- cui** (meanings and syntax), §§ 113, 129, 133-135, 137-138, 144-146, *a*, §§ 151-152, 213, *e*, §§ 228, 368, *h*
- quoi** (meanings and syntax), §§ 119, 121, 138, N, §§ 140, 149, 151-152, 228-229, 250, *e*, § 367

- Rate, Expressions of**, § 328
- Reciprocal constructions**, § 190 (end), §§ 283-284
- Reflexives**, § 43, *a*, § 52, *N e*, §§ 55, 132, *d*, *N*, §§ 283-284, *a*, § 301, *a*, § 305, *b*, § 424, *a*, § 427, *a*
- Regular verbs in -er**, § 384; in -ir, §§ 131, 385-387
- Regularity (of verbs)**, § 389
- Rejected reason, Subjunctive of**, § 223, *N*
- Relative clauses**, § 78, *a*, §§ 81-83, 89, *b*, §§ 102, 113-130, 133-135, 137-142, 226-227, 232, 368, *j*, § 374, *d-e*; relative pronouns, §§ 113-130, *VI*, §§ 133-135, 137. See Pronouns
- Renan, E.**, §§ 66, 70
- Repetition of article**, § 54, *e*; of possessive adjective, § 54, *e*; of proclitics, § 289
- Result, Clauses of**, § 232
- Réve, Le*, § 101
- Rhetorique, Function of**, § 249, l. 40
- rien (meanings and syntax)**, §§ 140, 180, 228, *R e*, § 271, ex. 1, § 373, ex. 4, §§ 374, 375, ex. 2
- Rousselot and Laclotte**, p. 18
- sache (pas, rien), je ne**, § 213, *f*
- sans**, §§ 234, 241, *d*, §§ 304, 322, *e*, § 377, ex. 14, § 378, ex. 12
- Sardou, V.**, § 288, *b*
- sauf correction**, § 322, *c*
- sauve qui peut**, § 213, *c*
- Seasons, Names of (syntax)**, § 327, *b*
- semMer**, § 223, *b*, § 245, *b*, § 302, *a*
- Sex marked by lui, eux, etc.**, §§ 282, 284, *b-c*; sex and gender of nouns, §§ 35, 39-40, 489-492
- Sexless antecedents recalled by le**, § 304; sexless things personified, § 304
- si (syntax)**, § 61, *a*, § 86, *b*, § 95, *b*, § 170, *e*, § 228, *g*, §§ 235, 368, *i*
- siennes as noun**, § 340, l. 11
- sitôt la porte fermée**, § 274, ex. 1
- soit**, § 202, *c, N*, § 213, *c-d*, § 229, *b*
- Song defined**, § 2, *c*
- Sons du français, Les*, § 279, *d*
- souffrant-e, être**, § 264, 3
- Sounds and symbols**, § 4
- Sounds of French, Passy's*, p. xii
- souriant-e, être**, § 264, 4
- Speech and song distinguished**, § 2, *c*; organs of speech, § 2; speech-sounds, § 3
- Spelling, French and English**, § 4
- See Orthography
- Stems (of verbs)**, § 391. See Inflectional endings
- Stress**, §§ 25, 122, 146, 278-281, 287-288, 290-294, 299, 304, 344, 351, *c* and *g*, § 391, *b*, § 408
- Subjunctive**, §§ 202-238, 399-403
- Substantive adjectives**, § 180
- Superlative**. See Comparison
- Suppositions requiring the subjunctive**, § 229, *a-b*
- sur + complement replaced by y**, § 306, ex. 3
- Syllabification**, § 27
- Symbols, The conventional**, § 5
- Syntax defined**, § 1, *a*, § 411; meaning of **syntaxe**, § 249, ll. 9 and 13
- Tenses**, pp. xiv-xv; present tense, §§ 33, 41, 43-44, 48, 52, 55, 59; groups *A p.p.* and *B p.p.* with **avoir** and **être**, §§ 72-73; group *B*, §§ 59-63, 397; group *C*, §§ 64-67, 69, 71, 398; groups *D* and *E*, §§ 84-112, 165-166, 187, 192, 237-238, 242, 251, *a*, ex. 3, § 267, *a*, § 394. See Conditional etc.
- Théâtre-Français**, § 157, l. 25
- Time, Clauses of**, § 233
- Titles, Article with**, § 324
- tout ce qu'il y a de plus = tout à fait**, § 271, ex. 3
- train de, être en**, § 264, 3
- Transitive verbs**, § 280, *c, N*, § 295
- Typhon, Le*, § 229, *N* 1
- un-e**, § 178, *b* and *e*, §§ 181, 183, 226, ex. 3, § 283, *c*, § 308, ex. 2, §§ 311-315, 327, *f*, § 328, *N*, § 340, *a, R*, §§ 353, 354, *a, R*, § 355, *c*, § 381, l. 6
- Veine, La*, §§ 193, 239, ex. 5
- venir à or dative and venir**, § 295, *i*
- Vente, Une*, § 371, ex. 3

- Verbal adjective, § 225, *a-b*, §§ 260, 263-264, 396; its position, § 349, *g*
- Verb-forms, Names of, §§ 61, 408
- 294 60 Verbs: formation, §§ 158-160, 162-169, 189-193, 202, 204-208, 260-277, 383-483; syntax, §§ 122-123, 137, 213, N, §§ 221, 244, 248, 250, 265, 291, 295-296, 302, 320, 384, 386-388, 400, 410-412, 414, 416-482 *passim*. See Indicative, Infinitive, Subjunctive, etc., also individual verbs, as *avoir*, *être*, *faire*, etc.
- Viëtor, W., p. xii
- Village Wedding*, A, § 286
- vive, qui, § 213, *e*
- Voice defined, § 2, *a*, § 6, *a*, § 203; voice of the infinitive, § 243; of the past participle, § 267, *b*
- Voiceless consonants, § 2, *a*, § 3
- voici and voilà, § 80, R, § 82, N 1, §§ 133, 203, *a-c*, § 368, *f*, ex. 2
- voir (syntax), §§ 203, 221, 244, *a*, §§ 246, 301. See *vu*
- vous (= 'one') as a non-reflexive object for *on*, § 305, *b*
- Vowels, §§ 3, 7-10
- Voyage de M. Perrichon*, § 314, *b*
- vu* (etc.) + infinitive, § 270, ex. 1 and *b*, § 301, *a*
- 'will' expressing frequency, habit, §§ 59-60. See 'would'
- 'would' expressing habit, etc., § 61
- y (syntax), § 86, *b*, N, § 163, N 3, § 279, *a* and *d*, §§ 282, 284, *b*, § 288, *a*, §§ 294, 298, *b* and *d-e*, §§ 300, 302 (5), §§ 306, 370, ex. 6, § 375, *a*
- Zola, Émile, §§ 266, 323, R

se prendre pour - to go about
se " à - to begin
s'en vouloir de qq chose.

chacun pour soi. - each for himself
il y va de - ... is at stake
général - de la génie
ingénuité - ingenious

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

MAY 9 1933

MAY 25 1938

AUG 17 1938

DEC 2 1942

DEC 16 1942

'51

2 Jun '51 LU

3 Oct '61 MT

REC'D LD

OCT 13 1961

LD 21-95m-7,'37

1920

YB 48738

583967

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

